हिंदी साहित्य का इतिहास

सामान्य परिचय

हिंदी साहित्य का इतिहास

सामान्य परिचय

कक्षा 12 के लिए ऐच्छिक हिंदी की पाठ्यपुस्तक

विश्वनाथ त्रिपाठी

राष्ट्रीय शैक्षिक अनुसंधान और प्रशिक्षण परिषद्
NATIONAL COUNCIL OF EDUCATIONAL RESEARCH AND TRAINING

प्रथम संस्करण
जुलाई 2003
आषाढ़ 1925

ISBN 81-7450-207-6

PD 25T MK

एन.सी.ई.आर.टी. के प्रकाशन विभाग के कार्यालय

एन.सी.ई.आर.टी. कैंपस	108, 100 फीट रोड, होस्डेकेरे	नवजीवन ट्रस्ट भवन	सी.डब्लू.सी. कैंपस
श्री अरविंद मार्ग	हेली एक्सटेंशन बनाशंकरी III इस्टेज	डाकघर नवजीवन	निकट : धनकल बस स्टॉप, पनिहटी
नई दिल्ली 110 016	**बैंगलूर 560 085**	**अहमदाबाद 380 014**	**कोलकाता 700 114**

प्रकाशन सहयोग

संपादन : मीरा कांत

उत्पादन : अतुल सक्सेना

आवरण

कल्याण बैनर्जी

रु. 25.00

एन.सी.ई.आर.टी. वाटर मार्क 70 जी.एस.एम. पेपर पर मुद्रित।

प्रकाशन विभाग में सचिव, राष्ट्रीय शैक्षिक अनुसंधान और प्रशिक्षण परिषद्, श्री अरविंद मार्ग, नई दिल्ली 110016 द्वारा प्रकाशित तथा इंडिया ऑफ़सेट प्रेस, ए-1, मायापुरी इंडस्ट्रियल एरिया, फ़ेस-1, रिंग रोड, नई दिल्ली 110 064 द्वारा मुद्रित।

आमुख

शिक्षा एक सतत विकासशील प्रक्रिया है। इस कारण बदलती हुई परिस्थितियों, ज्ञान-विज्ञान के क्षेत्र में होने वाले अद्‌यतन परिवर्तनों तथा शैक्षिक आवश्यकताओं को ध्यान में रख कर नए पाठ्‌यक्रम और नई पाठ्‌यपुस्तकों के निर्माण का कार्य लगातार चलता रहता है। परिषद्‌ ने **विद्‌यालयी शिक्षा के लिए राष्ट्रीय पाठ्‌यचर्या की रूपरेखा, 2000** तैयार की और उसके आधार पर विभिन्न विषयों के पाठ्‌यक्रमों में संशोधन एवं परिवर्तन किए गए। नवनिर्मित पाठ्‌यक्रमों के अनुरूप परिषद्‌ ने नवीन पाठ्‌यपुस्तकें तैयार करने का निश्चय किया। इसी क्रम में बारहवीं कक्षा में ऐच्छिक हिंदी पढ़ने वाले विद्‌यार्थियों के लिए प्रस्तुत पाठ्‌यपुस्तक **हिंदी साहित्य का इतिहास : सामान्य परिचय** तैयार की गई है।

उच्चतर माध्यमिक स्तर पर विद्‌यार्थी विषय का व्यवस्थित अध्ययन प्रारंभ करते हैं और उसकी गहराई से भी परिचित होते हैं। साहित्य का व्यवस्थित ज्ञान प्राप्त करने के लिए साहित्य के इतिहास का अध्ययन आवश्यक है। साहित्य का इतिहास विद्‌यार्थियों में साहित्य-विवेक तो विकसित करता ही है, साथ ही वह उनमें एक वैज्ञानिक चेतना और ऐतिहासिक दृष्टिकोण भी पैदा करता है। साहित्य के इतिहास का प्रयोजन है साहित्य की प्रगति, परंपरा, निरंतरता और विकास की पहचान कराना।

इस स्तर के विद्‌यार्थी हिंदी साहित्य के क्रमिक विकास का सामान्य परिचय प्राप्त कर प्रत्येक काल के साहित्य का उसके अपने विशेष परिप्रेक्ष्य में आस्वादन कर सकें, इसी उद्‌देश्य को ध्यान में रखकर इस पुस्तक का निर्माण किया गया है। विद्‌वान लेखक ने हिंदी साहित्य का विकास सामाजिक, ऐतिहासिक विकास के संदर्भ में दिखलाते हुए विभिन्न साहित्यिक प्रवृत्तियों और आंदोलनों का विश्लेषण किया है। साथ ही पुस्तक की भाषा को यथासंभव सरल एवं स्पष्ट रखने का प्रयास भी किया गया है। आशा है इस पुस्तक के अध्ययन द्‌वारा विद्‌यार्थी हिंदी साहित्य के सभी कालों, विशिष्ट विधाओं और

हिंदी के प्रमुख साहित्यकारों, लेखकों के जीवन और उनकी रचनाओं का सामान्य परिचय प्राप्त कर सकेंगे।

मैं पुस्तक के लेखक के प्रति हृदय से कृतज्ञता ज्ञापित करता हूँ। उनके द्वारा तैयार की गई पांडुलिपि को एक कार्यशाला में अंतिम रूप दिया गया जिसमें शिक्षकों और विषय-विशेषज्ञों ने भाग लिया। मैं उन सभी विद्वानों का आभारी हूँ जिनके मूल्यवान सुझाव पुस्तक निर्माण में सहायक सिद्ध हुए।

आशा है विद्यार्थियों के साहित्यिक ज्ञान के विकास की दृष्टि से यह पुस्तक उपयोगी सिद्ध होगी। इसके परिष्कार के लिए सुविज्ञजनों द्वारा भेजे जाने वाले सुझावों और परामर्शों का परिषद् सदैव स्वागत करेगी।

जगमोहन सिंह राजपूत
निदेशक
राष्ट्रीय शैक्षिक अनुसंधान और प्रशिक्षण परिषद्

मई 2003
नई दिल्ली

पांडुलिपि समीक्षा कार्यगोष्ठी के सदस्य

विश्वनाथ त्रिपाठी *
रीडर (अवकाश प्राप्त)
हिंदी विभाग
दिल्ली विश्वविद्यालय, दिल्ली

बच्चन सिंह
प्रोफ़ेसर, (अवकाश प्राप्त)
एवं *अध्यक्ष,* हिंदी विभाग
हिमाचल विश्वविद्यालय, शिमला

निरंजन कुमार सिंह
रीडर (अवकाश प्राप्त)
सा.वि.एवं मा.शि. विभाग
एन.सी.ई.आर.टी., नई दिल्ली

नित्यानंद तिवारी
प्रोफ़ेसर, हिंदी विभाग
दिल्ली विश्वविद्यालय, दिल्ली

मैनेजर पाण्डेय
प्रोफ़ेसर, एवं *अध्यक्ष*
भारतीय भाषा केंद्र
जवाहरलाल नेहरू विश्वविद्यालय
नई दिल्ली

आनंद प्रकाश व्यास
रीडर (अवकाश प्राप्त)
शिक्षा विभाग, दिल्ली विश्वविद्यालय
दिल्ली

अनिरुद्ध राय
प्रोफ़ेसर, (अवकाश प्राप्त)
सा.वि.एवं मा.शि. विभाग
एन.सी.ई.आर.टी., नई दिल्ली

रामकरण डबास
वरिष्ठ हिंदी प्राध्यापक
एस.सी.ई.आर.टी., नई दिल्ली

सुरेश पंत
हिंदी प्रवक्ता (अवकाश प्राप्त)
राजकीय उच्चतर माध्यमिक बाल विद्यालय
जनकपुरी, नई दिल्ली

तान्या खुराना
उपप्राचार्या, केंद्रीय विद्यालय
केशवपुरम, लॉरेंस रोड, दिल्ली

राधिका शर्मा
वरिष्ठ हिंदी अध्यापिका
केंद्रीय विद्यालय
रंगपुरी, नई दिल्ली

मंजुरानी सिंह
वरिष्ठ हिंदी अध्यापिका
केंद्रीय विद्यालय
जे.एन.यू. परिसर, नई दिल्ली

---

* लेखक

सुरक्षा नैनवाल
वरिष्ठ हिंदी अध्यापिका
राजकीय कन्या उच्चतर माध्यमिक
विद्यालय, किदवई नगर
नई दिल्ली

अजय कुमार नौरिया
वरिष्ठ हिंदी अध्यापक
राजकीय सहशिक्षा उच्चतर माध्यमिक
विद्यालय, लाजपत नगर
नई दिल्ली

एन.सी.ई.आर.टी संकाय
सामाजिक विज्ञान एवं मानविकी
शिक्षा विभाग

संध्या सिंह
रीडर

लालचंद राम
प्राध्यापक

चन्द्रा सदायत **(समन्वयक)**
रीडर

गांधी जी का जंतर

तुम्हें एक जंतर देता हूँ। जब भी तुम्हें संदेह हो या तुम्हारा अहम् तुम पर हावी होने लगे, तो यह कसौटी आज़माओ :

जो सबसे गरीब और कमज़ोर आदमी तुमने देखा हो, उसकी शक्ल याद करो और अपने दिल से पूछो कि जो कदम उठाने का तुम विचार कर रहे हो, वह उस आदमी के लिए कितना उपयोगी होगा। क्या उससे उसे कुछ लाभ पहुँचेगा? क्या उससे वह अपने ही जीवन और भाग्य पर कुछ काबू रख सकेगा? यानी क्या उससे उन करोड़ों लोगों को स्वराज्य मिल सकेगा, जिनके पेट भूखे हैं और आत्मा अतृप्त है?

तब तुम देखोगे कि तुम्हारा संदेह मिट रहा है और अहम् समाप्त होता जा रहा है।

भारत का संविधान

भाग 4क

नागरिकों के मूल कर्तव्य

अनुच्छेद 51 क

मूल कर्तव्य – भारत के प्रत्येक नागरिक का यह कर्तव्य होगा कि वह –

(क) संविधान का पालन करे और उसके आदर्शों, संस्थाओं, राष्ट्रध्वज और राष्ट्रगान का आदर करे;

(ख) स्वतंत्रता के लिए हमारे राष्ट्रीय आंदोलन को प्रेरित करने वाले उच्च आदर्शों को हृदय में संजोए रखे और उनका पालन करे;

(ग) भारत की संप्रभुता, एकता और अखंडता की रक्षा करे और उसे अक्षुण्ण बनाए रखे;

(घ) देश की रक्षा करे और आह्वान किए जाने पर राष्ट्र की सेवा करे;

(ङ) भारत के सभी लोगों में समरसता और समान भ्रातृत्व की भावना का निर्माण करे जो धर्म, भाषा और प्रदेश या वर्ग पर आधारित सभी भेदभावों से परे हो, ऐसी प्रथाओं का त्याग करे जो महिलाओं के सम्मान के विरुद्ध हों;

(च) हमारी सामासिक संस्कृति की गौरवशाली परंपरा का महत्त्व समझे और उसका परिरक्षण करे;

(छ) प्राकृतिक पर्यावरण की, जिसके अंतर्गत वन, झील, नदी और वन्य जीव हैं, रक्षा करे और उसका संवर्धन करे तथा प्राणिमात्र के प्रति दयाभाव रखे;

(ज) वैज्ञानिक दृष्टिकोण, मानववाद और ज्ञानार्जन तथा सुधार की भावना का विकास करे;

(झ) सार्वजनिक संपत्ति को सुरक्षित रखे और हिंसा से दूर रहे; और

(ञ) व्यक्तिगत और सामूहिक गतिविधियों के सभी क्षेत्रों में उत्कर्ष की ओर बढ़ने का सतत् प्रयास करे, जिससे राष्ट्र निरंतर बढ़ते हुए प्रयत्न और उपलब्धि की नई ऊँचाइयों को छू सके।

विषय सूची

विषय प्रवेश

हिंदी हमारे देश के विस्तृत भू-भाग में बोली जाती है। अपने क्षेत्र के बाहर भी वह समझी जाती है। इस पुस्तक में हम 'हिंदी' शब्द का प्रयोग हिंदी-क्षेत्र की साहित्यिक और सार्वजनिक कामकाज की भाषा के लिए करेंगे। हिंदी की अनेक बोलियाँ हैं जो इस प्रकार हैं – **पश्चिमी हिंदी** की खड़ी बोली, ब्रजभाषा, हरियाणवी, बुंदेली, कन्नौजी; **दक्षिणी हिंदी** की बघेली, छत्तीसगढ़ी; **राजस्थानी** की मारवाड़ी, जयपुरी, मेवाती, मालवी; **पहाड़ी क्षेत्र** की कुमाउँनी, गढ़वाली आदि और **पूर्वी हिंदी** की अवधी, भोजपुरी, मगही, मैथिली। इनमें से अनेक की स्वतंत्र साहित्यिक प्रतिष्ठा है। हिंदी क्षेत्र की इन बोलियों के व्याकरणिक ढाँचे और शब्द-भंडार में इतना सादृश्य है कि वे एक भाषा क्षेत्र के अंतर्गत मानी जाती हैं। इनमें परस्पर अंतर भी है किंतु उनको बोलने वाले एक-दूसरे को समझ लेते हैं। उनके द्वारा रचित साहित्य में भाषाई एकरूपता का ध्यान बना रहता है। इनमें से ब्रजभाषा और अवधी तो सशक्त साहित्यिक भाषा के रूप में भी प्रचलित रही हैं। आज हिंदी हिमाचल प्रदेश, हरियाणा, राजस्थान, मध्य प्रदेश, छत्तीसगढ़, उत्तर प्रदेश, उत्तरांचल, बिहार, झारखंड एवं केंद्रशासित प्रदेश दिल्ली की प्रशासनिक भाषा है। इन राज्यों को मिलाकर जो क्षेत्र बनता है उसे हिंदी भाषी क्षेत्र कहा जाता है। हिंदी साहित्य का इतिहास लगभग 1000 वर्ष पूर्व से मिलने लगता है। यह तिथि थोड़ी पीछे भी बढ़ाई जा सकती है, लेकिन प्रश्न यह है कि हिंदी साहित्य के इतिहास के प्रारंभ को पहचानने का हमारा तर्क क्या है।

विद्वानों ने हिंदी को अपभ्रंश से भिन्न या विशिष्ट बनाने वाली तीन भाषा प्रवृत्तियों की चर्चा की है : 1. क्षतिपूरक दीर्घीकरण, जैसे प्राकृत-अपभ्रंश के कज्ज, कम्म, हत्थ जैसे शब्द हिंदी में काज, काम, हाथ बन गए; 2. परसर्गों की प्रयोग बहुलता, जैसे 'घरहिं' के स्थान पर 'घरहिं माँझ' (घर में) और 3. तत्सम शब्दों का प्रचलन।

उपर्युक्त बातों पर ध्यान देने से प्रकट हो जाता है कि पहले से चली आती हुई अपभ्रंश की धारा जब इन प्रवृत्तियों से युक्त होती गई तो हिंदी अपना रूप ग्रहण करती गई। यहाँ एक बात समझ लेना आवश्यक है कि भाषा रूप में यद्यपि अपभ्रंश की अलग सत्ता है, किंतु वह संस्कृत, पालि, प्राकृत की अपेक्षा हिंदी के व्याकरणिक ढाँचे और शब्द-भंडार के बहुत निकट है। अपभ्रंश को 'पुरानी हिंदी' इसीलिए कहा जाता है। आचार्य रामचंद्र शुक्ल के अनुसार अपभ्रंश रचनाएँ सदा से भाषा काव्य के अंतर्गत मानी जाती रही हैं। 1000 ई. के आस-पास ऐसा साहित्य मिलने लगता है जिसकी भाषा में ये प्रवृत्तियाँ मिलती हैं। हिंदी साहित्य के इतिहास का प्रारंभ इसी कारण 1000 ई. के आस-पास माना जाता है।

हिंदी साहित्य का काल विभाजन

1000 ई. के आस-पास प्रारंभ होने वाले हिंदी साहित्य के इतिहास का विभाजन कालक्रम की दृष्टि से चार कालों – आदि, पूर्व मध्य, उत्तर मध्य और आधुनिक में किया जाता है। आचार्य रामचंद्र शुक्ल ने कालक्रम से विभाजित इन काल-खंडों का नामकरण इस प्रकार किया – आदि काल को अपभ्रंश काव्य और देश भाषा काव्य में विभाजित करके देश भाषा काव्य को **वीरगाथा** नाम दिया। उनके अनुसार देश भाषा काव्य की वीरगाथात्मकता समूचे आदि काल की प्रधान साहित्यिक प्रवृत्ति है। इसलिए वे आदि काल को **वीरगाथा काल** कहना उचित समझते हैं। पूर्व मध्य काल को वे **भक्ति काल** और उत्तर मध्य काल को **रीति काल** कहते हैं। आधुनिक काल को वे **गद्य काल** कहना उचित समझते हैं। शुक्ल जी द्वारा किया गया हिंदी साहित्य के इतिहास का नामकरण और काल विभाजन इस प्रकार है –

आदि काल (वीरगाथा काल) संवत् 1050 से 1375 तक
पूर्व मध्य काल (भक्ति काल) संवत् 1375 से 1700 तक
उत्तर मध्य काल (रीति काल) संवत् 1700 से 1900 तक
आधुनिक काल (गद्य काल) संवत् 1900 से अब तक

शुक्ल जी का काल विभाजन तो सामान्यतः मान्य है, किंतु आदि काल और रीति काल के नामकरण के विषय में शुक्ल जी के बाद के इतिहासकारों ने भिन्न विचार प्रकट किए हैं। उनकी चर्चा हम आदि काल और रीति काल के प्रसंग में यथास्थान करेंगे।

यद्यपि हिंदी साहित्य के इतिहास का प्रारंभ 1000 ई. के आस-पास होता है, किंतु हिंदी साहित्य का इतिहास जानने के लिए हमें थोड़ा पहले 8वीं शताब्दी तक की रचनाओं का सिंहावलोकन कर लेना चाहिए, क्योंकि इस काल में रचित नाथ-सिद्धों आदि की रचनाएँ जिस भाषा में हैं, उन्हें चंद्रधर शर्मा 'गुलेरी' ने **पुरानी हिंदी** कहा है। पुरानी हिंदी से तात्पर्य परिनिष्ठित अपभ्रंश से विकसित या अपभ्रंशोत्तर भाषा से है।

अध्याय 1

आदि काल (1000-1400 ई.)

पृष्ठभूमि

आदि काल का हिंदी साहित्य राजनीतिक दृष्टि से अनेक छोटे-छोटे सामंतों में विभक्त प्रदेश का साहित्य है। हर्षवर्धन के बाद किसी ने केंद्रीय सत्ता स्थापित नहीं की। पूर्व में पाल, पश्चिम में प्रतिहार और दक्षिण में राष्ट्रकूट प्रबल थे। केवल गाहड़वार वंशीय गोविंद चंद्रदेव इस काल में मध्य देश के प्रतापी नरेश हुए। ऐसा लगता है कि राजाओं के परस्पर युद्ध या बाहरी हमलों का कोई स्थाई या परिवर्तनकारी प्रभाव सामान्य जनता पर नहीं पड़ता था। कवि आश्रयदाताओं और उनके पूर्वजों के पराक्रम, रूप एवं दान की प्रशंसा करते थे। इस काल में राजाओं पर लिखे गए काव्यों का सामान्य विषय राज्य-विस्तार तथा नारी के लिए होने वाले युद्ध हैं। सामंतवादी व्यवस्था में भूमि संपत्ति का स्रोत होती है। रक्त या वंश की शुद्धता और उच्चता में नारी की भूमिका निर्णायक होती है। इस काल में सामान्य जनता के दैनंदिन जीवन पर राज्य की अपेक्षा धार्मिक मतों का अधिक प्रभाव था। इस युग में संस्कृत, प्राकृत और अपभ्रंश में भी रचनाएँ हो रही थीं। 10 वीं शती के आस-पास अपभ्रंश का प्रभाव क्रमशः क्षीण होता जा रहा था और हिंदी भाषा की प्रवृत्तियाँ उसका स्थान लेती जा रही थीं। इसी कारण हिंदी-साहित्य के आदि काल में जो साहित्य मिलता है वह अधिकांशतः अपभ्रंश-हिंदी का साहित्य है, शुद्ध अपभ्रंश या शुद्ध हिंदी का नहीं।

इस काल में आवागमन के साधन आज जैसे विकसित नहीं थे। इसका परिणाम यह दिखलाई पड़ता है कि इस विशाल क्षेत्र के विभिन्न स्थानों पर रची हुई कृतियों में भाषागत विभिन्नता अर्थात क्षेत्रीयता का रंग अधिक है। इसीलिए आदि काल का हिंदी साहित्य

अनेक बोलियों का साहित्य प्रतीत होता है। वस्तुतः यह काल अनेक दृष्टियों से संधिकाल है। धार्मिक दृष्टि से इस काल में अनेक ज्ञात-अज्ञात साधनाएँ प्रचलित थीं। सिद्ध, जैन, नाथ आदि मतों का इस काल में व्यापक प्रचार था। इनका साहित्य भी प्रचुर मात्रा में उपलब्ध होता है। धार्मिक साधना के रूप में वैष्णव मत का प्रचार सामान्य जनता में कम नहीं रहा होगा, किंतु इस काल में वैष्णव मतावलंबी साहित्य अपेक्षाकृत कम मिलता है। इस्लाम का प्रवेश हो चुका था, किंतु उसका प्रभाव साहित्य पर आदि काल के अंतिम चरण के प्रसिद्ध कवि अमीर खुसरो में ही दिखलाई पड़ता है। **संदेशरासक** का रचयिता अद्दहमाण (अब्दुर्रहमान) अपने नाम से इस्लाम धर्मावलंबी ज्ञात होता है, किंतु उसकी रचना पर इस्लाम का प्रभाव नहीं के बराबर है।

आदि काल का नामकरण और कालावधि

रामचंद्र शुक्ल ने प्रधान साहित्यिक प्रवृत्ति को किसी साहित्यिक काल-खंड के नामकरण का आधार माना था। इस आधार पर उन्होंने आदि काल को **वीरगाथा काल** कहा। इसके पूर्व ग्रियर्सन ने इसे **चारण काल** और मिश्रबंधुओं ने **प्रारंभिक काल** कहा। बाद में हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी ने **आदि काल** तथा राहुल सांकृत्यायन ने **सिद्ध-सामंत काल** कहा। हमने प्रस्तुत पुस्तक में इसे आदि काल कहना ही उचित समझा है क्योंकि इसमें परवर्ती हिंदी साहित्य की अधिकांश प्रवृत्तियों का आदि रूप मिल जाता है।

आदि काल को 1000 ई. के कुछ पीछे सरहपा तक ले जाया जा सकता है, किंतु हिंदी साहित्य की अविरल परंपरा 1000 ई. के आस-पास हेमचंद्र के दोहों से प्रारंभ होती है। इसलिए हम उसका प्रारंभ 1000 ई. के आस-पास से मानते हैं। आदि काल की दूसरी अर्थात अंतिम सीमा पर अमीर खुसरो, विद्यापति, मुल्ला दाऊद जैसे कवि स्थित हैं। ये सभी 14वीं शताब्दी के आस-पास के ठहरते हैं। अतएव आदि काल का समय दसवीं शताब्दी से 14वीं शताब्दी तक मानना उचित है।

अब हम आदि काल के प्रमुख कवियों का उल्लेख करेंगे।

सिद्ध कवि

बौद्ध धर्म कालांतर में तंत्र-मंत्र की साधना में बदल गया था। वज्रयान इसी प्रकार की साधना थी। महापंडित राहुल सांकृत्यायन के अनुसार "बौद्ध धर्म अपने हीनयान और

महायान के विकास को चरम सीमा तक पहुँचाकर अब एक नई दिशा लेने की तैयारी कर रहा था, जब उसे मंत्रयान, वज्रयान या सहजयान की संज्ञा मिलने वाली थी।" सिद्धों का संबंध इस वज्रयान से था। इनकी संख्या 84 बताई जाती है। प्रथम सिद्ध **सरहपा** (8वीं शताब्दी) सहज जीवन पर बहुत अधिक बल देते थे। इन्हें ही सहजयान का प्रवर्तक कहा जाता है। सिद्धों ने नैरात्म्य भावना, कायायोग, सहज, शून्य तथा समाधि की भिन्न-भिन्न अवस्थाओं का वर्णन किया है। इन्होंने वर्णाश्रम व्यवस्था पर तीव्र प्रहार किया है। इन्होंने संधा भाषा-शैली में रचनाएँ की हैं। संधा भाषा वस्तुतः अंतस्सधनात्मक अनुभूतियों का संकेत करने वाली भाषा है। इसीलिए अर्थ खुलने पर ही यह समझ में आती है। इस भाषा-शैली का उपयोग नाथों ने भी किया है। कबीर आदि निर्गुण संतों की इसी भाषा-शैली को उलटबाँसी कहा जाता है। मध्य देश के पूर्वी भाग में ही सिद्धों के होने का पता चला है। इनकी भाषा में भी उन्हीं क्षेत्रों के तत्कालीन रूप मिलते हैं।

नाथ कवि

नाथों का समय थोड़ा बाद का है। चौरासी सिद्धों की जो सूची मिलती है, उसमें कई नाम नाथों के भी हैं। वज्रयानी सिद्धों के साथ नाथों का संबंध था। नाथ पंथ में **गोरखनाथ** शिव के रूप में माने जाते हैं। अतः इनका शैव होना स्पष्ट है। गोरखनाथ ने पतंजलि के योग को लेकर हठयोग का प्रवर्तन किया और ब्रह्मचर्य, वाक्संयम, शारीरिक-मानसिक शुचिता, मद्य-मांस के त्याग का आग्रह किया। ब्राह्मणों के कर्मकांड एवं वर्णाश्रम व्यवस्था पर उन्होंने भी तीव्र प्रहार किया। उनका सिद्धांत था – 'जोइ-जोइ पिंडे सोई ब्रह्मांडे' अर्थात जो शरीर में है वही ब्रह्मांड में है। इला-पिंगला, नाद-बिंदु की साधना, षट्चक्रभेदन, शून्य चक्र में कुंडलिनी का प्रवेश आदि नाथों की अंतस्साधना के मुख्य अंग हैं। संधा भाषा या उलटबाँसी की शैली का प्रयोग इन्होंने भी किया है।

परंपरा से प्रसिद्ध है कि गोरखनाथ मत्स्येंद्रनाथ या मछंदरनाथ के शिष्य थे। मछंदरनाथ जलंधर के शिष्य थे। यह भी कहा जाता है कि इन्हीं जलंधर से जालंधर नगर का नामकरण हुआ है। राहुल जी गोरखनाथ का समय विक्रम की दसवीं शताब्दी मानते हैं। शुक्ल जी ने इन्हें पृथ्वीराज चौहान के समय का बताया है और हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी इन्हें दसवीं शताब्दी का मानने के पक्ष में हैं।

जैन मतावलंबी कवि

जैन मत के प्रभाव में अधिकांश काव्य गुजरात, राजस्थान और दक्षिण में रचा गया है। इस साहित्य का महत्त्व इस बात में है कि यह प्रायः प्रामाणिक रूप में उपलब्ध है। जैन मतावलंबी रचनाएँ दो प्रकार की हैं – 1. जिनमें नाथ-सिद्धों की तरह अंतस्साधना, उपदेश, नीति सदाचार पर बल है और कर्मकांड का खंडन है। ये मुक्तक हैं। प्रायः दोहों में रचित हैं। 2. जिनमें पौराणिक जैन साधकों की प्रेरक जीवन कथा या लोक प्रचलित कथाओं को आधार बनाकर जैन मत का प्रचार किया गया है। जैन पौराणिक काव्य एवं चरित काव्य इसी श्रेणी के काव्य हैं।

इस काल में जो वैष्णव साहित्य लिखा गया था वह कम उपलब्ध है। लेकिन लक्ष्मीधर द्वारा 14वीं शताब्दी में संकलित **प्राकृत पैंगलम्** के अनेक छंदों में विष्णु के विभिन्न अवतारों से संबंधित पंक्तियाँ मिलती हैं। इसी प्रकार हेमचंद्र (12वीं शती) के **प्राकृत-व्याकरण** में संकलित अपभ्रंश दोहों में भी कृष्ण, राधा, दशमुख आदि की चर्चा आती है। इससे अनुमान किया जा सकता है कि इस काल के साहित्य में विष्णु के विभिन्न अवतारों को लेकर प्रचुर मात्रा में रचनाएँ हुई थीं, जो अब उपलब्ध नहीं हैं।

आदि काल का वीरगाथात्मक काव्य

रामचंद्र शुक्ल ने आदि काल को वीरगाथा काल कहा है। उन्होंने इस काल की प्रधान साहित्यिक प्रवृत्ति की पहचान जिन 12 ग्रंथों के आधार पर की है, वे इस प्रकार हैं – **विजयपाल रासो, हम्मीर रासो, कीर्तिलता, कीर्तिपताका, खुमान रासो, बीसलदेव रासो, पृथ्वीराज रासो, जयचंद प्रकाश, जयमयंक-जस-चंद्रिका, परमाल रासो, खुसरो की पहेलियाँ और विद्यापति-पदावली।**

इनमें से विद्यापति की रचनाएँ (14वीं, 15वीं शताब्दी) अर्थात **कीर्तिलता, कीर्तिपताका, पदावली** और नरपति नाल्ह द्वारा रचित **बीसलदेव रासो** प्रामाणिक रूप में उपलब्ध हैं। **कीर्तिपताका** अभी तक संपादित होकर प्रकाशित नहीं हुई है। **बीसलदेव रासो** का पाठ यद्यपि डॉ. माताप्रसाद गुप्त द्वारा संपादित-प्रकाशित है किंतु इसके रचनाकाल के विषय में बहुत मतभेद हैं। कुछ लोग इसे 13वीं शताब्दी की रचना मानते हैं, कुछ लोग 16वीं-

17वीं शती की। जगनिक कृत **परमाल रासो** आल्हा के रूप में ही पहचाना जाता है। आल्हा लोक गान है, अतः वह विभिन्न क्षेत्रों में विभिन्न रूपों में गाया जाता है। जगनिक संभवतः परमाल और पृथ्वीराज के समकालीन (12वीं शती) थे। **विजयपाल रासो** के रचयिता का नाम नल्लसिंह है। इसमें जो लड़ाई विजयपाल ने पंग राजा से की थी, उसका वर्णन है। मिश्र बंधुओं ने इसका रचनाकाल 14वीं शती ही माना है। भाषा-शैली पर विचार करने से यह रचना परवर्ती लगती है। **हम्मीर रासो**, **जयचंद प्रकाश** और **जयमयंक-जस-चंद्रिका** उपलब्ध नहीं हैं। हम्मीर विषयक एक पद्य **प्राकृत पैंगलम्** में अवश्य मिलता है, जिसके बारे में शुक्ल जी का विश्वास है कि वह **हम्मीर रासो** का ही है। **खुमान रासो** के रचयिता दलपति विजय हैं। इसमें 9वीं शताब्दी के खुमान के युद्ध का वर्णन है। लेकिन मेवाड़ के परवर्ती शासकों जैसे महाराणा प्रताप सिंह और राजसिंह का भी वर्णन है। इससे प्रकट होता है कि यह रचना 17वीं शती के आस-पास की है।

पृथ्वीराज रासो या पृथ्वीराज रासउ आदि काल का सर्वाधिक प्रसिद्ध काव्य है। इस काव्य का रचनाकाल और इसका मूलरूप भी सर्वाधिक विवादास्पद है। इसके रचयिता चंदबरदाई पृथ्वीराज चौहान के अंतरंग बताए जाते हैं। प्राच्य विद्या के यूरोपीय पंडितों ने इस ग्रंथ से मध्यकालीन इतिहास पर पर्याप्त प्रकाश डालने की आशा बाँध रखी थी। इसीलिए डॉ. बूलर को जब यह पता चला कि रासो की तिथियाँ, व्यक्तियों के नाम, घटनाएँ आदि इतिहास सम्मत नहीं हैं तो उन्होंने तत्काल इस ग्रंथ को न प्रकाशित करने की सिफारिश की। इसकी प्रामाणिकता पर संदेह करने वाले विद्वानों में गौरीशंकर हीराचंद ओझा, रामचंद्र शुक्ल आदि भी हैं। बाबू श्यामसुंदर दास और मोहनलाल विष्णुलाल पंड्या इसे प्रामाणिक मानने वालों में हैं।

रासो में मध्यकालीन साहित्य में प्रयुक्त अनेक कथानक-रूढ़ियों और काव्य-रूढ़ियों का प्रयोग किया गया है। इसमें अनेक छंदों का प्रयोग मिलता है। इसमें चरितकाव्य, कथाकाव्य, आख्यायिका आदि के भी लक्षण मिलते हैं।

रासो में पृथ्वीराज के विभिन्न युद्धों और विवाहों का वर्णन है। वीर और श्रृंगार रासो के प्रमुख रस हैं, यद्यपि इसका अंगी (प्रधान) रस वीर ही माना जाएगा। रासो में नायिका का नख-शिख वर्णन, सेना के प्रयाण, युद्ध, षड्ऋतुओं आदि का सुंदर वर्णन है। चंदबरदाई अनेक मनःस्थितियों का चित्र खींचने में सिद्ध हैं। यद्यपि वे विविध छंदों के प्रयोग में कुशल हैं, किंतु छप्पय उनका अपना छंद है।

बीसलदेव रासो के रचयिता का नाम नरपति नाल्ह है। पाठ के अनुसार ग्रंथ की रचना 1155 ई. में हुई थी। किंतु श्री मोतीलाल मेनारिया के अनुसार इसकी रचना 16वीं शताब्दी में हुई होगी। **बीसलदेव रासो** में शाकंभरी नरेश बीसलदेव और भोज परमार की पुत्री राजमती के विवाह, वियोग और पुनर्मिलन का वर्णन है। यह प्रधानतः शृंगारी काव्य है। **बीसलदेव रासो** में हिंदी काव्य में प्रयुक्त होने वाला बारहमासा वर्णन सबसे पहले मिलता है।

आदि काल के अन्य कवि

विद्यापति (14वीं शती)

इनकी तीन रचनाएँ प्रसिद्ध हैं : **कीर्तिलता**, **कीर्तिपताका** एवं **पदावली**। **कीर्तिलता** ऐतिहासिक महत्त्व का छोटा-सा प्रबंध काव्य है। विद्यापति ने इसे 'कहाणी' कहा है। मध्य काल में ऐतिहासिक व्यक्तियों को आधार बनाकर जो काव्य लिखे गए हैं, वे ऐतिहासिकता से रहित होकर कथानक-रूढ़ियों, किंवदंतियों, अनुश्रुतियों आदि के विषय बन गए हैं। इसी प्रकार घटनाओं को भी तोड़ा-मरोड़ा गया है। **कीर्तिलता** इस दृष्टि से महत्त्वपूर्ण अपवाद है। उसकी ऐतिहासिकता बहुत-कुछ सुरक्षित है। इसमें विद्यापति ने कीर्तिसिंह द्वारा अपने पिता का बदला लेने का वर्णन किया है। **कीर्तिलता** को कवि ने 'अवहट्ट' भाषा में रचा है। 'अवहट्ट' देशी भाषा यानी मैथिली-युक्त विकसित अपभ्रंश है। इसके गद्य में तत्सम शब्दों का प्रयोग खुलकर हुआ है।

पदावली विद्यापति के यश का आधार है। पदावली ऐसी रचना है जो काव्योत्कर्ष और साहित्य का इतिहास – दोनों दृष्टियों से अत्यंत महत्त्वपूर्ण है। इसमें राधा-कृष्ण अपना अलौकिकत्व छोड़कर लौकिक व्यक्तियों के समान प्रेम-भावना से विह्वल होते हैं। लोक में जिस प्रकार किशोरी लोकलाज के कारण तीव्र अंतद्र्वंद्व झेलती हैं, उसी प्रकार राधा को चित्रित किया गया है। इस बात को लेकर काफी विवाद है कि **पदावली** भक्तिपरक रचना है या शृंगारपरक। वस्तुतः जयदेव का **गीत गोविंद**, विद्यापति की **पदावली** और सूरदास का **सूरसागर** एक ही कोटि की रचनाएँ हैं, जिनमें भक्ति का आधार शृंगार है।

अमीर खुसरो (14वीं शती)

खुसरो इस युग के अत्यंत महत्त्वपूर्ण एवं बहुमुखी प्रतिभा के धनी व्यक्ति हैं। उनके काव्योत्कर्ष का प्रमाण उनकी फारसी रचनाएँ हैं। वे संगीतज्ञ, इतिहासकार, कोशकार, बहुभाषाविद्, सूफी औलिया, कवि बहुत कुछ थे। उनकी हिंदी रचनाएँ अत्यंत लोकप्रिय रही हैं। उनकी पहेलियाँ, मुकरियाँ, दो सखुने अभी तक लोगों की ज़बान पर हैं। उनके नाम से निम्नलिखित दोहा बहुत प्रसिद्ध है। कहते हैं कि यह दोहा खुसरो ने हज़रत निज़ामुद्दीन औलिया के देहांत पर कहा था –

गोरी सोवे सेज पर, मुख पर डारे केस।
चल खुसरो घर आपने, रैन भई चहुँ देस।

उनकी हिंदी रचनाओं का ऐतिहासिक महत्त्व है। उनकी भाषा, हिंदी की आधुनिक काव्य भाषा के रूप में पूर्णतः प्रतिष्ठित होने का संकेत देती है। उनका व्यक्तित्व और उनकी हिंदी इस बात को प्रमाणित करती है कि हिंदी काव्य प्रारंभ से ही मध्य देश की मिली-जुली संस्कृति का चित्र रहा है। उन्होंने ऐसी पंक्तियाँ रची हैं जिनमें फारसी और हिंदी को एक ही ध्वनि प्रवाह में गुंफित कर दिया गया है। यह कला संस्कृति-साधक को ही सिद्ध हो सकती है –

जे हाल मिसकीं मकुन तग़ाफुल दुराय नैना, बनाय बतियाँ।
कि ताबे हिज्राँ न दारम ऐ जाँ न लेहु काहे लगाय छतियाँ।
शबाने हिज्राँ दराज़ चूं जुल्फ व रोज़े वसलत चूँ उम्र को तह।
सखी पिया को जो मैं न देखूँ तो कैसे काटूँ अँधेरी रतियाँ।

आदि काल की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- आदि काल अपभ्रंश और हिंदी का संधिकाल है। इसमें दोनों की भाषाई और साहित्यिक प्रवृत्तियों का मेल है।
- इसमें नाथ-सिद्धों और जैन कवियों का साहित्य मिलता है जिसमें वैदिक मत और कर्मकांड की आलोचना की गई है।

- वीरगाथात्मकता इस काल की प्रधान प्रवृत्ति है। यह अधिकांशतः रासो काव्य के अंतर्गत मिलती है। यद्यपि रासो काव्य में शृंगारी (संदेश रासक), जैन धार्मिक साहित्य (भरतेश्वर बाहुबलि रास) भी लिखा गया है।
- इस काल के प्रबंध काव्यों में कथानक-रूढ़ियों और काव्य-रूढ़ियों का जमकर प्रयोग किया गया है।
- मुक्तक काव्यों में अधिकांशतः अपभ्रंश छंदों का उपयोग किया गया है।
- गेय पदों की रचना इस काल का महत्त्वपूर्ण मुक्तक काव्यरूप है। इसके प्रधान कवि विद्यापति हैं।
- इस काल के अंतिम महत्त्वपूर्ण कवि विद्यापति ने अपभ्रंश और आधुनिक भाषा (मैथिली) दोनों में रचना की है।
- इस काल में थोड़ा साहित्य गद्य में भी लिखा गया है जिसकी सूचना हमें दामोदर पंडित के **उक्ति व्यक्ति प्रकरण** जैसे ग्रंथ से मिल जाती है।
- अमीर खुसरो ने दो सखुने, मुकरियाँ, पहेलियाँ जैसे लोक प्रचलित काव्यरूपों का प्रयोग किया है। उनमें फारसी, खड़ी बोली, ब्रजभाषा तीनों का प्रयोग है।

अध्याय 2

भक्ति काल (1400-1700 ई.)

पृष्ठभूमि

भक्ति आंदोलन भारतीय साहित्य के इतिहास का अत्यंत गौरवपूर्ण कालखंड है। हिंदी का भक्ति साहित्य भक्ति आंदोलन की उपज है। भक्ति आंदोलन की विशेषता यह बताई गई है कि इसमें धर्म साधना का नहीं, भावना का विषय बन गया है। आचार्य रामचंद्र शुक्ल ने भक्ति को धर्म का रसात्मक रूप कहा है। हिंदी में भक्ति साहित्य की परंपरा का आरंभ महाराष्ट्र के संत नामदेव (जन्म सन 1267 ई.) की रचनाओं से माना जा सकता है। तब से लेकर लगभग तीन सौ वर्षों तक भक्ति हिंदी साहित्य की मुख्य प्रवृत्ति बनी रही। इस काल ने हिंदी को कबीर, जायसी, सूर, तुलसी, मीरा जैसे महान कवि दिए। इस आधार पर भक्ति काल को हिंदी साहित्य का स्वर्ण युग कहा जाता है।

भक्ति आंदोलन अखिल भारतीय था। इसका परिणाम यह हुआ कि लगभग पूरे देश में मध्य देश की काव्य भाषा हिंदी (ब्रजभाषा) का प्रचार-प्रसार हुआ। नामदेव यदि अपनी भाषा अर्थात मराठी में और नानक देव पंजाबी में रचना करते थे तो ब्रजभाषा में भी। 14वीं शती में दिल्ली में केंद्रीय सत्ता स्थापित होने के बाद जब सड़कें आदि बड़े पैमाने पर बनीं, व्यापार की बढ़ोतरी हुई तो देश के विभिन्न क्षेत्रों के लोगों का मिलना-जुलना भी ज़्यादा बढ़ा। इनमें सैनिक, व्यापारी, साधु-संत अधिक होते थे। इससे मध्य देश की भाषा के प्रचारित-प्रसारित होने की स्थिति हुई। भक्ति-साहित्य अखिल भारतीय है। किंतु उत्तर भारत के भक्ति साहित्य की विशेषता यह है कि इसमें मुसलमान (जायसी, रहीम, रसखान आदि) भी शामिल हुए। संभवतः भक्त कवियों की इतनी अधिक संख्या भी केवल हिंदी में है।

इस आंदोलन का ऐतिहासिक आधार क्या था? शुक्ल जी ने इसे इस्लामी आक्रमण से पराजित हिंदी जनता की असहाय एवं निराश मनःस्थिति से जोड़ा था। वे एक ओर इसे दक्षिण भारत से आया हुआ मानते थे, दूसरी ओर यह मानते थे कि अपने पौरुष से हताश जाति के लिए भगवान की शक्ति और करुणा की ओर ध्यान ले जाने के अतिरिक्त दूसरा मार्ग ही क्या था।

हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी के अनुसार भक्ति आंदोलन भारतीय चिंता-धारा का स्वाभाविक विकास है। नाथ-सिद्धों की साधना, अवतारवाद, लीलावाद और जातिगत कठोरता दक्षिण भारत से आई हुई धारा में घुल-मिल गई। यह आंदोलन और साहित्य लोकोन्मुखता एवं मानवीय करुणा के महान आदर्श से युक्त है।

भक्ति आंदोलन का उदय और विकास किसी सुसंगत विचारधारा या दर्शन के बिना नहीं हो सकता था। इस दृष्टि से रामानुज और रामानंद की महत्त्वपूर्ण भूमिका थी। रामानुज के अनुसार जगत मिथ्या नहीं वास्तविक है। इस जगत को वास्तविक मानकर उसे महत्त्व देने में ही भक्ति की लोकोन्मुखता एवं करुणा है। जगत मिथ्या नहीं वास्तविक है, यह लौकिकता की दार्शनिक स्वीकृति है।

रामानुज की ही परंपरा में रामानंद (1400-1470 ई.) हुए जिनके बारे में कहा जाता है कि वे भक्ति को दक्षिण से उत्तर में लाए। भक्ति एक प्रवृत्ति के रूप में रामानुजाचार्य के पहले भी थी, किंतु वह साधना पद्धति मात्र थी, आंदोलन नहीं। ऐतिहासिक स्थितियों की अनुकूलता में वह प्रवृत्ति व्यापक एवं तीव्र होकर धार्मिक आंदोलन बन गई।

भक्ति की धाराओं का परिचय

भक्ति की दो धाराएँ प्रवाहित हुईं – निर्गुण धारा और सगुण धारा। निर्गुण और सगुण धारा में अंतर इस बात का नहीं है कि निर्गुणियों के राम गुणहीन हैं और सगुण मतवादियों के राम या कृष्ण गुणसहित। वस्तुतः निर्गुण का अर्थ संतों के यहाँ गुणरहित नहीं है। निर्गुण और सगुण मतवाद का अंतर अवतार एवं लीला को लेकर है। निर्गुण मत के इष्ट भी कृपालु, सहृदय, दयावान, करुणाकर हैं, वे भी मानवीय भावनाओं से युक्त हैं, किंतु वे न अवतार ग्रहण करते हैं, न लीला करते हैं। वे निराकार हैं। सगुण मत के इष्ट अवतार लेते हैं, दुष्टों का दमन करते हैं। अतः सगुण मतवाद में विष्णु के अवतारों में से अनेक की

उपासना होती है, यद्यपि सर्वाधिक लोकप्रिय और लोक पूजित अवतार राम एवं कृष्ण ही हैं।

निर्गुण एवं सगुण दोनों प्रकार की भक्ति का मुख्य लक्षण है – भगवद्विषयक रति अर्थात भगवान से अनन्य प्रेम। नाथ-सिद्धों के आसन-प्राणायाम, सहज-समाधि, शरीर, प्राण, मन, वाणी की अचंचलता का योग – सब इसी प्रेम में विलीन हो गए हैं।

भक्ति के अनेक संप्रदाय हैं। उनमें से चार प्रमुख संप्रदायों और उनके आचार्यों का परिचय संक्षेप में दिया जा रहा है। ये संप्रदाय हैं – श्री, ब्राह्म, रुद्र, सनकादि या निंबार्क।

1. **श्री संप्रदाय –** श्री संप्रदाय के आचार्य रामानुजाचार्य हैं। कहा जाता है कि लक्ष्मी ने इन्हें जिस मत का उपदेश दिया उसी के आधार पर इन्होंने अपने मत का प्रवर्तन किया। इसलिए इनके संप्रदाय को **श्री संप्रदाय** कहते हैं। इन्हीं की परंपरा में रामानंद हुए। रामानंद प्रयाग में उत्पन्न हुए थे। इनके गुरु का नाम राघवानंद था। इन्होंने अवर्ण-सवर्ण, स्त्री-पुरुष, राजा-रंक सभी को शिष्य बनाया। रामानंद के बारह शिष्य हुए – रैदास, कबीर, धन्ना, सेना, पीपा, भवानंद, सुखानंद, अनंतानंद, सुरसुरानंद, पद्मावती, सुरसुरी। रामानंद के रचनात्मक व्यक्तित्व का अत्यंत महत्त्वपूर्ण पक्ष यह है कि उन्होंने हिंदी को अपने मत के प्रचार का माध्यम बनाया।
2. **ब्राह्म संप्रदाय –** ब्राह्म संप्रदाय के प्रवर्तक मध्वाचार्य थे। उनका जन्म गुजरात में हुआ था। चैतन्य महाप्रभु पहले इसी संप्रदाय में दीक्षित हुए थे। इस संप्रदाय का सीधा संबंध हिंदी साहित्य से नहीं है।
3. **रुद्र संप्रदाय** – इसके प्रवर्तक विष्णुस्वामी थे। वस्तुतः यह महाप्रभु वल्लभाचार्य के पुष्टि संप्रदाय के रूप में ही हिंदी में जीवित है। जिस प्रकार रामानंद ने **राम** की उपासना पर बल दिया था, उसी प्रकार वल्लभाचार्य ने **कृष्ण** की उपासना पर। उन्होंने प्रेमलक्षणा भक्ति ग्रहण की। भगवान के अनुग्रह के भरोसे नित्यलीला में प्रवेश करना जीव का लक्ष्य माना। सूरदास एवं अष्टछाप के कवियों पर इसी संप्रदाय का प्रभाव है।
4. **सनकादि संप्रदाय –** इसके प्रवर्तक निंबार्काचार्य थे। हिंदी भक्ति साहित्य को प्रभावित करने वाले राधावल्लभी संप्रदाय का संबंध इसी से जोड़ा जाता है। राधावल्लभी संप्रदाय के प्रवर्तक गोसाईं हितहरिवंश का जन्म सन 1502 में मथुरा के

पास बाँदगाँव में हुआ। कहा जाता है हितहरिवंश पहले मध्वानुयायी थे। इस संप्रदाय में राधा की प्रधानता है।

सूफ़ी साधना

भक्ति आंदोलन इतना व्यापक एवं मानवीय था कि इसमें हिंदुओं के साथ मुसलमान भी आ जुड़े। सूफ़ी यद्यपि इस्लाम मतानुयाई हैं, किंतु अपने दर्शन एवं साधना पद्धति के कारण भक्ति आंदोलन में गणनीय हैं। इस्लाम एकेश्वरवादी है। किंतु सूफ़ी संतों ने **अनलहक** अर्थात 'मैं ब्रह्म हूँ' की घोषणा की। यह बात अद्वैतवाद से मिलती-जुलती है। सूफी साधना के अनुसार मनुष्य के चार विभाग हैं – 1. नफ़स (इंद्रिय), 2. अक़्ल (बुद्धि या माया), 3. कल्ब (हृदय), 4. रूह (आत्मा)। यह साधना नफ़स और अक़्ल को दबाकर कल्ब की साधना से रूह की प्राप्ति पर बल देती है। हृदय रूपी दर्पण में परम सत्ता का प्रतिबिंब आभासित होता है। यह दर्पण जितना ही निर्मल होगा, रूप उतना ही स्पष्ट होगा, अर्थात सूफ़ी साधना भी हृदय की साधना है। इसी से वह भक्ति है। आचार्य शुक्ल ने इसीलिए जायसी आदि सूफ़ी कवियों को कबीर, सूर, तुलसी की कोटि में रखा। **मुल्ला दाऊद** (1379 ई.) हिंदी के प्रथम सूफ़ी कवि हैं। सूफी कवियों की परंपरा 19वीं शती तक मिलती है।

अन्य मत

आधुनिक हिंदी क्षेत्र के बाहर पड़ने वाले दो संत कवियों – महाराष्ट्र के नामदेव (13वीं शती) और पंजाब के गुरु नानक (15वीं शती) ने हिंदी में रचना की है। अनुमानतः नामदेव पहले सगुणोपासक थे, बाद में ज्ञानदेव के प्रभाव के कारण नाथ पंथ में आए। इसी कारण नामदेव की रचनाएँ सगुणोपासना और निर्गुणोपासना दोनों से संबंधित हैं। गुरु नानक का संबंध किसी संप्रदाय से जोड़ना कठिन है। वे दृष्टिकोण में कबीर से काफी मिलते-जुलते हैं, यद्यपि उनका स्वर कबीर जैसा प्रखर नहीं बल्कि शामक है। ये सिख संप्रदाय के प्रवर्तक एवं प्रथम गुरु हैं।

इनके अतिरिक्त भी भक्ति के अनेक छोटे-छोटे संप्रदाय हैं, किंतु भक्ति का लक्षण भगवद्विषयक रति, अनन्यता, पूर्ण समर्पण सब में मिलता है। सदाचार, परदुख कातरता,

प्राणिमात्र पर करुणा, समभाव, अनावश्यक लौकिक संपत्ति के प्रति उपेक्षा, अहिंसा आदि का भाव सभी प्रकार के भक्तों में पाया जाता है। निर्भीकता भी प्रायः सभी भक्तों में पाई जाती है।

अब हम भक्ति की निर्गुण और सगुण दोनों काव्य-धाराओं तथा उनकी उपधाराओं के कवियों और उनकी रचनाओं पर विचार करेंगे।

निर्गुण काव्य : ज्ञानाश्रयी शाखा

भक्ति साहित्य की दो धाराओं – निर्गुण काव्य और सगुण काव्य का उल्लेख किया जा चुका है। इन दोनों धाराओं की दो-दो उपधाराएँ हैं। निर्गुण काव्य की इन उपधाराओं को ज्ञानाश्रयी शाखा और प्रेमाश्रयी शाखा कहा जाता है। प्रेमाश्रयी काव्य ही हिंदी का सूफ़ी काव्य है। सगुण की दो उपधाराएँ हैं – राम-भक्ति शाखा और कृष्ण-भक्ति शाखा। कबीर आदि निर्गुण संतों के साहित्य को ज्ञानाश्रयी कहने का कारण यह प्रतीत होता है कि इन संतों ने **ज्ञान** पर सूफ़ियों की अपेक्षा अधिक बल दिया है। कबीर आदि के यहाँ भगवत्प्रेम पर कम बल नहीं है किंतु सूफ़ी कवि प्रेम का जितना विशद चित्रण करते हैं, कबीर आदि नहीं करते।

कबीर (1398-1518 ई.)

कबीर के जन्म और माता-पिता को लेकर बहुत विवाद है। लेकिन यह स्पष्ट है कि कबीर जुलाहा थे, क्योंकि उन्होंने अपनी कविता में खुद को अनेक बार जुलाहा कहा है।

कबीर का अपना पंथ या संप्रदाय क्या था, इसके बारे में कुछ भी निश्चयपूर्वक नहीं कहा जा सकता। वे रामानंद के शिष्य के रूप में विख्यात हैं, किंतु उनके 'राम' रामानंद के 'राम' नहीं हैं। शेख़ तकी नाम के सूफ़ी संत को भी कबीर का गुरु कहा जाता है, किंतु इसकी पुष्टि नहीं होती। संभवतः कबीर ने इन सबसे सत्संग किया होगा और इन सबसे किसी-न-किसी रूप में प्रभावित भी हुए होंगे।

कबीर के काव्य पर अनेक साधनाओं का प्रभाव है। उनमें वेदांत का अद्वैत, नाथ पंथियों की अंतस्साधनात्मक रहस्य भावना, हठयोग, कुंडलिनी योग, सहज साधना, इस्लाम का एकेश्वरवाद सब कुछ मिलता है।

हठयोग की पारिभाषिक शब्दावली का प्रयोग उन्होंने खूब किया है, साथ ही अहिंसा की भावना पर भी बल दिया है। कबीर की वाणी का संग्रह **बीजक** कहलाता है। इसके तीन भाग हैं – 1. रमैनी, 2. सबद और 3. साखी। रमैनी और सबद में गेयपद हैं, साखी दोहों में है। रमैनी और सबद ब्रजभाषा में हैं जो तत्कालीन मध्य देश की काव्य भाषा थी।

कबीर ने धार्मिक साधनाओं को आत्मसात अवश्य किया था। किंतु वे इन साधनाओं को भक्ति की भूमिका या तैयारी मात्र मानते थे। जीवन की सार्थकता वे भक्ति या भगवद् विषयक रति में ही मानते थे। यद्यपि उनके 'राम' निराकार हैं, किंतु वे मानवीय भावनाओं के आलंबन हैं। इसीलिए कबीर ने निराकार, निर्गुण राम को भी अनेक प्रकार के मानवीय संबंधों में याद किया है। वे 'भरतार' हैं, कबीर 'बहुरिया' हैं। वे कबीर की माँ हैं – 'हरिजननी मैं बालक तोरा।' वे पिता भी हैं जिनके साथ कबीर बाज़ार जाने की ज़िद करते हैं।

कबीर भक्ति के बिना सारी साधनाओं को व्यर्थ मानते हैं। इसी प्रेम एवं भक्ति के बल पर वे अपने युग के सारे मिथ्याचार, कर्मकांड, अमानवीयता, हिंसा, परपीड़ा को चुनौती देते हैं। वे बाह्य आडंबरों और पाखंड के प्रबल विरोधी थे और इस भावना को उन्होंने बार-बार अपनी कविताओं में मुखारित किया है। वे ऊँच-नीच, जात-पाँत, धर्म-संप्रदाय आदि की संकीर्णताओं का आजीवन विरोध करते रहे। उनके काव्य, उनके व्यक्तित्त्व और उनकी साधना में जो अक्खड़पन, निर्भीकता और दो टूकपन है वह भी इसी भक्ति के कारण। वे पूर्व साधनाओं की पारिभाषिक शब्दावली को अपनाकर भी उसमें नया अर्थ भरते हैं।

कबीर अपने अनुभव को प्रमाण मानते हैं, शास्त्र को नहीं। इस दृष्टि से वे यथार्थ-बोध के रचनाकार हैं। उनके यहाँ जो व्यंग्य की तीव्रता और धार है वह भी कथनी-करनी के अंतर को देख पाने की क्षमता के कारण। वे परंपरा द्वारा दिए गए समाधान को अस्वीकार करके नए प्रश्न पूछते हैं– 'चलन चलन सब लोग कहत हैं, न जानों बैकुंठ कहाँ है?' या 'न जाने तेरा साहब कैसा है?'

परंपरा पर संदेह, यथार्थ-बोध, व्यंग्य, काल-बोध की तीव्रता और गहरी मानवीय करुणा के कारण कबीर आधुनिक भाव-बोध के बहुत निकट लगते हैं। किंतु कबीर में रहस्य भावना भी है और राम में अनन्य भक्ति तो उनकी मूल भाव-भूमि ही है।

नाद, बिंदु, कुंडलिनी, षड्चक्रभेदन आदि का बारंबार वर्णन कबीर के काव्य का रहस्यवादी पक्ष है। कबीर में स्वाभाविक रहस्य भावना बहुत मार्मिक रूप से व्यक्त हुई है। ऐसे अवसरों पर वे प्रायः जिज्ञासु होते हैं –

कहो भइया अंबर कासौ लागा।

कबीर तथा अन्य निर्गुण संतों की उलटबाँसियाँ प्रसिद्ध हैं। उलटबाँसियों का पूर्व रूप हमें सिद्धों की 'संधा भाषा' में मिलता है। उलटबाँसियाँ अनुभूतियों को असामान्य प्रतीकों में प्रकट करती हैं। वे वर्णाश्रम व्यवस्था को मानने वाले संस्कारों को धक्का देती हैं। इन प्रतीकों का अर्थ खुलने पर ही उलटबाँसियाँ समझ में आती हैं।

रैदास (1388-1518 ई.)

रैदास रामानंद के शिष्य कहे जाते हैं। उन्होंने अपने पदों में कबीर और सेन का उल्लेख किया है। अनुमानतः 15वीं शती उनका समय रहा होगा। धन्ना और मीराबाई ने रैदास का उल्लेख आदरपूर्वक किया है। यह भी कहा जाता है कि मीराबाई रैदास की शिष्या थीं। रैदास ने अपने को एकाधिक स्थलों पर चमार जाति का कहा है – 'कह रैदास खलास चमारा' या 'ऐसी मेरी जाति विख्यात चमारा'।

रैदास काशी के थे। रैदास के पद **गुरुग्रंथ साहब** में संकलित हैं। कुछ फुटकल पद **सतबानी** में हैं।

रैदास की भक्ति का ढाँचा निर्गुणवादियों का ही है, किंतु उनका स्वर कबीर जैसा आक्रामक नहीं। रैदास की कविता की विशेषता उनकी निरीहता है। वे अनन्यता पर बल देते हैं। रैदास में निरीहता के साथ-साथ कुंठाहीनता का भाव द्रष्टव्य है। भक्ति भावना ने उनमें वह बल भर दिया था जिसके आधार पर वे डंके की चोट पर घोषित कर सके–

जाके कुटुंब सब ढोर ढोवंत
फिरहिं अजहुँ बानारसी आस-पासा।
आचार सहित बिप्र करहिं डंड उति
तिन तनै रविदास दासानुदासा।

रैदास की भाषा सरल, प्रवाहमयी और गेय है।

गुरु नानक (1469-1538 ई.)

गुरु नानक का जन्म तलवंडी ग्राम, ज़िला लाहौर में हुआ था। इनके पिता का नाम कालूचंद खत्री और माँ का नाम तृप्ता था। इनकी पत्नी का नाम सुलक्षणी था। कहते हैं कि इनके पिता ने इन्हें व्यवसाय में लगाने का बहुत उद्यम किया, किंतु इनका मन भक्ति की ओर अधिकाधिक झुकता गया। इन्होंने हिंदू-मुसलमान दोनों की समान धार्मिक उपासना पर बल दिया। वर्णाश्रम व्यवस्था और कर्मकांड का विरोध करके निर्गुण ब्रह्म की भक्ति का प्रचार किया। गुरु नानक ने व्यापक देशाटन किया और मक्का-मदीना तक की यात्रा की। कहते हैं कि मुगल-सम्राट बाबर से भी इनकी भेंट हुई थी। यात्रा के दौरान इनके साथी और शिष्य रागी नामक मुस्लिम थे जो इनके द्वारा रचित पदों को गाते थे। गुरु नानक ने पंजाबी के साथ हिंदी में भी कविताएँ कीं। इनकी हिंदी में ब्रजभाषा और खड़ी बोली दोनों का मेल है। भक्ति और विनय के पद बहुत मार्मिक हैं। उदारता और सहनशीलता इनके व्यक्तित्व और रचना की विशेषता है। इनके दोहों में जीवन के अनुभव उसी प्रकार गुँथे हैं जैसे कबीर की रचनाओं में। आदि **गुरुग्रंथ साहब** के अंतर्गत 'महला' नामक प्रकरण में इनकी बानी संकलित है। उसमें सबद, सलोक मिलते हैं। गुरु नानक की रचनाएँ हैं – **जपुजी, आसादीवार, रहिरास और सोहिला**। गुरु नानक की परंपरा में उनके उत्तराधिकारी गुरु कवि हुए। इनमें गुरु अंगद, गुरु अमरदास, गुरु रामदास, गुरु अर्जुन, गुरु तेगबहादुर और दसवें गुरु गोविंद सिंह के नाम उल्लेखनीय हैं।

दादूदयाल (1544-1603 ई.)

दादू की कविता जन सामान्य को ध्यान में रखकर लिखी गई है, अतएव सरल एवं सहज है। दादू भी कबीर के समान अनुभव को ही प्रमाण मानते थे। दादू की रचनाओं में भगवान के प्रति प्रेम और व्याकुलता का भाव है। कबीर की भाँति उन्होंने भी निर्गुण निराकार भगवान को वैयक्तिक भावनाओं का विषय बनाया है। उनकी रचनाओं में इस्लामी साधना के शब्दों का प्रयोग खुलकर हुआ है। उनकी भाषा पश्चिमी राजस्थानी से प्रभावित हिंदी है। उसमें अरबी-फारसी के काफी शब्द आए हैं, फिर भी वह सहज और सुगम है।

सुंदरदास (1596-1689 ई.)

सुंदरदास 6 वर्ष की आयु में दादू के शिष्य हो गए थे। उनका जन्म जयपुर के निकट द्यौसा नामक स्थान पर हुआ था। दादू की मृत्यु के बाद एक संत जगजीवन के साथ वे 10 वर्ष की आयु में काशी चले आए। वहाँ 30 वर्ष की आयु तक उन्होंने गहन अध्ययन किया। काशी से लौटकर वे राजस्थान में शेखावटी के निकट फतेहपुर नामक स्थान पर गए। वे फारसी भी बहुत अच्छी जानते थे। उनका देहांत सांगानेर में हुआ।

निर्गुण संत कवियों में सुंदरदास सर्वाधिक शास्त्रज्ञ एवं सुशिक्षित थे। कहते हैं कि वे अपने नाम के अनुरूप अत्यंत सुंदर थे। सुशिक्षित होने के कारण उनकी कविता में कलात्मकता है और भाषा परिमार्जित है। निर्गुण संतों ने प्रायः गेयपद और दोहे ही लिखे हैं। सुंदरदास ने कवित्त और सवैये भी रचे हैं। उनकी काव्यभाषा में अलंकारों का प्रयोग खूब है। उनका सर्वाधिक प्रसिद्ध ग्रंथ **सुंदरविलास** है। काव्य-कला में शिक्षित होने के कारण उनकी रचनाएँ निर्गुण साहित्य में विशिष्ट स्थान रखती हैं। निर्गुण साधना और भक्ति के अतिरिक्त उन्होंने सामाजिक व्यवहार, लोकनीति और भिन्न-भिन्न क्षेत्रों के आचार-व्यवहार पर भी उक्तियाँ कही हैं। लोक धर्म और लोक मर्यादा की उन्होंने अपने काव्य में उपेक्षा नहीं की है।

रज्जब (1567-1689 ई.)

रज्जब दादू के शिष्य थे। ये भी राजस्थान के थे। इनकी कविताएँ साफ और सहज हैं। भाषा पर राजस्थानी प्रभाव अधिक है और इस्लामी साधना के शब्द भी हैं।

निर्गुण संतों की ज्ञानाश्रयी शाखा के अन्य प्रसिद्ध संत कवि **मलूकदास**, **अक्षर अनन्य**, **जंभनाथ**, **सिंगा जी** और **हरिदास निरंजनी** हैं। **दयाबाई** और **सहजोबाई** जैसी

संत कवयित्रियाँ तथा कबीर के शिष्य **धर्मदास** की गणना इसी परंपरा में होती है। इनमें धर्मदास की रचनाओं का संतों में बहुत आदर है। इनकी कविताएँ सरल और प्रेम प्रधान हैं।

निर्गुण ज्ञानाश्रयी काव्यधारा की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- इन कवियों पर नाथ-सिद्धों की बानियों, हठयोग, अंतस्साधना का प्रभाव है। इनकी कविता पर नाथ-सिद्धों की पारिभाषिक शब्दावली का भी प्रभाव है।
- इन कवियों ने प्रबंध काव्य में रचना न करके मुक्तक का ही उपयोग किया है।
- इन्होंने वर्णाश्रम व्यवस्था, कर्मकांड पर तीव्र प्रहार किया है। हिंदू और मुसलमान दोनों की संकीर्णताओं पर खुलकर आक्रमण किया है और मनुष्य मात्र की मूलभूत एकता पर बल दिया है।
- इनकी साधना और कविता में गुरु का महत्त्व विशेष रूप से बताया गया है।
- इन पर अपने समय के प्रायः सभी धार्मिक विचारों एवं साधनाओं – जैसे अद्वैतवाद, नाथ-सिद्ध साधना, इस्लाम, सहज मार्ग, वैष्णव मार्ग, सूफ़ी भक्ति आदि का प्रभाव है ।
- समकालीन साधनाओं का प्रभाव ग्रहण करते हुए भी निर्गुण संत मूलतः भक्त हैं।
- इनकी कविता में भाषा के लोक प्रचलित रूप का अधिकाधिक प्रयोग किया गया है।
- कबीर जैसे निर्गुण संत कवियों के यहाँ व्यंग्य का उत्कृष्ट रूप दिखाई पड़ता है।
- इन कवियों ने लोक प्रचलित काव्य-रूपों का प्रयोग किया है।

प्रेमाश्रयी शाखा या सूफ़ी काव्य

ऐतिहासिक या कल्पित व्यक्तियों के साथ किसी राजकुमारी, सेठ की पुत्री, गणिका या अप्सरा की प्रेम कथा की परंपरा प्राचीन है। कालिदास ने **मेघदूत** में लोक प्रचलित कथाओं को कहने वालों का उल्लेख किया है। 16वीं शती के बनारसीदास ने **अर्ध-कथानक** में लिखा है कि वे **मधुमालती, मिरगावत** पढ़ते थे। एक ही कहानी को आधार बनाकर मध्य काल में अनेक रचनाकारों ने काव्य लिखे हैं। जायसी ने यह लिखा है – 'आदि अंत जस कथा रही' या 'पुनि हम खोलि अरथ सब कहा'। इससे यही स्पष्ट

होता है कि ये कथाएँ पहले से शुद्ध लौकिक प्रेम कथाओं के रूप में प्रचलित थीं। सूफ़ी कवियों ने उन्हें ढाँचे में बाँधा। सूफ़ी काव्य परंपरा के पहले कवि मुल्ला दाऊद हैं। इनकी रचना का नाम **चंदायन** है। **चंदायन** का रचनाकाल 1379 ई. है –

बरिस सात सै होइ इक्यासी। तिन्हि जाह कबि सरसेउ भासी।

मुल्ला दाऊद रायबरेली ज़िले में डलमऊ के थे। वहीं उन्होंने **चंदायन** की रचना की। यह काव्य बहुत लोकप्रिय एवं सम्मानित था। दिल्ली में मख्दमू शेख तकीउद्दीन रब्बानी जन-समाज के बीच इसका पाठ किया करते थे। **चंदायन** पूर्वी भारत में प्रचलित लोरिक, उसकी पत्नी मैना और उसकी विवाहिता प्रेमिका चंदा की प्रेम कथा पर आधारित है। बीच-बीच में चंदा को इस काव्य में भी **पद्मावत** की भाँति अलौकिक सत्ता का प्रतीक बनाया गया है। **चंदायन** की भाषा अवधी है।

कुतुबन

कुतुबन ने **मिरगावत** की रचना 1503-04 ई. में की थी। ये सोहरावर्दी पंथ के ज्ञात होते हैं। रामचंद्र शुक्ल के अनुसार ये जौनपुर के बादशाह हुसैन शाह के आश्रित थे। इसमें नायक मृगी रूपी नायिका पर मोहित हो जाता है और उसकी खोज में निकल पड़ता है। अंत में शिकार खेलते समय सिंह द्वारा मारा जाता है। यह रचना अनेक कथानक-रूढ़ियों से युक्त है। भाषा प्रवाहमयी है।

मलिक मुहम्मद जायसी (1492-1542 ई.)

हिंदी में सूफ़ी काव्य-परंपरा के श्रेष्ठ कवि मलिक मुहम्मद हैं। ये अमेठी के निकट जायस के रहने वाले थे, इसलिए इन्हें जायसी कहा जाता है। जायसी अपने समय के सिद्ध फकीरों में गिने जाते थे। अमेठी के राजघराने में इनका बहुत मान था। इनकी तीन रचनाएँ उपलब्ध हैं – **अखरावट**, **आखिरी कलाम** और **पद्मावत**। कहते हैं कि एक नवोपलब्ध काव्य **कन्हावत** भी इनकी रचना है, किंतु **कन्हावत** का पाठ प्रामाणिक नहीं लगता। **अखरावट** में देवनागरी वर्णमाला के एक-एक अक्षर को लेकर रचना की गई है। **आखिरी कलाम** में कयामत का वर्णन है। कवि के यश का आधार है **पद्मावत**। इसकी रचना कवि ने 1520 ई. के आस-पास की थी।

पद्मावत प्रेम की पीर की व्यंजना करने वाला विशद प्रबंध काव्य है। यह दोहा-चौपाई में निबद्ध मस्नवी शैली में लिखा गया है। **पद्मावत** की काव्य-भूमिका विशद

एवं उदात्त है। कवि ने प्रारंभ में ही प्रकट कर दिया है कि जीवन और जगत को देखने वाली उसकी दृष्टि व्यापक और परस्पर विरोध को आँकने वाली है। कवि अल्लाह को इस विविधतामय सृष्टि का कर्ता कहता है –

कीन्हेसि नाग मुखहिं विष बसा। कीन्हेसि मंत्र हरह जेहिं डसा।
कीन्हेसि अमिअ जिअन जेहि पाएँ। कीन्हेसि विष जो मीचु तेहि खाएँ।
कीन्हेसि अखि मीठि रस भरी। कीन्हेसि करइ बेलि बहु फरी।

उपर्युक्त पंक्तियों में जायसी वस्तुओं का परस्पर-विरोध देख-दिखा रहे हैं। उनकी दृष्टि सामाजिक विषमता की ओर भी जाती है –

कीन्हेसि कोइ भिखारि कोइ धनी। कीन्हेसि संपति बिपति पुन धनी।
काहू भोग भुगुति सुख सारा। कहा काहू भूख भवन दुख भारा।

जायसी इन सबको अल्लाह का ही किया हुआ मानते थे।

पद्मावत की कथा चित्तौड़ के शासक रतनसेन और सिंहल देश की राजकन्या पद्मिनी की प्रेम कहानी पर आधारित है। इसमें कवि ने कौशलपूर्वक कल्पना एवं ऐतिहासिकता का मिश्रण कर दिया है। इसमें अलाउद्दीन खिलजी द्वारा चित्तौड़ पर आक्रमण और विजय ऐतिहासिक घटना है। रतनसेन अपनी विवाहिता पत्नी नागमती को छोड़कर पद्मिनी की खोज में योगी होकर निकल पड़ता है। पद्मिनी से उसका विवाह होता है। राघवचेतन नामक पंडित पद्मिनी के रूप की प्रशंसा अलाउद्दीन से करता है। अलाउद्दीन छल से रतनसेन को पकड़कर दिल्ली ले जाता है। गोरा-बादल वीरतापूर्वक रतनसेन को छुड़ा लेते हैं। बाद में रतनसेन एक अन्य राजा देवपाल से लड़ाई में मारा जाता है। पद्मिनी और नागमती राजा के शव को लेकर सती हो जाती हैं। अलाउद्दीन जब चित्तौड़ पहुँचता है तो उसे उसकी राख मिलती है।

जायसी ने इस प्रेम कथा को आधिकारिक एवं आनुषंगिक कथाओं के ताने-बाने में बहुत जतन से बाँधा है। **पद्मावत** आद्यंत 'मानुष-प्रेम' अर्थात मानवीय प्रेम की महिमा व्यंजित करता है। हीरामन शुक शुरू में कहता है –

मानुस प्रेम भएउँ बैंकुठी। नाहिं त काह छार भरि मूठी।

रचना के अंत में छार भरि मूठि फिर आती है। अलाउद्दीन पद्मिनी के सती होने के बाद चित्तौड़ पहुँचता है तो यह राख ही मिलती है –

छार उठाइ लीन्हि एक मूठी। दीन्हि उड़ाइ पिरिथमी झूठी।

कवि ने कौशल से यह मार्मिक व्यंजना की है कि जो पद्मिनी रतनसेन के लिए 'पारस रूप' है वही अलाउद्दीन जैसे के लिए मुट्ठी भर धूल। मध्यकालीन रोमांचक आख्यानों का कथानक प्रायः बिखर जाता है, किंतु **पद्मावत** का कथानक सुगठित है।

पद्मावत विशुद्ध अवधी में रचित काव्य है। इसमें **रामचरितमानस** की भाँति अनेक क्षेत्रों की भाषाओं का मेल नहीं है। इसलिए विशुद्ध अवधी का जो सहज और चलता रूप **पद्मावत** में मिलता है, **मानस** में नहीं। इसमें तत्सम शब्दों का प्रयोग भी बहुत कम या नहीं के बराबर है। जायसी का प्रिय अलंकार हेतूत्प्रेक्षा है; जैसे –

पिउ सो कहहु संदेसड़ा, हे भौंरा हे काग!
सो धनि बिरहे जरि मुई, तेहिक धुआँ हम लाग।।

मंझन (16वीं शताब्दी)

मंझन ने 1545 ई. में **मधुमालती** की रचना की। **मधुमालती** में नायक को अप्सराएँ उड़ाकर मधुमालती की चित्रसारी में भेज देती हैं और वहीं नायक नायिका को देखता है। इसमें मनोहर और मधुमालती की प्रेम कथा के समानांतर प्रेमा और ताराचंद की प्रेम कथा चलती है। इसमें प्रेम का बहुत ऊँचा आदर्श सामने रखा गया है। सूफ़ी काव्यों में नायक की प्रायः दो पत्नियाँ होती हैं, किंतु इसमें मनोहर प्रेमा से बहन का संबंध स्थापित करता है।

इनके अतिरिक्त सूफ़ी काव्य परंपरा के अन्य उल्लेखनीय कवि और काव्य इस प्रकार हैं– उसमान ने 1613 ई. में **चित्रावली** की रचना की। शेख नबी ने 1619 ई. में **ज्ञानद्वीप** नामक काव्य लिखा। कासिम शाह ने 1731 ई. में **हंस जवाहिर** रचा। नूरमुहम्मद ने 1744 ई. मे **इंद्रावती** और 1764 ई. में **अनुराग बाँसुरी** लिखी। **अनुराग बाँसुरी** में शरीर, जीवात्मा और मनोवृत्तियों को लेकर रूपक बाँधा गया है। इन्होंने चौपाइयों के बीच में दोहे न रखकर बरवै रखे हैं।

निर्गुण प्रेमाश्रयी काव्यधारा की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- सूफ़ी प्रेमाश्रयी शाखा का काव्य प्रेम की पीर की व्यंजना का काव्य है। यहाँ प्रेमिका परम सत्ता की प्रतीक है और प्रेमी साधक का।

- इस धारा में रचित काव्य प्रतीकात्मक है। मतलब यह है कि कथा लोक के साथ अध्यात्म की भी व्यंजना करती है।
- प्रेमाश्रयी सूफ़ी काव्य प्रबंधात्मक है, मुक्तक नहीं।
- इस काव्य के प्रायः सभी रचयिता मुसलमान हैं।
- इनकी भाषा अवधी है। इन्होंने मसनवी शैली का प्रयोग किया है। काव्य के प्रारंभ में अल्लाह, हज़रत मुहम्मद, उनके चार मित्रों, शाहवक्त की वंदना की गई है और कथा का विभाजन सर्गों में न होकर घटनाओं पर आधारित शीर्षकों में किया गया है।
- यह काव्य दोहा, चौपाई में निबद्ध है।
- इन काव्यों में विरह वर्णन और नख-शिख वर्णन उत्कृष्ट कोटि का है।
- इन कवियों ने भारतीय लोक जीवन में प्रचलित कहानियों को अपनी रचनाओं का आधार बनाया है।

रामभक्ति शाखा

राम की भक्ति निर्गुण और सगुण दोनों धाराओं के भक्त करते रहे हैं। राम नाम की उपासना कबीर और तुलसी दोनों करते हैं। अंतर 'राम' के अर्थ को लेकर है। कबीर के राम दशरथ सुत नहीं, किंतु तुलसी के राम दशरथ सुत हैं। हिंदी क्षेत्र के रामभक्त कवियों का संबंध रामानंद से है। रामानंद राघवानंद के शिष्य एवं रामानुजाचार्य की परंपरा के आचार्य थे। वे अत्यंत उदारमना गुरु थे। सभी वर्णों के लोग उनके शिष्य हो सकते थे। हिंदी के निर्गुण और सगुण दोनों प्रकार के संत कवियों का संबंध उनसे जुड़ता है। उनके नाम से अनेक स्फुट रचनाएँ प्रचलित हैं। किंतु उनका कोई काव्य ग्रंथ नहीं मिलता। रामानंद के शिष्यों की सूची '**भक्तमाल**' में इस प्रकार दी हुई है –

अनंतानंद कबीर सुखा सुरसुरा पद्मावति नरहरि
पीपा भावानंद रैदास धना सेन सुरसुर की घरहरि।

'सुरसुर की घरहरि' अर्थात सुरसुरानंद की घरवाली। रामानंद ने सुरसुरानंद की पत्नी को भी दीक्षा दी। ऐसे ही उदारमना माननीय महान गुरु को कबीर अपना गुरु बना सकते थे।

रामानंद के शिष्य अनंतानंद थे। इनके शिष्य कृष्णदास पयहारी हुए जिन्होंने जयपुर के निकट गलता नामक स्थान पर रामानंद संप्रदाय की गद्दी स्थापित की। रामानंद और उनके शिष्यों द्वारा प्रचारित रामभक्ति के ही वातावरण में राम कथा के श्रेष्ठ हिंदी रचयिता तुलसीदास का आविर्भाव हुआ।

हम यह बता चुके हैं कि तुलसीदास ने **रामचरितमानस** का काव्य-रूपात्मक ढाँचा जायसी से लिया।

तुलसीदास के पूर्व **सत्यवती कथा** जैसी लोक प्रचलित कथाएँ चौपाई दोहे में ही हैं। कुछ पौराणिक एवं रामकथा पर आधारित रचनाएँ भी जायसी के पूर्व रचित मिलती हैं। यह बात भी महत्त्वपूर्ण समझी जानी चाहिए कि ये भी अवधी में हैं।

तुलसीदास (1532-1623 ई.)

तुलसीदास मध्यकाल के उन श्रेष्ठ कवियों में से हैं जिनकी लोकप्रियता आज भी बनी हुई है।

तुलसी का बचपन घोर दरिद्रता एवं असहायावस्था में बीता था। उन्होंने लिखा है कि माता-पिता ने दुनिया में पैदा करके मुझे त्याग दिया। विधाता ने भी मेरे भाल (भाग्य) में कोई भलाई नहीं लिखी –

मातु पिता जग जाई तज्यो, विधि हू न लिखी कछु भाल भलाई।

जैसे कुटिल कीट को पैदा करके छोड़ देते हैं वैसे ही मेरे माँ-बाप ने मुझे त्याग दिया –

तनु जन्यों कुटिल कीट ज्यों तज्यों माता पिता हूँ।

उनके जन्म स्थान के विषय में काफी विवाद है। किंतु अधिकतर विद्वान राजापुर को ही उनका जन्म स्थान मानते हैं।

गोस्वामी तुलसीदास द्वारा रचित 12 ग्रंथ प्रामाणिक माने जाते हैं, – **दोहावली, कवित्त रामायण (कवितावली), गीतावली, रामचरितमानस, रामाज्ञाप्रश्न, विनयपत्रिका, रामललानहछू, पार्वतीमंगल, जानकीमंगल, बरवै रामायण, वैराग्य संदीपिनी, श्रीकृष्णगीतावली**। **रामचरितमानस** तुलसी की प्रसिद्धि का सबसे बड़ा आधार है। इस की रचना गोसाईं जी ने 1574 ई. में प्रारंभ की जैसा कि उनकी इस अर्धाली से प्रकट है –

संवत सोरह सौ इकतीसा। करउँ कथा हरिपद धरि सीसा।

गोस्वामी तुलसीदास हिंदी के अत्यंत लोकप्रिय कवि हैं। उन्हें हिंदी का जातीय कवि कहा जाता है। उन्होंने मध्य काल में प्रचलित दोनों काव्य भाषाओं – ब्रजभाषा और अवधी में समान अधिकार से रचना की है। एक अन्य महत्त्वपूर्ण बात यह है कि उन्होंने मध्य काल में व्यवहृत प्रायः सभी काव्यरूपों का उपयोग किया है। केवल तुलसीदास की ही रचनाओं को देखकर समझा जा सकता है कि मध्य कालीन हिंदी साहित्य में किन काव्यरूपों में रचनाएँ होती थीं। उन्होंने वीरगाथा काव्य की छप्पय-पद्धति, विद्यापति और सूरदास की गीत-पद्धति, गंग आदि कवियों की कवित्त-सवैया पद्धति, रहीम के समान दोहे और बरवै, जायसी की तरह चौपाई-दोहे के क्रम से प्रबंध काव्य रचे। रामचंद्र शुक्ल के शब्दों में "हिंदी काव्य की सब प्रकार की रचनाशैली के ऊपर गोस्वामी जी ने अपना ऊँचा आसन प्रतिष्ठित किया है। यह उच्चता और किसी को प्राप्त नहीं।"

तुलसीदास ने अपनी रचनाओं में काव्य के लोकमंगलकारी पक्ष पर अधिक बल दिया है। इसी दृष्टि से उन्होंने तत्कालीन सामंतों की लोलुपता पर प्रहार किया है। प्रजा-द्रोही शासक तुलसी की रचनाओं में प्रायः उनके कोप भाजन बनते हैं। उन्होंने अकाल, महामारी के साथ-साथ प्रजा से अधिक कर वसूलने की भी निंदा की। अपने समय की विभिन्न धार्मिक साधनाओं के पाखंड का उद्‌घाटन किया। तुलसी की दृष्टि में जो बुरा है, वह कलिकाल का प्रभाव है। यहाँ तक कि यदि लोग वर्णाश्रम धर्म का पालन नहीं कर रहे हैं तो वह भी कलिकाल का प्रभाव है। वे दैहिक, दैविक, भौतिक तापों से रहित सर्वसुखद रामराज्य का स्वप्न बुनते हैं। रामराज्य तुलसी की आदर्श व्यवस्था है। इसके नायक एवं व्यवस्थापक तुलसी के राम हैं।

प्रबंधकार कवि के लिए कथा के उचित अवयवों में अनुपात की जो आवश्यकता पड़ती है, वह तुलसी में प्रचुर मात्रा में थी। कथा में कौन-सा प्रसंग कितनी दूर तक चलना चाहिए, इसकी उन्हें सच्ची पहचान थी। इसके साथ उन्हें कथा के मार्मिक स्थलों की भी पहचान थी। **रामचरितमानस** या अन्य काव्यों में उन्होंने अधिक विस्तार उन्हीं अंशों को दिया है जो मार्मिक हैं, अर्थात जिनमें मनुष्य का मन देर तक रम सकता है, जैसे – पुष्पवाटिका प्रसंग, राम-वन-गमन, दशरथ-मरण, भरत की ग्लानि, वन-मार्ग, लक्ष्मण शक्ति।

किस स्थिति में पड़ा हुआ पात्र कैसी चेष्टा करेगा – इसे जानने और चित्रित करने में तुलसी अद्‌वितीय हैं। वे मानव मन के परम कुशल चितेरे हैं। चित्रकूट में राम और भरत-

मिलन के अवसर पर जो सभा जुड़ती है उसमें राम, भरत, जनक, विश्वामित्र आदि के वक्तव्य मध्य कालीन शालीनता एवं वाक्-विदग्धता का आदर्श प्रस्तुत करते हैं।

तुलसीदास जिस प्रकार ब्रजभाषा और अवधी दोनों भाषाओं पर समान अधिकार रखते हैं उसी प्रकार प्रबंध और मुक्तक दोनों की रचना में भी कुशल हैं। वस्तुतः तुलसी ने **गीतावली, कवितावली** आदि में मुक्तकों में कथा कही है। यह विरोधाभास इसलिए संभव हुआ, क्योंकि इन मुक्तकों को एक साथ पढ़िए तो प्रबंध का और अलग-अलग पढ़िए तो वे स्वतंत्र मुक्तकों का आनंद देते हैं। इनमें **विनयपत्रिका** की स्थिति विशिष्ट है।

तुलसी की रचनाओं से जहाँ एक ओर रामभक्ति शाखा की अभूतपूर्व श्रीवृद्धि हुई, वहीं दूसरी ओर यह भी हुआ कि रामभक्ति शाखा के साहित्य में होने वाले परवर्ती कवि उनके आगे धूमिल पड़ गए। इस प्रकार तुलसी परवर्ती सगुण रामभक्त कवियों का ऐतिहासिक महत्त्व अधिक है, साहित्यिक महत्त्व अपेक्षाकृत कम।

नाभादास (16वीं शताब्दी)

रामानंद के शिष्यों में से एक अनंतानंद थे। उनके शिष्य कृष्णदास पयहारी थे। ये 1575 ई. के आस-पास वर्तमान थे। उनकी चार रचनाओं का पता चला है। उन्हीं कृष्णदास पयहारी के शिष्य प्रसिद्ध भक्त नाभादास थे। नाभादास की रचना **भक्तमाल** का हिंदी साहित्य में ऐतिहासिक महत्त्व है। इसकी रचना नाभादास ने 1585 ई. के आस-पास की। इसकी टीका प्रियादास ने 1712 ई. में लिखी। इसमें 200 भक्तों के चरित 316 छप्पयों में वर्णित हैं। इसका उद्देश्य तो जनता में भक्ति का प्रचार था, किंतु आधुनिक इतिहासकारों के लिए यह हिंदी साहित्य के इतिहास का महत्त्वपूर्ण आधार-ग्रंथ सिद्ध हुआ है। इस ग्रंथ से रामानंद, कबीर, तुलसी, सूर, मीरा आदि के विषय में अनेक तथ्यों का भी पता चल जाता है। सबसे बड़ी बात यह है कि इससे पता तो अचूक तौर पर लग ही जाता है कि वर्णित भक्तों एवं भक्त-कवियों की छवि जन सामान्य में कैसी थी और जिस समाज में भक्तों, कवियों, महापुरुषों के जीवन वृत्त के विषय में इतना कम ज्ञात हो, उसमें इतना पता लग जाना भी बहुत काम की बात है।

रामभक्ति शाखा के कुछ अन्य उल्लेखनीय कवि प्राणनंद चौहान (17वीं शती) एवं हृदय राम (17वीं शती) हैं। प्राणनंद चौहान ने सन 1610 में **रामायण** महानाटक लिखा। हृदयराम ने 1613 ई. में **भाषा हनुमान्नाटक** लिखा।

रामचंद्रिका को ध्यान में रखें तो केशवदास रामभक्ति शाखा के कवि ठहरते हैं, यद्यपि साहित्य के इतिहास की दृष्टि से केशवदास का अधिक महत्त्व उनके आचार्यत्व में है। रामचंद्रिका के संवाद बहुत नाटकीय हैं और उसमें विविध छंदों का प्रयोग किया गया है। केशवदास ने **रामचंद्रिका** की रचना 1601 ई. में की थी।

रामभक्ति काव्यधारा की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- यह काव्य प्रधानतः लोक मंगल एवं सामाजिक मर्यादा का काव्य है।
- इस धारा के प्रमुख कवि तुलसीदास ने अपने काव्य में प्रचलित प्रायः सभी काव्यरूपों, छंदों और लोक गीतों के रूपों का उपयोग किया है।
- रामभक्ति में कुछ रसिक धारा के भी कवि हुए हैं किंतु उन्हें लोकप्रियता नहीं मिली।
- रामभक्ति काव्य में वैष्णव और शैव संप्रदायों में सामंजस्य लाने का प्रयास मिलता है।

कृष्णभक्ति शाखा

महाप्रभु वल्लभाचार्य (1477-1530 ई.) ने भागवत धर्म को आधार बनाकर कृष्णभक्ति धारा की दार्शनिक पीठिका तैयार की और देशाटन करके इस भक्ति का प्रचार किया। भागवत धर्म का उदय प्राचीन काल में ही हो गया था। श्रीमद्भागवत के व्यापक प्रचार से माधुर्य भक्ति का रास्ता खुला।

वल्लभाचार्य के अनुसार जीव तीन प्रकार के हैं – 1. **प्रवाह जीव**, जो सांसारिक प्रवाह में पड़े रहते हैं, 2. **मर्यादा जीव,** जो विधि-निषेध का पालन करते हैं और 3. **पुष्टि जीव,** जो भगवान का अनुग्रह प्राप्त कर लेते हैं। वे कृष्ण की नित्य लीला का अनुभव कर सकते हैं। वल्लभाचार्य ने भक्ति में निहित माहात्म्य या श्रद्धा के अवयव की उपेक्षा करके प्रेम के तत्त्व को ही अपनाया। वल्लभाचार्य के अनेक ग्रंथ हैं। उनमें से कुछ इस प्रकार हैं– **पूर्व मीमांसा भाष्य, श्रीमद्भागवत की टीका, अणुभाष्य** एवं **मीमांसा या ब्रह्मसूत्र** का भाष्य।

महाप्रभु वल्लभाचार्य परम विद्वान, सत्संगी एवं परदुखकातर व्यक्ति थे। उन्होंने देश के विभिन्न क्षेत्रों में घूमकर जनसंपर्क और शास्त्रार्थ किया। श्रीकृष्ण की जन्मभूमि में गोवर्धन पर्वत पर श्रीनाथ जी का विशाल मंदिर बनवाया। वहीं अपनी गद्दी स्थापित की।

इस मंदिर में श्रीकृष्ण की जो उपासना होती थी उससे हिंदी साहित्य की कृष्णभक्ति धारा का बहुत गहरा संबंध है।

सूरदास (1478-1583 ई.)

हिंदी साहित्य में श्रेष्ठ कृष्णभक्त कवि सूरदास के बारे में **भक्तमाल** और **चौरासी वैष्णवों की वार्ता** से थोड़ी-बहुत जानकारी मिल जाती है। **आईने अकबरी** और **मुंशियात अबुलफज़ल** में भी किसी संत सूरदास का उल्लेख है, किंतु वे बनारस के कोई और सूरदास प्रतीत होते हैं। जनश्रुति यह अवश्य है कि अकबर बादशाह सूरदास का यश सुनकर उनसे मिलने आए थे। **भक्तमाल** में इनकी भक्ति, कविता एवं गुणों की प्रशंसा है तथा उनकी अंधता का उल्लेख है। **चौरासी वैष्णवों की वार्ता** के अनुसार वे आगरा और मथुरा के बीच साधु या स्वामी के रूप में रहते थे। वे वल्लभाचार्य के दर्शन को गए और उनसे लीलागान का उपदेश पाकर कृष्ण-चरित विषयक पदों की रचना करने लगे। कालांतर में श्रीनाथ जी के मंदिर का निर्माण होने पर महाप्रभु वल्लभाचार्य ने उन्हें वहाँ भजन-कीर्तन का कार्य सौंपा।

सूरदास के विषय में कहा जाता है कि वे जन्मांध थे। उन्होंने अपने को 'जन्म को आँधर' कहा भी है किंतु इसके शब्दार्थ पर अधिक नहीं जाना चाहिए। सूर के काव्य में प्रकृति और जीवन का जो सूक्ष्म सौंदर्य चित्रित है उससे यह नहीं लगता कि वे जन्मांध थे।

सूरदास वात्सल्य और श्रृंगार के कवि हैं। भारतीय साहित्य क्या, संभवतः विश्व-साहित्य में कोई कवि वात्सल्य के क्षेत्र में उनके समकक्ष नहीं है। यह उनकी ऐसी विशेषता है कि इसी के आधार पर वे साहित्य-क्षेत्र में अत्यंत उच्च स्थान के अधिकारी माने जा सकते हैं। बाल जीवन का ऐसा अनुपम चित्रण महान सहृदय और मानव-प्रेमी व्यक्ति ही कर सकता है। सूरदास ने वात्सल्य और श्रृंगार का वर्णन लोक सामान्य की भावभूमि पर किया है। सूर ने अपनी रचना में प्रकृति और जीवन के कर्म के क्षेत्रों को अचूक कौशल से उतार लिया है। लोक साहित्य की सहज जीवंतता जितनी सूर के साहित्य में मिलती है, हिंदी के किसी कवि में नहीं।

सूर का बाल लीला वर्णन अपनी सहजता, मनोवैज्ञानिकता एवं स्वाभाविकता में अद्‌वितीय है। उनका काव्य बाल चेष्टाओं के स्वाभाविक मनोहर चित्रों का भंडार है।

उसमें भगवान के मानवीय रूप के मनोरम दर्शन होते हैं। सूर के कृष्ण, सामान्य गृहस्थ के बालक बन गए हैं, जो हठ करके आँगन में लोटने लगते हैं –

काहे को आरि करत मेरे मोहन! यों तुम आँगन लोटी।

कृष्ण चलना सीख रहे हैं। पैर डगमगाते हैं। यशोदा हाथ पकड़कर उन्हें चलना सिखाती है –

सिखवत चलन जसोदा मैया
अरबराय करि पानि गहावति डगमगात धरै पैयाँ।

सूरदास के बाल लीला वर्णन में चित्रण ऐसा है जिसकी दृश्यता में जीवन स्पंदित है। पंक्तियाँ इतनी सहज हैं कि उनकी मार्मिकता मन में रच-बस जाती है।

'मैया मैं नहिं माखन खायो' – यह पंक्ति मार्मिक क्यों है? समूचे जीवन-चित्र के संदर्भ में रखकर इसे समझा जा सकता है। बालक होते निरीह हैं लेकिन अपने को बहुत चालाक समझते हैं। वयस्क यह सब समझते हैं। कच्ची चालाकी से मिलकर बच्चों की निरीहता वयस्कों के लिए पहले से अधिक निरीह, अत्यंतः प्रिय हो उठती है। कृष्ण के मुख पर माखन लगा है, पकड़ लिए गए हैं रँगे हाथों। लेकिन अपनी तरफ से ज़बर्दस्त तर्कों की झड़ी लगा रहे हैं। उनकी सारी तर्कपटुता उनका ऐसा अपराध ही स्पष्ट कर रही है, जिससे माँ को और प्यार ही उमड़ेगा।

जैसे श्रृंगार का संयोग और वियोग होता है, वैसे ही वात्सल्य का भी। सूरदास के श्रृंगारी संयोग वर्णन को वियोग वर्णन की अपेक्षा अधिक उत्कृष्ट माना जाता है, किंतु उनके वात्सल्य के विषय में यह बात नहीं कही जा सकती। कृष्ण के चले जाने पर नंद-यशोदा की व्याकुलता का जो वर्णन है, वह बहुत मार्मिक है। नंद-यशोदा दोनों कृष्ण की पिछली बातों का स्मरण करते हैं, एक-दूसरे पर खीझते हैं, कृष्ण के न आने के लिए एक-दूसरे को दोष देते हैं। उनकी व्याकुलता में ग्वाल-बाल और प्रकृति भी शामिल है। अपने पदों में सूरदास ने पूरे ब्रज की जो दारुण व्यथा उभारी है, वह व्यथा प्रभाव की दृष्टि से नाटकों और महाकाव्यों में मिलने वाली करुणा के समान है।

सूरदास के यहाँ राधा-कृष्ण का प्रेम परिचय से विकसित होता है। वह प्रकृति और कर्म-क्षेत्र की पृष्ठभूमि में पुष्पित-पल्लवित होता है। गोचारण जीवन में प्रकृति का पूरा अवकाश है। सूर के राधा-कृष्ण की प्रेम लीला में प्रकृति, गायों और ग्वाल-बालों का महत्त्वपूर्ण स्थान है। इसी से उनकी प्रेम लीला जीवन से कहीं कटी अलग-थलग नहीं

है। राधा और कृष्ण के प्रथम परिचय का जो चित्र सूर ने खींचा है, वह उनके लोक परिचय का प्रमाण है। साहित्य में प्रेम के सूत्रपात का ऐसा जीवंत चित्र दुर्लभ होगा –

बूझत स्याम कौन तू गोरी।
कहाँ रहति, काकी है बेटी, देखी नहीं कहूँ ब्रज-खोरी।

मुक्तकों में ऐसी स्वाभाविक संवाद-योजना भी कम मिलेगी। सूरदास द्वारा चित्रित राधा-कृष्ण की प्रेम लीला में मध्य कालीन नारी के सहज जीवन का स्वप्न जैसे साकार हो उठा है। यह स्वप्न सर्वाधिक साक्षात रास-लीला वर्णन में होता है। सूरदास के समय अर्थात 16वीं शती में ब्रज में नारियों को वह स्वाधीनता नहीं थी, जिसका वर्णन **सूरसागर** में मिलता है। यह सच है कि रास-लीला का साधनात्मक अर्थ भी है, जहाँ गोपियाँ साधकों की प्रतीक हैं, किंतु काव्य का प्रतीकार्थ ही ठीक नहीं होता उसका साधारण या वाच्यार्थ भी संगत होता है। गोपियाँ लोक-लाज तजकर घर की चहारदीवारी ही नहीं तोड़तीं, वे कृष्ण की बाँसुरी सुनकर उस सामाजिक व्यवस्था को भी तोड़ती हैं, जो नारियों को पराधीन रखती हैं। जिस तरह तुलसी ने मध्य कालीन भारत में दैहिक, दैविक, भौतिक तापों से रहित 'रामराज्य' का स्वप्न देखा है, वैसे ही सूर ने कृष्ण-कथा और रास-लीला के माध्यम से एक ऐसा सर्वसुखद स्वप्न देखा है, जिसमें नारी और पुरुष दोनों समान तौर पर स्वाधीन हैं। रास-लीला सुख विभोर मानवता का सजीव, गतिमय स्पंदित चित्र है।

सूर का विरह वर्णन भी अधिकांशतः स्वाभाविक पद्धति से ही चित्रित है। इसमें भी कृष्ण की स्मृति प्रायः दैनंदिन जीवन प्रसंगों में आती है। सूर के विरह वर्णन की मार्मिकता का आधार विरहावस्था में हृदय की नाना वृत्तियों का स्वाभाविक पद्धति का चित्रण है। विरह-वर्णन वहाँ उत्कृष्ट है, जहाँ गोपियों की निरीह विवशता प्रकट होती है। **साहित्य लहरी** में सूर के दृष्टकूट के पद संकलित हैं जो काव्य-रूढ़ियों में निबद्ध होने के कारण दुरूह हैं। **साहित्य लहरी** की प्रामाणिकता भी संदिग्ध है।

वल्लभाचार्य के पुत्र विट्ठलनाथ ने पुष्टिमार्गी कवियों में से आठ कवियों को चुनकर उन्हें **अष्टछाप** की संज्ञा दी। ये कवि हैं– सूरदास, कुंभनदास, परमानंद दास, कृष्णदास, छीत स्वामी, गोविंद स्वामी, चतुर्भुजदास और नंददास। इनमें से प्रथम चार वल्लभाचार्य के शिष्य थे और शेष स्वयं विट्ठलनाथ के। सूरदास और उनकी कविता के विषय में हम जान चुके हैं। शेष कवियों में नंददास प्रमुख हैं।

नंददास (16वीं शताब्दी)

नंददास 16वीं शती के अंतिम चरण में विद्यमान थे। इनके विषय में **भक्तमाल** में लिखा है – 'चंद्रहास-अग्रज सुहृद परम प्रेम-पथ में पगे।' इनके काव्य के विषय में यह उक्ति प्रसिद्ध है – 'और कवि गढ़िया, नंददास जड़िया।' इससे प्रकट होता है कि इनके काव्य का कला पक्ष महत्त्वपूर्ण है। इनकी प्रमुख कृतियाँ इस प्रकार हैं – **रासपंचाध्यायी, सिद्धांत पंचाध्यायी, भागवत दशम स्कंध, रुक्मिणीमंगल, रूपमंजरी, रसमंजरी, दानलीला, मानलीला** आदि। इनके यश का आधार **रासपंचाध्यायी** है। **रासपंचाध्यायी** भागवत के **रासपंचाध्यायी** के अंश पर आधारित है। यह रोला छंद में रचित है। कृष्ण की रास लीला का वर्णन इस काव्य में कोमल एवं सानुप्रास पदावली में किया गया है, जो संगीतात्मकता से युक्त है, जैसे –

ताही छन उडुराज उदित रस-रास-सहायक,
कुंकुम-मंडित-बदन प्रिया जनु नागरि नायक।
कोमल किरन अरुन मानो बन व्यापि रही यों,
मनसिज खेल्यो फागु घुमड़ि घुरि रह्यो गुलाल ज्यों।

अष्टछाप के शेष कवियों ने भी लीला गान के पद कहे हैं, जो प्रधानतः शृंगारी हैं। राधा और कृष्ण के रूप एवं शृंगार के साथ-साथ उनके चरित्र का गुणगान इन कवियों का विषय रहा है।

कृष्णदास (16 वीं शती) वल्लभाचार्य के कृपा-पात्र थे और मंदिर के प्रधान हो गए थे। इनका रचा हुआ **जुगमान चरित्र** नामक ग्रंथ मिलता है। परमानंद दास (16वीं शती) के 835 पद **परमानंद सागर** में संकलित हैं। इनकी कविताएँ सरसता के कारण प्रसिद्ध हैं। कुंभनदास परमानंददास के समकालीन थे। ये अत्यंत स्वाभिमानी भक्त थे। इन्होंने फतेहपुर सीकरी के राजसम्मान से खिन्न होकर कहा था –

संतन को कहा सीकरी सो काम।

कुंभनदास का कोई ग्रंथ नहीं मिलता, फुटकल पद ही मिलते हैं। चतुर्भुजदास, कुंभनदास के पुत्र थे। इनकी तीन कृतियाँ मिलती हैं – **द्वादश यश, भक्तिप्रताप, हितजू को मंगल**। छीतस्वामी 16वीं शती के उत्तरार्द्ध में वर्तमान थे। इनका कोई ग्रंथ नहीं मिलता, फुटकल पद ही मिलते हैं। गोविंद स्वामी का रचनाकाल 1543 ई. और 1568 ई. के बीच

रहा होगा। कहा जाता है कि इनका गाना सुनने के लिए कभी-कभी तानसेन भी आते थे। इनका भी कोई ग्रंथ नहीं मिलता।

अन्य कृष्णभक्त कवि

राधा-वल्लभ संप्रदाय के प्रवर्तक हितहरिवंश का उल्लेख और थोड़ा परिचय भक्ति काल के प्रारंभ में ही दिया जा चुका है। इनका रचनाकाल सन 1543 ई. से 1583 ई. तक माना जाता है। इन्होंने 1525 ई. में वृंदावन में श्रीराधावल्लभ की मूर्ति स्थापित की। **हितचौरासी** में इनकी कविताएँ संकलित हैं। हितहरिवंश द्‌वारा प्रवर्तित संप्रदाय में राधा की भक्ति की प्रधानता है। हितहरिवंश ने राधा विषयक अत्यंत सरस रचनाएँ की हैं। इनकी उपलब्ध रचनाएँ संख्या में कम हैं।

मीराबाई (1498-1546 ई.)

मीराबाई के बारे में अनेक किंवदंतियाँ गढ़ ली गई हैं। ये महाराणा सांगा की पुत्र-वधू और महाराणा कुमार भोजराज की पत्नी थीं। कहा जाता है कि विवाह के कुछ वर्षों के बाद जब इनके पति का देहांत हो गया तो ये साधु-संतों के बीच भजन-कीर्तन करने लगीं। इस पर इनके परिवार के लोग, विशेषकर, देवर राणा विक्रमादित्य बहुत रुष्ट हुए। उन्होंने इन्हें नाना प्रकार की यातनाएँ दीं। इन्हें विष तक दिया गया। खिन्न होकर इन्होंने राजकुल छोड़ दिया। इनकी मृत्यु द्‌वारिका में हुई।

मीरा का सामान्य लोगों के बीच उठना-बैठना उस सामाजिक व्यवस्था को असह्य था जिसमें नारी पति के मरने पर या तो सती हो सकती थी या घर की चहारदीवारी के भीतर वैधव्य झेलने के लिए अभिशप्त थी। मीरा को भक्त होने के लिए लोक-लाज छोड़नी पड़ी। लोक-लाज तजने की बात मीरा की कविताओं में बार-बार आती है। मीरा ने अपने इष्टदेव गिरधर नागर का जो रूप चित्रित किया है, वह अत्यंत मोहक हैं। मीरा के यहाँ विरह वेदना उनका यथार्थ है तो कृष्ण मिलन उनका स्वप्न। मीरा के जीवन के यथार्थ की प्रतिनिधि पंक्ति है – 'अँसुवन जल सींचि-सींचि, प्रेम-बेलि बोई।' और उनके स्वप्न की प्रतिनिधि पंक्ति है – "सावन माँ उमग्यो म्हारो हियरा भणक सुण्या हरि आवण री।" मीरा के काव्य में मध्य कालीन नारी का जीवन बिंबित है।

मीरा भक्त कवयित्री हैं। उनकी व्याकुलता एवं वेदना उनकी कविता में निश्छल अभिव्यक्ति पाती है। मीरा की कविता में रूप, रस और ध्वनि के प्रभावशाली बिंब हैं। वे अपनी कविता में वेदना को श्रोताओं और पाठकों के अनुभव के माध्यम से संप्रेषित करती हैं 'घायल की गति घायल जाणै और न जाणै कोय' का यही अभिप्राय है।

मीरा के काव्य पर निर्गुण-सगुण दोनों साधनाओं का प्रभाव है। नाथ मत का भी प्रभाव दिखाई पड़ता है। उन्होंने रामकथा से संबंधित कुछ गेयपद भी लिखे हैं।

रसखान (1548-1628)

इनका वृत्तांत **दो सौ बावन वैष्णवों की वार्ता** में मिलता है और उससे प्रकट होता है कि ये लौकिक प्रेम से कृष्ण-प्रेम की ओर उन्मुख हुए। इनकी प्रसिद्ध कृति **प्रेम वाटिका** का रचनाकाल 1614 ई. है। कहते हैं कि ये गोसाईं विट्ठलनाथ के शिष्य थे।

रसखान ने कृष्ण का लीलागान सवैयों में किया है। रसखान को सवैया छंद सिद्ध था। जितने सरस, प्रवाहमय सवैये रसखान के हैं, उतने शायद ही किसी अन्य हिंदी कवि के हों। ब्रजभाषा का ऐसा सहज प्रवाह अन्यत्र बहुत कम मिलता है।

मोर पखा सिर ऊपर राखिहौं, गुंज की माल गरे पहिरौंगी।
ओढ़ि पितांबर लै लकुटी बन गोधन ग्वारनि संग फिरौंगी।
भावतो सोई मेरो रसखानि सो तेरे कहे सब स्वाँग करौंगी।
या मुरली मुरलीधर की अधरान धरी अधरा न धरौंगी।।

कृष्णभक्त कवियों की सुदीर्घ परंपरा है। स्वामी हरिदास, हरीराम व्यास, सुखदास, लालदास, नरोत्तमदास आदि अन्य कृष्णभक्त कवि हैं। इनमें नरोत्तमदास का **सुदामा-चरित** अपनी मार्मिकता और सहज प्रवाह के कारण बहुत लोकप्रिय है।

रहीम (1556-1627 ई.)

रहीम (अब्दुर्रहीम खानखाना) सम्राट अकबर के प्रसिद्ध सेनापति बैरम खाँ के पुत्र थे। इनकी गणना कृष्णभक्त कवियों में की जाती है। रहीम ने **बरवै नायिका भेद** भी लिखा है, जो निश्चित रूप से रीतिकाव्य की कोटि में रखा जाएगा, किंतु रहीम को भक्त हृदय मिला था। उनके भक्तिपरक दोहे उनके व्यक्ति और रचनाकार का वास्तविक प्रतिनिधित्व

करते हैं। कहते हैं, उनके मित्र तुलसी ने **बरवै रामायण** की रचना रहीम के बरवै काव्य से उत्साहित होकर की।

रहीम अरबी, फ़ारसी, संस्कृत आदि कई भाषाओं के जानकार थे। वे बहुत उदार, दानी और करुणावान थे। अंत में उनकी मुगल दरबार से नहीं पटी और जनश्रुति के अनुसार उनके अंतिम दिन तंगी में गुज़रे। रहीम की अन्य रचनाएँ हैं – **रहीम दोहावली या सतसई, शृंगार सोरठा, मदनाष्टक, रासपंचाध्यायी।** उन्होंने **खेल कौतुकम्** नामक ज्योतिष का ग्रंथ भी रचा है, जिसकी भाषा संस्कृत-फ़ारसी मिश्रित है। रहीम ने तुलसी के समान अवधी और ब्रज दोनों में अधिकारपूर्वक काव्य-रचना की है।

रहीम के भक्ति और नीति के दोहे आज भी लोगों की ज़बान पर हैं।

कृष्णभक्ति काव्यधारा की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- हिंदी का कृष्णभक्ति काव्य कृष्ण की लीला पर आधारित लीला काव्य है।
- कृष्णभक्ति काव्य प्रधानतः शृंगार का काव्य है। सूरदास जैसे महान कवि के बाल-लीला वर्णन के कारण वह वात्सल्य का अपूर्व काव्य है।
- इसमें संयोग और वियोग दोनों का उत्कृष्ट वर्णन है।
- कृष्णभक्ति धारा के अष्टछाप के कवियों ने कृष्णलीला के अंतर्गत राधाकृष्ण और गोप-गोपियों का वर्णन लोक जीवन के सामान्य रूपों में किया है, जैसे दधिलीला, रासलीला, चीरहरण लीला आदि।
- कृष्णभक्ति काव्य ब्रजभाषा में रचा गया है।
- कृष्णभक्ति के लीला पद संगीतात्मक हैं। संगीतकारों ने इस काव्य का प्रचुर उपयोग किया है।
- कृष्णभक्ति काव्य परवर्ती रीतिकाव्य का आधार बना। यह काव्य अंशतः मंदिरों में गाने के लिए रचा गया। कृष्णभक्ति काव्य प्रधानतः गेयपदों और कवित्त, सवैयों में रचा गया। नाना कवियों ने प्रचलित लोकगान शैलियों में भी रचना की।

हिंदी भक्ति काव्य की सामान्य विशेषताएँ

भक्ति का शास्त्र यद्यपि दक्षिण में बना, किंतु उसका पूर्ण उत्कर्ष उत्तर में हुआ। भक्ति आंदोलन अखिल भारतीय था। भारत की सभी भाषाओं के साहित्य पर भक्ति आंदोलन का प्रभाव है। लोक साहित्य पर भी इसका प्रभाव कम नहीं। फलतः यह शास्त्र की उपेक्षा करनेवाला लोकोन्मुख आंदोलन था, इसीलिए लोक जीवन से इतना रस संचित कर सका। हिंदी भक्त कवियों ने आध्यात्मिक साधना की ही बात नहीं की, उन्होंने सामंतवादी युग में सामंतवादी व्यवस्था की अमानवीयता की आलोचना की, यथासंभव हर प्रकार की पीड़ा और हिंसा का विरोध किया। सांसारिक अन्यायी शक्ति को परम सत्ता या अलौकिक शास्त्र-संपन्न सगुण रूप के सामने रखकर उसे तुच्छ दिखाया। इसीलिए यह उल्लास और जीवन का साहित्य है।

हिंदी भक्ति आंदोलन और साहित्य की कुछ निजी विशेषताएँ हैं। हिंदी साहित्य में भक्ति काल दीर्घ व्यापी लगभग तीन शताब्दियों तक प्रभावी रहा। शायद ही किसी अन्य भारतीय भाषा में इतनी संख्या में श्रेष्ठ कवि – कबीर, जायसी, सूर, तुलसी, मीरा, नानक जैसे हुए हैं। भक्ति-साहित्य में मुसलमान कवियों का योगदान भी अन्यत्र नहीं मिलता। सगुण भक्ति साहित्य में अन्यत्र कहीं रसखान, रहीम जैसे कवि हैं, यह संदिग्ध है। प्रबंधकार सूफी कवि भी अन्य भाषा-साहित्य में शायद ही मिलें। इसका कारण यह है कि इस्लामी संस्कृति का प्रभाव सबसे पहले उत्तर भारत में हुआ। उसकी पहली टक्कर यहीं हुई, इसलिए साधनाओं का समन्वय भी यहाँ अधिक दिखलाई पड़ा।

हिंदी के भक्ति साहित्य में एक व्यापक मानवीय संवेदना के साथ-साथ प्रतिष्ठानों को चुनौती देने का भी स्वर है।

अध्याय 3

रीति काल (1700-1850 ई.)

पृष्ठभूमि

रीति काल से आशय हिंदी साहित्य के उस काल से है, जिसमें निर्दिष्ट काव्यरीति या प्रणाली के अंतर्गत रचना करना प्रधान साहित्यिक प्रवृत्ति बन गई थी। 'रीति' 'कवित्त रीति' एवं 'सुकवि रीति' जैसे शब्दों का प्रयोग इस काल में बहुत होने लगा था। हो सकता है शुक्ल जी ने इसी कारण इस काल को **रीति काल** कहना उचित समझा हो। काव्यरीति के ग्रंथों में काव्य-विवेचन करने का प्रयास किया जाता था। हिंदी में जो काव्य विवेचन इस काल में हुआ, उसमें इसके बहाने मौलिक रचना भी की गई है। यह प्रवृत्ति इस काल में प्रधान है। लेकिन इस काल की कविता प्रधानतः शृंगार रस की है। इसीलिए इस काल को **शृंगार काल** कहने की भी बात की जाती है। 'शृंगार' और 'रीति' यानी इस काल की कविता की वस्तु और उसका रूप किस प्रकार एक दूसरे से जुड़ गए, इसे समझने के लिए हमें कुछ और बातें जाननी पड़ेंगी।

संस्कृत में काव्य-विवेचन शास्त्रज्ञ आचार्य करते थे, कवि नहीं। वे काव्य-विवेचन के दौरान प्रसिद्ध कवियों की रचनाओं को उद्धृत करके अपनी बात समझाते थे। रीति काल के हिंदी-शास्त्र पर विचार करने वाले मूलतः आचार्य नहीं, कवि थे। इसलिए उन्होंने नायकों, नायिकाओं, रसों, अलंकारों, छंदों के विवेचन पर कम, इनके दिए गए लक्षणों के उदाहरणों के रूप में रचनाओं पर ज़्यादा ध्यान दिया है। उन्होंने अन्य कवियों की रचनाओं के उदाहरण नहीं दिए। उदाहरणों के लिए खुद कविता की। इसीलिए इस काल में आचार्य और कवि दोनों एक ही व्यक्ति होने लगे। इससे यह अवश्य हुआ कि इस प्रणाली के कारण रीति काल में सुंदर रचनाएँ बहुत अधिक मात्रा में लिखी गई।

भक्ति मूलतः प्रेम ही है। भक्ति कालीन प्रेम या शृंगार में धार्मिकता का आवेश क्रमशः क्षीण होता गया। भक्ति काल का अलौकिक शृंगार रीति काल में आकर लौकिक शृंगार बन गया। सच्ची बात तो यह है कि वह वास्तविक लौकिक शृंगार भी कम बना। केवल कुछ लोगों यानी अवकाश भोगी भोक्ता वर्ग के मनोरंजन का साधन बना। केंद्र में एक शक्तिशाली सत्ता थी। सामंतगण उसके अधीन थे। अतः परस्पर लड़ने-झगड़ने का भी अवकाश नहीं था। जिन सामंतों ने अधीनता स्वीकार कर ली थी, वे चैन से विलास करते थे। रीति कालीन काव्य अधिकांशतः इस विलासिता का साधन एवं प्रसाधन है। इन सामंतों के जीवन और रुचि में एकरसता एवं ठहराव है। इस एकरसता और ठहराव का कारण है केवल निर्दिष्ट जीवन-प्रणाली में काल-यापन। न अपने से भिन्न या विपरीत जीवन से कोई टकराव, न उसकी चिंता। यह निर्दिष्ट जीवन-प्रणाली ही इनकी रुचि की कविता में रीति बन गई है। यहाँ काव्यरीति और यह ठहरा हुआ शृंगार इस निष्क्रिय सामंती रुचि में ढल गए हैं। शिवाजी, छत्रसाल जैसे सक्रिय सामंतों की रुचि की कविता इससे भिन्न है।

इससे यह अर्थ नहीं निकालना चाहिए कि इस काल में वास्तविक प्रेम (शृंगार), भक्ति या अन्य प्रकार की कविताएँ नहीं हुईं। रीति का अवलंब लेकर भी कवियों ने सामान्य गृहस्थ जीवन के सीमित ही सही, मार्मिक चित्र खींचे हैं।

प्राकृत और अपभ्रंश साहित्य में प्रचुर मात्रा में उपलब्ध शृंगार, नीति की मुक्त रचनाओं की धारा रीति काल में प्रभावशाली ढंग से फिर प्रवाहित होती दिखलाई पड़ती है। भक्ति काल में भक्ति के आवेग के सामने यह छिप-सी गई थी। **गाथा सप्तशती**, **आर्यासप्तशती** जैसी अपभ्रंश के मुक्तकों के समान सरस मनोहारी रचनाएँ रीति काल में प्रभूत मात्रा में लिखी गईं। इन रचनाओं में सामान्य जन-जीवन और परिवार में व्याप्त प्रेम, उल्लास, मिलन, विरह की हृदय-हारिणी अभिव्यक्ति हुई। शुद्ध ऐहिकतापरक सरस मुक्तकों की रचना की दृष्टि से रीति काल बेजोड़ है।

भक्ति की कविताओं की परंपरा इस काल में समाप्त नहीं हुई, किंतु कबीर, सूर, जायसी, तुलसी, मीरा जैसे लोक-संग्रही मानवीय करुणा वाले उत्कृष्ट भक्त कवियों के सामने इस काल के भक्त कवि कहाँ ठहरते? भक्ति इस काल की क्षीयमाण काव्यधारा है; वह भी अपने को काव्यरीति में ढाल रही थी। यही कारण है कि इस काल के प्रारंभ में ही ऐसे अनेक कवि दिखलाई पड़ते हैं, जिनका विषय तो भक्ति है किंतु लगते रीति

काल के कवि हैं। ऐसे कवि वस्तुतः रीति धारा के ही कवि माने जाने चाहिए जैसे – केशव, गंग, सेनापति, पद्माकर आदि। इनकी भक्ति भी ठहरी हुई और एकरस है।

इस काल में रीति से हटकर स्वच्छंद प्रेम काव्य भी रचा गया जिसमें काव्य-कौशल होते हुए भी प्रेम विशेषतः विरह की तीव्र व्यंजना है। ऐसे कवियों की रचनाओं पर सूफ़ी कवियों के 'प्रेम की पीर' का प्रभाव स्पष्ट है। घनानंद इसी श्रेणी के कवि हैं। स्वच्छंद प्रेम मार्ग पर चलकर रचना करने वाले अन्य कवि आलम, बोधा, ठाकुर हैं। इन बातों को ध्यान में रखते हुए रीति कालीन काव्य को तीन धाराओं में विभाजित किया जाता है --

रीतिबद्ध : इस धारा के कवियों ने अलंकार, नायिका भेद आदि के लक्षण बताकर उनके उदाहरणस्वरूप काव्य रचा है। जैसे – केशव, पद्माकर, मतिराम आदि। वस्तुतः ये मूलतः कवि थे।

रीतिसिद्ध : इसमें वे कवि आते हैं जो लक्षण-उदाहरण की पद्धति प्रकट रूप में तो नहीं अपनाते किंतु रचना करते समय उनका ध्यान रखते हैं। बिहारी ऐसे कवि हैं।

रीतिमुक्त : इस धारा के कवि लक्षण-उदाहरण की न तो पद्धति अपनाते हैं और न उनका ध्यान रखते हैं। घनानंद, आलम, बोधा, ठाकुर आदि रीतिमुक्त या स्वच्छंद धारा के कवि माने जाते हैं।

इस काल के दरबारी कवियों में कभी-कभी दरबारी कविता से असंतोष की भी प्रखर भावना पाई जाती है। ऐसा होना स्वाभाविक भी था। आश्रयदाता की वास्तविकता कवि समझते थे। धन के लिए उन्हें प्रशंसा करनी पड़ती थी। कुछ कवियों ने कंजूस सामंतों या आश्रयदाताओं की अच्छी खबर ली है। आश्रित किंतु स्वाभिमानी कवियों की मानसिक पीड़ा भी रीति काल में व्यक्त हुई।

इस काल की काव्यभाषा प्रमुखतः ब्रजभाषा है। रीति काल मुक्तकों का युग है। कवित्त, सवैया को इस काव्य में बहुत प्रयुक्त किया गया है। इस काल की काव्यभाषा पर वातावरण के अनुसार फ़ारसी का भी प्रभाव है। काव्यांग-निरूपण और विशिष्ट रुचि के लिए लिखी जाने के कारण इस काल की कविता में अलंकारों का बाहुल्य है।

प्रमुख रीतिबद्ध कवि

केशवदास (1555-1617 ई.)

केशवदास के पूर्वज संस्कृत के विद्वान् थे। केशव ओरछा नरेश महाराजा रामसिंह के भाई इंद्रजीत सिंह के सभा-कवि थे। यहाँ इनका बहुत सम्मान था। केशवदास द्वारा रचित सात ग्रंथ मिलते हैं – **कविप्रिया, रसिकप्रिया, रामचंद्रिका, वीरसिंह देवचरित, विज्ञान गीता, रतन बावनी और जहाँगीर-जस चंद्रिका। कविप्रिया** और **रसिकप्रिया** काव्यशास्त्रीय पुस्तकें हैं।

केशवदास का उल्लेख रामभक्ति शाखा के प्रसंग में हो चुका है। उन्होंने 'रामकथा' का वर्णन **रामचंद्रिका** में किया है। केशव का महत्त्व इस बात में है कि उन्होंने पहली बार काव्यांगों पर हिंदी में विचार किया। इसके पूर्व कृपाराम, मोहनलाल मिश्र, करनेस आदि ने रस, शृंगार और अलंकार पर अलग-अलग पुस्तकें लिखी थीं, पर एक साथ सभी काव्यांगों का परिचय नहीं दिया था। केशव ने यही किया और इसीलिए वे हिंदी के प्रथम आचार्य माने जाते हैं। वे काव्य में अलंकार को अधिक महत्त्व देते थे।

केशव हिंदी के प्रथम आचार्य हैं किंतु रीतियों की परंपरा चिंतामणि (जन्म 1609 ई.) से चली। इनका प्रसिद्ध ग्रंथ **कविकुल कल्पतरु** है। इस काल के अन्य प्रसिद्ध आचार्य कवि हैं – भिखारीदास (18वीं शती, ग्रंथ **काव्य निर्णय**), तोष (1634 ई. ग्रंथ **सुधानिधि**), कुलपति (1670 ई., ग्रंथ **रस रहस्य**), सुखदेव मिश्र (1673 ई., ग्रंथ **रसार्णव**) आदि हैं। इनके उपजीव्य संस्कृत ग्रंथ **काव्य प्रकाश, साहित्यदर्पण, रसमंजरी, चंद्रालोक** और **कुवलयानंद** हैं।

सेनापति (1584-1688 ई.)

सेनापति की रचनाओं से लगता है कि यद्यपि इनका कुछ दरबारों में सम्मान हुआ, किंतु बाद में ये विरक्त हो गए। इनकी दो रचनाएँ हैं – **कवित्त रत्नाकर** और **काव्य कल्पद्रुम। कवित्त रत्नाकर** में भक्ति-भाव के छंद हैं। रीति कालीन कवियों में सेनापति का अपना महत्त्व और स्थान है। ऋतु वर्णन के कारण रीति कालीन कवियों ने प्रकृति का उपयोग प्रायः उद्दीपन के ही अंतर्गत किया है, किंतु सेनापति इस काल के अकेले

कवि हैं जिनका प्रकृति के प्रति भावबोध इतना सहज है कि आधुनिक-सा लगता है। ऋतुवर्णन में इनका सादृश्य विधान मौलिक है। वर्षा का यह वर्णन देखिए –

सेनापति उनए नए जलद सावन के,
चारिह दिसान घुमरत भरे तोय कै।
सोभा सरसाने न बखाने जात कैहूँ भाँति,
आने हैं पहार मानो काजर कै ढोय कै।
घन सो गगन छप्यो तिमिर सघन भयो,
देखि न परत मनो रवि गयो खोय कै।
चारि मास भरि स्याम निसा को भरम मानि,
मेरे जानि याही तें रहत हरि सोय कै।

देव (1673-1767 ई.)

देव अनेक आश्रयदाताओं के यहाँ रहे और उनकी रुचि के अनुकूल रचनाएँ कीं। इनके रचे ग्रंथों की संख्या काफी है, उनमें कुछ इस प्रकार हैं : **भावविलास, भवानीविलास, रसविलास, सुखसागर तरंग, अष्टयाम, प्रेमचंद्रिका, काव्यरसायन।**

देव रीति काल के श्रेष्ठ कवियों में से हैं। इनकी तुलना बिहारी से की गई है। देव ने भी लक्षण-ग्रंथ लिखे हैं। अतः इन्हें भी रीति काल के आचार्य कवियों की कोटि में रखा जा सकता है। किंतु देव मूलतः आचार्य नहीं, कवि ही थे।

देव में मौलिक रचनाकार की प्रतिभा और सहृदयता प्रचुर मात्रा में थी। लोकप्रियता की दृष्टि से वे बिहारी से बहुत पीछे नहीं हैं। देव की काव्य-भूमि बिहारी से कहीं अधिक व्यापक है। इन्होंने प्रकृति के क्रियाकलाप को देखकर अनेक उत्तम रूपक बाँधे हैं –

डार द्रुम पालना बिछौना नव पल्लव के,
सुमन झिंगूला सोहै तन छवि भारी दे।
पवन झुलावै, केकी-कीर बहरावैं देव,
कोकिल हलावै-हुलसावै कर तारी दै।
पूरित पराग सों उतारो करे राई लोन,
कंज कली नायिका लतानि सिर सारी दै।

मदन महीप जू को बालक वसंत ताहि,
प्रातहि जगावत गुलाब चटकारी दै।

देव में उत्कृष्ट बिंब विधान पाया जाता है। जैसे –

बड़े-बड़े नैनन सों आँसू-भरि-भरि ढरि
गोरो गोरो मुख आज ओरो सो बिलानो जात।

देव काव्य कला के कुशल कवि हैं, किंतु चमत्कार या काव्य रूढ़ियों के आधार पर रचना करने की प्रवृत्ति उनमें बिहारी की अपेक्षा कम है। इसीलिए उनमें चमत्कृत करने की अपेक्षा रमाने की प्रवृत्ति अधिक है।

भूषण (1613-1715 ई.)

भूषण रीति काल के दो प्रसिद्ध कवियों – चिंतामणि और मतिराम के सगे भाई थे। चित्रकूट के सोलंकी राजा रुद्र ने इन्हें 'कवि भूषण' कहा। फिर ये इसी नाम से प्रसिद्ध हुए। वास्तविक नाम कुछ और रहा होगा। ये वीर रस के कवि थे। इन्होंने रीति काल की परंपरा में एक अलंकार ग्रंथ **शिवराज भूषण** भी लिखा है। इनके जो ग्रंथ मिलते हैं; वे इस प्रकार हैं – **शिवराज भूषण, शिवा बावनी, छत्रसाल दसक।**

रीति कालीन कविता का प्रधान स्वर शृंगार का है। भूषण का स्वर वीरता का है। इसलिए ये रीति काल के विशिष्ट कवि हैं, लेकिन भूषण के महत्त्व पर विचार करते समय कुछ और बातों की ओर भी ध्यान जाता है। रीति काल में कुछ अन्य कवियों ने भी वीरता की कविताएँ लिखी हैं, किंतु उनको भूषण जैसी प्रसिद्धि नहीं मिली। इसका प्रमुख कारण यह है कि काव्योत्कर्ष की दृष्टि से वे इस क्षेत्र में भूषण जैसे कवि नहीं हैं। भूषण ने अपनी काव्य पंक्तियों में अनेक ऐतिहासिक तथ्यों का उल्लेख किया है, जैसे – अफ़जल खाँ का शिवाजी द्वारा मारा जाना, दारा की औरंगज़ेब द्वारा हत्या, सूरत पर शिवाजी का अधिकार, खजुवा का युद्ध, शिवाजी का औरंगज़ेब के दरबार में जाना आदि। उनका एक प्रसिद्ध कवित्त इस प्रकार है –

इंद्र जिमि जंभ पर, बाडव सुअंभ पर,
रावण सदंभ पर रघुकुलराज हैं।
पौन बारिवाह पर, संभु रतिनाह पर,
ज्यों सहस्रबाहु पर राम द्विजराज हैं।

दावा द्रुम दंड पर, चीता मृग झुंड पर,
भूषण वितुंड पर जैसे मृगराज हैं।
तेज तम अंस पर, कान्ह जिमि कंस पर,
त्यों म्लेच्छ वँस पर सेर सिवराज हैं।

मतिराम (1603-1701 ई.)

मतिराम रीति काल के प्रसिद्ध आचार्य कवि हैं। उनके ग्रंथों के नाम हैं – **छंदसार, रसराज, साहित्य सार, लक्षण शृंगार** और **ललित ललाम**। **रसराज** और **ललित ललाम** उनके यश के आधार ग्रंथ हैं।

मतिराम रीति काल में भाषा की प्रवाहमयता और भाव की सहजता के प्रतिमान हैं। उनकी शैली इतनी सहज है कि उनकी कविता अन्य रीति कालीन कवियों से अलग लगती है। वे रीति काल में व्याप्त चमत्कारिकता से लगभग अछूते रचनाकार हैं। उनकी भाव-योजना बिलकुल सीधी होती है। वे बात को घुमाकर कहने में विश्वास नहीं करते। वे काव्य रूढ़ियों का कम-से-कम प्रयोग करते हैं। लक्षण ग्रंथों के रचयिता होने के बावजूद उनके काव्य में अलंकृत पदयोजना बहुत कम मिलती है। उनकी काव्यगत सहजता का एक उदाहरण है –

क्यों इन आँखिन सो निहसंक ह्वै मोहन को तन पानिप पीजै।
नेकु निहारे कलंक लगै, यही गाँव बसे कहु कैसे के जीजै।।
होत रहे मन यों, मतिराम कहूँ बन जाय बड़ो तप कीजै।
ह्वै वनमाल हिए लगिए अरु ह्वै मुरली अधरा-रस पीजै।।

पद्माकर (1753-1833 ई.)

पद्माकर का जन्म बाँदा में हुआ था। ये रीति काल के अत्यंत प्रसिद्ध एवं लोकप्रिय कवि हैं। ये अनेक गुणग्राहकों के द्वारा सम्मानित किए गए। सुगरा, सतारा, जयपुर, ग्वालियर के दरबारों में इनका आदर हुआ। बाँदा और अवध के नवाबों के सेना अधिकारी हिम्मत बहादुर के नाम पर इन्होंने **हिम्मत बहादुर बिरुदावली** लिखी। इनके द्वारा रचित कुछ अन्य ग्रंथ इस प्रकार हैं – **जगद्विनोद, पद्माभरण, प्रबोध पचासा, राम रसायन, गंगा लहरी**। **जगद्विनोद** लक्षण ग्रंथ है।

पद्माकर भी मतिराम के समान भाषा और भाव की प्रवाहमयी सहजता के कारण लोकप्रिय हैं, किंतु पद्माकर की कविता शृंगार, भक्ति और वीरता तीनों भूमियों पर समान अधिकार के साथ रस का संचार करती है। विभिन्न भावों के अनुरूप भाषा को सहज तौर पर ढाल लेने में ये सिद्ध थे। शुक्ल जी के शब्दों में, "इनकी भाषा में वह अनेकरूपता है जो एक बड़े कवि में होनी चाहिए। भाषा की ऐसी अनेकरूपता गोस्वामी तुलसीदास में दिखाई पड़ती है। पद्माकर के काव्य में कहीं-कहीं विदग्धता भी मिलती है लेकिन वह कविता के केंद्रीय भाव में ढल जाती है। पद्माकर में बिहारी की तरह समुचित बाह्य चेष्टाओं की योजना द्वारा आंतरिक भाव को व्यंजित करने की प्रतिभा थी। इनमें चमत्कार प्रियता नहीं के बराबर मिलती है।"

पद्माकर की वीर रस की कविताओं में भूषण की तरह ही वीरोचित ओज तो है, किंतु भाषा व्यवस्थित बनी रहती है। पद्माकर की **गंगा लहरी** में एक शांति चाहने वाले मन की और गंगा के माहात्म्य पर अटूट श्रद्धा दिखलाई पड़ती है। पद्माकर के काव्य में बुंदेलखंड की प्रकृति का सजीव चित्रण हुआ है। पद्माकर के काव्य की विशेषता भावों को व्यंजित करने में समर्थ सजीव चित्र खींच देने में है। नीचे दिए हुए सवैए से इस कथन की पुष्टि हो जाएगी –

फागु की भीर अभीरिन में गहि गोबिंदै लै गई भीतर गोरी,
भाइ करी मन की पद्माकर ऊपर नाई अबीर की झोरी।
छीनि पितंबर कम्मर तें सु विदा दई मीड़ि कपोलन रोरी,
नैन नचाय कही मुसुकाय 'लला फिरि आइयो खेलन होरी'।

गंग (16वीं शताब्दी)

गंग अकबर के दरबारी कवि थे। ये रहीम के मित्र थे। गंग का व्यक्तित्त्व भारतीय साहित्य में अनुपम है। इनका कोई ग्रंथ नहीं मिलता। लेकिन समकालीन और परवर्ती कवियों ने इनका नाम अत्यंत सम्मान से लिया है। कहा गया है कि 'तुलसी गंग दुओ भए कवियन के सरदार' इसी से कवि समाज के बीच इनके स्थान का अनुमान किया जा सकता है। इनकी कविताएँ प्रधानतः शृंगार की ही हैं। दरबार में थे ही इसलिए, उनके काव्य में विदग्धता भी थी। कुल मिलाकर अपनी रचना पद्धति से ये रीति काल के ही कवि ठहरते हैं। गंग का एक कवित्त इस प्रकार है –

झुकत कृपान मैदान ज्यों उदोत भानु एकन ते एक मानो सुषमा जरद की।
कहै कवि गंग तेरे बल को बयारि लगे, फूटी गजघटा ज्यों सरद की।।
एते मान सोनित की नदियाँ उमड़ि चलीं रही न निसानी कहूँ महि में गरद की।
गौरी गह्यो गिरिपति गनपति गह्यो गौरी, गौरीपति गहि पूछ लपकि बरद की।।

प्रमुख रीतिसिद्ध कवि

बिहारी (1600-1663 ई.)

बिहारी रीति काल के प्रसिद्ध एवं लोकप्रिय कवि हैं। वे रीति काव्य के प्रतिनिधि कवि कहे जा सकते हैं। उनकी रचना में काव्य रीति रची-बसी है। वे जयपुर के मिर्ज़ा राजा जयसिंह के दरबारी कवि थे। वहाँ उनका अच्छा सम्मान था।

बिहारी के यश का आधार **सतसई** है। इतना कम लिखकर इतना अधिक यश कम साहित्यकारों को मिला होगा। **बिहारी सतसई** की लोकप्रियता का यह हाल है कि इसकी पचासों टीकाएँ लिखी जा चुकी हैं और यह काम अभी बंद नहीं हुआ है। बिहारी मूलतः श्रृंगार के कवि हैं। यद्यपि उन्होंने भक्ति और नीति के भी मार्मिक दोहे रचे हैं।

बिहारी के श्रृंगारी दोहों में सामंती जीवन का वैभव-विलास ही चित्रित नहीं है, वे सामान्य गृहस्थ के दैनिक जीवन के भी सरस चित्र खींचते हैं। उन्होंने देवर, भाभी, जेठ, ननद, सास, पड़ोसिन, वैद्य, ज्योतिषी, खेत, बाग, सरोवर सब के संदर्भ में श्रृंगार के सरस चित्र खींचे हैं। बिहारी का विषय सीमित है, लेकिन आधार फलक सीमित नहीं। बिहारी बहुज्ञ थे और उन्होंने अपनी विस्तृत जानकारी का उपयोग अपनी रचना में किया है। एकाध दोहों में उन्होंने सामंतों को ठीक मार्ग पर चलने या नीति के पालन का उपदेश भी दिया है।

बिहारी नायक-नायिकाओं की चेष्टाओं का वर्णन निहायत सधे ढंग से करते हैं। इस बहुचर्चित दोहे में उनकी यह निपुणता देखी जा सकती है-

बतरस लालच लाल की, मुरली धरी लुकाइ।
सौंह करे भौंहन हँसे, दैन कहै नटि जाइ।।

बिहारी के एकाध दोहे ऐसे भी हैं जो उनके अनुरागी चित्त की सहज अभिव्यक्ति हैं, जैसे–

सघन कुंज छाया सुखद, सीतल मंद समीर।
मन ह्वै जात अजौं बहै, वा जमुना के तीर।।

लेकिन यह निरलंकृति बिहारी के यहाँ सुलभ नहीं है। वे मूलतः उस दरबारी विदग्धता के कवि हैं जो उस समय हिंदी और उर्दू साहित्य के सामंताश्रित कवियों के यहाँ मिलती है।

प्रमुख रीतिमुक्त कवि

घनानंद (1673-1760 ई.)

सुजान सागर तथा **सुजान संबोधन** के आधार पर किंवदंती है कि घनानंद सुजान नामक नर्तकी से प्रेम करते थे। वे दिल्ली के बादशाह मुहम्मद शाह के मीर मुंशी थे। प्रसिद्ध है कि मुहम्मद शाह ने नाराज़ होकर उन्हें दरबार से निकाल दिया। विरक्त होकर वे वृंदावन चले गए और वैष्णव होकर काव्य रचना करने लगे। मृत्यु के समय भी वे सुजान को नहीं भूले। कहते हैं मरते समय उन्होंने अपने रक्त से कवित्त लिखा–

बहुत दिनान की अवधि आस पास परे,
खरे अरबरनि परे हैं उठ जान को।
कहि-कहि आवन छबीले मनभावन को,
गहि गहि राखत ही दै दै सनमान को।।
झूठि बतियानि की पत्यानि तें उदास ह्वै कै,
अब ना घिरत घन आनंद निदान को।
अधर लगे हैं आनि करि कै पयान प्रान,
चाहत चलन ये संदेसो लै सुजान को।

घनानंद के प्रमुख ग्रंथ हैं– **सुजान सागर, विरहलीला, कोकसार, रसकेलि वल्ली** और **कृपाकांड।**

घनानंद प्रेम की मस्ती, विशेषतः वियोग शृंगार के कवि हैं। शुक्ल जी के अनुसार "प्रेम-मार्ग का एक ऐसा प्रवीण और धीर पथिक तथा ज़बाँदानी का ऐसा दावा रखने वाला ब्रजभाषा का दूसरा कवि नहीं हुआ।"

वे प्रेम के गंभीर कवि हैं। वियोग में सच्चा प्रेमी जो वेदना सहता है, उसके चित्त में जो विभिन्न तरंगें उठती हैं, उनका चित्रण घनानंद ने किया है। घनानंद वियोग-दशा का चित्रण करते समय अलंकारों, रूढ़ियों का सहारा लेने नहीं दौड़ते, वे बाह्य चेष्टाओं पर भी कम ध्यान देते हैं। वे आखों में उजाड़ बसे रहने की बात कहते हैं –

उजरनि बसी है हमारी अँखियानि देखो

शुक्ल जी ने देखा था कि घनानंद ने प्रेम की अनिर्वचनीयता की व्यंजना विरोध मूलक वैचित्र्य की प्रवृत्ति के आधार पर की है, जैसे –

झूठ की सचाई छाक्यो, त्यो हित कचाई पाक्यों,
ढकी उघरति है, खोयबो लहत हैं।

घनानंद पर सूफ़ियों का प्रभाव भी देखा जाता है –

कान्ह परे बहुतायत में इकलैन की बेदन जानो कहा तुम

घनानंद पढ़े-लिखे काव्य-कला मर्मज्ञ कवि थे। फ़ारसी अवश्य जानते रहे होंगे। उनकी काव्य पंक्तियों में संगीतात्मकता है जैसे, इस पंक्ति में मृदंग की ध्वनि –

आनंद निधान सुखदानि दुखियान दै।

आलम (18वीं शताब्दी)

आलम का काव्य ही नहीं जीवन भी स्वच्छंद एवं मुक्त था। ये ब्राह्मण थे, पर शेख नामक रंगरेजिन से विवाह कर लिया। शेख रंगरेजिन स्वयं सुकवयित्री थी और इनसे आलम का प्रेम कविता के कारण हुआ। शेख की काव्य चातुरी और वाग्विदग्धता के विषय में अनेक जनश्रुतियाँ प्रचलित हैं। कवि आलम औरंगज़ेब के पुत्र मुअज़्ज़म के आश्रय में रहते थे। उनकी कविताओं के संग्रह का नाम **आलम केलि** है। उसमें आलम के साथ शेख के भी कवित्त हैं। मध्य युग में कला के क्षेत्र में किसी दंपति में इतनी एकमेकता कम दिखाई पड़ती है।

आलम की कविता के उत्कर्ष का आधार सीधे जीवन से स्थितियाँ उतारकर उनकी मार्मिक योजना कर देने में है। वे प्रायः काव्य के क्षेत्र में प्रचलित रूढ़ियों का सहारा नहीं लेते। जिस प्रकार वे जीवन में व्यर्थ बोझ उतार फेंक सके थे, उसी प्रकार काव्य में वे केवल सार्थक वक्तव्य के सहारे मार्मिकता पैदा कर सकते थे –

जा थल कीनें बिहार अनेकन ता थल काँकरी बैठि चुन्यो करैं।
जा रसना सौं करी बहुबातन ता रसनासों चरित्र गुन्यो करैं।

बोधा (18वीं शताब्दी)

बोधा राजापुर ज़िला बाँदा के रहने वाले थे। 18वीं शती के उत्तरार्ध और 19वीं शती के प्रारंभिक काल में ये विद्यमान थे। इन्होंने अपने जीवन में प्रेम और विरह का दंड और सुख भोगा था जो इनकी कविता में प्रकट है। कहते हैं कि पन्ना दरबार की सुभान या सुबहान नामक नर्तकी से इन्हें प्रेम था और **विरहबारीश** उसी से संबंधित है। **विरहबारीश** के अतिरिक्त इनकी एक रचना **इश्कनामा** मिलती है।

बोधा रसोन्मत्त कवि थे। 'प्रेम पीर' की व्यंजना इनके काव्य में भी मिलती है। ये मन की उमंग पर कविता करते थे और मन की बात कहने में चूकते नहीं थे। इसलिए इनकी कविता में कहीं-कहीं ऐसी पंक्तियाँ भी मिलती हैं जो इनका अक्खड़पन और अनंत तेजस्वी स्वभाव प्रकट करती हैं। इसके साथ ही साथ वे दरबारी कवियों के चरित्र के भिन्न और विपरीत कवि स्वभाव को भी प्रकट करती हैं –

दाता कहा सूर कहा सुंदर सुजान कहा
आपको न चाहै ताके बाप को न चाहिए।

प्रेम मन की कितनी स्थितियों का समुच्चय है, इसे बोधा ने इस सवैये में व्यक्त किया है –

कबहूँ मिलिबो कबहूँ मिलिबो यह धीरज ही मैं धरैबो करै,
उर ते कढ़ि आवै गरै ते फिरै मन की मन ही मैं सिरैबो करै।
कवि बोधा न चाउ सिरी कबहूँ नितही हरवा सो हिरैबो करै,
सहते न बनै कहते न बनै मन ही मन पीर पिरैबौ करै।

ठाकुर (1774-1823 ई.)

ठाकुर के पूर्वज काकोरी (अवध) के निवासी थे। इनका जन्म ओरछा में हुआ। इनके बारे में प्रसिद्ध है कि सामंत हिम्मत बहादुर के अपमान करने पर इन्होंने उनकी सभा में ही म्यान से तलवार निकाल ली थी और यह कवित्त पढ़ा था –

सेवक सिपाही हम उन रजपूतन के
दान जुद्ध जुरिबे में नेकु जे न मुरके।
नीति देनवारे हैं मही के महिपालन को,
हिये के विसुद्ध हैं, सनेही साँचे उर के।

ठाकुर कहत हम बैरी बेवकूफ़न के,
जलिम दमाद है अदानियाँ ससुर के।
चोजिन के चोजी महा, मौजिन के महाराज,
हम कविराज हैं, वे चाकर चतुर के।

ठाकुर कविता को हृदय की सच्ची उमंग की अनुभूति मानते थे। इसीलिए उन्होंने लिखा कि मीन, मृग, खंजन जैसे उपमानों का प्रयोग सीख लेने से कविता नहीं आती। उनका कहना था कि कविता की बात बहुत बड़ी होती है, लोग सभी के बीच कविता ऐसे गिराते हैं मानो ढेला। लोगों ने कविता करना खेल समझ रखा है –

ढेल सो बनाय आय मेलत सभा के बीच लोगन
कवित्त कीन्हों खेल करि जान्यो है।

ठाकुर का तेवर अत्यंत मानवीय, करुण, कोमल, सूक्ष्म एवं संवेदनशील है। ठाकुर रीति काल के उन दुर्लभ कवियों में से हैं जिनकी प्रेम की अनुभूति आधुनिक हैं –

वा निरमोहिनी रूप की रासि जऊ उर हेतु न ठानति ह्वै है।
बारहिं बार बिलोकि घरी घरी सूरति तौ पहिचानति ह्वै है।
ठाकुर या मन की परतीति है जो पै सनेह न मानति ह्वै है।
आवत है नित मेरे लिए इतनो तो विसेष कै जानति ह्वै है।

प्रकृति के प्रेम के रंग में डूबकर स्वयं राधा कृष्ण के प्रेम का प्रतीक बन जाने का यह चित्रण कलाकारी नहीं, चराचर में व्याप्त प्रेम की सत्ता की भावना से संभव हुआ –

सखी कारी घटा बरसे बरसाने पै गोरी घटा नंदगाँव पै री।

गुरु गोविंद सिंह (1666-1708 ई.)

गुरु गोविंद सिंह का व्यक्तित्व बहुआयामी था। वे मध्यकालीन सांस्कृतिक एवं सामाजिक चेतना के प्रतीक थे। वे योद्धा, संत, राजनीतिक, कवि, प्रशासक सब कुछ थे।

गुरु गोविंद सिंह द्वारा रचित अनेक ग्रंथ बताए जाते हैं। इनकी रचनाओं के संग्रह का नाम **दशम ग्रंथ** है। इसमें 16 रचनाएँ संकलित हैं। इन्होंने पंजाबी, फ़ारसी और हिंदी (ब्रजभाषा) में काव्य रचना की है। इनका संप्रदाय देखते हुए इन्हें निर्गुण कवि होना चाहिए, किंतु इन्होंने देवी-देवताओं और सगुण रूप से संबंधित रचनाएँ भी की हैं। **चंडीचरित्र** इनकी विशिष्ट साहित्यिक रचना है। इसकी शैली ओज़स्विनी है। गुरु जी

की रचनाओं में वीर रस प्रधान है, यद्यपि इनकी मुख्य भूमि भक्ति है। **चौबीस अवतार** नामक रचना में शृंगार का भी पर्याप्त रंग दिखलाई पड़ता है। गुरु जी काव्यरीति के मर्मज्ञ थे। रीति काल में इनका व्यक्तित्व और कृतित्व अनुपम है। हिंदी में भक्तजनों का भक्ति काव्य तो प्रचुर मात्रा में उपलब्ध है, किंतु वीरजनों द्वारा रचित वीर काव्य नहीं मिलता। इस दृष्टि से गुरु गोविंद सिंह के काव्य का विशिष्ट महत्त्व है –

बीरबली सरदार दयैत सु क्रोध कै म्यान तै खड्ग निकारौ।
एक दयो तन चंडि प्रचंड कै दूसर के हरि के सिर झारौ।
चंडि सम्हारि तबे बलु धारि लयौ गहि नारि धरा पर मारौ।
ज्यों धुबिया सरिता-तट जाइकैं लै पट को पट साथ पछारौ।

रीति काल की सामान्य प्रवृत्तियाँ

रीति काल में अनेक प्रवृत्तियाँ मिलती हैं। इस काल में भक्ति, नीति, वैराग्य, वीरता के अनेक अच्छे कवि हुए हैं।

रीति कालीन काव्य अधिकांशतः दरबारों में लिखा गया, अतः उनकी रुचि का ध्यान रखकर काव्य रचने वाले कवियों में शृंगारपरकता अनिवार्य थी। उधर भक्ति में धार्मिकता और लोकोन्मुखता का आवेश कम होने पर शृंगार बचा रहा। कवियों ने राधा-कृष्ण का नाम लेकर आश्रयदाताओं की शृंगार लीलाओं का वर्णन करना प्रारंभ कर दिया। "आगे के सुकवि रीझि हैं तो कविताई नाहिं तौ राधा-कन्हाई को सुमिरन को बहानो है" – रीति कालीन कवियों का आदर्श वाक्य था। शृंगार की प्रधानता के कारण कुछ लोग इसे शृंगार काल कहना उचित समझते हैं। किंतु इस काल की प्रधान साहित्यिक प्रवृत्ति रीति ही थी क्योंकि भूषण जैसे वीर रस के कवि ने भी रीतिग्रंथ की रचना की है। अतः रीति में वीर रस के कवि भूषण आ जाते हैं। शृंगार कहने से ऐसे कवि छूटकर अलग जा पड़ते हैं।

इस काल में कहने को यद्यपि कुछ प्रबंध काव्य जैसे – केशवदास का **वीरसिंह देवजू चरित** भी लिखे गए, किंतु प्रधानता मुक्तक की रही। इस काल के प्रबंध काव्य वस्तुतः आदि काल की परंपरा का निर्वाह मात्र हैं। कवित्त, सवैया, दोहा, कुंडलियाँ – इस काल के बहु प्रयुक्त छंद हैं। इस काल की भाषा ब्रजभाषा थी। ब्रजभाषा का रूप यद्यपि सभी कवियों के यहाँ व्यवस्थित नहीं मिलता, किंतु मतिराम, पद्माकर में वह पर्याप्त

व्यवस्थित है। विषयवस्तु की दृष्टि से इस काल की कविता बहुत सीमित है। प्रधानतः शृंगार और उसमें भी नायिका भेद ही मिलता है। किंतु रीतिपरक सूक्तियाँ भी दिखलाई पड़ती हैं। रहीम, वृंद, गिरधर की नीतिपरक रचनाएँ बहुत लोकप्रिय रहीं। इसी प्रकार भक्ति की रचनाएँ भी दिखलाई पड़ती हैं।

रीति काल में काव्य-विवेचन काव्य रचना का निमित्त मात्र है। इससे काव्यशास्त्र का विकास नहीं हुआ। अतः रीति काल के तथाकथित आचार्यों द्वारा हिंदी के काव्यशास्त्र की नींव नहीं पड़ी। उस समय गद्य का विकास नहीं हुआ था। कदाचित गद्य का अभाव वास्तविक काव्यांग निरूपण न हो पाने का कारण है।

इस काल में सरस मनोरम मुक्तक प्रभूत संख्या में लिखे गए। इस काल की कविता की प्रधान प्रवृत्ति किसी भी दार्शनिक विचारधारा से मुक्त है, इसीलिए कुछ लोग उसे 'शुद्ध साहित्य' या 'शुद्ध काव्य' भी कहना उचित समझते हैं। रीति कालीन मुक्तकों की लोकप्रियता का ही यह प्रमाण है कि जिस प्रकार संस्कृत के सुभाषितों का संकलन होता था, उसी प्रकार रीति कालीन मुक्तकों के संकलन ग्रंथों की भी परंपरा चली। कालिदास (रीति कालीन कवि) ने **कालिदास हजारा** में और भारतेंदु ने **सुंदरी तिलक** में रीति कालीन मुक्तकों का संकलन किया है।

रीतिबद्ध और रीतिसिद्ध काव्य प्रधानतः दरबारी काव्य है। इस काव्य पर आश्रयदाताओं की रुचियों और कवियों की आश्रयदाता से पुरस्कार पाने की आशा का प्रभाव है। यह प्रधानतः मुक्तक काव्य है।

इस काव्य की रचना में काव्यरीति का पूरा प्रभाव है, फिर भी यह काव्य केवल आश्रयदाता सामंतों की प्रेम लीलाओं का ही चित्रण नहीं करता बल्कि सामान्य गृहस्थ के भी जीवन का चित्रण करता है।

इस काव्य की भाषा ब्रजभाषा है। कवित्त, सवैये इसके प्रधान छंद हैं। बिहारी ने अपनी कविताओं का जौहर दोहों में प्रकट किया है।

रीतिमुक्त कवि दरबारी कवि नहीं हैं। घनानंद जैसे कवि ने दरबार छोड़कर प्रेम की कविताएँ लिखीं हैं। इन कवियों ने सहज और स्वाभाविक प्रेम का चित्रण, विशेषतः विरह की मार्मिक मनोभूमियों का चित्रण किया है। इसीलिए इनकी कविताओं में सूफ़ियों जैसी विरह की उत्कटता मिलती है।

रीति काल की प्रमुख काव्य प्रवृत्ति अर्थात काव्यरीति को ध्यान में रखकर नायिका भेद आदि का वर्णन तो आगे बहुत दिनों तक चलता रहा। अभी भी वह पूरा समाप्त नहीं हुआ है। बात यह है कि इस प्रकार के मुक्तकों की रचना और श्रवण का चाव हिंदी भाषी जनजीवन में अपनी गहरी जड़ें जमा चुका था, इसीलिए आधुनिक युग के प्रवर्तन के उपरांत भी ब्रजभाषा काव्य-परंपरा पूरे जोश के साथ बहुत दिनों तक प्रवाहित होती रही।

किंतु इस विषय में एक बात का ध्यान रखना आवश्यक है। सारा ब्रजभाषा काव्य काव्यरीति धारा में बद्ध नहीं है। उदाहरण के लिए भारतेंदु ब्रजभाषा का उपयोग रीतिवादी परंपरा में भी करते हैं और आधुनिकता-बोधक रचनाओं में भी। ब्रजभाषा में रीतिवादी काव्य की उल्लेखनीय परंपरा बीसवीं शताब्दी तक सत्यनारायण 'कविरत्न' (1859-1918 ई.) और बाबू जगन्नाथ दास रत्नाकर बी.ए. (1866-1932 ई.) तक मिलती है।

अध्याय 4

आधुनिक काल (1850 –)

खड़ी बोली गद्य का विकास

आधुनिक काल को गद्य युग कहा जाता है। इसका कारण यह है कि आधुनिक काल में गद्य का महत्त्व बहुत बढ़ गया है। विचारों को प्रकट करने के लिए पद्य की अपेक्षा गद्य अधिक समर्थ माध्यम होता है।

मुगल काल के अंतिम दौर में खड़ी-बोली गद्य में फ़ारसी का प्रयोग बढ़ने लगा था। जैसे आजकल लोग अपनी सामाजिक मर्यादा का प्रदर्शन करने के लिए हिंदी बोलते समय अंग्रेज़ी शब्दों का प्रयोग करते हैं, वैसे ही उस काल में फ़ारसी का प्रयोग करने लगे होंगे। इससे स्वाभाविक खड़ी बोली की भाषा की उर्दू शैली का जन्म हुआ।

1803 ई. में फोर्ट विलियम कॉलेज कोलकाता के हिंदी-उर्दू अध्यापक जान गिल-क्राइस्ट ने हिंदी और उर्दू दोनों में गद्य पुस्तकें तैयार कराईं। इसी कॉलेज के लल्लूलाल ने खड़ी बोली गद्य में **प्रेमसागर** और सदल मिश्र ने **नासिकेतोपाख्यान** लिखा। इसके दो वर्ष पूर्व मुंशी सदासुखलाल ने **ज्ञानोपदेश** की एक पुस्तक और उर्दू के प्रसिद्ध कवि इंशा अल्लाखाँ ने **रानी केतकी की कहानी** लिखी थी। यह सारा लेखन 1803 ई. के आस-पास हुआ। आधुनिक खड़ी बोली के ये महानुभाव प्रारंभिक लेखक हैं। इनका संक्षिप्त परिचय यहाँ दिया जा रहा है –

मुंशी सदासुख लाल 'नियाज़' (1746-1824 ई.)

ये दिल्ली के रहने वाले थे और उर्दू-फ़ारसी के भी लेखक थे। इन्होंने **सुखसागर** लिखा था और एक ज्ञानोपदेश वाली पुस्तक जिसका उल्लेख हो चुका है। इनकी भाषा सहज

एवं प्रवाहमयी है। कथा वाचकों, पंडितों और साधु-संतों में प्रचलित शैली का प्रभाव इनकी खड़ी बोली के गद्य पर है, किंतु इससे भाषा की सहजता पर आँच नहीं आई है।

इंशाअल्ला खाँ (1756-1817 ई.)

ये उर्दू के प्रसिद्ध कवि थे। इन्होंने **उदयभान चरित** या **रानी केतकी की कहानी** खड़ी बोली गद्य में लिखी। इनकी भाषा काफी अलंकृत, चुटीली और मुहावरेदार है। बात यह है कि उन दिनों कहानी कहने या किस्सागोई की कला काफी प्रचलित थी। इंशाअल्ला खाँ के गद्य पर इस किस्सागोई की शैली का प्रभाव है। गद्य के बीच-बीच में पद्य जैसी तुकबंदी उन दिनों के उर्दू गद्य-लेखन में मिलती है। वह लल्लूलाल के यहाँ भी है और इंशाअल्ला खाँ के यहाँ भी। उदाहरण के लिए यह पंक्ति –

यह कैसी चाहत जिसमें लहू बरसने लगा और अच्छी बातों को जी तरसने लगा।

लल्लूलाल जी (1763-1825 ई.)

इन्होंने खड़ी बोली गद्य में **प्रेमसागर** लिखा। अरबी-फ़ारसी के जो शब्द खड़ी बोली में घुलमिल गए, उनको भी इन्होंने अपने गद्य में स्वीकार नहीं किया। इनकी भाषा के विषय में शुक्ल जी का वक्तव्य सटीक है – "भाषा की सजावट भी **प्रेमसागर** में पूरी है। विरामों पर तुकबंदी के अतिरिक्त वर्णनों में वाक्य भी बड़े-बड़े आए हैं और अनुप्रास भी यत्र-तत्र हैं। मुहावरों का प्रयोग कम है।"

सदलमिश्र (19वीं शताब्दी का प्रारंभ)

इन्होंने लल्लूलाल जी की तरह फोर्ट विलियम कॉलेज के लिए खड़ी बोली गद्य की पुस्तक तैयार की। इनकी पुस्तक का नाम है **नासिकेतोपाख्यान**। इनकी भाषा में पूरबीपन है। ये आरा (बिहार) के रहने वाले थे। इनकी भाषा व्यवहारोपयोगी है।

खड़ी बोली गद्य के इन चारों प्रारंभिक लेखकों में मुंशी सदासुखलाल 'नियाज़' का गद्य अधिक व्यवस्थित और व्यवहारोपयोगी है। रामप्रसाद निरंजनी के **भाषा योग वाशिष्ठ** की ही परंपरा में उनका गद्य है।

गद्य का विकास करने में ईसाई मिशनरियों का भी बहुत बड़ा हाथ है। गद्य के विकास में छापाखानों (प्रेस) की बहुत बड़ी भूमिका है। छापाखानों के बिना इतनी

अधिक संख्या में पुस्तकें मुद्रित नहीं हो सकती थीं। पत्र-पत्रिकाओं के प्रकाशित होने की तो कल्पना भी नहीं की जा सकती थी।

अंग्रेज़ी की शिक्षा के प्रसार के साथ-साथ हिंदी, उर्दू की भी पढ़ाई की व्यवस्था सरकार ने की। इसके लिए पुस्तकों के प्रकाशन की भी व्यवस्था हुई। 1833 ई. के आस-पास आगरा में स्कूल बुक सोसाइटी की स्थापना हुई, जिसने **कथासार** नामक पुस्तक प्रकाशित कराई। 1840 ई. में **भूगोलसार** और 1847 ई. में **रसायन प्रकाश** छपा। इस तरह हिंदी गद्य में पाठ्यपुस्तकों का प्रकाशन प्रारंभ हुआ।

विकास विरोध के बिना नहीं होता। यह बात हिंदी गद्य के विकास पर भी लागू होती है। ईसाई धर्म के प्रचार का प्रभाव हिंदू जनता पर पड़ रहा था। ऐसी स्थिति में हिंदू जनता को उस प्रभाव से बचाने का प्रयास होना अनिवार्य था। इस तरह हिंदी गद्य में धार्मिक खंडन-मंडन की प्रवृत्ति प्रारंभ हुई। बंगाल में राजा राममोहन राय इस कार्य में आगे बढ़े। 1815 ई. में उन्होंने **वेदांतसूत्र** का हिंदी गद्य में अनुवाद प्रकाशित कराया। 1829 ई. में उन्होंने **बंगदूत** नामक पत्र भी हिंदी में निकाला। इसके 3 वर्ष पहले 1826 ई. में कानपुर के पं. जुगल किशोर ने हिंदी का पहला समाचार पत्र **उदंत मार्त्तंड** कोलकाता से निकाला। यह विचित्र संयोग था कि हिंदी के प्रारंभिक समाचार-पत्र हिंदी क्षेत्र से नहीं, उसके बाहर कोलकाता से निकले। यह भी ध्यान देने की बात है कि राजा राममोहन राय जैसे महान् देशभक्त और समाज-सुधारक ने हिंदी गद्य का अखिल भारतीय महत्त्व समझा। हिंदी के प्रथम समाचार-पत्र के गद्य का नमूना इस प्रकार है।

> **'यह उदंत मार्त्तंड अब पहिले-पहल हिंदुस्तानियों के हित के हेत जो आज तक किसी ने नहीं चलाया, पर अंग्रेज़ी ओ फ़ारसी ओ बंगला में जो समाचार का कागज़ छपता है उसका सुख उन बोलियों के जानने और पढ़ने वालों को ही होता है।'**

समाचार-पत्रों की भाषा यथासंभव रूढ़ियों से मुक्त व्यवहारोपयोगी होती है।

1845 ई. में राजा शिवप्रसाद 'सितारे हिंद' ने काशी से **बनारस अखबार** निकाला। इसकी लिपि देवनागरी थी लेकिन भाषा उर्दू की ओर झुकी हुई। बनारस से ही 1850 ई. में **सुधाकर** निकला। राजा लक्ष्मण सिंह ने 1860 ई. में आगरा से **प्रजा हितैषी** नामक पत्र निकाला। 1863 ई. में आगरा से **लोक मित्र** निकला। 1867 ई. में नवीन चंद्र ने **ज्ञान प्रदायिनी पत्रिका** का प्रकाशन प्रारंभ किया। कहने का आशय यह है कि हिंदी

क्षेत्र में वैचारिक विविधता का रूप पत्र-पत्रिकाओं के माध्यम से सामने आने लगा। इससे हिंदी जीवन-व्यवहार की भाषा के रूप में तेज़ी से विकसित होने लगी।

1837 ई. में तत्कालीन संयुक्त प्रांत (उत्तर प्रदेश) के सब दफ़्तरों की भाषा उर्दू कर दी गई। इसका प्रभाव यह पड़ा कि शिक्षित होने का व्यवहार में अर्थ हो गया उर्दू दाँ होना। हिंदी केवल धर्म-कथा, पुराणों को सुनने-सुनाने और स्त्रियों के लिए व्रत-त्योहार की भाषा बनकर रह गई। उर्दू के समर्थन में गार्सा द तासी और सर सैयद अहमद ने बहुत प्रयास किया। हिंदी के लिए उद्योग करने वालों में फ्रेडरिक पिंकाट का नाम सदैव स्मरणीय रहेगा। शिक्षा विभाग के अधिकारी राजा शिवप्रसाद 'सितारे हिंद' प्रारंभ में हिंदी के समर्थक थे, किंतु बाद में उर्दू के पक्षधर हो गए। इस युग में राजा लक्ष्मण सिंह ने **अभिज्ञान शाकुंतलं** और **रघुवंश** के गद्य अनुवाद के माध्यम से हिंदी का प्रांजल रूप सामने लाकर उसका पक्ष सुदृढ़ किया। पंजाब के श्रद्धाराम फुल्लौरी ने 1863 ई. के आस-पास अपने पांडित्यपूर्ण एवं निर्भीक व्याख्यानों और लेखों से हिंदी को बहुत आगे बढ़ाया। इनका **भाग्यवती** (1867 ई.) नामक उपन्यास हिंदी के प्रथम उपन्यास के रूप में प्रसिद्ध है।

स्वामी दयानंद सरस्वती ने 1875 ई. में आर्यसमाज की स्थापना की। वे इसके पूर्व से ही घूम-घूम कर वैदिक धर्म का प्रचार करते थे। उन्होंने अपना प्रसिद्ध ग्रंथ **सत्यार्थप्रकाश** अपने समय को देखते हुए परिमार्जित हिंदी गद्य में लिखा। स्वामी जी गुजराती भाषी थे। इसके पहले हम देख चुके हैं कि बंगाल में राजा राममोहन राय ने हिंदी गद्य का उपयोग किया था और इसी प्रकार पश्चिमोत्तर भारत के गुजराती भाषी स्वामी दयानंद सरस्वती ने हिंदी गद्य को अपने मत-प्रचार का साधन बनाया।

इस प्रकार खड़ी बोली हिंदी गद्य विकसित हो रहा था। यह विकास नई चेतना के प्रसार का माध्यम भी था। इस चेतना का दबाव केवल गद्य नहीं पूरे साहित्य पर पड़ना अनिवार्य था। हिंदी साहित्य में इस नई चेतना का प्रवेश भारतेंदु युग में हुआ।

भारतेंदु युगीन साहित्य (1850-1900 ई.)

भारतेंदु हरिश्चंद्र को हिंदी साहित्य में आधुनिकता का प्रवर्तक साहित्यकार माना जाता है। इसी नई चेतना और आधुनिकता से युक्त होने के कारण हिंदी साहित्य रीतिबद्धता

से मुक्त हुआ। लेकिन हमें यह भी जान लेना चाहिए कि वे कौन-सी परिस्थितियाँ थीं जिनके कारण आधुनिकता का जन्म हुआ। इनका ऐतिहासिक-सामाजिक आधार क्या था?

अंग्रेज़ों का वर्चस्व भारत में 18वीं शती के उत्तरादर्ध से बढ़ गया। उन्होंने भारत के उद्योगों को नष्ट कर दिया। ज़मीन को अपने कब्ज़े में करके किसानों पर लगान का बोझ बहुत बढ़ा दिया। माल को ढोने और सेना को सुदूर प्रदेशों तक जल्दी पहुँचाने के लिए रेल-व्यवस्था कायम की। जहाँ-जहाँ स्वयं अधिकार नहीं कर सके, देशी नरेशों से समझौता किया और उनके द्वारा किए जाने वाले शोषण का समर्थन किया। अपनी लुटेरी व्यापार नीति से भारतीय अर्थ-व्यवस्था के विकास को रोका। इसका परिणाम 1857 ई. का प्रथम स्वतंत्रता संग्राम था। यह संग्राम सेना के अफ़सरों का विद्रोह नहीं था, सामंतों का विद्रोह नहीं था। इसमें किसानों ने हिस्सा लिया था। गैर-सैनिक किसानों ने भी इसमें लड़ाई की। इसका रूप असांप्रदायिक था। विद्रोहियों ने भारत में अंग्रेज़ों की लुटेरी नीति को बहुत अच्छी तरह समझा था। बहादुर शाह के नाम से जो इश्तहार जारी किया गया था उसमें ज़मीदारों, व्यापारियों, सरकारी नौकरों, कारीगरों आदि की स्थिति अलग-अलग बयान की गई है। इसमें व्यापारियों से कहा गया है कि अंग्रेज़ों ने नील, कपड़ा और जहाज़ों में भेजी जाने वाली अन्य वस्तुओं के व्यापार पर एकाधिकार स्थापित किया है। केवल मामूली चीज़ों का व्यापार यहाँ के लोगों के हाथ में रहने दिया है। लेकिन इसमें भी मुनाफ़ा कमाने की बहुत-सी तरकीबें निकाल ली गई हैं। चुंगी वगैरह के ज़रिए व्यापारियों पर वे भारी टैक्स लगाते हैं।

भारतेंदु और उनके मंडल के लेखकों पर इन स्थितियों का प्रभाव है। भारतेंदु को नायिका-भेद, नख-शिख वर्णन, अलंकार आदि कम आकृष्ट करते हैं। वे देश की दशा पर द्रवित होते हैं। इसलिए उनके साहित्य में नई विषयवस्तु जुड़ गई है। यह नई विषयवस्तु देशप्रेम है जो देश के यथार्थ-बोध पर आधारित है। इसमें भाषा, समाज सुधार, पाखंड-उद्घाटन आदि बहुत कुछ हैं, लेकिन इसकी मुख्य विषयवस्तु आर्थिक है। वे आर्थिक विषमता का वर्णन-चित्रण जिस स्वर से करते हैं वह प्रथम स्वतंत्रता संग्राम के नेताओं के स्वर से बहुत मिलता-जुलता है।

भारतेंदु ने आर्थिक विषमता, स्वाधीनता, नारी-शिक्षा, धार्मिक पाखंड, हिंदी भाषा — सब पर अपने विचार प्रकट किए। उनका व्यक्तित्त्व आंदोलनकारी था। वे सच्चे अर्थ में

करुणावान थे। व्यक्ति नहीं संस्था थे, इसीलिए वे नई चेतना के प्रतिनिधि या प्रतीक साहित्यकार बन सके।

19वीं शती में पूरे देश में नवजागरण की लहर दौड़ गई। इस नवजागरण पर देशी परिस्थितियों और यूरोप से संपर्क का प्रभाव है। हिंदी क्षेत्र के नवजागरण पर मुख्यतः अंग्रेज़ों के शोषण, 1857 ई. के स्वतंत्रता संग्राम और राजा राममोहन राय, ईश्वरचंद्र विद्यासागर, रामकृष्ण परमहंस आदि का प्रभाव है। भारतेंदु इस नवजागरण के अग्रदूत थे। उनके समानधर्मा साहित्यकारों की रचनाओं से हिंदी साहित्य में आधुनिकता का प्रवर्तन हुआ। इस आधुनिकता के प्रधानतः तीन लक्षण हैं –

1. साहित्य अपनी संवेदना आस-पास के जीवन से ग्रहण करने लगा।
2. इस युग के साहित्यकारों ने आर्थिक, राजनीतिक, सामाजिक आदि विषमताओं का उद्घाटन किया।
3. रचनाकार अपने साहित्य से इस विषमता को पाटने का प्रयास करने लगे इसलिए आधुनिक साहित्य आनंद के साथ कर्म की प्रेरणा भी देने लगा। साहित्य सामाजिक चेतना से युक्त हो गया। रीतिवादी साहित्य से आधुनिक साहित्य की यही विशेषता थी – जिसका प्रवर्तन भारतेंदु ने किया।

जहाँ पहले जीवन के विविध क्षेत्रों की ओर रचना-दृष्टि नहीं जाती थी, वहाँ जाने लगी। भारतेंदु-युग में अनेक नई गद्य विधाओं का भी प्रारंभ हुआ। पत्र-पत्रिकाओं के माध्यम से सामाजिक विषयों पर विचारों का प्रसार हुआ। संपादकीय और निबंध हिंदी साहित्य में नई वस्तु थी।

भारतेंदु युग के प्रमुख रचनाकार

भारतेंदु हरिश्चंद्र (1850-1885 ई.)

जीवन के अल्प काल में ही भारतेंदु ने साहित्य की बहुत बड़ी सेवा की। उनकी रचनाओं की संख्या काफी है। उन्होंने साहित्य की विविध विधाओं को समृद्ध किया और अनेक विधाओं का प्रवर्तन किया। वे हिंदी साहित्य में आधुनिक युग के प्रवर्तक हुए, यह तो आप देख चुके हैं। 18 वर्ष की आयु में ही उन्होंने बँगला से **विद्यासुंदर** नाटक का हिंदी में अनुवाद किया। 1868 ई. में उन्होंने **कविवचन सुधा** नामक पत्रिका निकाली। इसमें

साहित्यिक रचनाएँ तो होती ही थीं, सामाजिक, आर्थिक, राजनीतिक विचार और टिप्पणियाँ भी होती थीं। इसी पत्रिका में उन्होंने विलायती कपड़ों के बहिष्कार की अपील और ग्राम-गीतों के संकलन की योजना प्रकाशित की थी। 1873 ई. में उन्होंने **हरिश्चंद्र मैगजीन** नामक मासिक पत्रिका निकाली। इस पत्रिका का प्रकाशन कितना महत्त्वपूर्ण है – यह इसी से समझा जा सकता है कि स्वयं भारतेंदु के अनुसार – 'हिंदी नई चाल में ढली' (1873 ई.)। बाद में इस पत्रिका का नाम उन्होंने **हरिश्चंद्र चंद्रिका** कर दिया। 1874 ई. में उन्होंने स्त्री-शिक्षा के लिए **बालाबोधिनी** नामक पत्रिका निकाली। भारतेंदु ने सबसे अधिक संख्या में नाटक लिखे और अनुवाद किया। उनके मौलिक नाटक इस प्रकार हैं – **वैदिकी हिंसा हिंसा न भवति, चंद्रावली, विषस्य विषमौषधम्, भारत दुर्दशा, नील देवी, अंधेर नगरी, प्रेम जोगनी और सती प्रताप**।

अनूदित नाटक – **विद्यासुंदर, पाखंड-बिडंबन, धनंजय-विजय, कर्पूरमंजरी, मुद्राराक्षस, सत्य हरिश्चंद्र** और **भारत-जननी**।

बादशाह दर्पण, कश्मीर कुसुम उनके इतिहास ग्रंथ हैं। **कुछ आप-बीती कुछ जग-बीती** कहानी है। कविताएँ भारतेंदु ने ब्रजभाषा में लिखी, जिनका उल्लेख यथास्थान किया गया है। भारतेंदु ने यात्रा-वर्णन भी लिखा है। उन्होंने सुदूर देहाती क्षेत्रों की यात्रा बैलगाड़ी से की। कहते हैं कि 1865 ई. में उन्होंने जगन्नाथ पुरी की जो यात्रा की उसका उनके जीवन पर बहुत गहरा प्रभाव पड़ा और उनका परिचय बंगाल के नए साहित्यिक आंदोलन से हुआ।

भारतेंदु हरिश्चंद्र अत्यंत जीवंत एवं मित्र परायण व्यक्ति थे। उनकी ज़िंदादिली की सब कहानियाँ साहित्य क्षेत्र में ही विदित नहीं है, अनेक कहानियाँ काशी के लोक जीवन में भी प्रचलित हैं। उन्होंने अपने जैसे समानधर्मा साहित्यिक एकत्र किए, उन्हें प्रोत्साहित किया और उनकी रचनाएँ छापीं। इसे भारतेंदु मंडल कहा जाता है।

भारतेंदु हरिश्चंद्र काशी के अत्यंत समृद्ध परिवार में पैदा हुए थे। कहते हैं कि स्वयं काशी नरेश इनके यहाँ आया करते थे। इनका जीवन राजसी वैभव का था। किंतु भारतेंदु ने धन की सदैव उपेक्षा की। वे महान दानी थे। उनका अंतिम समय अभावग्रस्त रहा। भारतेंदु महान साहित्यकार ही नहीं थे, महान मानव भी थे।

भारतेंदु हरिश्चंद्र राष्ट्रीय विचारों के देशप्रेमी व्यक्ति थे। उनका साहित्य साम्राज्यवाद का विरोध करता है, देश की विषमता का चित्रण करता है, उसकी पीड़ा व्यक्त करता है

और उस विषमता को दूर करने की प्रेरणा देता है। इन्हीं गुणों के कारण आधुनिक साहित्य के प्रारंभिक दौर को **भारतेंदु युग** कहा जाता है। परवर्ती हिंदी साहित्य का विकास जिस-जिस दिशा में हुआ उस पर सबसे पहले भारतेंदु और उनके सहयोगी रचनाकार चले थे।

प्रताप नारायण मिश्र (1856-1894 ई.)

प्रताप नारायण मिश्र अत्यंत विनोदी जीव थे। वे **ब्राह्मण** नामक पत्रिका निकालते थे। उनका मनमौजीपन उनकी रचनाओं, विशेषतः निबंधों में दिखाई पड़ता है। उन्होंने कुछ गंभीर निबंध भी लिखे हैं। उन्होंने **कलिकौतुक रूपक, संगीत शाकुंतल, भारत दुर्दशा, हठी हम्मीर, गोसंकट, कलिप्रभाव, जुआरी-खुआरी** नाटक लिखे। उन्होंने दैनिक जीवन की घटनाओं पर और नए फैशन पर अनेक कविताएँ लिखीं। उनकी कविताओं का महत्त्वपूर्ण अंश वह है, जिसमें उन्होंने आर्थिक, राजनीतिक, सामाजिक समस्याओं का नए बोध के साथ चित्रण किया है। कविताओं के लिए आल्हा, लावनी जैसी लोक प्रचलित काव्य शैलियों का उपयोग भी किया है।

बालकृष्ण भट्ट (1844-1914 ई.)

भट्ट जी **हिंदी प्रदीप** नामक पत्र निकालते थे। वे निबंधकार, समीक्षक और नाटककार थे। उन्होंने **कलिराज की सभा, रेल का विकट खेल, बाल विवाह, चंद्रसेन** आदि नाटकों की रचना की। भट्ट जी ने कुछ बँगला नाटकों का हिंदी में अनुवाद भी किया।

उपाध्याय बदरीनारायण चौधरी 'प्रेमघन' (1855-1922 ई.)

प्रेमघन काव्य और जीवन दोनों क्षेत्रों में भारतेंदु को अपना आदर्श मानते थे। वे कलात्मक एवं अलंकृत गद्य लिखते थे। **आनंद कादंबिनी** नाम की पत्रिका निकालते थे। बाद में **नागरी नीरद** नामक पत्र भी निकाला। प्रेमघन जी निबंधकार, नाटककार, कवि एवं समीक्षक थे। **भारत सौभाग्य, प्रयाग रामागमन** उनके प्रसिद्ध नाटक हैं। प्रेमघन ने **जीर्ण जनपद** नामक एक काव्य लिखा है जिसमें ग्रामीण जीवन का यथार्थवादी चित्रण है।

भारतेंदु युग के अन्य उल्लेखनीय साहित्यकारों में लाला श्रीनिवास दास (1851-1887 ई.), ठाकुर जगमोहन सिंह (1857-1899 ई.), पं. राधाचरण गोस्वामी (1858-1925 ई.) आदि प्रमुख हैं।

भारतेंदु युगीन गद्य

भारतेंदु युगीन गद्य में नई विधाओं का प्रारंभ या नवीनीकरण हुआ। इनमें निबंध प्रमुख है। भारतेंदु युग के साहित्यकार जीवंत व्यक्तित्व वाले थे। उनके व्यक्तित्व की छाप सबसे ज़्यादा निबंधों में है। निबंधों में व्यंग्य-विनोद, हास-परिहास भरपूर मात्रा में मिलता है। इनकी भाषा गंभीर विषयों पर लिखते समय भी चुलबुली और क्षेत्रीय प्रयोगों से युक्त होती है। पं. प्रताप नारायण मिश्र **(बात, समझदार की मौत है** आदि), राधाचरण गोस्वामी **(यमलोक की यात्रा)**, भारतेंदु **(स्वर्ग में विचार सभा)**, बालकृष्ण भट्ट **(आँख, नाक, कान** आदि) इस युग के प्रमुख निबंधकार हैं। इन निबंधों में अंग्रेज़ी और उर्दू शब्दों का प्रयोग धड़ल्ले से हुआ है।

भारतेंदु युग में प्राचीन नाटकों को नए रूप में ढाला गया। उन्हें नए युग की समस्याओं और यथार्थ से जोड़ा गया। भारतेंदु युग के नाटकों में कथनी और करनी के अंतर को प्रकट किया गया है, इसलिए वे धार्मिक, सामाजिक एवं शासकीय प्रतिष्ठानों पर प्रहार करते हैं।

इस युग में उपन्यास लेखन की ओर भी ध्यान दिया गया। श्रीनिवास दास ने **परीक्षा गुरु**, और बालकृष्ण भट्ट ने **सौ अजान एक सुजान** नामक उपन्यास लिखा। राधाकृष्ण दास ने **निस्सहाय हिंदू** नामक उपन्यास लिखा। लेकिन इस युग के सर्वाधिक प्रसिद्ध और लोकप्रिय उपन्यासकार बाबू देवकीनंदन खत्री हैं। इनके लिखे दो उपन्यास **चंद्रकांता** और **चंद्रकांता संतति** अत्यधिक प्रसिद्ध हुए। ये ऐयारी और तिलस्मी उपन्यास हैं। इनमें अभूतपूर्व रोचकता और लोकप्रियता है। किशोरीलाल गोस्वामी ने अधिक संख्या में उपन्यास लिखे जिनमें **आदर्श रमणी** और **लवंगलता** प्रमुख हैं।

भारतेंदु ने **कुछ आपबीती, कुछ जगबीती** नामक कहानी लिखनी शुरू की थी जिसे वे पूरा नहीं कर पाए। शिवप्रसाद 'सितारे हिंद' **ने राजभोज का सपना** नाम की कहानी लिखी।

इसके अतिरिक्त भारतेंदु ने **कश्मीर कुसुम** और **बादशाह दर्पण** लिखकर इतिहास लेखन और जयदेव का जीवनवृत्त लिखकर जीवन-चरित लिखने की प्रवृत्ति का भी प्रारंभ किया।

भारतेंदु ने नाटक पर जो निबंध लिखा है उसे हिंदी आलोचना का प्रारंभ कह सकते हैं। इसके अतिरिक्त प्रेमघन ने श्रीनिवास दास के **संयोगिता स्वयंवर** पर समीक्षा लिखी।

भारतेंदु युग में हिंदी अपना रूप ग्रहण कर रही थी। इसीलिए भारतेंदु युग की रचनाओं की भाषा एक ओर अनगढ़ है, दूसरी ओर उसमें ऐसा खुलापन है जिसमें देशज, तद्भव, तत्सम और हिंदी में ग्रहण करने योग्य किसी भी भाषा के शब्द आ सकते हैं। इनकी भाषा में क्षेत्रीय रंग उल्लेखनीय हैं, विशेष रूप से भारतेंदु के नाटकों की भाषा में। इस काल की गद्य भाषा को हँसमुख कहा गया है।

भारतेंदु युगीन गद्य की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- भारतेंदु युगीन गद्य का उत्कृष्ट रूप नाटकों में मिलता है।
- भारतेंदु युगीन नाटकों के गद्य में खड़ी बोली गद्य के विविध रूप दिखलाई पड़ते हैं।
- यह गद्य जन-बोलियों से मिलता-जुलता है।
- भारतेंदु युग के निबंधों में गद्य का जीवंत रूप मिलता है। भारतेंदु युग में व्यक्तिपरक और ललित निबंध प्रभूत मात्रा में लिखे गए।
- इस युग के निबंधों में निबंधकारों का जीवंत व्यक्तित्व साफ झलकता है।
- भारतेंदु युग के निबंधों की भाषा में हिंदी खड़ी बोली के अनेक स्तरों और रूपों का उपयोग मिलता है।
- भारतेंदु युग में गद्य-लेखन के क्षेत्र में समीक्षा, उपन्यास, कहानी और इतिहास जैसी नवीन गद्य विधाओं का प्रवर्तन हुआ।
- इस युग के लेखकों ने गद्य में अनेक भाषाओं के शब्दों का खुलकर व्यवहार किया। इससे इनके गद्य में एक प्रकार का खुलापन आया।

भारतेंदु युगीन कविता

भारतेंदु युग की कविता में भी नए विषयों का प्रवेश हुआ। यद्यपि भारतेंदु युग के काव्य की भाषा पारंपरिक ब्रजभाषा ही है फिर भी उसका कथ्य आधुनिक है, उस ब्रजभाषा में भी गद्यात्मकता है।

भारतेंदु ने **प्रबोधिनी** जैसी कविता में देश की तत्कालीन समस्याओं से पाठकों को अवगत कराया है। उनकी ये काव्य-पंक्तियां द्रष्टव्य हैं –

अंगरेज-राज सुख-साज सजे सब भारी।
पै धन विदेश चलि जात इहै अति ख्वारी।।

निज भाषा उन्नति अहै, सब उन्नति को मूल।
बिनु निज भाषा ज्ञान के, मिटत न हिय को शूल।।

भारतेंदु ने भक्तिपरक और रीति काव्य जैसी कविताएँ भी लिखी हैं तथा साथ ही साथ आधुनिक विचारों वाली कविताएँ भी। भारतेंदु ने लोक प्रचलित काव्य-रूपों में भी रचनाएँ कीं। उन्होंने अमीर खुसरो की तरह 'दो सखुने' और 'चना जोर गरम' जैसी शैलियों का भी प्रयोग किया।

भारतेंदु मंडल के अन्य प्रमुख कवि प्रेमघन ने तत्कालीन घटनाओं पर कविताएँ लिखीं। जैसे दादाभाई नौरोजी को काला कहे जाने पर उन्होंने अपना क्षोभ व्यक्त किया। प्रतापनारायण मिश्र की कविताओं में टैक्स, अकाल, महँगाई जैसे विषयों पर होली, फाग और लावनी जैसी जन प्रचलित काव्य शैलियों का प्रयोग किया गया है।

द्विवेदी युग (1900-1920 ई.)

भारतेंदु युग के उपरांत हिंदी साहित्य के इतिहास में जो काल खंड आता है उसे द्विवेदी युग कहते हैं। उसका कारण यह है कि आचार्य महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी इस युग के व्यवस्थापक साहित्यकार हैं। उन्होंने 1903 ई. में **सरस्वती** के संपादन का कार्यभार संभाला। **सरस्वती** के संपादन के माध्यम से उन्होंने खड़ी बोली काव्य भाषा और हिंदी साहित्य दोनों को व्यवस्थित करने का भारी उद्योग किया। वे कवियों और गद्यकारों की भाषा में एकरूपता लाकर खड़ी बोली को व्यवस्थित भी कर रहे थे, साहित्यकारों को

नए विषय भी सुझा रहे थे, उन्हें प्रोत्साहित कर रहे थे और उनकी आलोचना भी कर रहे थे। वे हिंदी भाषा-भाषियों को अन्य भाषाओं के साहित्य की गरिमा से परिचित करा रहे थे और अपने देश की अन्य भाषाओं के साहित्य से हिंदी-साहित्य का तालमेल भी बैठा रहे थे। उन्होंने साहित्य को 'ज्ञानराशि का संचित कोश' कहा। द्विवेदी युग ने प्रधानतः ज्ञानार्जन की ही साधना की।

भारतेंदु युग ने यद्यपि हिंदी साहित्य को नए विषयों से जोड़ दिया था। नई विधाओं का सूत्रपात और पुरानी विधाओं का नवीनीकरण किया था फिर भी काव्य भाषा के रूप में ब्रजभाषा ही प्रतिष्ठित रही। द्विवेदी युग में ब्रजभाषा एवं खड़ी बोली का द्वंद्व उभरकर सामने आया। आचार्य महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी ने दृढ़तापूर्वक खड़ी बोली का पक्ष लिया और उनके युग में ही खड़ी बोली काव्य भाषा के रूप में प्रतिष्ठित हो गई।

महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी ने काव्य भाषा के रूप में ब्रजभाषा का ही विरोध नहीं किया, उन्होंने हिंदी काव्य को रीतिवाद से भी मुक्ति दिलाई। उन्होंने काव्य में दरबारीपन का घोर विरोध किया। इस विषय में उनके विचार आश्चर्यजनक रूप से आधुनिक थे। उन्होंने कविता के लिए अंत्यानुप्रास या तुक को आवश्यक नहीं माना और उर्दू शब्दों के समुचित प्रयोग को भाषा में स्थान दिया। उन्होंने विभक्तियों, विराम चिह्नों के प्रयोग एवं समानार्थक अनेक रूपों के व्यवहार से उत्पन्न अस्पष्टता को दूर करने का प्रयास भी किया।

इस युग में ज्ञान साधना पर बल है, संभवतः इसीलिए इस युग में गद्य की सर्वाधिक उल्लेखनीय विधा विचारात्मक निबंध है।

इस युग के साहित्य का परिचय इस प्रकार है –

निबंध

इस काल के निबंधकारों में महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी, माधव प्रसाद मिश्र, बाबू बालमुकुंद गुप्त, श्यामसुंदर दास, चंद्रधर शर्मा 'गुलेरी' और अध्यापक पूर्णसिंह प्रमुख हैं। रामचंद्र शुक्ल के प्रारंभिक निबंध इसी दौर के हैं। उनका अत्यंत महत्त्वपूर्ण निबंध **कविता क्या है**, पहले पहल इसी काल (1909 ई.) में लिखा गया, यद्यपि इसका संशोधित एवं परिवर्धित रूप उन्होंने बाद में प्रकाशित कराया।

इस युग में गंभीर और ललित दोनों प्रकार के निबंध लिखे गए, किंतु विचारपरक निबंधों का महत्त्व अधिक है। महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी के निबंधों का तेवर प्रायः सर्वत्र नियामक और सुनियोजित है, चाहे वे **कवि और कविता** पर लिखें, चाहे **क्या हिंदी नाम की कोई भाषा ही नहीं** पर, उनके निबंध स्पष्ट होते थे। उनमें कलात्मकता की अपेक्षा अपनी बात को समझा-बुझाकर कहने की प्रवृत्ति अधिक है। विरोधी पक्ष का शमन करने के लिए वे विवादात्मक मुद्रा भी अपनाते हैं। वस्तुतः द्विवेदी जी की चिंता विविध विषयों का ज्ञान समेटकर इसे हिंदी पाठकों तक पहुँचा देना है। निबंध लिखते समय भाषागत व्यवस्था का ध्यान भी उनके मस्तिष्क में कम नहीं रहता होगा। उनके समीक्षात्मक निबंधों में उनका समालोचक रूप प्रकट हुआ है। संस्कृत के कवियों पर लिखते समय उनकी रस ग्राहिणी क्षमता का भी पता चलता है।

चंद्रधर शर्मा गुलेरी (1883-1920 ई.) इस युग के प्रमुख निबंधकार हैं। उनके निबंध संख्या में कम हैं, किंतु उनमें अगाध पांडित्य और आधुनिकता का अपूर्व समन्वय मिलता है। गुलेरी जी अतीत और वर्तमान के सूक्ष्मदर्शी विद्वान रचनाकार थे। वे साहित्य और अन्य सांस्कृतिक चेष्टाओं की गतिशीलता पहचानते थे, इसीलिए उनका दृष्टिकोण समाजशास्त्रीय है। उनके निबंधों में व्यंग्य-विनोद का रंग भी है। उनकी भाषा हिंदी गद्य का प्रतिमान है। उनके भाषाशास्त्रीय निबंध भी रोचक और अत्यंत पठनीय हैं। **कछुआ धर्म** और **मारेसि मोहिं कुठावँ** उनके प्रसिद्ध निबंध हैं।

अध्यापक पूर्णसिंह (1881-1931 ई.) ने **आचरण की सभ्यता, मज़दूरी और प्रेम, सच्ची वीरता** जैसे निबंध लिखे। इनमें बहुज्ञता के साथ भावुकता मिलती है। अध्यापक पूर्णसिंह का मिज़ाज एक ऐसे आधुनिक सूफी विद्वान का था जो समानता, शांति और मानवीय करुणा में विश्वास करता है। **मज़दूरी और प्रेम** में श्रम का जो सौंदर्य प्रकट किया गया है वह सौंदर्य बोध की आधुनिकता का द्योतक है।

बाबू श्यामसुंदर दास (1875-1945 ई.) के निबंध प्रायः विश्वविद्यालय के पाठ्यक्रम को ध्यान में रखकर लिखे गए हैं, जो उस समय की बहुत बड़ी आवश्यकता की पूर्ति करते थे।

बाबू बालमुकुंद गुप्त (1865-1907 ई.) के निबंध द्विवेदी युगीन निबंधों में अपनी व्यंग्य-विनोदपूर्ण शैली और चुहलबाज़ी के कारण विशिष्ट हैं। इनकी शैली भारतेंदु युगीन

लेखकों की शैली के सबसे निकट रही हैं। ये राजनीतिक विषयों या घटनाओं, कभी-कभी किसी मेले, त्योहार या और किसी विषय पर शिवशंभू के नाम से **शिवशंभू का चिट्ठा** लिखते थे, जिसमें ब्रिटिश साम्राज्य की नीतियों या अपनी समझ से अनुचित व्यवहारों की खबर लेते थे।

उपन्यास

कहने को तो **भाग्यवती** और **परीक्षा गुरु** नामक उपन्यास भारतेंदु युग में ही लिखे जा चुके थे और देवकीनंदन खत्री का उपन्यास **चंद्रकांता** भी 1891 ई. में प्रकाशित हो चुका था किंतु हिंदी उपन्यासों की अविच्छिन्न परंपरा द्विवेदी युग से ही प्रारंभ हुई। इस काल के उपन्यासों में भी मध्य कालीन कथाओं का प्रभाव ज़्यादा है। इस काल में बँगला उपन्यासों का अनुवाद भी भारी संख्या में हुआ। कुछ उर्दू और मराठी के साथ-साथ अंग्रेज़ी उपन्यासों का भी अनुवाद हुआ। इस काल में शरत्‌चंद्र के उपन्यास हिंदी पाठकों में लोकप्रिय हो चले थे।

पंडित किशोरीलाल गोस्वामी (1865-1932 ई.) उन्नीसवीं शती के अंतिम दशक से उपन्यास लिखते आ रहे थे। उनके उपन्यासों की संख्या 65 है। **तारा, चपला, नव्य समाज चित्र, तरुण तपस्विनी, कुटीरवासिनी, रजिया बेगम या रंग महल में हलाहल, लीलावती का आदर्श, सती, राजकुमारी, लवंगलता, हीराबाई या बेहयाई का बारका, लखनऊ की कब्र या शाही महलसरा** आदि उनके उल्लेखनीय उपन्यास हैं।

गोस्वामी जी के उपन्यास यौन भावना प्रधान हैं। उनमें वासना का रंग चटकीला है, थोड़ा बहुत सामाजिक पाखंड का उद्‌घाटन भी है। उनकी भाषा सहज है।

बाबू गोपालराम गहमरी (1866-1946 ई.) इस युग के अन्य उल्लेखनीय उपन्यासकार हैं। उन्होंने जासूसी उपन्यास लिखे। **भोजपुर का ठग, बड़ा भाई** आदि उनके प्रमुख उपन्यास हैं। प्रसिद्‌ध कवि अयोध्यासिंह उपाध्याय 'हरिऔध' और श्री लज्जाराम मेहता ने भी उपन्यास लिखे।

जैसा कि पहले कहा जा चुका है कि इस युग को उपन्यासों का प्रारंभिक दौर समझना चाहिए, जिसमें चरित्र और परिस्थिति में अंतःसंघर्ष नगण्य है तथा लेखक का ध्यान घटना-वैचित्र्य और मनोरंजन या नीति-उपदेश पर अधिक है।

कहानी

यह युग कहानियों का भी प्रारंभिक दौर है। इन कहानियों पर घटना-वैचित्र्य का प्रभाव है। यह अवश्य है कि हिंदी कहानी उपन्यास की अपेक्षा भाव-व्यंजकता की ओर प्रारंभ से ही झुकी है। हिंदी कहानियों के दर्शन पहले-पहले **सरस्वती** में हुए। किशोरीलाल गोस्वामी की **इंदुमती** कहानी **सरस्वती** में (1900 ई.) प्रकाशित हुई। शुक्ल जी ने 1900 ई. से 1907 ई. तक प्रकाशित होने वाली 6 कहानियों – **इंदुमती**, **गुलबहार**, **प्लेग की चुड़ैल**, **ग्यारह वर्ष का समय**, **पंडित और पंडितानी** तथा **दुलाई वाली** को हिंदी की प्रारंभिक कहानियाँ माना है। **इंदुमती** और **गुलबहार** के लेखक किशोरीलाल गोस्वामी हैं। शेष कहानियों के लेखक हैं – **प्लेग की चुड़ैल** : मास्टर भगवानदास, **ग्यारह वर्ष का समय** : रामचंद्र शुक्ल, **पंडित और पंडितानी** : गिरिजादत्त वाजपेयी, **दुलाई वाली** : बंग महिला (श्रीमती राजेंद्रबाला घोष)। **ग्यारह वर्ष का समय** अतीत की स्मृति की मार्मिक व्यंजना करती है। बाकी कहानियों में चमत्कारिकता की प्रधानता है।

यह काल लेखकों के एक बारगी कहानी लेखन की ओर झुक पड़ने का काल है। जयशंकर प्रसाद, विश्वंभर नाथ शर्मा 'कौशिक', राजा राधिकारमण प्रसाद सिंह आदि ने इसी समय कहानियाँ लिखना प्रारंभ किया। प्रसाद ने 1911 ई. में **ग्राम** नामक कहानी अपने मासिक पत्र **इंदु** में प्रकाशित की। कौशिक की सामाजिक-पारिवारिक कहानी **रक्षाबंधन** 1913 में छपी। राजा राधिकारमण प्रसाद सिंह की प्रसिद्ध कहानी **कानों में कंगना** 1913 में और हास्य रस के कहानी लेखक जी.पी. श्रीवास्तव की पहली कहानी 1919 ई. में छपी।

हिंदी कहानी सामाजिकता-पारिवारिकता की व्यापक भावभूमि पर प्रतिष्ठित हो रही थी। हिंदी कहानी के इस दौर की उपलब्धि हिंदी के प्रकांड विद्वान चंद्रधर शर्मा 'गुलेरी' की, जिनकी चर्चा हम निबंध के प्रसंग में कर चुके हैं, कहानी **उसने कहा था** है। **उसने कहा था** 1915 ई. की **सरस्वती** में प्रकाशित हुई। यह कहानी भाव और कला दोनों ही दृष्टियों से उत्तम है। सामान्य व्यक्ति भी अपने भीतर प्रेम का अक्षय स्रोत किस प्रकार दबाए रहता है, एक मामूली-सी घटना व्यक्ति के अंतर्मन में फैलकर उसके जीवन को किस निर्णायक बिंदु पर ले जा सकती है, प्रेम की सात्विकता मनुष्य को कितनी उच्च भूमि पर

ले जा सकती है – यह सब इस कहानी में व्यक्त है। इसमें घटना सहज ऋजु मार्ग पर नहीं चलती, वह वक्र मार्ग पर चलती है यानी घटना-क्रम काल-क्रम पर नहीं, मनोभूमि के अनुसार व्यवस्थित है। शुक्ल जी ने इस कहानी में यथार्थवाद देखा। यह आकस्मिक नहीं कि प्रेमचंद की कहानियाँ लगभग इसी समय प्रकाशित होने लगीं।

नाटक

भारतेंदु के उपरांत कुछ समय के लिए हिंदी में मौलिक नाटकों का अभाव रहा। किंतु इस बीच विभिन्न भाषाओं से नाटकों का अनुवाद अवश्य बड़े पैमाने पर हुआ। बँगला, अंग्रेज़ी, संस्कृत नाटकों के हिंदी अनुवाद प्रकाशित हुए। शेक्सपीयर के नाटक **रोमियो जुलियट, मैकबेथ** और **हैमलेट** का अनुवाद हुआ। संस्कृत के नाटक **मृच्छकटिकम्, उत्तररामचरित, मालती माधव, मालविकाग्निमित्र** का हिंदी अनुवाद लाला सीताराम बी.ए. ने किया। इसी दौर में सत्यनारायण 'कविरत्न' ने **उत्तररामचरित** और **मालती माधव** का अनुवाद किया।

मौलिक नाटककारों में किशोरीलाल गोस्वामी, हरिऔध, शिवनंदन सहाय, राय देवीप्रसाद पूर्ण का नाम लिया जा सकता है। पर ये लोग साहित्य में अपने नाटकों के लिए नहीं, बल्कि अन्य विधा की रचनाओं के लिए विख्यात हैं।

किशोरी लाल गोस्वामी के नाटकों में उल्लेखनीय नाम **चौपट चपेट, मयंक मंजरी** आदि हैं। प्रथम प्रहसन है और दूसरा अति सामान्य कोटि का नाटक है। हरिऔध ने **रुक्मिणी परिणय** और **प्रद्युम्न विजय व्यायोग** लिखा। शिवनंदन सहाय के नाटक का नाम **सुदामा** है। पूर्ण जी ने **चंद्रकला भानुकुमार** नाटक लिखा।

समालोचना

भारतेंदु काल में पुस्तक-समीक्षा का सूत्रपात हो चुका था। भारतेंदु ने नाटक पर जो निबंध लिखा है, उसे समालोचना के अंतर्गत मानना चाहिए। किसी एक ही रचनाकार के गुण-दोष दिखाने के लिए हिंदी आलोचना की पहली पुस्तक महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी की **हिंदी कालिदास की आलोचना** है।

इस युग की हिंदी-आलोचना का ऐतिहासिक महत्त्व आधुनिक और रीतिवादी प्रवृत्तियों के द्वंद्व में है। इस युग के सभी आलोचकों को पूरी तरह से रीतिवादी या आधुनिक श्रेणी में रख देना भी उचित नहीं। मिश्र बंधु – श्याम बिहारी मिश्र (1873-1947 ई.), शुकदेव बिहारी मिश्र (1878-1951 ई.) रीति कालीन साहित्य के जानकार थे। उन्होंने **हिंदी नवरत्न** में देव को ऊँचा स्थान दिया और उन्हें सूर-तुलसी के समकक्ष रखा। यह उनकी रीतिवादिता का पता देता है। लेकिन मिश्र बंधुओं ने श्रीधर पाठक की खड़ी बोली कविताओं का स्वागत भी किया। इसका अर्थ यह हुआ कि मिश्र बंधु सर्वत्र न तो रीतिवादी थे न ही आधुनिकतावादी। इस प्रकार का द्वंद्व अलग-अलग व्यक्तियों में ही नहीं कभी-कभी एक ही व्यक्ति के अंदर भी चल रहा था।

रीति-विरोधी आलोचना नए ज्ञान-विज्ञान के आलोक में विकसित नए जीवन-मूल्यों के मानदंड पर साहित्य को तौलती थी, जबकि रीतिवादी आलोचना नायिका भेद, अलंकार आदि की दृष्टि से साहित्य की परीक्षा करती थी। जहाँ विरोध इस द्वंद्व पर नहीं होता था, वहाँ आलोचना का विकास नहीं दिखलाई पड़ा। पं. कृष्णबिहारी मिश्र सहृदय थे, किंतु उनके आलोचना मूल्य रीतिवादी ही थे। उन्होंने **देव और बिहारी** पुस्तक में देव को बिहारी से बड़ा कवि सिद्ध किया। इसके उत्तर में लाला भगवानदीन ने **बिहारी और देव** लिखकर बिहारी को देव से बड़ा सिद्ध किया। देव और बिहारी के विवाद में भाग लेने वाले आलोचकों में पद्मसिंह शर्मा भी थे। शर्मा जी संस्कृत, प्राकृत, हिंदी, फारसी और उर्दू साहित्य के मर्मज्ञ थे।

महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी (1864-1938 ई.) ने अपनी आलोचना से हिंदी रचनाकारों को कथ्य और रूप के प्रयोग की प्रेरणा दी। उन्होंने साहित्य विशेषतः कविता के महत्त्व की पुनः स्थापना करने का प्रयास किया। उन्होंने कविता को केवल विलास की सामग्री नहीं माना। काव्य के रूप पक्ष के विषय में वे काफी आधुनिक थे। उन्होंने लिखा – गद्य और पद्य दोनों में कविता हो सकती है। उन्होंने तुक और अनुप्रास को कविता के लिए अनिवार्य नहीं माना।

पं. रामचंद्र शुक्ल (1884-1941 ई.) ने लेखन इसी काल में प्रारंभ किया था। उनका **साहित्य** नामक निबंध 1904 ई. की सरस्वती में छपा था, किंतु उनके निबंध संकलन और आलोचनात्मक ग्रंथ बाद में प्रकाशित हुए।

द्विवेदी युगीन गद्य की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- द्विवेदी युग ज्ञानार्जन् की साधना का युग है। यह कार्य प्रधानतः इस काल में विद्वान हिंदी-लेखकों ने अपने विचारपरक हिंदी निबंधों के द्वारा किया। इन निबंधों में प्राचीनता की ज्ञान-गरिमा और उसकी युगीन व्याख्या प्रस्तुत की जाती थी।
- महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी ने **सरस्वती** पत्रिका के संपादन के माध्यम से हिंदी खड़ी बोली को व्यवस्थित करके उसे एक साहित्यिक भाषा बनाने का सफल प्रयास किया।
- इस युग के लेखकों ने रीति कालीनता के स्थान पर साहित्य को अपने समय की समस्याओं से संयुक्त किया।
- द्विवेदी युग निबंध, उपन्यास, कहानी, समालोचना आदि का प्रारंभिक दौर है। इस युग में इन गद्य विधाओं ने अपना स्वरूप ग्रहण किया।

कविता

यह युग कविता में खड़ी बोली के प्रतिष्ठित होने का युग है। इसमें प्रबंध काव्य भी पर्याप्त संख्या में लिखे गए। अनेक कवियों ने ब्रजभाषा छोड़कर खड़ी बोली को अपनाया। एक ओर खड़ी बोली को ब्रजभाषा के समक्ष काव्य भाषा के रूप में प्रतिष्ठित किया गया, दूसरी ओर विकसित चेतना के कारण कविता नई भूमि पर संचरण करने लगी। रीति का विरोध निषेधात्मक था। सार्थक विरोध किसी रचनात्मक दिशा की ओर उन्मुख होना है। वास्तव में, जो बोध रीतिवाद का विरोध कर रहा था, वही एक नया भाव भी निर्मित कर रहा था।

नए भाव बोध का पहला लक्षण स्वच्छंदता की प्रवृत्ति थी जो **श्रीधर पाठक** (1876-1928 ई.) के काव्य में प्रकट हुई। यह रीतिबद्धता एवं प्रणाली-निर्दिष्टता के विरोध और उसके प्रति विद्रोह का एक स्वाभाविक परिणाम था।

श्रीधर पाठक खड़ी बोली के प्रथम कवि हैं जिनमें काव्यगत स्वच्छंदता के दर्शन हुए। पाठक जी पहले ब्रजभाषा में कविता करते थे। उनका प्रकृति-प्रेम ब्रजभाषा काव्य में भी प्रकट हो चुका था। खड़ी बोली उनके भाव बोध के अधिक अनुकूल थी। 1900 ई. में उन्होंने **गुनवंत हेमंत** नाम की कविता लिखी। इसमें प्रकृति को किताबी तरह से नहीं,

अपनी आँखों से देखा गया था। इसमें ज्वार, बाजरा, खरीफ, रबी, सौंफ, सोवा, पालक आदि का वर्णन है –

खरीफ के खेतों में जब सुनसान है। रब्बी के ऊपर किसान का ध्यान है।
जहँ तहँ रहट परोहे चल रहे। बरहे जल के चारों ओर निकल रहे।
जौ-गेहूँ के खेत सरस सरसों घनी। दिन-दिन बढ़ने लगी विपुल शोभा सनी।
सुघर सौंफ सुंदर कुसुम की क्यारियाँ। सोआ पालक आदि विविध तरकारियाँ।
अपने-अपने ठौर सभी ये सोहते। सुंदर शोभा से सबका मन मोहते।

श्रीधर पाठक ने **एकांतवासी योगी** की रचना खयाल व लावनी की लय पर की। एकांत की तलाश भी प्रकृति में रमने की प्रवृत्ति का द्योतक है। इन्होंने गोल्डस्मिथ की पुस्तक **ट्रेवलर** का छंदोबद्ध अनुवाद **श्रांत पथिक** नाम से किया। **ऊजड़ग्राम** नामक इनकी रचना ब्रजभाषा में है। उन्होंने छंदों को नए ढाँचों में ढाला। ऐसा करने में वे लय एवं प्रवाह का ध्यान रखते थे।

इस समय के कवियों ने पौराणिक और ऐतिहासिक कथानक को आधार बनाकर प्रबंध काव्य लिखे। ऐसे कवियों में **अयोध्यासिंह उपाध्याय 'हरिऔध'** (1865-1947 ई.) कालक्रम की दृष्टि से पहले आते हैं। इनका प्रबंध काव्य **प्रियप्रवास** 1914 ई. में प्रकाशित हुआ। **प्रियप्रवास** की रचना का एक उद्देश्य तो खड़ी बोली में महाकाव्य के अभाव की पूर्ति करके यह दिखाना था कि इस भाषा में भी महाकाव्य रचा जा सकता है। साथ ही साथ **प्रियप्रवास** के माध्यम से हरिऔध ने कृष्ण कथा को नए मूल्यों के साँचे में ढालने का प्रयास किया। उन्होंने कृष्ण कथा की अलौकिक घटनाओं को बुद्धि संगत एवं विश्वसनीय ढंग से प्रस्तुत करने की चेष्टा की।

हरिऔध जी उर्दू छंदों का भी इस्तेमाल अधिकारपूर्वक कर सकते थे। वे तत्सम पदावली भी लिख सकते थे और बोलचाल की मुहावरेदार ज़बान में भी। **चोखे चौपदे** ऐसे ही चौपदों का संग्रह है –

क्यों पले पीस कर किसी को तू!
है बहुत पालिसी बुरी तेरी।
हम रहे चाहते पटाना ही।
पेट तुझसे पटी नहीं मेरी।

पद्य प्रसून और **वैदेही बनवास** उनकी अन्य काव्य कृतियाँ हैं।

मैथिलीशरण गुप्त (1886-1964 ई.)

हिंदी के लोकप्रिय कवि मैथिलीशरण गुप्त की खड़ी बोली हिंदी की रचनाएँ **सरस्वती** में 1906 ई. से छपने लगी थीं। गुप्त जी की कविताओं में राष्ट्रीय भावना चरम विकास पर पहुँची है। उन्हें **भारत-भारती** से बहुत अधिक लोकप्रियता प्राप्त हुई। **भारत-भारती** में देश के अतीत और वर्तमान का चित्र खींचा गया और भविष्य की सुखद कामना की गई थी। गुप्त जी की कविताओं से खड़ी बोली हिंदी को काव्य भाषा के रूप में प्रतिष्ठित होने में अभूतपूर्व सहायता मिली। **भारत-भारती** की पंक्तियाँ हिंदी भाषी क्षेत्र के शिक्षित जनों को कंठस्थ थीं। कविता से जन-जागरण का काम यदि किसी ने सबसे अधिक सफलता के साथ किया तो गुप्त जी ने। वस्तुतः गुप्त जी राष्ट्रकवि इसी कृति के कारण कहलाए।

गुप्त जी व्यापक संवेदना के रचनाकार हैं। उन्होंने अपने युग के भावबोध को समग्रता में ग्रहण करके उसे चित्रित किया है। आधुनिक हिंदी काव्य में वैष्णव उदारता के वे प्रतिनिधि हैं। संकीर्णता की गंध न उनके व्यक्तित्व में थी, न कृतित्व में। उनकी कविता का विषय-क्षेत्र भी व्यापक है। भारत के सभी धार्मिक मतों एवं विश्वासों का समाहार उनकी काव्य-भावना में हो गया है।

हिंदी के प्रसिद्ध कवियों में प्रबंध काव्य सबसे अधिक गुप्त जी ने ही लिखे हैं। उनकी वास्तविक काव्य-प्रतिभा प्रबंध काव्यों में दिखाई पड़ती है। उनके प्रबंध काव्य अधिकांशतः पौराणिक एवं ऐतिहासिक कथानकों पर आधारित हैं। इन प्रबंध काव्यों की मूल संवेदना आधुनिक है, इनमें अतीत को नए बोध के अनुसार व्याख्यायित किया गया है। विकसित चेतना के आलोक में अपने धार्मिक ऐतिहासिक महापुरुषों को देखा गया है। गुप्त जी ने धार्मिक विश्वासों को आहत किए बिना कथा के भाव पक्ष को नए बोध से युक्त कर दिया। गुप्त जी के प्रसिद्ध प्रबंध काव्य इस प्रकार हैं –

साकेत : यह विशद प्रबंध काव्य है। इसमें लक्ष्मण की पत्नी उर्मिला को नायिका बनाकर रामकथा कही गई है।

यशोधरा : इसकी नायिका गौतम बुद्ध की पत्नी यशोधरा हैं।

विकट भट : जोधपुर के एक राजपूत सरदार की तीन पीढ़ियों तक चलने वाली कथा जिसमें वचन निभाने का वर्णन है।

रंग में भंग : यह राजपूती आन की कथा है।

किसान : यह एक सामान्य किसान के जीवन-संघर्ष की कथा है।

सिद्धराज, **पलासी का युद्ध** के अतिरिक्त **जयद्रथ-वध** और **पंचवटी** उनके विख्यात खंड काव्य हैं। स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत में गुप्त जी ने **जयभारत** नाम से महाभारत की कथा लिखी। उनकी संवेदना की व्यापकता का प्रमाण मार्क्स की पुत्री जैनी पर रचित **जयिनी** नामक कृति है।

गुप्त जी की कृतियों में आधुनिक युग की लोकान्मुखता मानवीय करुणा के साथ घुल-मिल गई है। उन पर गांधीवाद का प्रभाव स्पष्ट है। वे अतीत के प्रेमी हैं, किंतु वर्तमान की विषमता को देखने से कतराते नहीं। सबसे बड़ी बात यह है कि वे नए विचारों का स्वागत करने में पीछे नहीं रहते। इसीलिए उनका अतीत प्रेम भविष्योन्मुख है। वे लोक की महिमा प्रतिष्ठित करने वाले रचनाकार हैं।

इसी से संबद्ध गुप्त जी की नारी-भावना है। नारी परिवार के केंद्र में होती है। नई चेतना ने भारतीय नारी-जीवन की पीड़ा को पहचाना। नारी भावना को पहचानने और उसका चित्रण करने में गुप्त जी हिंदी काव्य के इतिहास में बेजोड़ हैं। नारी पात्रों पर स्थितियों का जो प्रभाव पड़ता है, उसका चित्रण गुप्त जी अचूक स्वाभाविकता एवं मनोवैज्ञानिकता के साथ करते हैं। उनके नारी पात्र स्वाभिमानी, देशभक्त, कर्तव्यपरायण होकर अपनी निजी वेदना खो नहीं देते। **साकेत** की उर्मिला, **यशोधरा** की गोपा इस दृष्टि से बहुत जटिल किंतु स्वाभाविक और आधुनिक पात्र हैं। भारतीय नारी के जीवन के विषय में ऐसी मार्मिक उक्ति पूरे भारतीय साहित्य में शायद ही कहीं मिले –

अबला जीवन हाय तुम्हारी यही कहानी,
आँचल में है दूध और आँखों में पानी।

गुप्त जी ने मुक्तक भी कम नहीं लिखे हैं। उनके मुक्तक व्यवस्थित होते हैं। भाषा का प्रवाह चाहे उनमें न मिले, किंतु स्थिति योजना की दृष्टि से वे चुस्त होते हैं।

गुप्त जी ने कुछ बँगला काव्य कृतियों का अनुवाद भी किया है। माइकेल मधुसूदन दत्त के **मेघनाद-वध** का जैसा उत्तम अनुवाद उन्होंने किया है, वह अभी तक काव्यानुवाद का प्रतिमान है। गुप्त जी ने गीत और गेयपद भी लिखे हैं। हरिगीतिका इनका प्रिय छंद है।

प्रबंध काव्यों में यथास्थान वाक्चातुरी, संवादात्मकता और वक्तृता पाई जाती है। कहीं-कहीं तुकों का मोह अखरता है। जैसे वे निरंतर नए-नए विषयों की ओर मुड़ते गए हैं, वैसे ही शिल्प की ओर भी। गुप्त जी ने अतुकांत रचनाओं में सफलता पाई है।

मेघनाद-वध का अनुवाद अतुकांत कविता में किया। बाद में यह छंद प्रवृत्ति प्रसाद और निराला की रचनाओं में मिलती है। छायावाद के दौर में गुप्त जी ने उस ढंग की भी कविताएँ लिखीं। गुप्त जी यद्यपि स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत में, नई कविता के आंदोलन के समय तक रचनारत रहे, किंतु प्रमुख काव्य-प्रवृत्ति की दृष्टि से उन्हें छायावाद-पूर्व (1900-1920 ई.) काल का ही रचनाकार मानना उचित होगा।

रामनरेश त्रिपाठी (1889-1962 ई.)

रामनरेश त्रिपाठी के काव्य में श्रीधर पाठक की भाँति स्वच्छंदता की प्रवृत्ति मिलती है। उन्होंने भी प्रबंध काव्य लिखे हैं। लेकिन उनके प्रबंध काव्य पौराणिक या ऐतिहासिक आख्यानों पर आधारित नहीं हैं। उन्होंने देश के राजनीतिक वातावरण के अनुसार कथा की कल्पना की है। इस दृष्टि से वे विशिष्ट प्रबंधकार हैं। कथा-कल्पना की यह प्रवृत्ति स्वच्छंदता की द्योतक है। इनकी कथा-कल्पना में नर-नारी का मनोविज्ञान, युगीन भावबोध एवं प्रकृति की रमणीयता – सबका योगदान है। प्रेम की भावना और कर्तव्य का विवेक-बोध इन दोनों के द्वंद्व में देश-प्रेम को बलवती भावना बताकर कवि ने प्रेम को विस्तार दिया है। शुक्ल जी के शब्दों में– 'देशभक्ति को रसात्मक रूप त्रिपाठी जी द्वारा प्राप्त हुआ।' त्रिपाठी जी के प्रसिद्ध प्रबंधकाव्य हैं– **मिलन, पथिक** और **स्वप्न**।

त्रिपाठी जी देश के स्वतंत्रता सेनानी भी थे, केवल साहित्यकार नहीं। वे कई बार जेल गए थे। देश के प्रायः सभी भागों का उन्होंने भ्रमण किया था। इसीलिए **पथिक** में दक्षिण भारत और **स्वप्न में** उत्तर भारत की प्रकृति का उन्होंने जो वर्णन किया है, उसमें प्रकृति की स्थानीय विशेषताएँ उभरी हैं। उनके तीनों प्रबंध काव्यों में स्वाधीनता संग्राम में रत भारतीय मानस की नैतिकता, त्याग एवं बलिदान भावना का आग्रह है।

रामनरेश त्रिपाठी के काव्य में मनुष्य के कर्म-सौंदर्य एवं प्रकृति के सौंदर्य का संश्लेष है। उनके यहाँ प्रकृति का स्वाभाविक सौंदर्य मनुष्य के गहरे मनोरागों का चित्र बन जाता है। उनके काव्य में प्रकृति का स्वतंत्र व्यक्तित्व झलकता है।

त्रिपाठी जी व्याकरण सम्मत एवं व्यवस्थित भाषा लिखने में सिद्ध कवि हैं। उनका काव्य-गठन चुस्त है। उन्होंने उर्दू में प्रचलित छंदों का प्रयोग भी कौशलपूर्वक किया है।

इस युग के अन्य उल्लेखनीय कवि हैं– महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी , नाथूराम शंकर शर्मा, रामचंद्र शुक्ल, गयाप्रसाद शुक्ल 'सनेही'।

द्विवेदी जी मूलतः भाषा एवं साहित्य के व्यवस्थापक थे। वे कविता करते समय भी नियमों की अवहेलना नहीं कर सकते थे। इसलिए उनकी कविता बहुत कुछ उनके सिद्धांतों के मेल में है। नाथूराम शंकर आर्यसमाजी थे। उनके काव्य में अंधविश्वास, रूढ़ि और पाखंड का विरोध तथा इनके प्रति व्यंग्य-विनोद का भाव मिलता है। छंद संबंधी नियमों का पालन उनके काव्य में कड़ाई से किया गया है। रामचंद्र शुक्ल का काव्य संग्रह **हृदय का मधुर भार** नाम से छपा है। उनकी कविताओं में प्रकृति के सहज सौंदर्य का चित्रण विशेष रूप से मिलता है। उन्होंने, **लाइट ऑफ एशिया** नामक अंग्रेज़ी काव्य **बुद्धचरित** नाम से ब्रजभाषा में अनूदित किया।

गयाप्रसाद शुक्ल 'सनेही' का एक उपनाम 'त्रिशूल' भी था। ये स्वाधीनता प्रेमी और स्वच्छंद कवि हैं। उर्दू में भी ये बहुत अच्छी कविता करते थे।

यद्यपि 1918 ई. के आस-पास हिंदी काव्य में छायावाद का उदय हो गया, किंतु इस दौर की प्रवृत्तियों वाली धारा बाद में भी प्रवाहित होती रही। ठाकुर गोपालशरण सिंह, अनूपशर्मा, श्यामनारायण पांडे इतिवृत्तात्मक शैली में काव्य रचना करते रहे।

द्विवेदी युगीन कविता की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- इस युग की हिंदी कविता ने रीतिवादी प्रवृत्तियों को पीछे धकेल दिया। इस युग में खड़ी बोली काव्य भाषा के रूप में व्यवस्थित हुई।
- कविता में अनेक महत्त्वपूर्ण प्रबंध काव्यों की रचना हुई। इन प्रबंध काव्यों में पौराणिक और ऐतिहासिक कथाओं और उनके पात्रों की आधुनिक एवं तर्कसंगत व्याख्या प्रस्तुत की गई और उन्हें युग के अनुकूल रूप दिया गया।
- श्रीधर पाठक और रामनरेश त्रिपाठी जैसे स्वच्छंदतावादी कवियों ने कल्पित प्रबंध काव्य भी लिखे।

  इस युग की कविता अधिकांशतः इतिवृत्तात्मक हैं।
- द्विवेदी युग की कविता में मैथिलीशरण गुप्त जैसे कवि की रचनाओं के माध्यम से हिंदी कविता का राष्ट्रीय रूप उभरता है।
- द्विवेदी युग का काव्य छायावाद का मार्ग प्रशस्त करता है।

गांधी युग का साहित्य : यथार्थ और स्वप्न की अभिव्यक्ति (1920-1947 ई.)

1920 से लेकर 1947 तक के साहित्यिक काल-खंड को हमने गांधी युग कहा है। इस युग में हमारे स्वाधीनता आंदोलन का नेतृत्व जिन नेताओं ने किया उनमें गांधी अग्रगण्य एवं सर्वाधिक मान्य हैं। 1947 ई. में भारत स्वतंत्र हुआ और दुर्भाग्य से उसके बाद उनकी हत्या कर दी गई। उन्होंने ब्रिटिश साम्राज्य को ध्वस्त किया, किंतु सत्ता के भागीदार नहीं हुए। पराधीन भारत में उन्होंने स्वाधीनता के लिए संघर्ष किया। वे विवेच्य युग के इतिहास-पुरुष एवं संघर्ष-नायक हैं। इस युग का साहित्य प्रधात्त रूप से इसी ऐतिहासिक संघर्ष की वाणी है। गांधी इकहरे राजनीतिज्ञ नहीं थे। वे राजनीति को धर्म और संस्कृति से अलग नहीं रखते थे। उन्होंने हिंदी प्रचार आंदोलन में अन्यतम योगदान किया। इन्हीं सब बातों को ध्यान में रखकर हम इस कालखंड को **गांधी युग** कहना उचित समझते हैं।

1914 ई. में गांधी जी अफ्रीका से भारत लौटे। देश में उनके आते ही स्वाधीनता-आंदोलन का रूप बदल गया। गांधी जी देश को अहिंसक आंदोलन के द्वारा स्वाधीन कराना चाहते थे। उन्होंने देश का दौरा किया। चंपारन में किसान-आंदोलन छेड़ा। कांग्रेस अब केवल पढ़े-लिखे लोगों की गोष्ठी और वाद-विवाद का मंच नहीं बल्कि व्यापक अखिल भारतीय जन आंदोलन बन गई।

हिंदी साहित्य को जन आंदोलन की इस व्यापकता एवं तीव्रता से ऊर्जा मिली। इतिहास का नया दौर नए प्रश्न प्रस्तुत करता है। पश्चिमी ज्ञान-विज्ञान की जानकारी से भी भारतीय मानस में स्वाधीनता की भावना जग रही थी। नाना विषयों के प्रति जिज्ञासा बढ़ रही थी और यह जिज्ञासा व्यक्ति के मन में कल्पना का नया लोक निर्मित कर रही थी। रवींद्रनाथ ठाकुर को विश्व प्रसिद्ध नोबेल पुरस्कार मिल चुका था और उनकी कविताओं का प्रभाव हिंदी कविता पर भी पड़ रहा था। इन कविताओं में कल्पना की अतिशयता थी, कोमलकांत पदावली थी, नई शब्द-योजना और बिंब-विधान था। इसे आलोचकों नें 'स्थूल के प्रति सूक्ष्म का विद्रोह' कहा। यह काव्यधारा छायावाद कहलाई। इसमें रहस्य एवं अध्यात्म की भावना भी लिपटी थी।

छायावादी कविता स्वप्निल होते हुए भी यथार्थ पर आधारित थी। इस यथार्थ को प्रेमचंद के उपन्यास चित्रित कर रहे थे। प्रेमचंद यथार्थ एवं उसका स्वप्न दोनों चित्रित कर रहे थे इसीलिए उनके उपन्यास आदर्शोन्मुख यथार्थवादी हैं।

हिंदी साहित्य का चौथा दशक अत्यंत महत्त्वपूर्ण है। इस दशक में किसान आंदोलन राजनीति में प्रभावशाली बना। इसी दशक में **साकेत, गोदान, कामायनी, राम की शक्ति पूजा** जैसी गौरवशाली रचनाएँ प्रकाशित हुईं। **चंद्रगुप्त, स्कंदगुप्त, ध्रुवस्वामिनी** जैसे नाटक लिखे गए। इनमें अतीत की पुनर्व्याख्या करके उसे वर्तमान के लिए संदर्भवान बनाया गया है। **कफ़न, पूस की रात, हार की जीत** कहानियों में यथार्थ की पहचान और उस यथार्थ को विषमता से मुक्त करने का स्वप्न है।

1936 ई. के आस-पास छायावादी युग समाप्त हो गया। 1918 ई. में रूस में समाजवादी क्रांति हो चुकी थी। इसका प्रभाव भारत के बुद्धिजीवियों पर भी पड़ा और 1936 ई. में लखनऊ में **प्रगतिशील लेखक संघ** की स्थापना हुई। यह लेखकीय संगठन समाजवादी विचारधारा से प्रभावित एवं संबद्ध था। इसकी अध्यक्षता प्रेमचंद ने की।

स्वाधीनता आंदोलन स्वाधीन मानसिकता के बिना असंभव था। 1918 से 1947 ई. तक का युग जिस प्रकार अपने यथार्थ से विक्षुब्ध था, उसी प्रकार एक स्वप्न भी निर्मित कर रहा था। आशा-आकांक्षा के स्वप्नलोक के बिना संघर्ष नहीं हो सकता। इसीलिए भारत अपनी पराधीनता के यथार्थ से उबरने और स्वाधीनता के स्वप्न की पूर्ति के लिए संघर्ष कर रहा था। पराधीनता हमारा राष्ट्रीय कलंक और स्वाधीनता हमारा राष्ट्रीय स्वप्न था। यथार्थ और आदर्श इस एक ऐतिहासिक स्थिति के ही दो पहलू थे। इसीलिए इस दौर के साहित्य में ये दोनों साहित्य के प्रेरक हैं।

इस युग के साहित्य का परिचय इस प्रकार है –

उपन्यास

हिंदी में उपन्यास लेखन तो भारतेंदु-युग से ही प्रारंभ हो गया था, लेकिन **प्रेमचंद** (1880-1936 ई.) के उपन्यासों में इस विधा ने अभूतपूर्व व्यापकता और गंभीरता प्राप्त की। प्रेमचंद की संवेदना अत्यंत व्यापक थी। जितनी व्यापक उनकी संवेदना थी उतनी ही सूक्ष्म उनकी दृष्टि थी। उपन्यास विधा के चरम उत्कर्ष के लिए जिस सहज भाषा-शैली की आवश्यकता

होती है वह भी प्रेमचंद के पास थी। हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी के अनुसार – "अगर आप उत्तर भारत की समस्त जनता के आचार-विचार, भाषा-भाव, रहन-सहन, आशा-आकांक्षा, दुख-सुख और सूझ-बूझ जानना चाहते हैं तो प्रेमचंद से उत्तम परिचायक आपको नहीं मिल सकता।"

प्रेमचंद के उपन्यासों का विषय-क्षेत्र बहुत व्यापक है। वे प्रधानतः मध्यवर्ग और निम्न वर्ग के कथाकार हैं, किंतु उनके रचना-संसार में सभी वर्गों के लोग सिमट आए हैं। यहाँ प्रकृति, पशु-पक्षी सब मौजूद हैं। फिर उनके आर्थिक, सामाजिक, वर्णगत, पारिवारिक संबंधों का ढाँचा और पात्रों के चरित्र की निजी विशेषताएँ भी मिलेंगी। प्रेमचंद के पात्र प्रतिनिधि पात्र हैं। निजी विशेषताओं से रहित होकर कोई प्रतिनिधि पात्र नहीं हो सकता।

प्रेमचंद पर गांधीवाद का प्रभाव स्पष्ट है। उनके अनेक प्रारंभिक उपन्यासों पर गांधीवादी आदर्श, हृदय परिवर्तन एवं सुधारवाद का प्रभाव है। उपन्यास का अंत हृदय परिवर्तन और किसी आश्रम-स्थापना में होता है। उपन्यासों का अंत ही नहीं, पात्र, चरित्र-चित्रण आदि पर गांधीवादी सिद्धांतों का दबाव है। प्रेमचंद के अंतिम और प्रतिनिधि उपन्यास **गोदान** में आदर्शवाद से उनका मोहभंग हो गया है। वे आद्यंत यथार्थ को ही दृष्टि में रखते हैं, इसीलिए **गोदान** दुखांत है।

प्रेमचंद मूलतः कृषक जीवन के रचनाकार हैं। किसान को भूमि से कितनी आत्मीयता होती है इसका चित्रण वे **रंगभूमि** और **प्रेमाश्रम** में करते हैं। किसानों पर ब्रिटिश साम्राज्यवाद, बड़े व्यापारियों, छोटे व्यापारियों आदि सबका भार था। छोटे किसानों के साथ छोटे ज़मींदारों की भी हालत बिगड़ रही थी। **गोदान** में उन्होंने दिखाया है कि छोटा किसान किस तरह क्रमशः भूमिहीन होकर मज़दूर बनने पर विवश हो रहा है। भूमि पर आश्रित ज़मींदार राय साहब की भी आर्थिक स्थिति खोखली है।

प्रेमचंद की महानता इस बात से प्रकट हो जाती है कि उन्होंने तिलस्मी और ऐयारी कथा साहित्य के पाठकों को सामाजिक, राजनीतिक, आर्थिक समस्याओं पर आधारित कथा साहित्य की ओर मोड़कर उनकी रुचि में अभूतपूर्व परिष्कार किया। प्रेमचंद की भाषा न किताबी हिंदी है न किताबी उर्दू, वह सहज हिंदी भाषा है।

प्रेमचंद के उपन्यासों में पात्रों और घटनाओं को इस तरह प्रस्तुत किया जाता है कि वे हमारे देखे-सुने लगते हैं। उनके उपन्यासों में स्वभाव और परिस्थिति की टकराहट से पात्रों का चरित्र-विकास होता है, जो हिंदी कथा साहित्य में नई बात थी।

सेवासदन, प्रेमाश्रम, रंगभूमि, कायाकल्प, निर्मला, गबन , कर्मभूमि, गोदान, और मंगल सूत्र (अपूर्ण) आदि प्रेमचंद के प्रमुख उपन्यास हैं।

वृंदावनलाल वर्मा (1889-1969 ई.) के उपन्यास बुंदेलखंड के इतिहास से संबंधित हैं। वे ऐतिहासिक भी थे और क्षेत्रीय या आंचलिक भी। **गढ़कुंडार, विराटा की पद्मिनी, झाँसी की रानी, मृगनयनी** उनके प्रसिद्ध उपन्यास हैं।

यशपाल (1903-1976 ई.) ने **दिव्या** (1945) लिखा जो ठीक-ठीक ऐतिहासिक उपन्यास तो नहीं है, क्योंकि खुद दिव्या कल्पित पात्र है, किंतु इसमें प्राचीन भारत के एक काल खंड को दृष्टि विशेष से देखकर सजीव रूप में प्रस्तुत किया गया है। राहुल सांकृत्यायन (1893-1963 ई.) ने इसी दृष्टि से प्राचीन गणतंत्रों के जीवन को आधार बनाकर **सिंह सेनापति** और **जय यौधेय** जैसे ऐतिहासिक उपन्यास लिखे। स्वतंत्रता के ठीक एक वर्ष पहले 1946 ई. में हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी का उपन्यास **बाणभट्ट की आत्मकथा** प्रकाशित हुआ। इस उपन्यास में ऐतिहासिकता को सुरक्षित रखते हुए आधुनिक विचारों को समो दिया गया है। **बाणभट्ट की आत्मकथा** में हर्षकालीन उत्तर भारत का सांस्कृतिक जीवन अत्यंत सजीव तौर पर चित्रित है। ऐतिहासिक वातावरण का उपयोग भगवतीचरण वर्मा ने पाप और पुण्य की समस्या को नए ढंग से परिभाषित करने का प्रयास करने वाले उपन्यास **चित्रलेखा** में किया। रांगेय राघव ने 1946 ई. में ही सिंधुघाटी की विलुप्त सभ्यता को आधार बना कर महत्त्वपूर्ण ऐतिहासिक रोमानी उपन्यास **मुर्दों का टीला** लिखा।

प्रेमचंद का प्रभाव हिंदी उपन्यास साहित्य पर दो तरह से पड़ा। एक तो उनकी तरह उपन्यास लिखने वाले कथाकार सामने आए, जैसे विश्वंभरनाथ शर्मा 'कौशिक', प्रताप नारायण श्रीवास्तव, जिनके क्रमशः **माँ** और **विदा** उपन्यास प्रसिद्ध हैं। जयशंकर प्रसाद ने **तितली** नामक उपन्यास में ग्रामीण जीवन के संघर्ष का चित्रण किया। निराला ने कई प्रकार के उपन्यास लिखे। **प्रभावती** ऐतिहासिक है, **अलका** सामाजिक तो **बिल्लेसुर बकरिहा** व्यक्तिपूर्ण जिसकी अंतर्धारा करुणा की है। सामान्य समझे जाने वाले किंतु अपनी निष्ठा में विशिष्ट समकालीन व्यक्तियों के जीवन पर निराला ने ऐसी रचनाएँ प्रस्तुत कीं जो औपन्यासिक जीवनियाँ हैं, जैसे **कुल्ली भाट** और **चतुरी चमार**। दूसरी बात यह कि प्रेमचंद से भिन्न प्रकार के उपन्यासों को लिखने का प्रचलन हुआ जिनमें सामाजिक

समस्याएँ नहीं बल्कि निजी या वैचारिक समस्याओं को केंद्र में रखकर कथानक बुना जाता था। ऐसे उपन्यासकारों में जैनेंद्र का नाम सर्वाधिक महत्त्वपूर्ण है जिन्होंने **सुनीता** (1935) और **त्यागपत्र** (1936) उपन्यास लिखे। इनमें विशिष्ट स्थितियों के कारण विचित्र या विशिष्ट चरित्रों को केंद्र में रखकर कथानक रचा गया है। जैनेंद्र कुमार के इन उपन्यासों में सामाजिक, पारिवारिक और यौन समस्याओं को गुंफित कर दिया गया है। समाज की विकृतियों को सामने लाकर उनका भंडाफोड़ करने और समाज को अधिक मानवीय एवं क्षमाशील बनाने के उद्देश्य से जयशंकर प्रसाद ने **कंकाल** (1930) लिखा, जिसे कुछ लोगों ने प्रकृत यथार्थवादी उपन्यास कहा।

समाज के पाखंड पूर्ण कुत्सित पक्षों का उद्घाटन और चित्रण करने में सिद्धहस्त पांडेय बेचन शर्मा 'उग्र' ने इसी उद्देश्य से **दिल्ली का दलाल**, **मनुष्यानंद**, **सरकार तुम्हारी आँखों में** तथा **बुधुआ की बेटी** जैसे उपन्यास लिखे।

हिंदी उपन्यासों पर इस बीच फ्रायड के मनोविश्लेषणवादी विचारों का प्रभाव पड़ा। इलाचंद्र जोशी और अज्ञेय के उपन्यासों पर मनोविश्लेषणवाद के प्रभाव को पूर्णतः स्वीकार नहीं किया जा सकता। इलाचंद्र जोशी के उल्लेखनीय उपन्यास **संन्यासी** और **पर्दे की रानी** हैं।

अज्ञेय का प्रसिद्ध उपन्यास **शेखर : एक जीवनी** का प्रथम भाग 1941 ई. में और दूसरा भाग 1944 ई. में प्रकाशित हुआ। **शेखर** आतंकवाद की छाया में लिखा हुआ एक ऐसा उपन्यास है जिस पर मनोविश्लेषण शास्त्र के प्रभाव के साथ समाज के परिप्रेक्ष्य में व्यक्ति और उनके विचारों को देखा गया है।

उपेंद्रनाथ अश्क के उपन्यास **गिरती दीवारें** में सामाजिक विषयवस्तु को व्यक्तिपरक दृष्टि से चित्रित किया गया है।

इस काल में साहित्यिक हास्य और व्यंग्य की छटा अमृतलाल नागर के दो उपन्यासों **नवाबी मसनद** और **सेठ बाँकेमल** में मिलती है।

कहानी

चंद्रधर शर्मा गुलेरी की **उसने कहा था** नामक कहानी 1915 ई. में प्रकाशित हुई। संवेदना और शिल्प की दृष्टि से यह कहानी बेजोड़ थी। 1916 में प्रेमचंद की कहानी **पंच परमेश्वर** प्रकाशित हुई। इस कहानी को अभूतपूर्व लोकप्रियता प्राप्त हुई।

प्रेमचंद की कहानिया का ससार बहुत व्यापक एवं विविधतापूर्ण है। उनकी प्रारंभिक कहानियों पर लोकवार्ताओं का प्रभाव है, जैसे – **सारंगा सदावृक्ष, आत्माराम, दामुल का कैदी** आदि। **दामुल का कैदी** में तो कथानक गढ़ने में पुनर्जन्म का भी सहारा लिया गया है।

कहानी की विधा, जो यूरोप से आई थी, प्रेमचंद के हाथों ठेठ भारतीय बन गई। उन्होंने उस विधा में भारतीय जीवन, उसका परस्पर विरोधी समकालीन यथार्थ एवं आदर्श और विकास – सब घुलामिला दिया है।

प्रेमचंद की कहानियाँ स्वाधीनता संग्राम के आदर्श से ओत-प्रोत हैं।

प्रेमचंद की कहानियों में नारी विविध रूपों में आती हैं। इस दृष्टि से उनकी **बूढ़ी काकी** कहानी अनुपम है। जो असहाय और हास्यापद है, उनकी मानसिकता को समझना महान रचनाकारों के ही बस की बात होती है। प्रेमचंद की कहानियों को पढ़नेवाला जानता है कि उनकी कहानियों में बच्चों को कितना स्थान मिला है। वे बच्चों की मानसिकता को कितना समझते हैं। **ईदगाह** और **रामलीला** कहानियाँ बाल-मनोविज्ञान की उत्कृष्ट कहानियाँ हैं। **बूढ़ी काकी** में उपेक्षिता बूढ़ी काकी की खोज-खबर अंततः छोटी बच्ची ही लेती है। बुड्ढे और बच्चे ही नहीं पशु-पक्षियों को भी प्रेमचंद की कहानियों में अद्भुत आत्मीयता दी गई है। **दो बैलों की कथा** के हीरा-मोती, **पूस की रात** का झबरा कुत्ता, **आत्माराम** का तोता हिंदी पाठकों के हृदय में घर कर गए हैं। **दो बैलों की कथा** तो पराधीनता के विरुद्ध संघर्ष की प्रतीकात्मक कहानी ही है।

प्रेमचंद की कुछ कहानियाँ – विशेष रूप से उनकी अंतिम कहानियों में से एक **कफ़न** ऐसी कहानी है जो आद्यंत यथार्थबोध का आधार नहीं छोड़ती।

प्रेमचंद के समकालीन प्रसिद्ध छायावादी कवि प्रसाद ने रोमानी, सामाजिक और चरित्र प्रधान कहानियाँ लिखी हैं। **पुरस्कार, आकाशदीप, मधुआ, गुंडा** उनकी प्रसिद्ध कहानियाँ हैं। **आकाशदीप** रोमानी ऐतिहासिक कहानी है। **मधुआ** प्रेमचंद की और **गुंडा** उग्र की कहानियों से मिलती-जुलती है। मन की गहरी पर्तों को खोलने का उद्देश्य लेकर चलने वाली कहानियों की शुरुआत वस्तुतः हिंदी में प्रसाद की कहानियों से ही होती है। रायकृष्ण दास की कहानी **अंतःपुर का आरंभ** प्रसाद के प्रभाव में लिखी गई प्रतीत होती है।

प्रेमचंद के समकालीन कहानीकारों में विश्वंभरनाथ शर्मा 'कौशिक' और सुदर्शन सामाजिक एवं पारिवारिक विषयों पर कहानियाँ लिखते थे। विश्वंभरनाथ शर्मा 'कौशिक' की कहानी **ताई** और सुदर्शन की **हार की जीत** बहुत प्रसिद्ध हुई। ये आदर्शवादी ढर्रे की ही कहानियाँ हैं।

प्रेमचंद के बाद उनके ढर्रे की कहानियाँ अधिकांशतः प्रगतिशील कहानीकारों ने ही लिखीं जिनमें यशपाल, राहुल सांकृत्यायन, उपेंद्रनाथ 'अश्क', अमृतराय, रमाप्रसाद घिल्डियाल 'पहाड़ी' आदि उल्लेखनीय हैं। यशपाल प्रेमचंदोत्तर हिंदी कहानीकारों में प्रमुख हैं। उनकी पहली कहानी **मक्रील** 1934 ई. में छपी।

राहुल जी ने **सतमी के बच्चे** (1935) के अलावा **वोल्गा से गंगा** (1942) लिखी जो इतिहास के विभिन्न युगों को चित्रित करने वाली कहानियों का संग्रह है। इससे पूरा मानव-इतिहास आँखों के सामने आ जाता है। भगवतशरण उपाध्याय का कहानी-संग्रह भी इसी प्रकार का है। अश्क उर्दू से हिंदी में आए। उनका पहला कहानी-संग्रह **जुदाई की शाम का गीत** 1933 ई. में छपा था, **डाची** 1937 ई. में। अमृतराय, पहाड़ी, श्यामू, संन्यासी, भैरव प्रसाद गुप्त आदि ने इसी समय लिखना शुरू किया और स्वतंत्रता के बाद भी लिखते रहे।

पांडेय बेचन शर्मा 'उग्र' समाज के उपेक्षित और प्रायः निम्न वर्ग के पात्रों का चित्रण करते हैं। 'उग्र' व्यंग्य के माध्यम से सामाजिक भ्रष्टाचार के अनेक रूपों को उभारते हैं, लेकिन कुल मिलाकर उनके व्यंग्य में करुणा अंतर्निहित होती है। निस्संदेह अपने परिवेश की गहरी पहचान उग्र की कहानियों में मिलती है।

जैनेंद्र, अज्ञेय और इलाचंद्र जोशी कहानी की उस धारा का प्रतिनिधित्व करते हैं जो सामाजिक यथार्थ का चित्रण करने वाली धारा के समानांतर बह रही थी। इन पर फ्रायड के चेतन-अचेतन सिद्धांत का प्रभाव दिखाई पड़ता है। जैनेंद्र का पहला कहानी-संग्रह **फाँसी** 1929 ई. में प्रकाशित हुआ। अज्ञेय ने आतंकवादी पात्रों के अतिरिक्त विदेशी वातावरण की कहानियाँ भी लिखी हैं। उनकी प्रारंभिक कहानियों का संग्रह **विपथगा** 1937 ई. में निकला था। इलाचंद्र जोशी की प्रारंभिक कहानियों में सामाजिक यथार्थ को प्रकट करने का आग्रह मिलता है, किंतु सन 35-36 तक उन पर फ्रायड के मनोविश्लेषण का गहरा असर पड़ गया। उनके कुछ कहानी-संग्रह इस प्रकार हैं– **धूपरेखा, दिवाली और होली, आहुति**।

नाटक

भारतेंदु युग में नाटक साहित्य ही प्रधान साहित्य रूप बन गया था, किंतु बाद में नाट्य-रचनाएँ कम हो गईं। इस क्षेत्र में जयशंकर प्रसाद ने महत्त्वपूर्ण कार्य किया। उनके नाटकों से हिंदी साहित्य में बहुत बड़े अभाव की पूर्ति हुई। नाट्य-रचना का विधान प्राचीन काव्यशास्त्र में विस्तार से किया गया है। हिंदी नाटककारों ने उस विधान को ज्यों का त्यों स्वीकार नहीं किया।

इस काल में ऐतिहासिक नाटक लिखने की धूम रही। जयशंकर प्रसाद के अतिरिक्त हरिकृष्ण प्रेमी, गोविंद वल्लभ पंत, सेठ गोविंद दास आदि ने ऐतिहासिक नाटक लिखे। 'उग्र' ने **महात्मा ईसा** नामक साहसपूर्ण नाटक लिखा। सामाजिक समस्याओं पर नाटक लिखने वालों में लक्ष्मीनारायण मिश्र, उपेंद्रनाथ अश्क तथा भुवनेश्वर प्रमुख हैं। डॉ. रामकुमार वर्मा ने ऐतिहासिक और सामाजिक दोनों प्रकार के नाटक लिखे। इसी समय एकांकियों का भी प्रचलन हुआ और रेडिया नाटक का भी। प्रसाद जी के नाटकों का क्षेत्र प्राचीन हिंदू काल है और प्रेमी जी का मुस्लिम काल।

प्रसाद के ऐतिहासिक नाटकों पर अपने समय अर्थात 20वीं शती की समस्याओं का पूरा प्रभाव है। उनके नाटक राष्ट्रीयता, अतीत गौरव की भावना से पूर्ण हैं। सांप्रदायिक एकता, विश्वबंधुत्व की भावना भी दिखाई पड़ती है जिसे अंतर्राष्ट्रीय भावना भी कह सकते हैं। **चंद्रगुप्त** (1931) में एक ओर तो राजनीतिक चालें और चाणक्य का सूत्र-संचालन है और दूसरी ओर उसका इन सबसे विरक्त ब्राह्मण-व्यक्तित्व है। इससे उस पात्र में अंतर्द्वंद्व तो आ ही गया है, शील वैचित्र्य भी आ गया है। **स्कंदगुप्त** (1928) की देवसेना ठेठ छायावादी पात्र है। प्रसाद के नाटकों में उनका कवि मुखर है। उनके कुछ श्रेष्ठ गीत इन नाटकों में यत्र-तत्र दिखलाई पड़ते हैं। प्रसाद नारी रूप के विश्वसनीय जानकार हैं। भारतीय नारी के शोषण के प्रति क्षोभ को ही व्यक्त करने के लिए उन्होंने **ध्रुवस्वामिनी** (1933) लिखा जिसमें कायर पति को त्याग कर एक प्राचीन हिंदूरानी अपने देवर का वरण करती है। कहने की आवश्यकता नहीं कि प्रसाद इस नाटक के द्वारा उचित कारण होने पर पुनर्विवाह के विधान को उचित ठहरा रहे हैं।

हरिकृष्ण प्रेमी के **शिवासाधना** और **रक्षाबंधन** नाटक प्रसिद्ध हैं। श्री प्रेमी के नाटकों के कथोपकथन स्वाभाविक हैं। **शिवासाधना** छत्रपति शिवाजी के जीवन पर है और

रक्षाबंधन इस प्रसिद्ध ऐतिहासिक जनश्रुति पर कि मेवाड़ की महारानी कर्मवती द्वारा राखी भेजने पर हुमायूँ ने गुजरात शासक बहादुरशाह को युद्ध में पराजित करके अपनी धर्म-बहन की रक्षा की थी। दोनों नाटकों पर स्वाधीनता आंदोलन के विचारों का प्रभाव स्पष्ट है। सेठ गोविंद दास के **कर्तव्य** में राम और कृष्ण दोनों के चरित्रों को एक ही नाटक में गूँथ दिया गया है और दिखाया गया है कि राम लोकहित का पालन मर्यादा के द्वारा करते हैं और कृष्ण अपनी अवसरानुकूल रणनीति द्वारा। गोविंद वल्लभ पंत का सबसे प्रसिद्ध नाटक **राजमुकुट** है जो पन्ना धाय के अपूर्व त्याग की कथा पर आधारित है। उदयशंकर भट्ट ने पौराणिक आधार लेकर **राधा**, **विश्वामित्र** और **मत्स्यगंधा** आदि रीति नाटकों की रचना की।

हिंदी नाटक को एक नया मोड़ लक्ष्मीनारायण मिश्र ने **मुक्ति का रहस्य** (1932) और **सिंदूर की होली** (1934) लिखकर दिया। दोनों समस्या नाटक हैं। समस्या नाटक से तात्पर्य ठेठ समकालीन जीवन की समस्याओं से है जो बहुत कुछ व्यक्ति के मनोजगत से संबद्ध है। इनमें भावुकता से भरसक बचा गया था।

हास्य रचनाकार जी.पी. श्रीवास्तव नाटकों के क्षेत्र में भी सक्रिय रहे। उन्होंनें अनेक प्रहसन लिखे, जिनमें से **दुमदार आदमी** अधिक प्रसिद्ध है।

प्रगतिशील लेखक संघ की स्थापना के बाद प्रगतिशील रचनाकारों का ध्यान नाटकों की ओर भी गया। 1939 ई. के आस-पास जन नाट्य संघ (इप्टा) की स्थापना हुई। इसमें अनेक प्रतिभाशाली रंगकर्मी शामिल हुए। यह जन नाट्य संघ अपने आपको जनक्रांति से जोड़ता था। इसने अनेक भारतीय भाषाओं की रचनाओं का हिंदी में अनुवाद कराया और मौलिक नाटकों की रचना को भी प्रेरित किया। बलराज साहनी के नाटक **मशाल** और **जादू की कुर्सी**, ख्वाजा अहमद अब्बास का नाटक **मैं कौन हूँ**, अश्क का **तूफ़ान से पहले** और शील के नाटक **बेकारी**, **संघर्ष**, **किसान** जन नाट्य संघ द्वारा अभिनीत किए गए।

इस दौर में एकांकी नाटकों का प्रचलन बढ़ा। प्रसाद के **एक घूँट** को अनेक विचारकों ने एकांकी कहा। रामकुमार वर्मा, उपेंद्रनाथ अश्क, भुवनेश्वर आदि ने एकांकी साहित्य की श्री वृद्धि की। रामकुमार वर्मा द्वारा लिखित **एक तोले अफीम की कीमत**, **दस मिनट**, **स्वर्ग का कमरा** आदि प्रसिद्ध एकांकी हैं। अश्क ने **चरवाहे**, **लक्ष्मी का स्वागत**, **सूखी डाली**, **पहेली** आदि लिखे। भुवनेश्वर के अधिकांश एकांकी विकृत स्थितियों को लेकर

लिखे गए हैं। **स्ट्राइक, प्रतिभा का विवाह** उनके उल्लेखनीय एकांकी हैं। एकांकी विधा की उपयोगिता रेडियो का प्रचार होने के बाद और बढ़ी क्योंकि वहाँ निश्चित समय में ही संवाद और ध्वनि के द्वारा नाटक पूरा कर देना होता है।

समालोचना

आचार्य रामचंद्र शुक्ल (1884-1941) हिंदी के सर्वश्रेष्ठ एवं सर्वाधिक विश्वसनीय आलोचक हैं। इन्होंने हिंदी आलोचना को गुण-दोष कथन की रूढ़ियों से उठाकर उसे अंतर्राष्ट्रीय स्तर प्रदान किया। इसके लिए उन्होंने भारी तैयारी की, जिसमें **हिंदी शब्द-सागर** का निर्माण करने की प्रक्रिया में वे हिंदी भाषा और साहित्य के स्वरूप के मर्मज्ञ बने। उसकी भूमिका लिखने की प्रक्रिया में उन्होंने हिंदी साहित्य का प्रथम वैज्ञानिक इतिहास (1929 ई.) लिखा।

शुक्ल जी ने हिंदी समालोचना में प्रमुखतः दो काम किए — एक प्राचीन काव्यशास्त्र की पुनर्व्याख्या करके उसे फिर से रचनात्मकता के लिए संदर्भवान बनाया। जिस तरह उन्होंनें काव्यशास्त्र को वर्तमान बोध एवं सहृदयता के लिए संदर्भवान बनाया, उसी प्रकार प्राचीन साहित्य को वर्तमान बोध एवं सहृदयता के लिए। जिस अर्थ-विस्तार को आलोचना का वास्तविक कार्य कहा जाता है, वह शुक्ल जी ने अनेक कवियों विशेषतः जायसी, तुलसी और सूरदास की समीक्षा के माध्यम से किया। वे विश्लेषण-विवेचन के उपरांत विवेच्य रचनाकार की उस विशेषता को ढूँढ़ लेते हैं जो अन्य से उसे अलग या विशिष्ट बनाती है। उन्होंने तुलसी को 'लोकमंगल' का, सूर को 'जीवनोत्सव' का, जायसी को 'प्रेम की पीर' का कवि कहा। तुलसी और सूर पहले से ही लोकप्रिय थे। शुक्ल जी ने उनके काव्योत्कर्ष को परीक्षित और प्रमाणित किया। दूसरे, अपनी व्यावहारिक आलोचना की प्रक्रिया में उन्होंने अनेक आलोचना संबंधी पारिभाषिक शब्दों को नई अर्थवत्ता से युक्त किया, अनेक पारिभाषिक शब्दों का निर्माण किया। रस, आनंद, करुणा जैसे शब्दों में उन्होंने नई अर्थवत्ता भरी। लोकमंगल, कर्म-सौंदर्य, गल्प-प्रबंध, शीलदशा, जैसे पदों का निर्माण किया। इंद्रिय बोध, संवेदन, विचार, वासना, संस्कार, भाव आदि पर मौलिक विचार करके हिंदी काव्यशास्त्र और सौंदर्यशास्त्र की नींव रखी।

शुक्लोत्तर समालोचकों ने शुक्ल जी का महत्त्व स्वीकार करते हुए भी उनसे कुछ महत्त्वपूर्ण मुद्दों पर मतभेद प्रकट किया। **हिंदी साहित्य : बीसवीं शताब्दी** में

नंददुलारे वाजपेयी ने शुक्ल जी के छायावाद-रहस्यवाद विषयक विचारों की आलोचना की। वे छायावाद के प्रारंभिक और प्रबल समर्थक थे। उन्होंने छायावाद के आध्यात्मिक पक्ष को स्वीकार करते हुए भी यह प्रकट किया कि छायावाद की मुख्य प्रेरणा धार्मिक न होकर मानवीय और सांस्कृतिक है। उन्होंने छायावाद का संबंध बीसवीं शताब्दी की वैज्ञानिक और भौतिक प्रगति से जोड़ा।

वाजपेयी जी मध्य कालीन साहित्य के भी जानकार थे। उन्होंने सूरदास पर भी पुस्तक लिखी है, यद्यपि उनका आलोचनात्मक योगदान आधुनिक काल की ही समीक्षा में हैं। उन्होंने मैथिलीशरण गुप्त, रत्नाकर, महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी, जयशंकर प्रसाद पर जो निबंध लिखे हैं वे अपनी सूक्ष्मदर्शिता में बेजोड़ हैं।

आचार्य हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी (1907-1979) की **हिंदी साहित्य की भूमिका** शुक्ल जी के ज़ीवनकाल में ही 1940 ई. में निकली। उनकी दूसरी प्रसिद्ध पुस्तक **कबीर** 1942 ई. में प्रकाशित हुई। द्विवेदी जी ने भक्ति का सामाजिक-ऐतिहासिक आधार प्रस्तुत करते हुए घोषणा की कि यदि इस्लाम न आया होता तो भी हिंदी साहित्य का अधिकांश वैसा ही रहता। उन्होंने हिंदी साहित्य के इतिहास को लोक जीवन के संदर्भ में देखने का प्रस्ताव किया।

हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी को कबीर की जुलाहा जाति, वर्ण-व्यवस्था के प्रति उनके विद्रोह-आक्रोश को समझाने की आवश्यकता पड़ी। द्विवेदी जी ने कबीर को साहित्यिक भूमि पर नए सिरे से प्रतिष्ठित किया। द्विवेदी जी की पहली किताब सूरदास पर थी, जिसमें उन्होंने राधा-कृष्ण के प्रेम की अलौकिकता की सहृदयतापूर्ण व्याख्या की थी।

द्विवेदी जी हिंदी के अलावा संस्कृत, प्राकृत, अपभ्रंश, बँगला भाषा के भी मर्मज्ञ थे। कालिदास उनके प्रिय कवि थे। उन्होंने कालिदास पर एक स्वतंत्र पुस्तक लिखी है जिसमें कालिदास की रचना-प्रक्रिया को समझाने का प्रयास किया गया है। द्विवेदी जी ने कालिदास द्वारा प्रयुक्त अनेक शब्दों की ही सहायता से कालिदास की कविता की व्याख्या की है और अनेक गुत्थियाँ सुलझाई हैं।

डॉ. नगेंद्र (1915-1999 ई.) ने **सुमित्रानंदन पंत** (1938) और **साकेत : एक अध्ययन** (1939) पुस्तकें लिखीं। इन दोनों पुस्तकों में पंत और मैथिलीशरण गुप्त के काव्य की सहृदयता के साथ समीक्षा की गई है। आगे चलकर डॉ. नगेंद्र ने रीति काल पर

अनुसंधान किया और रस सिद्धांत पर ग्रंथ लिखा। उन्होंने कामायनी, उर्वशी एवं महादेवी वर्मा, जैनेंद्र कुमार, बच्चन, नरेंद्र शर्मा की कृतियों पर भी आलोचनात्मक निबंध लिखे हैं।

शुक्लानुवर्ती आलोचकों में विश्वनाथ प्रसाद मिश्र और कृष्ण शंकर शुक्ल उल्लेखनीय हैं। विश्वनाथ प्रसाद मिश्र की पुस्तक **बिहारी की वाग्विभूति** (1936) स्वाधीनता के पूर्व निकल चुकी थी। उनका काम विशेषतः संपादन और टीका के क्षेत्र में रहा। कृष्ण शंकर शुक्ल ने रत्नाकर और केशव पर उल्लेखनीय कार्य किया। शांतिप्रिय द्विवेदी काव्योचित भाषा में आलोचना लिखते थे। उन्हें प्रभाववादी आलोचक माना जाता है। प्रसाद, निराला, पंत, महादेवी वर्मा ने भी अनेक लेखों के माध्यम से काव्यालोचना करके हिंदी समीक्षा को समृद्ध किया।

1936 ई. में प्रगतिशील लेखक संघ की स्थापना के बाद हिंदी में मार्क्सवादी आलोचना का उदय हुआ। 1937 ई. में **विशाल भारत** में शिवदान सिंह चौहान का **भारत में प्रगतिशील साहित्य की आवश्यकता** नामक लेख प्रकाशित हुआ। इसमें हिंदी साहित्य की पड़ताल की गई है और समय की माँग को ध्यान में रखते हुए प्रगतिशील साहित्य की रचना की आवश्यकता बताई गई है। इस प्रकार मार्क्सवादी आलोचना का उदय 1940 ई. के पूर्व ही हो चुका था। प्रकाशचंद्र गुप्त और डॉ. रामविलास शर्मा ने इस धारा को आगे बढ़ाया। प्रारंभ में मार्क्सवादी आलोचना एक प्रकार के निषेधात्मक एवं अतीत विरोध की भावना से ग्रस्त थी। डॉ. रामविलास शर्मा मार्क्सवादी आलोचकों के दल में बाद में आए। भारतेंदु, निराला और प्रेमचंद पर उनकी पुस्तकें स्वतंत्रता के पूर्व ही आ चुकी थीं, किंतु उनका महत्त्वपूर्ण आलोचनात्मक लेखन बाद में सामने आया।

काशी हिंदू विश्वविद्यालय में हिंदी विभाग की स्थापना के साथ ही पाठ्यपुस्तकीय आलोचना का, जिसे अब प्राध्यापकीय आलोचना कहते हैं, उदय हुआ। इसके प्रवर्तक बाबू श्यामसुंदर दास थे। उन्होंने पाठ्यपुस्तकों की आवश्यकता की पूर्ति के लिए भाषा-विज्ञान आदि नए विषयों पर पुस्तकें लिखीं या तैयार करवाईं। **साहित्यालोचन** सैद्धांतिक समालोचना का ग्रंथ है जिसमें संस्कृत, हिंदी और अंग्रेज़ी साहित्यालोचन का सुलभ संग्रह है। आगे चलकर इस दिशा में लेखन करने वालों में बाबू गुलाबराय विशेष रूप से उल्लेखनीय हैं। विश्वविद्यालयों और हिंदी विभागों में विद्यार्थियों की बढ़ती हुई संख्या को देखते हुए ऐसे कार्य के महत्त्व से इनकार नहीं किया जा सकता।

निबंध

हम पहले देख चुके हैं कि रामचंद्र शुक्ल के निबंध महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी द्वारा संपादित **सरस्वती** में छपने लगे थे। उन्होंने निबंध में प्रस्तुत सूत्रों की उपमा पत्ते की नसों से दी है, जो परस्पर गुँथी होती हैं। शुक्ल जी के अधिकांश प्रसिद्ध निबंध मनोविकारों पर हैं। उन्होंने भारतेंदु, प्रेमघन, फ्रेडरिक पिंकाट पर भी लिखा है, लेकिन वे या तो व्यक्तित्व-कृतित्व का परिचय देने वाले हैं, या संस्मरण या जीवनीपरक। निबंधकार के रूप में शुक्ल जी का योगदान मनोविकार संबंधी निबंधों के कारण है। इन निबंधों का संग्रह पहले **विचार-बीथी** के नाम से 1930 ई. में प्रकाशित हुआ था। बाद में **चिंतामणि (पहला भाग)** नाम से 1939 ई. में परिवर्धित और संशोधित संस्करण प्रकाशित हुआ।

शुक्ल जी के निबंध गंभीर एवं विचारपरक होते हैं। मनोविकारों की परिभाषा करना कठिन होता है। किंतु शुक्ल जी प्रायः निबंध का प्रारंभ परिभाषा से करते हैं। वे कोई सूत्र एक वाक्य में प्रस्तुत कर देते हैं और फिर उसकी व्याख्या में प्रवृत्त होते हैं। व्याख्या करके वे आवश्यकतानुसार सामान्य जीवन-खंड से कोई दृष्टांत भी प्रस्तुत कर देते हैं। इससे निबंध का वह सूत्र हृदयंगम हो जाता है।

अतीत में रमने की प्रवृत्ति महाराज कुमार रघुवीर सिंह के इतिहासपरक निबंधों में मिलती है। उनके निबंधों का संग्रह **शेष स्मृतियाँ** के नाम से प्रकाशित हुआ।

छायावादी कवियों में प्रसाद के निबंध **काव्य कला तथा अन्य निबंध** में और निराला के निबंध **प्रबंध प्रतिमा**, **चाबुक** आदि में संगृहीत हैं। प्रसाद के निबंधों में गंभीर अध्ययन के साथ-साथ विचारों की गहराई दिखलाई पड़ती है। प्रसाद ने इन निबंधों में हिंदी साहित्य की अनेक प्रवृत्तियों पर मौलिक विचार प्रस्तुत किए हैं। इनका आलोचनात्मक महत्त्व अधिक है। निराला के निबंधों में सामाजिक, साहित्यिक सरोकार के साथ व्यंग्य और क्षोभ मिलता है। महादेवी वर्मा के साहित्यिक निबंध महादेवी के विवेचनात्मक गद्य में संकलित हैं जिनमें उन्होंने छायावाद, यथार्थवाद आदि पर विचार किया है।

हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी के निबंधों का पहला संकलन **विचार और वितर्क** 1945 ई. में प्रकाशित हुआ और **अशोक के फूल** 1948 ई. में। द्विवेदी जी निबंधों की रचना स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत में भी करते रहे। किंतु लिखना उन्होंने इसी दौर में प्रारंभ किया। द्विवेदी जी के जैसे निबंध हिंदी में पहले नहीं लिखे गए थे। उन्होंने निबंध विधा को अपने

लेखन से सर्जनात्मक साहित्य की कोटि में परिगणनीय बना दिया। उनके निबंध मूलतः भारत के सांस्कृतिक इतिहास की पुनर्रचना करते हैं। **अशोक के फूल** उनका प्रतिनिधि निबंध कहा जा सकता है। वे पहले इस फूल का सौंदर्य बताते हैं, फिर उसका इतिहास, उस इतिहास के बहाने मध्य काल का सांस्कृतिक इतिहास, तत्कालीन जीवन और फिर सामंती वैभव का खोखलापन, उसकी अमानवीयता। अंत में अशोक के फूल की वर्तमान उपेक्षा। इन सबसे वह इतिहास की दुर्दांत और निर्मम धारा का प्रभाव पाठकों के दिल पर छोड़ जाते हैं। यह प्रभाव रचनात्मक कृतियों के प्रभाव जैसा होता है।

द्विवेदी जी की एक बहुत बड़ी शक्ति है पांडित्य को पीछे रखकर सहज हो पाने की क्षमता। वे बड़ी से बड़ी बात को सरल-सहज शैली में कहकर पाठक का विश्वास अर्जित कर सकते हैं। उनकी शैली अनौपचारिक होती है। उसमें पांडित्य और लोक जीवन का सहज प्रवाह दोनों हैं।

जैनेंद्र कुमार, सियारामशरण गुप्त, राहुल सांकृत्यायन, पदुमलाल पुन्नालाल बख्शी, बाबू गुलाबराय, सद्गुरुशरण अवस्थी आदि इस युग के अन्य उल्लेखनीय निबंधकार हैं। शिवपूजन सहाय सहज, सरल शैली के गद्यकार थे। **हिमालय, बालक** और **मतवाला** के संपादक के रूप में उन्होंने हिंदी के उन्नयन में महत्त्वपूर्ण योग दिया है।

कविता : छायावाद

इस युग की काव्यधारा की प्रधान प्रवृत्ति को छायावाद की संज्ञा दी जाती है। हिंदी कविता के क्षेत्र में छायावाद का उल्लेख 1920 ई. के आस-पास मिलने लगता है। शुक्ल जी इसे रवींद्रनाथ ठाकुर की कविताओं के प्रभाव से आया हुआ मानकर इसका संबंध ईसाई संतों के फैंटैसमाटा (छायाभास) शब्द से जोड़ते थे। उन्होंने छायावाद को चित्र भाषा-शैली भी कहा। नंददुलारे वाजपेयी ने इसका संबंध युग-बोध से जोड़ते हुए भी इसे व्यक्त सौंदर्य में आध्यात्मिक छाया का भान कहा। डॉ. नगेंद्र ने छायावाद को 'स्थूल के विरुद्ध सूक्ष्म का विद्रोह' माना। डॉ. नामवर सिंह ने अपनी पुस्तक '**छायावाद**' में दिखाया कि छायावाद कई काव्य प्रवृत्तियों का सामूहिक नाम है और वह 'उस राष्ट्रीय जागरण की काव्यात्मक अभिव्यक्ति है जो एक ओर पुरानी रूढ़ियों से मुक्ति पाना चाहता था और दूसरी ओर विदेशी पराधीनता से।'

छायावाद साम्राज्यवाद विरोधी मानवतावादी काव्यधारा है। वह व्यक्ति के सुख-दुख का उदात्तीकरण कर देता है। प्रसाद ने **आँसू** के उत्तरार्ध में आँसू की घनीभूत पीड़ा को 'दुःख दावा से दग्ध विश्व की पीड़ा' से जोड़कर इस जग के वृंदावन बन जाने की कामना की। उनकी **कामायनी** शक्तिशाली और विजयी बनने का आह्वान करती है– 'शक्तिशाली हो विजयी बनो विश्व में गूँज रहा जयगान'। निराला ने **शिवाजी का पत्र** में मुगल शासन को साम्राज्यवादी कहा। **राम की शक्ति पूजा** में 'अन्याय जिधर है उधर शक्ति' लिखकर अन्यायी और शक्तिशाली ब्रिटिश साम्राज्यवाद से निपटने के लिए केवल धर्म, न्याय और विवेक को अपर्याप्त बताते हुए 'शक्ति की आराधना' का प्रस्ताव किया।

छायावाद व्यक्ति के मानस को उड़ने के लिए कल्पना का अनंत आकाश देता था। वह दीन-दलित के दुःख से व्यथित भी होता था। उसने अपने परिवेश, देश की प्रकृति, नदी, पर्वत, खेत, खलिहान, इतिहास पुराण– सबको नई दृष्टि से देखा। उन सबकी नई पहचान बनाई। उसने प्रकृति की भाँति नारी को भी कल्पना से निर्मित किया और यथार्थ की दृष्टि से भी। कुल मिलाकर इस युग का साहित्य यथार्थ की विषम भूमि पर भावी भारत को रचने के स्वप्न का साहित्य है। इसमें शक्ति एवं मंगल की भावना है।

छायावाद के प्रमुख कवियों – प्रसाद, निराला, पंत और महादेवी वर्मा का संक्षिप्त परिचय यहाँ दिया जा रहा है –

जयशंकर प्रसाद (1889-1937)

प्रसाद जी का जन्म काशी के प्रतिष्ठित व्यापारी परिवार में हुआ। इन्होंने प्रारंभिक काव्य-रचना ब्रजभाषा में की। ये मूलतः आनंद के कवि हैं। अपने मन के गहरे विषाद को इन्होंने **आँसू** में लोकमंगल की भावना से जोड़ा है। जयशंकर प्रसाद टीस-कचोट और जगत की नश्वरता के कवि हैं। कभी-कभी उनमें सूफी कवियों जैसी उत्कट वेदना का भाव पाया जाता है। वे एक दार्शनिक कवि हैं। उन्होंने अपने इतिहास और दर्शन के ज्ञान को **कामायनी** में प्रबंध योजना से समन्वित करके अभिव्यक्त किया है। **कामायनी** मानव के बाह्य और आंतरिक विकास का कथा-काव्य है, जो अंत में शैव आनंदवादी दर्शन में समाधान ढूँढ़ता है, यद्यपि इस विशद कृति पर अनेक आधुनिक विचारों का प्रभाव है। इनकी प्रसिद्ध काव्य कृतियाँ हैं – **काननकुसुम, प्रेमपथिक, महाराणा का महत्त्व, चित्राधार, आँसू, झरना, लहर, कामायनी।**

सूर्यकांत त्रिपाठी 'निराला' (1899-1961 ई.)

निराला का जन्म महिषादल राज्य (बंगाल) में हुआ। उनका गाँव गढ़ाकोला उन्नाव ज़िले के अंतर्गत पड़ता है। निराला ओज, औदात्य एवं विद्रोह के कवि हैं। उन पर वेदांत और रामकृष्ण परमहंस तथा विवेकानंद के दर्शन का प्रभाव रहा है। इसलिए उनकी कविताओं में रहस्यवाद भी मिलता है। निराला अकुंठ शृंगार तथा तृप्ति के कवि हैं। वे सुख-दुख दोनों को भरपूर देखकर उससे ऊपर उठकर चित्रण करने की क्षमता रखते हैं। उनकी कविताओं में बौद्धिकता का भरपूर दबाव है। अपने युग का विषम यथार्थ और उससे उबरने की साधना उनकी तीन प्रबंधात्मक दीर्घ कविताओं – **तुलसीदास, सरोज स्मृति** और **राम की शक्तिपूजा** में प्रकट हुई है। **सरोज स्मृति** उनकी कन्या सरोज की मृत्यु पर लिखी गई कविता है। अपनी कन्या के बचपन और किशोरावस्था का ऐसा अकुंठ और संयमित वर्णन अन्यत्र दुर्लभ है।

निराला हिंदी में मुक्त छंद के लिए प्रसिद्ध हैं। वे स्थितियों के संश्लेष से कम-से-कम शब्दों द्वारा अधिक-से-अधिक भाव प्रकट करते हैं। नाद योजना का उनकी काव्यात्मकता में विशिष्ट स्थान है।

निराला में प्रारंभ से ही छायावाद के साथ-साथ सरल और बोलचाल की भाषा में जीवन के विषम यथार्थ को अभिव्यक्त करने की प्रवृत्ति रही है। यह महत्त्व निराला को ही प्राप्त है कि नई हिंदी कविता की सभी प्रवृत्तियों के कवि अपना संबंध निराला से जोड़ने में गौरव का अनुभव करते हैं। उनकी प्रसिद्ध काव्य कृतियाँ हैं – **अनामिका, परिमल, गीतिका, अपरा, कुकुरमुत्ता, अणिमा, बेला, नए पत्ते** आदि।

सुमित्रानंदन पंत (1900-1977 ई.)

पंत जी का जन्म अल्मोड़ा ज़िले (उत्तरांचल) के कौसानी नामक मनोरम स्थान पर हुआ। उनकी कविता में प्रकृति को विशेष महत्त्व प्राप्त है। पंत प्रधानतः संवेदनशील इंद्रिय बोध के कवि हैं। छायावादी कवियों में सबसे सहज अतः तत्काल स्वीकार्य तथा लोकप्रिय होने वाले कवि पंत थे। उनकी कविता ने छायावाद को प्रतिष्ठित करने में महत्त्वपूर्ण भूमिका अदा की। उनकी काव्य-चेतना ने कई मंज़िलें तय की हैं। युग-बोध के अनुसार अपनी काव्य भूमि का विस्तार करते रहना पंत की काव्य चेतना की विशेषता है। प्रारंभ

में वे प्रकृति सौंदर्य से अभिभूत थे, फिर मानव सौंदर्य से। मानव सौंदर्य ने उन्हें समाजवाद की ओर आकृष्ट किया। समाजवाद से वे अरविंद दर्शन की ओर प्रवृत्त हुए। वे मानववादी कवि थे, जो मानव इतिहास के नित्य विकास में विश्वास करते थे। वे अतिवादिता एवं संकीर्णता के घोर विरोधी रहे। उनका अंतिम काव्य **लोकायतन** है जो उनके परिपक्व चिंतन को समेट देता है। उनकी प्रमुख काव्य कृतियाँ हैं – **उच्छ्वास, पल्लव, वीणा, ग्रंथि, गुंजन, युगांत, युगवाणी, ग्राम्या, स्वर्णधूलि, स्वर्णकिरण**।

महादेवी वर्मा (1907-1987 ई.)

महादेवी जी का जन्म फर्रुखाबाद, उत्तर-प्रदेश में हुआ। महादेवी वर्मा की कविताओं में करुणा की भावना प्रधान है। उन पर बौद्ध दर्शन का भी प्रभाव है। आतुरता, प्रतीक्षा, समर्पण, जिज्ञासा उनकी कविताओं की प्रमुख भावनाएँ हैं। उनमें नारी-सुलभ सतर्क संकोच भी है, जिससे उनकी कविताओं की दोहरी व्याख्या होती है, कभी उन्हें शृंगारी समझा जाता है कभी रहस्यवादी। वस्तुतः महादेवी की कविताएँ भारतीय नारी की मानसिकता की उपज हैं। उनकी कविताओं की करुणा का संबंध लोक में व्याप्त और उनके निजी दुख से है। उस दुख के दूर होने की उनमें प्रबल आकांक्षा है। 'मैं नीर भरी दुख की बदली' उनकी प्रतिनिधि पंक्ति कही जाती है, किंतु उन्हीं की एक प्रसिद्ध पंक्ति है – 'रात के उर में दिवस की चाह का शर हूँ।' दीपक और बादल उनके प्रिय प्रतीक हैं। गीत रचना में उन्हें विशेष सफलता मिली है। उनकी प्रसिद्ध काव्य रचनाएँ हैं – **नीहार, नीरजा, सांध्यगीत, यामा, दीपशिखा**।

छायावादी पद्धति पर कविता करने वालों में जानकी वल्लभ शास्त्री, रामकुमार वर्मा आदि अन्य कवि उल्लेखनीय हैं।

छायावाद की प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियाँ

- छायावाद व्यक्तिवादी काव्य है, अर्थात वह व्यक्तिमन को कल्पना की उड़ान का पूरा अवकाश देता है।
- छायावाद में कल्पना की अतिशयता है। छायावाद की कल्पना का संबंध तत्कालीन स्वाधीनता की मानसिकता से है।

- इस काव्य में जिज्ञासा की भावना है। परम सत्य को जानने की इच्छा से रहस्य भावना पैदा होती है।
- छायावादी कवि परिचित वस्तुओं में अपरिचित सौंदर्य देखता है।
- छायावादी काव्य का स्वाधीनता-आंदोलन से गहरा संबंध है। वह शक्ति, मंगल एवं जागरण का काव्य है।
- छायावादी कविता में प्रकृति एवं नारी को स्वाधीन-मानसिकता से चित्रित किया गया। छायावादी कविता में नारी और प्रकृति बहुत कुछ स्वप्निल है।
- छायावादी काव्य कोमलकांत पदावली का काव्य है। इसका अर्थ यह है कि शब्द-संयोग से उसकी काव्यभाषा ध्वनि की आवर्ते और अनुगूँज उत्पन्न करती है।
- छायावादी कविता में छंद के साथ मुक्त छंद का प्रयोग जमकर हुआ।

छायावादोत्तर काव्य

छायावाद के अंत की घोषणा छायावादी कवियों ने ही कर दी थी। निराला **राम की शक्ति पूजा** की तत्सम पदावली छोड़कर **कुकुरमुत्ता, महँगू महँगा रहा** जैसा काव्य रचकर समाज के निम्न वर्ग की दारुण स्थिति का चित्र बोलचाल की भाषा में खींच रहे थे और पंत ने तो **युगांत** की घोषणा ही कर दी थी। छायावाद में वैयक्तिक और सामाजिक दोनों प्रवृत्तियों का समन्वय था। छायावादी कवि निजी स्वर में ही सही किंतु साम्राज्यवाद और सामंतवाद का विरोध कर रहे थे। छायावादोत्तर युग में दो प्रवृत्तियाँ अलग दिखलाई पड़ती हैं। एक प्रवृत्ति मस्ती के आलम का गीत गाती है। इसे समाज विरोधी नहीं कह सकते क्योंकि ये कवि व्यक्तिगत अनुभूतियों के स्तर पर ही सही व्यवस्था की जकड़न का विरोध करते हैं। अनुभूति-प्रधान होने के कारण इन्होंने गीत की विधा अपनाई है। इनमें से अधिकांश कवि, कवि-सम्मेलनों में बहुत लोकप्रिय हुए। इनकी कविताओं में प्राचीनता का विरोध, मस्ती, नश्वरता की अनुभूति, सभी प्रकार की संकीर्णता का विरोध और सबसे तटस्थता – कुल मिलाकर सबसे विराग, सब पर ममता वाला भाव मिलता है। इसे 'विरोध का काव्य' कहेंगे। यहाँ स्वच्छंदता मस्ती बन गई है। इसीलिए इस धारा के प्रतिनिधि कवि हरिवंशराय बच्चन (1907-2003 ई.) की कविताओं को 'हालावाद' कहा गया। उनकी कविताओं में 'हाला' की चर्चा भी बहुत होती थी। यहाँ

'हाला' व्यवस्था-विरोध का प्रतीक है, बहुत कुछ फारसी-उर्दू कविता की तरह। बच्चन ने सरस, सहज गीतों के माध्यम से धार्मिक-सामाजिक संकीर्णता का विरोध किया और उद्दाम भावनाओं की अकुंठ अभिव्यक्ति की। इस प्रवृत्ति के काव्य की प्रतिनिधि पंक्ति हैं –

हम दीवानों की क्या हस्ती, है आज यहाँ कल वहाँ चले।
मस्ती का आलम साथ चला, हम धूल उड़ाते जहाँ चले।।

यह पंक्ति मस्ती के दूसरे गायक भगवती चरण वर्मा की है। बालकृष्ण शर्मा 'नवीन', दिनकर, नरेंद्र शर्मा, रामेश्वर शुक्ल 'अंचल', गोपालसिंह नेपाली में भी यह मस्ती पाई जाती है। किंतु इनमें से अधिकांश प्रगतिशील भावनाओं के कवि हैं। छायावादी काव्यधारा के समानांतर राष्ट्रीय भावनाओं की एक ऐसी भी काव्यधारा चल रही थी जिसमें कल्पना की उतनी उड़ान और लाक्षणिक प्रतीकात्मकता नहीं थी, किंतु राष्ट्रीय भावनाओं की सहज अभिव्यक्ति थी। ऐसे कवियों में नवीन, दिनकर, माखनलाल चतुर्वेदी, सुभद्रा कुमारी चौहान प्रमुख हैं। बालकृष्ण शर्मा 'नवीन', दिनकर और माखनलाल चतुर्वेदी प्रधानतः राष्ट्रीय भावनाओं के ओजस्वी कवि हैं। इन कवियों की वाणी अग्निगर्भा है। नवीन और दिनकर छायावादी युग के कवि हैं, किंतु इनकी शैली अपेक्षाकृत सहज है। ये लाक्षणिक प्रतीकात्मकता का उतना उपयोग नहीं करते। नवीन स्वयं स्वतंत्रता सेनानी थे। उन्होंने स्वाधीनता आंदोलन की विविध मनःस्थितियों पर उद्बोधपरक और मार्मिक कविताएँ लिखीं हैं। 'आज खड्ग की धार कुंठिता' और 'कवि कुछ ऐसी तान सुनाओ' उनकी प्रसिद्ध कविताएँ हैं। स्वतंत्र भारत में उनका प्रबंध काव्य **उर्मिला** छपा।

रामधारी सिंह 'दिनकर' (1908-1974 ई.)

दिनकर ओजस्वी और राष्ट्रीय भावनाओं के कवि के रूप में विख्यात हैं। **रेणुका, हुंकार** आदि उनके प्रसिद्ध काव्य संग्रह हैं। हिमालय पर लिखी गई उनकी कविता अत्यंत प्रसिद्ध हुई। स्वतंत्र भारत में भी वे काव्य रचना में रत रहे। दिनकर में साम्राज्यवाद और सामंतवाद की अमानवीयता के विरुद्ध घोर असंतोष और क्षोभ की भावना थी। वे अहिंसा को सर्वत्र उचित नहीं मानते। स्वतंत्र भारत में उनकी अनेक प्रसिद्ध रचनाएँ छपीं, जिनमें **कुरुक्षेत्र, परशुराम की प्रतीक्षा** और **उर्वशी** प्रसिद्ध हैं। **कुरुक्षेत्र** में युद्ध की समस्या पर विचार किया गया है। स्पष्टतः यह रचना द्वितीय विश्वयुद्ध की विभीषिका से प्रेरित

है। **उर्वशी** नर-नारी के सनातन यौन संबंधों को मनोविज्ञान की दृष्टि से देखने वाला श्रृंगारी काव्य है। इसमें ऐतिहासिक दृष्टिकोण भी अपनाया गया है।

माखनलाल चतुर्वेदी (1889-1968 ई.)

चतुर्वेदी जी राष्ट्रीय भावनाओं के ओजस्वी कवि हैं किंतु वे राष्ट्रीय कविताओं में भावनाओं को कभी-कभी इतने सूक्ष्म सादृश्य विधान के आधार पर प्रकट करते हैं कि कविताएँ दुरूह हो जाती हैं और रहस्यमय हो उठती हैं। इस शैली के वे विशिष्ट और अकेले कवि हैं। उन्होंने सहज ढंग से अत्यंत मार्मिक राष्ट्रीय कविताएँ भी लिखीं हैं। **पुष्प की अभिलाषा** ऐसी ही अत्यंत लोकप्रिय एवं प्रेरक कविता है।

नरेंद्र शर्मा (1913-1989 ई.)

नरेंद्र शर्मा ने अनेक उत्कृष्ट कविताएँ लिखी हैं। वे जीवन की जटिल स्थितियों को सरल छंदोबद्ध पंक्तियों में प्रस्तुत करने की क्षमता रखते हैं। प्रकृति चित्रण में वे पंत के अनुगामी हैं। नरेंद्र शर्मा स्वाधीनता आंदोलन के सिलसिले में जेल गए। बाद में वे समाजवादी विचारधारा और प्रगतिशील काव्यधारा से घनिष्ठ रूप से जुड़े। पंत के साथ उन्होंने **रूपाभ** पत्रिका का संपादन भी किया। बाद में वे फिल्मों के लिए गीत लिखने लगे। वहाँ भी उनकी प्रतिभा धूमिल नहीं पड़ी। **पलाश वन, प्रवासी गीत** उनके प्रसिद्ध काव्य संकलन हैं।

श्रीमती सुभद्रा कुमारी चौहान की राष्ट्रीय और ओजस्वी कविताएँ अत्यंत लोकप्रिय हुईं, विशेषतः **झाँसी की रानी** पर लिखा गया उनका वीर काव्य (बैलेड)। ऐसी प्रसिद्धि शायद ही किसी अन्य कविता को मिली हो। सोहनलाल द्विवेदी ने भी राष्ट्रीय भावनाओं की कविताओं की रचना की।

प्रगतिशील काव्य

1930 ई. के आस-पास राष्ट्रीय स्वाधीनता आंदोलन में नया उभार आया। देश में किसानों-मज़दूरों के आंदोलन तेज़ हुए और कांग्रेस में समाजवादी रुझान प्रभावशाली हुआ। उधर रूस में समाजवादी राज्य की स्थापना हो गई थी और मार्क्सवादी विचारों की लहर

एशिया के देशों में भी चल रही थी। ऐसी स्थिति में 1936 ई. में प्रगतिशील लेखक संघ का अधिवेशन हुआ, जिसके सभापति प्रेमचंद थे। बाद में रवींद्रनाथ ठाकुर, जवाहरलाल नेहरू, श्रीपाद अमृत डाँगे जैसे प्रसिद्ध व्यक्ति भी इसके सभापति बने। प्रगतिशील चेतना का प्रादुर्भाव तो आधुनिक हिंदी साहित्य में भारतेंदु के साथ ही हो गया था, किंतु अब उसमें एक सुसंबद्ध विचारधारा के प्रति बहुत आकर्षण उत्पन्न हुआ। इस विचारधारा ने स्वाधीनता के स्वप्न को और अधिक सुस्पष्ट बनाया। इसके बाद अपने सारे उतार-चढ़ाव के बावजूद प्रगतिशील काव्यधारा हिंदी की प्रमुख काव्यधारा बनी हुई है। इस काव्य में व्यापक संवेदनशीलता है। यह काव्यधारा अपना संबंध हिंदी की जातीय परंपरा से जोड़ती है और भावी समाज से भी। वर्तमान के प्रति वह आलोचनात्मक यथार्थवादी दृष्टि अपनाती है।

प्रमुख प्रगतिशील कवियों का परिचय इस प्रकार है –

नागार्जुन (1911-1998 ई.)

नागार्जुन की कविता में परंपरा की मूल्यवत्ता और आधुनिक जीवन की विडंबना दोनों का योग है। नागार्जुन की कविताओं पर इनके मूल जनपद मिथिला का प्रभाव है। ये प्रकृति चित्रण के उत्कृष्ट कवि हैं। इनकी कविताओं में व्यंग्य की अचूक धार होती है। **युगधारा, प्यासी पथराई आँखें, भस्मांकुर, सतरंगे पंखों वाली, खिचड़ी, विप्लव देखा हमने** आदि इनकी प्रमुख रचनाएँ हैं।

केदारनाथ अग्रवाल (1911-2000 ई.)

केदारनाथ अग्रवाल की कविताओं में जन-संघर्ष को वाणी दी गई है। इन्होंने प्रकृति, नारी सौंदर्य और श्रम सौंदर्य के अभूतपूर्व बिंब प्रस्तुत किए हैं। ये बुंदेलखंड की धरती के कवि हैं। इनकी कविताओं पर निराला का प्रभाव द्रष्टव्य है। **युग की गंगा, नींद के बादल, फूल नहीं, रंग बोलते हैं** आदि इनके उल्लेखनीय काव्य संकलन हैं।

त्रिलोचन (जन्म 1917 ई.)

इनकी कविताओं में जन-जीवन की मार्मिक स्थितियों को आडंबरहीन सहज भाषा में व्यक्त किया जाता है। अवध जनपद इनकी कविताओं में प्रायः सर्वत्र विद्यमान है।

त्रिलोचन हिंदी कविता में व्याकरण सम्मत वाक्य गठन और सॉनेट (छंद) विधान के लिए विशेष रूप से उल्लेखनीय हैं। इनके प्रमुख काव्य संग्रह हैं—**धरती, दिगंत, गुलाब और बुलबुल, अरघान, उस जनपद का कवि हूँ** आदि।

शिवमंगल सिंह 'सुमन' (1917-2002 ई.)

शिवमंगल सिंह 'सुमन' प्रगतिशील धारा के लोकप्रिय कवियों में अग्रगण्य हैं। सहजता और उद्बोधन इनकी कविताओं का गुण है। इनकी कविता में वक्तृता का गुण पाया जाता है। **हिल्लोल, जीवन के गान, विश्वास बढ़ता ही गया** आदि इनकी उल्लेखनीय रचनाएँ हैं।

गजानन माधव मुक्तिबोध (1917-1964 ई.)

गजानन माधव मुक्तिबोध मध्यवर्गीय जीवन के आधुनिक कवि हैं। मध्यवर्ग का व्यक्ति सुविधाजीविता और आदर्शवादिता के द्वंद्व में जीता है। मुक्तिबोध इसी द्वंद्व के तनाव के कवि हैं। इनकी कविता में असुरक्षा एवं अनिश्चय की भावना प्रधान है जिसका समाधान वे प्रगतिशील दृष्टिकोण से ढूँढ़ने का प्रयास करते हैं। इनके काव्य संकलन हैं — **चाँद का मुँह टेढ़ा है, भूरी-भूरी खाक धूल**।

प्रगतिवादी कविता ने स्वाधीन भारत की स्थितियों में भी विकास किया और इसकी धारा अवरुद्ध नहीं हुई। शील, भारतभूषण अग्रवाल, रांगेय राघव, सोम ठाकुर, नीरज, बलवीर सिंह 'रंग' आदि उल्लेखनीय प्रगतिशील कवि हैं।

प्रगतिशील काव्यधारा की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- प्रगतिवादी काव्य शोषण का विरोध करता है। उसके अनुसार किसान और मज़दूर एक होकर अपने ऊपर होने वाले सामंतों और पूँजीवादियों के अत्याचार का अंत करेंगे।
- प्रगतिवादी कवि शोषित में शक्ति देखते हैं क्योंकि शोषण इतिहास की गति और सामाजिकता के विपरीत है।
- प्रगतिवादी कवि श्रम में सौंदर्य देखते हैं। उनका सौंदर्य बोध सामाजिक मूल्यों से युक्त है। वे सहज, सामान्य जीवन-स्थितियों में भी सौंदर्य देखते हैं।

- प्रगतिवादी कवि व्यंग्य के द्वारा विषमता का चित्रण एवं उसका विरोध करते हैं।
- प्रगतिवादी कवियों ने प्रकृति और ग्राम जीवन के अनुपम चित्र खींचे हैं।
- प्रगतिवादी कवियों ने प्रेम को सामाजिक-पारिवारिक रूप में देखा और उसका चित्रण किया।

प्रयोगवाद

1943 ई. में अज्ञेय द्वारा संपादित **तारसप्तक** प्रकाशित हुआ। इसमें सात कवि संकलित थे – गजानन माधव मुक्तिबोध, रामविलास शर्मा, नेमिचंद्र जैन, गिरिजाकुमार माथुर, भारतभूषण अग्रवाल, प्रभाकर माचवे और अज्ञेय। इनमें से अधिकांश प्रगतिवादी थे। उस समय अज्ञेय भी समाजवादी विचारधारा से अपने को जोड़ते थे। यद्यपि इसमें द्वितीय विश्वयुद्ध से उत्पन्न संदेहवाद, वैज्ञानिक उपलब्धियों से ज्ञात विराट के सम्मुख मनुष्य की नगण्यता आदि का बोध कम-से-कम अज्ञेय की कविताओं में मिलने लगता है। इन कवियों को संपादक ने 'राहों के अन्वेषी' कहा, लेकिन कुल मिलाकर तारसप्तक प्रगतिशील चेतना की कविताओं का संकलन है।

तारसप्तक में संकलित अज्ञेय की कविताओं में पाया जानेवाला मोहभंग हिंदी में प्रयोगवादी कविता का आधार है। अज्ञेय ने **तारसप्तक** में संकलित कवियों को 'राहों के अन्वेषी' कहा था और यह भी कहा था कि ये कवि प्रयोग कर रहे हैं। लोगों ने अज्ञेय के 'प्रयोग' शब्द को पकड़कर मोहभंग की उभरती हुई इस काव्य-प्रवृत्ति को प्रयोगवाद की संज्ञा दी। इसमें अज्ञेय, प्रभाकर माचवे, लक्ष्मीकांत वर्मा आदि कवियों को परिणित किया जाता है।

प्रयोगवाद की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- यह मोहभंग की कविता है। इन कवियों की मानसिकता की पृष्ठभूमि में द्वितीय विश्वयुद्ध के अभूतपूर्व नरसंहार से उत्पन्न सभी प्रकार के आदर्शों से मोहभंग का बोध है।
- आदर्श के स्थान पर यह काव्यधारा यथार्थ में निहित व्यंग्य और विद्रूप को अधिक प्रकट करती है।

- प्रयोगवाद की काव्य शैली में कोष्ठकों, उपवाक्यों का प्रयोग खुलकर किया जाता है।
- ये कवि किसी बनी बनाई लीक पर चलने के बजाए संवेदना और शिल्प के क्षेत्र में प्रयोग करने में अधिक विश्वास करते हैं।

स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी साहित्य (1947 ई.–)

पृष्ठभूमि

1947 ई. में भारत स्वतंत्र हो गया। भारत खंडित होकर स्वतंत्र हुआ। शुरू में कुछ समय तक भारत की स्वतंत्र सरकार को शरणार्थियों के पुनर्वास और उनकी सुरक्षा की समस्या से उलझना पड़ा। भारत विभाजन के पूर्व और उसके कुछ समय बाद भी भयंकर सांप्रदायिक दंगे हुए जिनमें लाखों आदमी बेघर-बार होकर भारत से पाकिस्तान गए और पाकिस्तान से भारत आए। इतिहास के अति प्राचीन काल से भारत की जो अखंड मूर्ति थी वह खंडित हो गई। हिंदू मुसलमान भाई-भाई कहलाते थे। दंगों में वे एक दूसरे के खून के प्यासे हो गए। हिंदी क्षेत्र को विभाजन का अनुभव दूर से ही हुआ। इसीलिए विभाजन की ऐतिहासिक त्रासदी ने हिंदी साहित्य को अधिक प्रभावित नहीं किया, इस त्रासदी पर जो साहित्य रचा भी गया है वह प्रायः उन्हीं साहित्यकारों द्वारा जो पंजाब के हैं और पाकिस्तान से यहाँ आए हैं।

भारत ने विकास के लिए मिश्र अर्थव्यवस्था को अपनाया और समाजवाद को अपना लक्ष्य घोषित किया। अंतर्राष्ट्रीय क्षेत्र में भारत ने निर्गुटता की नीति अपनाई। स्वाधीन भारत की मानसिकता के निर्माण में दो प्रक्रियाओं का सर्वाधिक महत्त्व है। एक आम चुनावों का और दूसरी पंचवर्षीय योजनाओं का। इन्होंने स्थितियों में परिवर्तन की प्रक्रिया प्रारंभ की, उन परिस्थितियों को प्रस्तुत किया, जिन पर स्वाधीनता के उपरांत का साहित्य आधारित है, जिसे स्वातंत्र्योत्तर साहित्य कहा जाता है।

पंचवर्षीय योजनाओं से देश के कोने-कोने में निर्माण कार्य प्रारंभ हुआ। सुदूर क्षेत्रों तक बिजली और मशीनें पहुँचीं। वहाँ हलचल शुरू हुई। भारत के सुदूर क्षेत्र शताब्दियों से 'एकरस' स्थिति में थे। अब वहाँ परिवर्तन होने लगा। प्राचीन विदा होने लगा, नवीन

आने लगा। शिक्षा का प्रसार होने से, रोज़गार के अनेक अवसर मिलने से गाँवों के शिक्षित नवयुवक देहात छोड़कर शहरों में आए। उनके मन को छोड़े गए गाँव की स्मृतियाँ कचोटती थीं। फिर उनके देखे हुए पात्र विदा हो रहे थे। इससे गाँवों के प्रति जो ममता एवं आत्मीयता की भावना पैदा हुई उससे हिंदी साहित्य में आंचलिकता की प्रवृत्ति पैदा हुई। यह आंचलिकता कविता और कथा साहित्य दोनों – यहाँ तक कि निबंध साहित्य और किसी हद तक नाटक में भी पाई जाती है।

देहातों से नगर में बस जाने वाले प्रायः नगर में स्थान की कमी, मँहगाई और बेहतर सुविधाओं को प्राप्त करने की ललक के कारण अपनी पत्नी और बच्चों के ही साथ रह सकते हैं। इससे संयुक्त परिवार टूटने लगा। दूसरी ओर दिनोदिन बढ़ते हुए औद्योगीकरण के कारण नगरों में भीड़-भाड़ बढ़ती ही गई। इससे अपरिचय का वातावरण विकसित हुआ। भारतीय जीवन में अजनबीपन या अकेलेपन का सबसे बड़ा कारण संयुक्त परिवार का टूटना और नगरों या महानगरों का व्यस्त जीवन है, जहाँ एक को दूसरे की सहायता करने की फुर्सत कम रहती है। इस वास्तविक 'अकेलेपन' और 'अजनबीपन' की अभिव्यक्ति साहित्य में होने लगी और उससे 'अस्तित्ववादी' 'अजनबीपन' और 'अकेलापन' जैसे शब्द साहित्य में चल निकले।

स्वाधीनता के उपरांत नारी-शिक्षा के क्षेत्र में अपूर्व विकास हुआ। अब शिक्षित नारियों की संख्या में बहुत बढ़ोतरी हुई है। वे नौकरी भी कर रही हैं। स्कूलों, कॉलेजों, विश्वविद्यालयों, बैंकों, डॉक्टरी आदि सेवाओं में वे पुरुषों से स्पर्धा करने की स्थिति में आ गई हैं। अब वे आर्थिक तौर पर स्वतंत्र हो रही हैं। इससे पारिवारिक संबंधों में बहुत बदलाव आया है। हमारे साहित्य विशेषतः कथा साहित्य में स्वावलंबी नारी पात्रों का प्रवेश हुआ जिसके कारण नर-नारी के संबंधों, दांपत्य जीवन और संतान पर पड़ने वाले प्रभाव का भी चित्रण नए ढंग से होने लगा।

1947 ई. के बाद धीरे-धीरे स्वाधीनता-संघर्ष का आवेग कम हो गया। सांप्रदायिकता के उन्माद से ग्रस्त एक व्यक्ति ने गांधी की हत्या कर दी। बड़े नेता मंत्रीपद पर विराजमान हो गए। बाहरी सहायता के रूप में योजनाओं के लिए धन आया जिससे निर्माण का काम होना था लेकिन उसके वितरण में भाई-भतीजावाद पनपने लगा। कुछ क्षेत्र उन्नत थे, कुछ पिछड़े हुए। अवसर मिलने पर उनमें परस्पर स्पर्धा का भाव पैदा हुआ जिससे क्षेत्रीयता और भाषागत संकीर्णता की भावना बढ़ी। संविधान ने हिंदी को संपर्क-भाषा और राजभाषा

के रूप में स्वीकार कर लिया। किंतु अंग्रेज़ी का वर्चस्व बना ही रहा क्योंकि देश में बड़े पूँजीपतियों और विदेशों की बहुराष्ट्रीय कंपनियों को अंग्रेज़ी में कामकाज करने में सुविधा थी। काले धन का विस्तार बहुत तेज़ी से हुआ। इन सब बातों के कारण स्वाधीनता आंदोलन के दिनों के बनाए हुए सिद्धांत और आदर्श पीछे ही नहीं छूट गए, उनका अवसरवादी उपयोग भी होने लगा। कथनी और करनी के अंतर के कारण व्यंग्य-विडंबना की नाटकीय स्थिति उत्पन्न हुई। भाषा का सहज अर्थ खो गया। ठीक अर्थ जानने के लिए संदर्भ की पहचान और काइयाँपन की ज़रूरत पड़ने लगी। स्वाधीनता के उपरांत इसी मोहभंग, व्यंग्य, विडंबना और असुरक्षा की भावना की अभिव्यक्ति साहित्य में हुई है।

प्रगतिवादी धारा पहले से चली आ रही थी। स्वाधीनता के बाद के प्रारंभिक वर्षों में केंद्रीय सरकार और भारतीय कम्युनिस्ट पार्टी में टकराहट की स्थिति आई। तेलंगाना में सशस्त्र किसान-विद्रोह भारतीय कम्युनिस्ट पार्टी के नेतृत्व में चला। इन्हीं दिनों हिंदी-साहित्य पर अस्तित्ववादी विचारों का प्रभाव भी पड़ने लगा। व्यक्ति-स्वातंत्र्य और राजसत्ता के विरोध का स्वर हिंदी साहित्य विशेषतः कविता के क्षेत्र में सुनाई पड़ने लगा।

इतिहास की व्यर्थता, क्षणवाद, साहित्य की शुद्धता, निजता की सुरक्षा आदि का नारा इसी क्षेत्र से आया। इन विचारों के प्रचार के लिए पत्र-पत्रिकाएँ भी निकलीं और उनका प्रभाव भी रहा। किंतु देश की वास्तविक स्थितियाँ अस्तित्ववादी विचारधारा की नहीं, समाजवादी विकास की मांग करती थीं, क्योंकि हमारा देश आर्थिक तौर पर पिछड़ा किंतु अपार संभावनाओं का है। हम अपने गौरवशाली इतिहास एवं मानवीय परंपराओं को भूल नहीं सकते। इसीलिए यहाँ अस्तित्ववाद और अकेलापन उस रूप में नहीं दिखलाई पड़े जैसे कि यूरोप में। यहाँ समाजवादी और अस्तित्ववादी विचारों का सामंजस्य होने की स्थिति अधिक है।

यह सच है कि स्वाधीनता के बाद भारत ने उन्नति की है। सामान्य जीवन की सुविधाएँ बढ़ गई हैं। ज़मींदारी-उन्मूलन, बैंकों के राष्ट्रीयकरण, आरक्षण और अनेक ग्रामीण-योजनाओं से निम्न वर्ग के लोगों की स्थितियों में थोड़ा बहुत सुधार हुआ है। किंतु पहले से सुविधा प्राप्त वर्ग ने जितनी आर्थिक उन्नति की है, निम्न वर्ग की तुलना उससे की जाए तो स्थिति असंतोषजनक है। इस असंतोष ने राजनीति के अलावा साहित्य में भी आक्रोश की भावना उत्पन्न की। परिणामस्वरूप आक्रोशमय किंतु मूल्यहीन एवं

निषेधात्मक साहित्य देखने में आया है। संतोष की बात है कि अब नई पीढ़ी के रचनाकार आक्रोश की सीमाएँ समझ चले हैं। वे राजनीति और साहित्य का परस्पर संबंध तो मानते हैं किंतु राजनीति और साहित्य में अंतर भी करते हैं। बड़ी बात यह है कि वे परंपरा का उचित मूल्यांकन करना सीख गए हैं। उनके साहित्य में परिवर्तन की आतुर प्रतीक्षा तो है किंतु यथार्थ-स्थितियों की उपेक्षा नहीं। इससे रचनात्मकता में एक सुखद संयम दिखलाई पड़ने लगा है।

स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत में रूप के स्तर पर सर्वाधिक उल्लेखनीय भाषा-प्रयोग है। व्यंग्य के कारण तत्सम पदावली का अपूर्व अवमूल्यन हुआ। कथा-साहित्य में तो वह प्रायः व्यंग्य-विनोद के लिए या वास्तविकता और दिखावे का अंतर प्रकट करने के लिए प्रयुक्त होती है। आंचलिक साहित्य में क्षेत्रीय शब्दों का उपयोग बहुत जल्द फैशन बन गया। कहानी और कविता में अंग्रेज़ी शब्दों का प्रयोग होने लगा— कभी-कभी भद्दे ढंग से भी कविता गद्य के बहुत निकट आ गई और कहानी में आत्मालाप और मनोजगत का चित्रण बढ़ गया। भाषा की दृष्टि से सबसे क्षतिग्रस्त हिंदी आलोचना की भाषा हुई, लेकिन यह बात असमर्थ आलोचकों की भाषा के बारे में ही कही जा सकती है। स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी आलोचना की भाषा में नया निखार और पैनापन भी आया है। समर्थ आलोचकों के लेखन में उसका वस्तुगत रूप निखरा है।

भारत के इतिहास में 1947 ई. का वर्ष राजनैतिक दृष्टि से भले ही महान परिवर्तन का बिंदु हो, किंतु साहित्य में तत्काल कोई महत्त्वपूर्ण परिवर्तन घटित नहीं हुआ। कुछ दिनों तक कविता, उपन्यास, कहानी, नाटक, निबंध, समालोचना आदि विधाओं के अंतर्गत क्रमागत प्रवृत्तियों के अनुरूप ही रचनाएँ होती रहीं। इसलिए आधुनिक काल में अन्य पूर्ववर्ती युगों की तरह 1947 ई. से किसी नितांत भिन्न साहित्यिक काल के आरंभ का आभास नहीं मिलता, फिर भी यह तथ्य है कि स्वाधीनता-प्राप्ति के बाद धीरे-धीरे जो राजनीतिक, आर्थिक एवं सामाजिक परिवर्तन हुए उनसे साहित्य भी क्रमशः प्रभावित हुआ और हिंदी साहित्य की विभिन्न विधाओं में कुछ नवीन प्रवृत्तियों का उदय हुआ।

पंचवर्षीय योजनाओं के कार्यान्वियन, सार्वजनिक मताधिकार और देश में शिक्षा के प्रसार के कारण भारत के सामाजिक ढाँचे में परिवर्तन दिखलाई पड़ने लगा। नारी शिक्षा के प्रसार से महिलाएँ घर से बाहर निकल कर सार्वजनिक जीवन में भागीदारी करने लगीं। कामकाजी महिलाएँ पुरुष प्रधान समाज की पीड़ा, असमानता के विरुद्ध आवाज़ उठाने

लगीं। साहित्य में भी नारी चेतना का दौर आया। आज हिंदी उपन्यास, कविता आदि के क्षेत्र में महिला रचनाकारों का योगदान बढ़-चढ़कर हो रहा है। **कृष्णा सोबती, मन्नू भंडारी, ममता कालिया, मैत्रेयी पुष्पा, चित्रा मुद्गल, स्नेहमयी चौधरी** आदि हमारे दौर की उल्लेखनीय महिला साहित्यकार हैं।

दलित चेतना हमारे दौर की अन्य महत्त्वपूर्ण उपलब्धि है। अछूतोद्धार, हरिजन सेवा का ऐतिहासिक कार्य गांधी जी ने प्रारंभ किया था और इस वर्ग के उत्थान का मार्ग प्रशस्त हुआ था। संविधान निर्माताओं ने आरक्षण की व्यवस्था की। किंतु हमारे दौर की दलित चेतना आक्रामक है। वह सवर्ण समाज से सहानुभूति की नहीं अधिकार की माँग करती है। हमारे साहित्य पर भी इसका प्रभाव पड़ना स्वाभाविक है। इस बीच दलित साहित्यकारों की अनेक साहित्यिक रचनाएँ प्रकाश में आई हैं।

इधर सोवियत संघ के विघटन के पश्चात अमेरिका का ही अंतर्राष्ट्रीय आर्थिक एवं सैन्य वर्चस्व रह गया है। खुले अंतर्राष्ट्रीय व्यापार की बाधाएँ समाप्त कर दी गई हैं। इससे धनी देशों को पहले से कहीं अधिक मुनाफ़ा हो रहा है। इसे भूमंडलीकरण कहा जाता है। उत्तर आधुनिकतावाद इसी का वैचारिक प्रतिफलन है। उत्तर आधुनिकता का अर्थ **इतिहास और विचारधारा का अंत** होना है जिसका अर्थ यह हुआ कि गरीब हमेशा गरीब बने रहें और अमीर हमेशा अमीर । यह विचारधारा स्थितियों को किसी केंद्रीयता के सूत्र में नहीं बाँधतीं। केंद्र की अपेक्षा परिधि को अधिक महत्त्वपूर्ण मानती है। हिंदी साहित्य की रचना या आलोचना पर इसका कोई उल्लेखनीय प्रभाव अभी तक नहीं दिखाई पड़ा।

उपन्यास

अधिकांश स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी उपन्यासों ने स्वाधीनता के उपरांत उत्पन्न बाह्य और आंतरिक स्थितियों पर कथानक को आधारित किया है। उपन्यासों की प्रवृत्ति तात्कालिक समस्याओं को सामाजिक संदर्भ में उभारने की अधिक रही है। स्वाधीनता के उपरांत जो परिवर्तन आया है उसे पूर्व-स्थिति के साथ रखकर टूटते हुए आदर्शवाद, बढ़ते हुए अवसरवाद और ईमानदारी को कुटिलता के चक्रव्यूह में जूझते हुए दिखाना हिंदी उपन्यासकारों की प्रवृत्ति रही। सामाजिक परिवर्तनों को ब्यौरे से प्रस्तुत भी किया गया। स्वातंत्र्योत्तर उपन्यासों को विषयवस्तु की दृष्टि से निम्नलिखित श्रेणियों में विभाजित किया जा सकता है--

आंचलिक उपन्यास

आंचलिक उपन्यासों में विकास का प्रवाह कम गतिशील होता है। इनका उद्देश्य अंचल विशेष के वातावरण की विशिष्टता का चित्रण होता है। व्यतीत होता हुआ पात्र पाठक में एक प्रकार की कचोट या मोहकता भर देता है। आंचलिक कृतियों की प्रकृति, भाषा, रीति-रिवाज सब मिलकर अपने आप में ही उद्देश्य बन जाते हैं। उनका आत्मीय विवरण ही ऐसा रंगीन हो जाता है कि यथार्थगत विषमता ओझल हो जाती है। ऐतिहासिक विकास अपेक्षाकृत महत्त्वहीन हो उठता है। सभी आंचलिक उपन्यासों के बारे में यह कथन समान रूप से लागू नहीं होता लेकिन सर्वाधिक प्रसिद्ध और चर्चित उपन्यास **मैला आँचल** (रेणु) आदि के बारे में यह कथन दूर तक लागू होता है। **मैला आँचल** की शक्ति उसके सविस्तार अंकन में है। **मैला आँचल** का कथा-क्षेत्र बिहार का पूर्णिया ज़िला है। एक ओर उस पर पड़ता हुआ नई स्थितियों का दबाव और दूसरी ओर परंपरा का मोह। इस तालमेल से दोनों की विशेषता निखर उठी है। शताब्दियों से एकरस जीवन पर नए युग की पहली चोट बहुत मार्मिक हो उठी है। इस आंचलिकता में दारुण यथार्थ है। कुछ आंचलिक उपन्यास अवश्य ऐसे हैं जिनमें यथार्थ की विषम परिस्थितियाँ ओझल नहीं रहतीं जैसे – नागार्जुन का **रतिनाथ की चाची**, **बलचनमा**, भैरवप्रसाद गुप्त का **गंगा मैया**, **धरती** आदि।

राही मासूम रज़ा का **आधा गाँव** अपने अकुंठ यथार्थ चित्रण में विशिष्ट है। उसमें पूर्वी उत्तर प्रदेश के एक गाँव में बसे मुसलमान ग्रामीणों की कथा है जो पाकिस्तान के बारे में कुछ नहीं जानते, लेकिन भारत विभाजन की त्रासदी झेल रहे हैं। मुसलमानों की हिंदुओं से विशिष्टता या भिन्नता तो लोग देखते थे, किंतु उन्हें किसी अंचल का अंग बनाकर इसमें पहली बार प्रस्तुत किया गया है।

सामाजिक पारिवारिक उपन्यास

इस दौर में सामाजिक-पारिवारिक उपन्यासों में टूटते हुए परिवारों, स्त्री-पुरुष के नए संबंधों, राजनीतिक भ्रष्टाचार का पात्रों पर प्रभाव और यौन चेष्टाओं का चित्रण – यह सब मिलता है, यद्यपि कथानक प्रायः आर्थिक स्थिति एवं स्त्री-पुरुष संबंध के ही चारों ओर घूमता है। भगवतीचरण वर्मा के उपन्यासों **टेढ़े-मेढ़े रास्ते**, **भूले बिसरे चित्र** में

राजनीति मात्र को भ्रष्टाचार का स्रोत बताया गया है। मोहन राकेश का **अँधेरे बंद कमरे** वस्तुतः नागरिक जीवन में रूढ़िग्रस्त संस्कारों की यातना की कथा है। मोहन राकेश के इस उपन्यास का प्रभाव उनकी अधिकांश कहानियों के प्रभाव से भिन्न नहीं हैं । राजेंद्र यादव का **उखड़े हुए लोग** उस दंपती की कथा है जो बेईमानी और कुटिल दांव-पेच की दुनिया में रह नहीं सकता। इसमें भी ध्यान राजनीतिक और नर-नारी संबंधों के स्वार्थपूर्ण उपयोग का उद्घाटन करने पर है। उपेंद्रनाथ अश्क मध्यवर्ग के जीवन की विविधता को उसकी संपूर्णता में प्रकाशित कर देते हैं। वे कथा को विस्तार से कहते हैं। निस्संदेह अश्क की औपन्यासिक क्षमता उनके उपन्यास **गिरती दीवारें** में पूरी तरह दिखलाई पड़ती है। **बड़ी-बड़ी आँखें** उनका एक अन्य उपन्यास है। कामकाजी नारी की आर्थिक स्थिति मज़बूत होने के बावजूद मध्यवर्गीय संस्कारों का आघात उसे कैसे सहना पड़ता है, इसे चित्रित करने की दृष्टि से रमाकांत का उपन्यास **तीसरा देश** उल्लेखनीय है। **बेघर** में ममता कालिया ने नैतिकता से चिपटे नवयुवक की यातना का चित्रण किया है।

फ्रायड आदि मनोविश्लेषण शास्त्रियों का प्रभाव हिंदी कथा साहित्य पर स्वतंत्रता के पूर्व ही पड़ चुका था। इलाचंद्र जोशी, जैनेंद्र और अज्ञेय ने मनोविश्लेषण शास्त्र के सिद्धांतों का उपयोग किया। इसी परंपरा में दर्शन शास्त्र के विद्वान डॉ. देवराज ने **अजय की डायरी** लिखा। अज्ञेय के उपन्यास **शेखर एक जीवनी** और **नदी के द्वीप** पर राजनीति, अस्तित्ववाद और मनोविश्लेषण तीनों का प्रभाव है। कुल मिलाकर **नदी के द्वीप** यौन-भावना प्रधान उपन्यास है, जो अज्ञेय की चिंतन-पद्धति को ध्वनित करता है। **अजय की डायरी** डायरी शैली में लिखा गया है। इसमें दांपत्य-जीवन का विचलन, लड़कियों की शादी की समस्या, शिक्षा जगत में फैला भ्रष्टाचार – इन सबको एक-दूसरे से संबद्ध कर दिया गया है।

अस्तित्ववादी उपन्यास

अज्ञेय का एक अन्य उपन्यास **अपने-अपने अजनबी** है, जहाँ तीन-चार लोग भयंकर बर्फ़ीले मौसम में एक साथ रहने को बाध्य हो गए हैं। मानव की अंतिम नियति मृत्यु उन पर छाई रहती है। मृत्यु के संदर्भ में उनकी अतीत और वर्तमान चेष्टाएँ महत्त्वहीन और निरर्थक लगती हैं। नियति और व्यर्थता-बोध उपन्यास के केंद्र में है।

ऐतिहासिक उपन्यास

वृंदावनलाल वर्मा ने **मृगनयनी** (1950) लिखा। वर्मा जी की कथावस्तु में बहुत विचित्रता एवं आकर्षण है। बुंदेलखंड का जीवन सांस्कृतिक दृष्टि से संपन्न है। यह उनके उपन्यासों में पर्याप्त दिखाई पड़ता है। राहुल जी ने **सिंह सेनापति** (1957) लिखा। सिंह सेनापति का नाम **अंगुत्तर निकाय** में आया है। वह जैन धर्म छोड़कर बौद्ध धर्म में दीक्षित हो गया था। उस युग के अनेक सूत्रों को अपने युग से मिलाना इस उपन्यास का उद्देश्य मालूम पड़ता है। चतुरसेन शास्त्री ने **वैशाली की नगर वधू** (1949) नामक एक बृहत रोमानी उपन्यास लिखा जिसमें कथा को ऐतिहासिक वातावरण में देखा गया है। लेखक ने ह्रासोन्मुख बुद्धकालीन भारत के विलासी और मादक रूप को धार्मिक, राजनीतिक और सामाजिक घटनाओं के बीच प्रस्तुत किया है।

इस बीच हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी ने **चारुचंद्र लेख** (1963), **पुनर्नवा** (1973) और **अनामदास का पोथा** (1977) लिखा। इन उपन्यासों में द्विवेदी जी अधिकाधिक वस्तुनिष्ठ होते गए हैं। **बाणभट्ट की आत्मकथा** में वातावरण और मनःस्थितियों की तीव्रता और संयम का चित्रण प्रधान था। **चारुचंद्र लेख** की मूल कथा प्रबंध चिंतामणि से ली गई है। इसमें आदि कालीन राजनीतिक, धार्मिक, सामाजिक आदि स्थितियाँ चित्रित हैं। उस काल में अनेक धार्मिक साधनाएँ किस प्रकार एक दूसरे से टकरा रही थीं, यह देखने में आ जाता है। इस उपन्यास का मूल उद्देश्य धार्मिक कर्मकांड और रहस्यमयता की निस्सारता दिखाकर मानवीयता को प्रतिष्ठित करना है। **पुनर्नवा** में लोरिक-चंदा की लोक-कथा को **मृच्छकटिकम्** की कथा से जोड़कर कथा में कालिदास को भी ले आया गया है। इसमें सामाजिक विधि-निषेधों की पुनर्परीक्षा की गई है। **अनामदास का पोथा** छांदोग्य उपनिषद् की एक कथा पर आधारित है। इसमें परम सत्ताविषयक ज्ञान-साधना और रागात्मक वृत्ति का एक प्रकार से सामंजस्य है। अमृतलाल नागर का उत्कृष्ट उपन्यास **मानस का हंस** 1947 ई. में प्रकाशित हुआ। यह हिंदी के महान कवि तुलसी के मानसिक विकास और उस युग के विविधतापूर्ण जीवन को साक्षात कर देता है। उन्हीं का उपन्यास **खंजन नयन** सूरदास के जीवन पर आधारित है।

राजनीतिक उपन्यास

इस दौर में बढ़ती हुई राजनीतिक चेतना के व्यापक प्रभाव को ध्यान में रखकर ऐसे उपन्यास लिखे गए जिनसे ऐतिहासिक प्रवाह की अनुभूति पाठक को हो जाती है। इनमें सामान्य जन-समूह पर पड़ते हुए राजनीतिक दबाव को बहुत सामान्य घटनाओं और मनःस्थितियों के चित्रण के माध्यम से संकेतित किया गया है। यशपाल का **झूठा सच**, अमृतलाल नागर का **बूँद और समुद्र**, भीष्म साहनी का **तमस** ऐसे ही उपन्यास हैं। इनमें लेखक की परिपक्व राजनीतिक समझ राजनीति को बहुत व्यापक संदर्भ में प्रस्तुत करती है। **झूठा सच** (1958) विभाजन की महाकाव्यात्मक गाथा है। भारत विभाजन की त्रासदी कितनी भयंकर और प्रभाव में दूरगामिनी है, इस पर यशपाल जैसे पुराने क्रांतिकारी और प्रतिबद्ध लेखक का ध्यान जाना उचित ही था। एक बहुप्रचारित झूठ यानी सांप्रदायिकता ने कितने बड़े सच अर्थात भारतीय जनता की वास्तविक आकांक्षा को पीछे धकेल दिया। इस घटना ने कितने व्यक्तियों को कितने रूपों में पीड़ित किया, इसकी वेदना यह उपन्यास पाठक को संप्रेषित करता है। पंजाब की विभाजन-पूर्व स्थितियों का स्मृत रूप कृष्णा सोबती के **ज़िंदगीनामा** उपन्यास में दिखाई पड़ा। मन्नू भंडारी का **महाभोज** भी एक राजनीतिक उपन्यास है, जिसमें आधुनिक राजनीतिक और सामाजिक समस्याएँ व्यक्त हुई हैं।

व्यंग्य प्रधान एवं अन्य प्रकार के उपन्यास : भैरवप्रसाद गुप्त ने **अंतिम अध्याय** नामक उत्कृष्ट व्यंग्यपूर्ण उपन्यास लिखा। इस दौर में अन्य प्रसिद्ध व्यंग्यप्रधान उपन्यास श्रीलाल शुक्ल का **रागदरबारी** और मनोहर श्याम जोशी का **कुरु-कुरु स्वाहा** है। जोशी का **कसप** क्षेत्रीय प्रेम कथा है। काशीनाथ सिंह का **अपना मोर्चा** शिक्षा-जगत की हलचलों का चित्रण मौलिक ढंग से करता है। इस क्षेत्र को उपन्यास के विषय के रूप में चुनना महत्त्वपूर्ण प्रयोग है।

आज बहुत बड़ी संख्या में उपन्यास लिखे जा रहे हैं जिनकी विषयवस्तु में विविधता है और शैली में नवीनता। आज का उपन्यासकार कलात्मक रुझान के प्रति अधिक सजग है। उपन्यासों के विन्यास और संरचना में गहरा बदलाव आया है। समकालीन हिंदी उपन्यास को किसी एक विशेष श्रेणी में बाँटकर देखना मुश्किल है। एक तरफ मनोहर श्याम जोशी, निर्मल वर्मा, कमलेश्वर, कृष्णा सोबती, भीष्म साहनी जैसे वरिष्ठ

उपन्यासकारों की रचनाएँ सामने आ रही हैं तो दूसरी ओर विनोद कुमार शुक्ल का **नौकर की कमीज़**, असगर वजाहत का **सात आसमान**, कामतानाथ का **काल कथा**, भगवानदास मोरवाल का **काला पहाड़** जैसे उपन्यास भी हिंदी साहित्य में चर्चित हो रहे हैं। इस बीच महिला कथाकारों के अनेक सार्थक उपन्यास सामने आए हैं, जिससे हिंदी उपन्यास साहित्य समृद्ध हुआ है। मैत्रेयी पुष्पा का **चाक**, चित्रा मुद्गल का **आँवा**, मृदुला गर्ग का **कठगुलाब** और अलका सरावगी का **कलिकथा वाया बाइपास** समकालीन हिंदी उपन्यास साहित्य की महत्त्वपूर्ण उपलब्धियाँ हैं। अमरकांत का सन 1942 की जनक्रांति पर आधारित उपन्यास **इन्हीं हथियारों से** उल्लेखनीय कृति है।

कहानी

इस काल-खंड का सामान्य परिचय देते हुए कहा जा चुका है कि स्वाधीन भारत के सुदूर क्षेत्रों में निर्माण कार्य, आम चुनावों, राजनीतिक अधिकारों के प्रति चेतना जगाने एवं शिक्षा का प्रसार होने से इन क्षेत्रों का संबंध नगरों से सघन तौर पर जुड़ा जिससे आंचलिक साहित्य सामने आया। साथ ही साथ स्त्री-शिक्षा का व्यापक प्रचार होने और उनके द्वारा नौकरी करने से परिवार में उनकी स्थिति बदली। नगरों, महानगरों में औद्योगिक विकास होने से सामूहिक जीवन का महत्त्व सामने आया। व्यक्ति का मनोजगत कहीं अधिक जटिल हो गया। हिंदी कहानी पर इस सबका दबाव पड़ा। इससे वस्तु-संवेदना के साथ कहानी का रूप-विधान भी बदला। सन 1955 के आस-पास **नई कहानी** आंदोलन चल निकला। इस कहानी आंदोलन को प्रवर्तित और प्रतिष्ठित करने में **नई कहानियाँ** के संपादक भैरव प्रसाद गुप्त की महत्त्वपूर्ण भूमिका थी। **नई कहानियाँ** के माध्यम से उन्होंने हिंदी को अनेक प्रतिभाशाली कहानीकार दिए।

नई कहानी आंदोलन ने स्वातंत्र्योत्तर स्थितियों के दबाव से पैदा होने वाली मानसिकता की जटिलता को अपनी संवेदना में समेट लिया। इसीलिए **नई कहानी** की वस्तु-संवेदना के अनेक पक्ष हैं। उन सभी को सामूहिक तौर पर **नई कहानी** की वस्तुगत विशेषताओं में गिना जाता है। आंचलिकता, नए पारिवारिक संबंध, भ्रष्टाचार, व्यंग्य, विडंबना आदि **नई कहानी** की संवेदना का निर्माण करते हैं।

शिव प्रसाद सिंह की **दादी माँ**, मार्कंडेय की **गुलरा के बाबा** चरित्र प्रधान ग्रामीण कहानियाँ हैं। आंचलिकता की चर्चा वस्तुतः रेणु के उपन्यास **मैला आंचल** से शुरू हुई। रेणु की कहानियों में पात्रों की चेष्टाएँ, भाषा आदि क्षेत्रीय वातावरण में घुली-मिली होती हैं। इंद्रियबोध, लोककथा, लोक धुनें रेणु की कहानियों के विशिष्ट उपादान हैं। अपनी सर्वाधिक प्रसिद्ध कहानी **तीसरी कसम** में 40 वर्षीय ग्रामीण गाड़ीवान हीरामन और नर्तकी हीराबाई के परस्पर आकर्षण की कथा के आधार पर रेणु ने कहानीकार के रूप में मौलिक प्रतिभा का परिचय दिया।

भारतीय समाज विशेषतः सवर्ण समाज में नारी की स्थिति दयनीय रही है। स्वाधीन भारत में शिक्षित और नौकरी प्राप्त नारियाँ भी कहानियों का पात्र बनने लगीं। मोहन राकेश की कहानी **एक और ज़िंदगी** में नायक उद्विग्न है, उसे पाठक की सहानुभूति की तलाश है। कारण यह है कि पत्नी उसकी उपेक्षा करती है। पत्नी नौकरी करती है और आर्थिक तौर पर स्वतंत्र है। नर-नारी के प्रेम की अवधारणा में जो उदारता कहानियों में दिखलाई पड़ती है उसका कारण कहीं न कहीं नारी का आर्थिक रूप से स्वतंत्र होना और शिक्षित होना भी है। इस दृष्टि से कमलेश्वर की **राजा निरबंसिया** और रवींद्र कालिया की कहानी **नौ साल छोटी पत्नी** उल्लेखनीय हैं। स्त्री-पुरुष के संबंध को लेकर एक साहसपूर्ण लंबी कहानी कृष्णा सोबती की **मित्रो मरजानी** है। बदलते हुए पारिवारिक संबंधों के साथ मध्यवर्गीय व्यक्ति अनजाने ही क्रमशः अपनी मानवीय संवेदना खो बैठता है, इसे राजेंद्र यादव ने **टूटना** जैसी कहानी में व्यक्त किया है। आधुनिक जीवन में हमारे परंपरागत मूल्य कितनी आसानी से टूट जाते हैं, इसे शानी ने **इमारत ढहाने वाले** कहानी में दिखाया है। शानी मानव संबंधों को उभारने में कुशल हैं। इस प्रसंग में नारी जीवन की एकरसता को मार्मिक तौर पर उभारने वाली कहानी **रोज़** का उल्लेख अनिवार्य है। इसके लेखक अज्ञेय हैं।

इस बदलते हुए पारिवारिक वातावरण के संदर्भ में बुजुर्गों की स्थिति को हिंदी कहानी में **चीफ़ की दावत** और **वापसी** के माध्यम से भीष्म साहनी तथा उषा प्रियंवदा ने दर्शाया। **चीफ़ की दावत** में उपेक्षिता और परिवार में कूड़ा-करकट की तरह छिपाई जाने वाली वृद्धा माँ का महत्त्व उजागर करके प्रतीकात्मक ढंग से परंपरा का महत्त्व दिखाया गया है। **वापसी** निहायत निर्मम ढंग से यह दिखाती है कि सेवा निवृत्त होकर मनुष्य अपने ही परिवार में किस तरह फालतू हो जाता है। **वापसी** कहानी में टूटते हुए संयुक्त परिवार की विवश स्वीकृति है।

स्वाधीन भारत में गुज़रती हुई पीढ़ी का वास्तविक यथार्थ तीव्रतम रूप से अमरकांत की कहानी **डिप्टी कलक्टरी** में व्यंजित हुआ। इस कहानी में डिप्टी कलक्टरी की परीक्षा देता है बेटा और आतुरता की धार पर वेदना सहता है पिता। पिता की पुत्र से आशाएँ-आकांक्षाएँ मानो अतीत की वर्तमान के प्रति शुभकामनाएँ हैं। सकलदीप बाबू की व्यग्रता और अधीरता की चेष्टा में मध्य वर्गीय समाज की रूढ़ियाँ, अंध विश्वास, एकरसता और उन सबसे उबरने की मानसिकता है। अमरकांत की कहानियाँ हमारे सामाजिक जीवन की अमानवीय स्थितियों को एक यातनागार की तरह पेश करती हैं और इससे उबरने की असफल चेष्टाओं का चित्रण करके यातनाग्रस्त समाज की दयनीयता को और मार्मिक बना देती हैं। अमरकांत की कहानियों में स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत का दोमुहाँपन व्यक्त हुआ है। **ज़िंदगी और जोंक, सप्ताहांत, मूस, मकान, हत्यारे** इसी तरह की कहानियाँ हैं।

आज की विषम स्थिति को झेलकर भी मनुष्य यथासंभव अपनी मूल्यवत्ता सँजोए हुए है। यह शेखर जोशी की कहानियों की मुख्य संवेदना है। मूल्यवत्ता को प्रकट करने वाली कहानियाँ प्रायः भाववादी पद्धति पर रची जाती हैं। शेखर जोशी ऐसी कहानियों को भी जटिल ताने-बाने से तैयार करते हैं। इस रचनात्मक क्षमता के वे अकेले कहानीकार हैं जो दबे, सधे और निश्चित ढंग से पात्रों की मानवीयता उभार सकते हैं। **कोसी का घटवार** का प्रेम, **दाज्यू** में पहाड़ी लड़के का स्वाभिमान, **बदबू** में जड़ व्यवस्था का अंग बनने की अस्वीकृति, **हलवाहा** में निश्चयात्मक बोध आदि उनकी इसी रचनात्मक शक्ति के द्योतक हैं।

निर्मल वर्मा मन की गहरी परतों को उघाड़ने वाले कहानीकार हैं। उनकी कहानियों में परिस्थितियों का प्रभाव मन पर इस तरह पड़ता है कि पाठक मनोजगत में ही रम जाता है। स्थितियों का ठोसपन या उनका बाहरीपन निर्मल वर्मा की कहानियों में कम महत्त्वपूर्ण है। संगीतात्मकता और दृश्यों का संवेदनशील वर्णन उनकी शैली की विशेषता है। निर्मल वर्मा संवेदना की सूक्ष्मता और पारदर्शिता के लिए महत्त्वपूर्ण हैं, व्यापकता के लिए नहीं। **परिंदे** उनका चर्चित कहानी संग्रह है।

नई कहानी आंदोलन से अलग रहकर जिन कहानीकारों ने अपनी पहचान बनाई या बनाए रखी, उनमे जैनेंद्र, यशपाल, विष्णु प्रभाकर, अज्ञेय, भगवतीचरण वर्मा, द्विजेंद्रनाथ मिश्र 'निर्गुण', चंद्रगुप्त विद्यालंकार उल्लेखनीय हैं। अज्ञेय ने भारत-विभाजन के कारण उत्पन्न शरणार्थी की समस्याओं और उनकी स्थिति पर अनेक कहानियाँ लिखीं। जैनेंद्र

पहले की तरह मन की गहरी परतों को खोलने वाली कहानियाँ लिखते रहे। **नई कहानी** आंदोलन से अलग रहने वाले लोकप्रिय और यशस्वी कहानीकार विष्णु प्रभाकर ने **धरती अब भी घूम रही है** जैसी भावना-प्रवण अनेक कहानियाँ लिखीं। विष्णु प्रभाकर सामाजिक जीवन की समस्याओं को लेकर हर प्रकार की मानवीय पीड़ा से व्यथित होने वाले वादमुक्त कहानीकार हैं। भावना-प्रवण कहानियाँ लिखने के लिए निर्गुण और चंद्रगुप्त विद्यालंकार भी विख्यात हैं। हृदयेश की कहानियाँ यथार्थ की विषमता का व्यंग्यपूर्ण उद्घाटन करती हैं। उनकी कहानी **मनु** में ऐतिहासिक विकास की प्रक्रिया में एक ब्राह्मण कर्मकांडी की यातना का निर्भीक चित्रण किया गया है। शैलेश मटियानी ने अपनी कहानियों में निम्नवर्गीय पात्रों के दारुण जीवन का प्रामाणिक चित्रण किया है।

सातवें दशक के मध्य से भारतीय जन मानस में प्रतीक्षा का भाव समाप्त हो चला। इसके स्थान पर मोहभंग और सामाजिक परिवर्तन के लिए आतुरता और अधीरता का भाव पैदा हुआ। कहने की आवश्यकता नहीं कि यह नेहरू युग की समाप्ति के बाद राजनीतिक, आर्थिक स्थिति में परिवर्तन की व्यापक माँग का ही प्रतिफलन था। कहानी की रचना में रत होने वाले नवयुवक कहानीकार सत्ता के प्रति आक्रोशमय रवैया रखते थे। उनका यह रवैया उनकी कहानियों में प्रकट हुआ। इन कहानीकारों का आक्रोश और समझ नई कहानी की भाषा को अलग रूप एवं खुलापन देता है और व्यंग्य पूर्ण तेवर भी। भ्रष्टाचार कितना सहज और स्वीकार्य बन गया है, इसकी अभिव्यक्ति इन कहानीकारों की विशेष प्रवृत्ति है। इसी कारण इनकी रचनाओं में घृणा और क्षोभ है। इस प्रवृत्ति के प्रतिनिधि कहानीकार हैं – ज्ञानरंजन, काशीनाथ सिंह, पंकज बिष्ट, असगर वजाहत, मिथिलेश्वर और संजीव आदि। इन कहानीकारों में मिलने वाला व्यंग्य वास्तविक और पैना है।

इस बीच कुछ ऐसी कहानियाँ भी आई हैं, जो विकसित स्थिति की संभावनाओं पर भी ध्यान देती हैं। मधुकर सिंह की एक कहानी **लहू पुकारे आदमी** में दिखाया गया है कि गरीब सवर्ण और गरीब अवर्ण वस्तुतः समान हैं और इसी प्रकार अमीर सवर्ण और अमीर अवर्ण भी। यह वर्ग चेतना केवल किताबी बोध नहीं है। चुनावों और शिक्षा का परिणाम है। अब्दुल बिस्मिल्लाह की कहानी **सुलह** में एक असहाय ग्रामीण पात्र पुलिस और उच्च वर्ग की मिली भगत की पहचान कर अपने ढंग से यानी ज़ालिम को पीटकर सुलह करता है। स्वयं प्रकाश, संजीव, उदय प्रकाश, अखिलेश, मदनमोहन, ओमप्रकाश

वाल्मीकि, विपिन बिहारी, चित्रा मुद्गल, ममता कालिया, विद्यासागर नौटियाल, शिवमूर्ति, दूधनाथ सिंह, हरिवंश राय आदि आज के प्रमुख कहानीकार हैं।

नाटक एवं एकांकी

स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी साहित्य में नाटकों की आवश्यकता का अनुभव किया गया, यह भी अनुभव किया गया कि नाटकों की रचना के लिए यह समय उपयुक्त है, किंतु उस मात्रा और गुण में नाटकों की रचना नहीं हुई। इसका सबसे बड़ा कारण हिंदी के अपने रंगमंच का अभाव है। हिंदी क्षेत्र में लोक नाट्य-रूपों की कमी नहीं। स्वांग, नौटंकी, बिदेसिया, सफेड़ा (या सपेरा) यहाँ के बहुप्रयुक्त लोक नाट्य-रूप हैं, किंतु परिनिष्ठित साहित्यिक रंगमंच का उससे कोई व्यावहारिक संबंध नहीं रहा। हिंदी के साहित्यिक नाटक प्रधानतः पाठ्य रचनाएँ हैं। अब तक केवल भारतेंदु के नाटकों के विषय में ही यह बात कही जा सकती है कि उनका जीवित संबंध हिंदी की जातीय नाट्य परंपरा से रहा है।

पहले से लिखने वाले अनेक नाटककार स्वाधीन भारत में भी नाटकों की रचना करते रहे। लक्ष्मीनारायण मिश्र ने गांधी जी पर **मृत्युंजय** (1958) रचा। उदयशंकर भट्ट ने **शकविजय** (1949), **नया समाज** (1955) आदि लिखा।

स्वाधीन भारत के नाटक साहित्य में पहला उल्लेखनीय नाम जगदीशचंद्र माथुर का है जिन्होंने **कोणार्क** (1951), **शारदीया** (1959), **पहला राजा** (1969) और **दशरथनंदन** (1974 के आस-पास) लिखा। इन नाटकों का महत्त्व विषयवस्तु की दृष्टि से अधिक है, अभिनेयता या रंगमंच की दृष्टि से अपेक्षाकृत कम। इनमें सर्वाधिक प्रसिद्ध **कोणार्क** है जिसमें कलाकार के संघर्ष की समस्या को प्रस्तुत किया गया है।

गीति-नाटकों की परंपरा में धर्मवीर भारती का **अंधा युग** (1955) निस्संदेह स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी साहित्य की महत्त्वपूर्ण रचना है। इसकी अभिनेयता भी पुष्ट है। महाभारत के अंतिम अंश को द्वितीय विश्वयुद्ध के साथ जोड़ा गया है। लेकिन इसमें युद्ध की समस्या कम है, अस्तित्त्ववादी जीवन-दर्शन का प्रतिपादन अधिक। इसके रूपात्मक ढाँचे पर ग्रीक नाटकों का प्रभाव स्पष्ट है। एक दूसरा उल्लेखनीय गीति-नाटक दुष्यंतकुमार का **एक कंठ विषपायी** (1963) है।

मोहन राकेश अब तक स्वाधीन भारत के सबसे सफल हिंदी नाटककार हैं। उन्होंने ऐतिहासिक कथानक पर आधारित अपनी नाट्यकृतियों को समकालीन बोध से कुशलतापूर्वक

संयुक्त किया। **आषाढ़ का एक दिन** (1958) कालिदास के जीवन पर आधारित है। इसकी विषयवस्तु की मूल सामग्री कालिदास की रचनाओं से जुटाई गई है। रचनाकार और राज सत्ता के जटिल संबंध को दर्शाया गया है। रचनाकार की निजी और रचनात्मक नैतिकता भी इससे अप्रभावित नहीं रहती। प्रेम संबंध की समस्या को संवेदनशील ढंग से प्रस्तुत किया गया है। **आधे-अधूरे** (1969) स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत का पहला हिंदी नाटक है जिसमें टूटते हुए पारिवारिक मूल्यों को यथार्थवादी ढंग से प्रस्तुत किया गया है। सभी पात्र अपनी इच्छाओं की पूर्ति और आचरण में अपूर्ण हैं। अधूरेपन का यह अहसास हमारे युग की नियति है। मोहन राकेश का एक अन्य प्रसिद्ध नाटक **लहरों के राजहंस** (1963) है। यह अश्वघोष की कृति **सौंदरनंद** पर आधारित है।

लक्ष्मीनारायण लाल ने अभावग्रस्त ग्राम्य जीवन के सामाजिक और पारिवारिक संघर्ष को **अंधा कुआँ** (1955) में प्रस्तुत किया है। **मादा कैक्टस** (1959), **रक्तकमल** (1962) आदि उनके प्रतीकात्मक नाटक हैं। लक्ष्मीनारायण लाल के नाटकों में अभिनेयता होती है और वे रंगमंच की आवश्यकताओं का ध्यान रखते हैं। **तोता मैना** (सगुन पंछी) उनकी एक प्रयोगात्मक रचना है जिसमें लोक शैली को अपनाया गया है।

अन्य नाटककारों में सर्वाधिक उल्लेखनीय सुरेंद्र वर्मा हैं, जिन्होंने **द्रौपदी**, **सूर्य की अंतिम किरण से सूर्य की पहली किरण तक** और **आठवाँ सर्ग** की रचना की है। इनके नाटकों का विषय सामाजिक, पारिवारिक भी होता है और ऐतिहासिक भी।

सर्वेश्वरदयाल सक्सेना, लक्ष्मीकांत वर्मा, मुद्राराक्षस आदि ने भी नाटकों की रचना की ओर ध्यान दिया। इधर भीष्म साहनी ने **हानूश**, **कबिरा खड़ा बाज़ार में**, **माधवी** और **मुआवज़े** की रचना की है। दूधनाथ सिंह का **यमगाथा** नाटक राजनीतिक थियेटर की नई संभावना जगाता है तो हमीदुल्ला का **उलझी आकृतियाँ** व्यवस्था विरोधी नाटक है। मृदुला गर्ग ने अपने नाटक **एक और अजनबी** में यौन विकृतियों का चित्रण किया है।

स्वतंत्रता के बाद सफल उल्लेखनीय एकांकी बहुत कम रचे गए हैं। बात यह है कि एकांकी के नाम पर अधिकांशतः रेडियो-एकांकी ही लिखे जाते हैं, जो बहुत कुछ सामयिक विषयों पर और रेडियो की माँग पर तैयार किए जाते हैं। किंतु उपेंद्रनाथ अश्क, भुवनेश्वर, जगदीश चंद्र माथुर आदि प्रसिद्ध एकांकीकार केवल रेडियो-एकांकी नहीं लिखते थे। रेडियो एकांकियों का साहित्यिक स्तर प्रायः बहुत ऊँचा नहीं होता। इसलिए इस क्षेत्र में बहुत कम नाम उभर कर आए। विष्णु प्रभाकर, जगदीश चंद्र माथुर, लक्ष्मीनारायण लाल

आदि नाटककारों ने एकांकी भी लिखे हैं। एकांकी विधा को अपनाने वाले रचनाकारों में विनोद रस्तोगी और चिरंजीत भी उल्लेखनीय हैं।

वस्तुतः नाटक ऐसी विधा है जो वस्तुनिष्ठता की बहुत माँग करती है। नाटक केवल लिखा नहीं जाता, वह अभिनीत होकर दर्शकों से तादात्म्य स्थापित करने के बाद पूरा होता है। इस दृष्टि से हिंदी नाटक अपने युग की आवश्यकताओं की पूर्ति करते नहीं प्रतीत होते। इस युग में कथनी-करनी के अंतर का जो बोध है उसे प्रकट करने के लिए नाटक सर्वोत्तम विधा है। इसीलिए अन्य साहित्य विधाओं में नाटकीयता का महत्त्व बढ़ गया है। हिंदी की जातीय नाट्य परंपरा का थोड़ा बहुत उत्थान जन नाट्य मंच (इप्टा) में दिखलाई पड़ा था। हबीब तनवीर के **आगरा बाज़ार** और **चरनदास चोर** को हिंदी की जातीय नाट्य परंपरा की उल्लेखनीय कृतियाँ समझना उचित होगा।

निबंध

निबंध ऐसी गद्य-विधा है जो विचारपरक और अनुभूतिपरक दोनों हो सकती है। विचारपरकता उसे शास्त्र की ओर ले जाती है और अनुभूतिपरकता सर्जनात्मक साहित्य की ओर। रामचंद्र शुक्ल के निबंध विचारपरक हैं। वे अपने निबंधों में शास्त्र (काव्यशास्त्र) का निर्माण करते हैं। हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी के अधिकांश निबंध सर्जनात्मक साहित्य की कोटि में आते हैं। द्विवेदी जी के निबंधों की चर्चा पहले की जा चुकी है। उनके अनेक श्रेष्ठ निबंध स्वातंत्र्योत्तर काल में भी निकले – **नाखून क्यों बढ़ते हैं, आम फिर बौरा गए, ठाकुर की बटोर** आदि। वे अंतिम समय तक निबंध लिखते रहे। **देवदारु** और **कुटज** जैसे निबंध 1960 ई. के बाद लिखे गए। द्विवेदी जी मूलतः सर्जनात्मक या ललित निबंधकार हैं। उनका मन सबसे अधिक इसी विधा में रमा है। अतः उनके निबंधों पर यहाँ कुछ चर्चा कर लेना अप्रासंगिक न होगा।

द्विवेदी जी अपने निबंधों में भारत के सांस्कृतिक इतिहास का पुनर्निमाण करते हैं। अपने अगाध पांडित्य को बोझ न बनाकर सामान्य मनुष्य की तरह सोच-समझ पाना एवं अनुभव कर पाना उनकी सबसे बड़ी शक्ति है। वे हर जानकारी, हर अनुभव को सामान्य मनुष्य के व्यापक हित की कसौटी पर कसते हैं। काल-बोध उनके चिंतन की दूसरी विशेषता है, जिसे वे कई बार 'मनुष्य की जय-यात्रा' जैसे प्रयोग से प्रकट करते हैं।

द्विवेदी जी वनस्पति, साहित्य, भाषा, इतिहास सबका प्रयोग करते हैं, जिससे उन सबको हम नए ढंग से पहचानने लगते हैं। द्विवेदी जी प्राचीन साहित्य और संस्कृति के पंडित हैं, फिर भी उनकी शैली बहुत सहज, अनौपचारिक और आत्मीय है। वे तद्भव ही नहीं ठेठ क्षेत्रीय शब्दों का प्रयोग भी धड़ल्ले से करते हैं।

अज्ञेय के अनेक निबंध संग्रह प्रकाशित हुए हैं। 'कुट्टिचातन' के उपनाम से उनके व्यक्तिपरक निबंध छपे हैं। अज्ञेय ने साहित्य, कला, संस्कृति जैसे विषयों पर गंभीर निबंध भी लिखे। निबंधों में उनका चिंतक रूप उभरा है। **आत्मनेपद** और **भवंती,** उनके प्रतिनिधि निबंध-संग्रह हैं। जैनेंद्र ने अज्ञेय से पहले इस प्रकार के गंभीर चिंतनपरक निबंध लिखे थे। जैनेंद्र जी बाद में भी निबंध लिखते रहे।

रामवृक्ष बेनीपुरी और भदंत आनंद कौसल्यायन ने निबंध-साहित्य की श्रीवृद्धि की। बेनीपुरी जी सामाजिक उत्पीड़न से विक्षुब्ध होने वाले लेखक हैं, किंतु उनके निबंध भावप्रवण होते हैं, जबकि भदंत आनंद कौसल्यायन उन्हीं समस्याओं को तर्कपूर्ण और सीधे-सादे किंतु प्रभावशाली ढंग से प्रस्तुत करते हैं। गुलाबराय, दिनकर, नगेंद्र, विनयमोहन शर्मा, विजयेंद्र स्नातक ने अधिकांशतः साहित्यिक निबंध लिखे। इंद्रनाथ मदान ने व्यक्तिपरक निबंध लिखे।

इस युग के निबंधकारों में हरिशंकर परसाई (1921-1995) ने व्यंग्यपरक निबंधों को अपूर्व प्रतिष्ठा दी। उनके निबंधों के विषय प्रायः राजनैतिक और सामाजिक होते हैं। व्यंग्य निबंधों में इतनी पैनी राजनीतिक सूझबूझ का परिचय हिंदी में दुर्लभ था। उनके व्यंग्य-निबंधों में व्यंग्य का साहित्यिक प्रतिमान स्थापित हुआ। व्यंग्य भी गंभीर साहित्यिक विधा में गणनीय हुआ। वस्तुतः स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत की मानसिकता यदि कहीं निबंधों में व्यक्त हुई है तो परसाई के निबंधों में। शरद जोशी, श्रीलाल शुक्ल, रवींद्रनाथ त्यागी ने भी श्रेष्ठ व्यंग्य-निबंध लिखे हैं।

आचार्य नरेंद्र देव, डॉ. राममनोहर लोहिया, डॉ. संपूर्णानंद, राहुल सांकृत्यायन के अधिकांश निबंध सांस्कृतिक विषयों पर हैं जबकि डॉ. रामविलास शर्मा के निबंध राजनीतिक या संस्मरणात्मक हैं। क्रांतिकारियों के जीवन से संबंधित संस्मरण लिखने के लिए बनारसीदास चतुर्वेदी दीर्घकाल तक हिंदी पाठकों द्वारा कृतज्ञतापूर्वक स्मरण किए जाएँगे। पत्रकार की भाषा कितनी सटीक, चुस्त हो सकती है, यह चतुर्वेदी जी के निबंधों की भाषा शैली से जाना जा सकता है। नामवर सिंह के व्यंग्यपरक निबंधों का

एक संकलन **बकलमखुद** के नाम से प्रकाशित हुआ। धर्मवीर भारती का फुटकल निबंध-संग्रह **ठेले पर हिमालय** शीर्षक से छपा।

विद्यानिवास मिश्र प्राचीन भारतीय साहित्य के अधिकारी विद्वान हैं। उनके ललित निबंधों में विद्वत्ता एवं सर्जना का सुखद योग हुआ है। **प्रभुजी तुम चंदन हम पानी, मेरे राम का मुकुट भीग रहा है** आदि उनके प्रमुख निबंध संग्रह हैं। विवेकी राय और कुबेरनाथ राय के निबंध सांस्कृतिक विषयों पर होते हैं। उनके निबंधों में लोकजीवन की ताज़गी मिलती है और उसका आकर्षण भी।

समालोचना

स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी आलोचना के क्षेत्र में अधिकांश पूर्वोल्लिखित शुक्लोत्तर समालोचक सक्रिय रहे। नंददुलारे वाजपेयी ने जो लिखा वह आधुनिक साहित्य के विषय में है। डॉ. नगेंद्र ने रस सिद्धांत पर काम किया। हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी ने कालिदास-काव्य की लालित्य-मीमांसा करते हुए काव्य रचना के विषय में कुछ मौलिक प्रश्नों की ओर हमारा ध्यान आकृष्ट किया। इन आलोचकों का प्रभाव तो स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी आलोचना पर है, किंतु अधिकांश महत्त्वपूर्ण समालोचना ग्रंथ 1947 ई. के पूर्व निकल चुके थे। ये व्यावहारिक आलोचना पहले कर चुके थे। इस काल खंड में इन्होंने सिद्धांत-निर्माण का काम ज़्यादा किया। नंददुलारे वाजपेयी का **हिंदी साहित्य : बीसवीं शताब्दी**, हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी का **कबीर** और डॉ. नगेंद्र के **सुमित्रानंदन पंत** और **साकेत-एक अध्ययन** 1947 ई. के पूर्व ही प्रकाशित हो चुके थे।

इन आलोचकों की प्रारंभिक समालोचना दृष्टि शुक्ल जी से टकराकर विकसित हुई थी। वाजपेयी जी और डॉ. नगेंद्र ने उनके छायावाद संबंधी विचारों की आलोचना की थी। द्विवेदी जी ने कबीर का मूल्यांकन शुक्ल जी से भिन्न प्रकार का किया और भक्ति आंदोलन के प्रादुर्भाव के कारणों के विषय में भी असहमति प्रकट की। वाजपेयी जी ने 1947 ई. के बाद अधिकांश फुटकल साहित्यिक निबंध लिखे। डॉ. नगेंद्र ने आधुनिक साहित्य पर समीक्षात्मक निबंध लिखे। किसी एक कवि या ग्रंथ पर कोई पूरी पुस्तक नहीं आई। देव पर उनका शोधग्रंथ अवश्य प्रकाशित हुआ। रस-सिद्धांत की उन्होंने जीवनवादी व्याख्या की, पाश्चात्य एवं भारतीय काव्यशास्त्र के सिद्धांतों का तुलनात्मक अध्ययन किया, अनेक ग्रंथों का संकलन किया। उनका ध्यान नए-नए आलोचना सिद्धांतों पर

लगातार जाता रहा है जैसे कुछ समय पूर्व ही नए समीक्षा साहित्य का समाजशास्त्रीय अध्ययन और शैली-विज्ञान पर भी उनकी किताबें आई हैं।

द्विवेदी जी ठेठ आलोचक नहीं हैं। उनकी समीक्षा आलोचना का अनुशासन स्वीकार नहीं करती। आलोचना लिखते समय भी उनकी शैली ललित निबंधकार की ही होती है। वे रचनापूर्व बाह्यांतर कारणों एवं स्थितियों पर विचार ज़्यादा करते हैं। रचनाकार का वास्तविक आशय क्या है, इस पर बहुत ध्यान देते हैं। इसके लिए वे प्रयुक्त शब्दों के अर्थ के ऐतिहासिक अध्ययन में प्रवृत्त होते हैं। इस प्रक्रिया से वे आलोचना के अनुशासन में न भी बँधें तो भी अर्थ का विस्तार करते हैं जो कि आलोचना का वास्तविक क्षेत्र है। इसीलिए द्विवेदी जी आलोचना-शास्त्र का अनुसरण न करके भी श्रेष्ठ आलोचकों में हैं। **मेघदूत – एक कहानी** इसीलिए आलोचना की पुस्तक के रूप में भी उपादेय है। **कालिदास की लालित्य-योजना** में उन्होंने कालिदास द्वारा प्रयुक्त अनेक शब्दों की व्याख्या की। द्विवेदी जी की व्याख्या ऐसी होती है कि उसके काव्यार्थ की पहचान हो जाती है। अंतिम दिनों में द्विवेदी जी का ध्यान विभिन्न कलाओं के विकास के संदर्भ में कविता के उद्भव और विकास की ओर गया था। इसे समझाने के लिए उन्होंने मिथक, नृतत्त्व विज्ञान आदि का गंभीर अध्ययन करके कुछ निबंध लिखे जिनका उपयोग **कालिदास की लालित्य-योजना** में हुआ है।

स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी आलोचना का विकास प्रधानतः प्रगतिशील और व्यक्तिवादी आलोचना के द्वंद्व से हुआ है। प्रगतिशील आलोचना समाजवादी विचारधारा को लेकर चलती है। व्यक्तिवादी आलोचकों ने बहुत कुछ रूपवादी रुख अपनाया। इनका आग्रह इस ढंग से भी प्रकट हुआ कि कृति की विशिष्टता और उसके कलात्मक पक्ष को ध्यान में रखकर उसकी समीक्षा की जानी चाहिए। व्यक्तिवादी आलोचना में सभी प्रकार की विचारधारा से परहेज़ और यथासंभव रचना से उसे दूर रखने का आग्रह होता है। इस प्रकार की आलोचना अज्ञेय, लक्ष्मीकांत वर्मा, विजयदेव नारायण साही, धर्मवीर भारती आदि के लेखों में मिलती है। इनमें से लक्ष्मीकांत वर्मा ने **नई कविता के प्रतिमान** नामक पुस्तक लिखी जिसमें 'नई कविता' की प्रवृत्तियों को रेखांकित करने का प्रयास है। उनके अनुसार 'लघु मानव' को काव्य का विषय बनाना और कविता को राजनीतिक वादों से बचाए रखना, 'नई कविता' का प्रधान लक्षण है। अज्ञेय ने रचना की निजता, स्वायत्तता और बाहरी अतिवादों से साहित्य को बचाए रखने पर ज़ोर दिया। अज्ञेय ने रचनात्मक

भाषा शैली को फैशन या रीति बना देना रचनात्मकता के लिए हानिकर बताया। धर्मवीर भारती ने अपनी पुस्तक **मानव मूल्य और साहित्य** में प्रगतिवादी रचनादृष्टि का विरोध किया। विजयदेव नारायण साही की आलोचना-दृष्टि इतिहास निरपेक्ष नहीं है। वे हिंदी साहित्य की परंपराओं का महत्त्व समझते हैं। समीक्षा करते समय उनका ध्यान लोक-जीवन और साहित्य पर भी रहता है। उन्होंने **लघु मानव के बहाने हिंदी कविता पर एक बहस, शमशेर की काव्यानुभूति की बनावट** आदि विचारोत्तेजक आलोचनात्मक निबंध लिखे जिनकी गूँज बहुत दिनों तक बनी रही। उनकी मृत्यु (1983) के उपरांत **जायसी** पर उनका समीक्षात्मक ग्रंथ प्रकाशित हुआ जो काफी चर्चित हुआ।

प्रगतिशील आलोचकों में शिवदान सिंह चौहान, प्रकाश चंद्र गुप्त, डॉ. रामविलास शर्मा, चंद्रबली सिंह, डॉ. नामवर सिंह प्रमुख हैं। शिवदान सिंह चौहान और प्रकाश चंद्र गुप्त ने प्रगतिवादी दृष्टि से अनेक रचनाकारों, कृतियों और जनवादी समस्याओं पर फुटकल निबंध लिखे। इनकी भूमिका लेखकों और पाठकों को मार्क्सवादी चिंतन से परिचित कराने या उन्हें प्रेरित करने में है। प्रारंभ में प्रगतिशील आलोचना परंपरा का विरोध करने में संयम कम बरतती थी। **रामविलास शर्मा** (1912-2000 ई.) ने परंपरा का उचित मूल्यांकन करके प्रगतिशील समीक्षा को हिंदी की जातीय साहित्यिक परंपरा से जोड़ा। उन्होंने भारतेंदु हरिश्चंद्र, प्रेमचंद, निराला, रामचंद्र शुक्ल, आचार्य महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी पर परिश्रमपूर्वक गंभीर पुस्तकें लिखकर प्रगतिवादी-आलोचना को प्रतिष्ठित किया। निराला पर पहला लेख उन्होंने 1934 ई. में लिखा था। तब से लगभग 40 वर्षों तक वे साहित्य का अध्ययन-मनन करते रहे। इसका परिणाम **निराला की साहित्य-साधना** के तीन खंड हैं। डॉ. शर्मा ने निराला के व्यक्तित्व और साहित्य में अंतःसंबद्धता एवं अन्योन्याश्रय संबंध देखा। **निराला की साहित्य-साधना** के दो खंडों में निराला के साहित्य की समालोचना है। डॉ. शर्मा ने निराला के काव्य की समालोचना स्थापत्य को ध्यान में रखकर की है, जिसमें शब्द और अर्थ की विविधरूपता को एक भवन के आकार की तरह देखा जाता है। निराला की कविताओं को दुरूह समझा जाता रहा है। इसके लिए उनका उपहास भी किया जाता था। डॉ. शर्मा ने निराला की कविताओं में उनका विश्वबोध, तार्किकता, अर्थ-संगति खोजी, उन्हें 'अन्यतम मानवीय करुणा', 'वयस्क शृंगार' का कवि बताया। निराला के कला-पक्ष की विवेचना करते हुए डॉ. शर्मा ने आधुनिक समीक्षा के क्षेत्र में प्रचलित प्रायः सभी आलोचना पद्धतियों का उपयोग किया है। उन्होंने

हिंदी आलोचना को अनुचित रूपवादी आग्रह और वस्तुवादी एकांगिता से बचाकर उसकी समर्थ परंपरा का विकास किया।

डॉ. रामविलास शर्मा के आग्रहों और निष्कर्षों से सर्वत्र सहमत होना असंभव है। पंत, मुक्तिबोध, राहुल सांकृत्यायन, यशपाल, हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी पर जो उन्होंने लिखा है वह उनकी आलोचना का दुर्बल एवं एकाकी पक्ष है।

नामवर सिंह (जन्म 1927 ई.) मध्यकालीन और आधुनिक साहित्य के मर्मज्ञ विद्वान हैं। हिंदी के समकालीन लेखन को वे सर्वाधिक प्रभावित करने वाले समालोचक हैं। अनेक भाषाओं के साहित्य पर उनकी निगाह रहती है जिससे उनका साहित्य-चिंतन पुष्ट होता रहता है। डॉ. नामवर सिंह ने समय-समय पर समसामयिक साहित्य की अनेक समस्याओं पर विचार करते हुए अनेक लेखों के अतिरिक्त **छायावाद, कहानी : नई कहानी, कविता के नए प्रतिमान** और **दूसरी परंपरा की खोज** नामक आलोचनात्मक पुस्तकें लिखी हैं। इनमें अंतिम पुस्तक आचार्य हजारी प्रसाद द्विवेदी पर है। इसके अतिरिक्त उनके लेखों का एक संकलन **इतिहास और आलोचना** नाम से प्रकाशित हो चुका है।

छायावाद में डॉ. नामवर सिंह ने छायावाद को अनेक प्रवृत्तियों का समुच्चय कहा जिसमें राष्ट्रीय जागरण की भावना केंद्र में थी। इस पुस्तक में उन्होंने छायावाद के भाव और कलापक्ष की विविध प्रवृत्तियों का विवेचन करके छायावाद के ऐतिहासिक महत्त्व एवं काव्योत्कर्ष की व्याख्या की।

कहानी : नई कहानी का महत्त्व इस बात में है कि इस पुस्तक के द्वारा हिंदी में कहानी-आलोचना की गंभीर परंपरा प्रारंभ हुई। हिंदी आलोचना इसके पूर्व प्रधानतः कविता की आलोचना थी। इसके द्वारा नई कहानी आंदोलन प्रतिष्ठित और परिभाषित हुआ। इसमें नई कहानी और पुरानी कहानी का अंतर बताया गया और प्रमुख हिंदी कहानियों की विवेचना-व्याख्या की गई।

कविता के नए प्रतिमान भी वस्तुतः नई कविता की ही विवेचना करती है। इसमें कविता का विश्लेषण करने में सहायक विभिन्न महत्त्वपूर्ण उपकरणों की व्याख्या नई कविता की व्यावहारिक आलोचना की प्रक्रिया में की गई है।

मुक्तिबोध प्रधानतः कवि थे। किंतु उन्होंने आलोचना के क्षेत्र में भी काम किया। **कामायनी : एक पुनर्विचार** में उन्होंने कामायनी को बृहद फैंटेसी कहा और मनु को ध्वस्त होती हुई सामंती व्यवस्था का प्रतीक। कहने की आवश्यकता नहीं कि उनकी यह

आलोचना कृति विचारोत्तेजक थी किंतु अब वह मान्य हो चली है। मुक्तिबोध ने पंत, त्रिलोचन, शमशेर, दिनकर की उर्वशी आदि पर मौलिक विचार प्रस्तुत करके अपनी आलोचनात्मक प्रतिभा का परिचय दिया। कविता की रचना-प्रक्रिया संबंधी उनके विचार उनके सूक्ष्म काव्य-चिंतन का परिचय देते हैं।

चंद्रबली सिंह प्रतिभाशाली प्रगतिवादी आलोचक हैं जिनके निबंध **'लोक दृष्टि और साहित्य'** में संकलित हैं। श्री विजयशंकर मल्ल, डॉ. बच्चन सिंह, डॉ. शिवकुमार मिश्र, डॉ. रमेश कुंतल मेघ आदि अन्य उल्लेखनीय प्रगतिशील आलोचक हैं।

डॉ. देवराज और डॉ. रामस्वरूप चतुर्वेदी किसी विचारधारा या साहित्यिक सिद्धांत से प्रतिबद्ध आलोचक नहीं हैं। उनकी आलोचना में एक प्रकार का खुलापन है। डॉ. देवराज दर्शन के अध्यापक हैं। उनकी आलोचना का स्तर गंभीर होता है और निष्कर्ष स्पष्ट। उन्होंने **छायावाद का पतन** लिखकर ख्याति प्राप्त की।

देवीशंकर अवस्थी, डॉ. रामस्वरूप चतुर्वेदी समीक्षा में भाषा-प्रयोग की विवेचना को महत्त्वपूर्ण मानते हैं। वे उन आलोचकों में है जो साहित्य की परीक्षा के लिए भाषा को सर्वाधिक विश्वसनीय साधन मानते हैं। आलोचना के क्षेत्र में **तारसप्तक** के कवि नेमिचंद्र जैन का भी उल्लेखनीय योगदान है। **रंगदर्शन** पुस्तक के माध्यम से नाट्यालोचन के क्षेत्र में उन्होंने मूल्यांकन की नई कसौटियाँ कायम कीं। **अधूरे साक्षात्कार** में उपन्यास की आलोचना की नई भाषा विकसित करने की कोशिश की। **बदलते परिप्रेक्ष्य** तथा **जनांतिक** उनकी अन्य महत्त्वपूर्ण आलोचनात्मक पुस्तकें हैं।

इधर हिंदी आलोचना पर शैलीविज्ञान और संरचनावाद का प्रभाव पड़ा। वस्तुतः शैलीविज्ञान या संरचनात्मक विश्लेषण समालोचना के उपकरण हैं, समालोचना नहीं। इन दोनों विषयों पर डॉ. रवींद्रनाथ श्रीवास्तव ने प्रचुर जानकारी देने वाली पुस्तकें लिखी हैं।

अन्य महत्त्वपूर्ण आलोचकों में सुरेंद्र चौधरी, धनंजय वर्मा, नित्यानंद तिवारी, मैनेजर पांडेय, परमानंद श्रीवास्तव, खगेंद्र ठाकुर, डॉ. निर्मला जैन, डॉ. धर्मवीर, श्योराज सिंह 'बेचैन' के नाम उल्लेखनीय हैं।

अन्य गद्य विधाएँ

रिपोर्ताज

द्वितीय विश्व युद्ध के दौरान रांगेय राघव ने अकाल-पीड़ित बंगाल का दौरा करके **तूफ़ानों के बीच** नामक रिपोर्ताज लिखा। वस्तुतः यह विधा अखबार की रपट के बहुत

नज़दीक है। इसका उद्भव भी द्वितीय विश्व युद्ध के दौरान कुछ साहसी पत्रकारों की रपटों से हुआ। इसी विधा में अमृतराय की **लाल धरती** और भगवत शरण उपाध्याय की पुस्तक **इतिहास के पन्नों पर खून के धब्बे** की भी गणना हो सकती है। नरोत्तम नागर, रामशरण शर्मा मुंशी आदि ने अनेक सफल रिपोर्ताज लिखे हैं। अश्क ने **पहाड़ों में प्रेममय संगीत**, भदंत आनंद कौसल्यायन ने **देश की मिट्टी बोलती है**, शमशेर बहादुर सिंह ने **प्लाट का मोर्चा** और बंगला देश के स्वतंत्रता-युद्ध के दौरान धर्मवीर भारती ने **ब्रह्मपुत्र के मोर्चे से** तथा विष्णुकांत शास्त्री ने भी युद्ध संबंधी रिपोर्ताज लिखे। आज रेडियो, दूरदर्शन से अनेक ऐसे कार्यक्रम प्रसारित होते हैं, जिन्हें रिपोर्ताज कह सकते हैं।

आत्मकथा और जीवनी

आत्मकथा – हिंदी में अकबर कालीन जैन कवि बनारसीदास ने ही **अर्ध कथानक** नाम से आत्मकथा लिखी थी। आधुनिक हिंदी साहित्य में आत्मकथा सबसे पहले **डा. श्यामसुंदर दास** ने लिखी। गांधी जी ने अपनी आत्मकथा मूलतः गुजराती में और नेहरू जी ने अंग्रेज़ी में लिखी थी। डॉ. राजेंद्र प्रसाद ने अपनी आत्मकथा हिंदी में लिखी। बच्चन ने अपनी आत्मकथा **क्या भूलूँ क्या याद करूँ, नीड़ का निर्माण फिर, बसेरे से दूर** और **दश द्वार से सोपान तक** नाम से चार खंडों में लिखी। राहुल जी ने **मेरी जीवन-यात्रा** नाम से अनेक खंडों में आत्मकथा लिखी। यशपाल के **सिंहावलोकन** को भी आत्मकथा की ही कोटि में रखा जाएगा। सेठ गोविंद दास की आत्मकथा भी उल्लेखनीय है। इस बीच ओमप्रकाश वाल्मीकि की **जूठन** प्रकाशित हुई जो हिंदी के आत्मकथा साहित्य में ऐतिहासिक महत्त्व रखती है।

जीवनी – आधुनिक साहित्य में भारतेंदु की जीवनी ब्रजरत्न दास ने लिखी। फिर प्राचीन महापुरुषों और प्रेरणाप्रद व्यक्तियों की अनेक जीवनियाँ लिखी गई। स्वतंत्रता के उपरांत जो उल्लेखनीय जीवनी-साहित्य हिंदी में लिखा गया उसमें चंद्रशेखर शुक्ल का **रामचंद्र शुक्ल**, डॉ. रामविलास शर्मा का **निराला की साहित्य साधना** (तीसरा खंड), अमृतराय का **प्रेमचंद – कलम का सिपाही**, विष्णु प्रभाकर का **आवारा मसीहा**, विष्णु चंद्र शर्मा द्वारा लिखित **मुक्तिबोध की आत्मकथा** प्रसिद्ध हैं।

रेखाचित्र, संस्मरण

रेखाचित्र और संस्मरण भी आधुनिक गद्य विधाएँ हैं। हिंदी रेखाचित्र साहित्य में महादेवी वर्मा का नाम सर्वप्रथम उल्लेखनीय है। 1947 ई. में **स्मृति की रेखाएँ** प्रकाशित हुआ जो संस्मरण और रेखाचित्र दोनों हैं। इसके पूर्व 1941 ई. में उनका **अतीत के चल-चित्र** प्रकाशित हो चुका था। महादेवी जी ने उपेक्षित एवं शोषित व्यक्तियों और पशु-पक्षियों को संस्मरणात्मक रेखाचित्रों में अपार ममता दी है। इनसे महादेवी जी का भी व्यक्तित्व उजागर होता है। शिवपूजन सहाय का रेखाचित्र संकलन **वे दिन, वे लोग** 1965 में प्रकाशित हुआ। उपेंद्रनाथ अश्क का **मंटो मेरा दुश्मन** 1957 ई. के आस-पास प्रकाशित हुआ। संस्मरण लिखने वालों में प्रसिद्ध पत्रकार पं. बनारसीदास चतुर्वेदी का स्थान भी महत्त्वपूर्ण है। उन्होंने स्वतंत्रता आंदोलन के शहीदों, नेताओं एवं साहित्यकारों पर प्रेरक संस्मरण लिखे। श्री राय कृष्णदास ने भारतेंदु से संबंधित दुर्लभ संस्मरण लिखे। रामवृक्ष बेनीपुरी के कुछ अविस्मरणीय संस्मरण **माटी की मूरतें** में संकलित हैं।

यात्रा-वृत्तांत

इस युग में लेखकों ने अनेक यात्रा-वृत्तांत लिखे। आधुनिक युग में इसका भी प्रवर्तन भारतेंदु ने किया था। प्रमुख यात्रा-वृत्तांत लेखक और उनकी कृतियाँ इस प्रकार हैं – राहुल सांकृत्यायन (**मेरी चीन यात्रा** आदि), भगवतशरण उपाध्याय (**वो दुनिया, सागर की लहरों पर**), अज्ञेय (**अरे यायावर रहेगा याद, एक बूंद सहसा उछली**), यशपाल (**लोहे की दीवार के दोनों ओर, स्वर्गोद्यान बिना साँप**), रामवृक्ष बेनीपुरी (**पाँवों में पंख बांधकर**), निर्मल वर्मा (**चीड़ों पर चाँदनी**), कमलेश्वर (**खंडित यात्राएँ, रात के बाद**), प्रभाकर द्विवेदी (**पार उतरि कहँ जइहौ, धूप में सोई नदी**)। अमृतलाल बेगड़ (**सौंदर्य की नदी नर्मदा**)।

कविता

यों तो हिंदी कविता की प्रायः सभी पूर्व प्रवृत्तियाँ स्वातंत्र्योत्तर काल में भी परिलक्षित होती हैं, किंतु नई काव्य-प्रवृत्ति के रूप में सबसे अधिक चर्चा **नई कविता** की हुई।

1951 ई. में **दूसरा सप्तक** और 1959 ई. में **तीसरा सप्तक** प्रकाशित हुआ। संपादक अज्ञेय ही थे। **तार सप्तक** (पहला सप्तक) 1943 ई. में प्रकाशित हुआ था जिसका प्रमुख स्वर प्रगतिशील काव्य का था। दूसरे और तीसरे सप्तक में स्थिति भिन्न हो गई। दूसरे सप्तक के कवि हरिनारायण व्यास, भवानीप्रसाद मिश्र, शमशेर बहादुर सिंह, नरेश मेहता, शकुंत माथुर, रघुवीर सहाय और धर्मवीर भारती थे। तीसरा सप्तक के कवि थे – प्रयाग नारायण त्रिपाठी, कुँवर नारायण, कीर्ति चौधरी, केदारनाथ सिंह, मदन वात्स्यायन, विजयदेव नारायण साही और सर्वेश्वर दयाल सक्सेना। इसी बीच मासिक पत्रिका **प्रतीक** का प्रकाशन प्रारंभ हुआ। इसके संपादक अज्ञेय थे। फिर **निकष, नई कविता** आदि साहित्यिक पत्रिकाएँ लगातार निकलीं। ये सामाजिक प्रतिबद्धता से कविता को दूर ले जाना चाहती थीं। उनकी मुख्य चिंता यह थी कि कविता के क्षेत्र में राजनीति को प्रवेश नहीं मिलना चाहिए। **प्रयोगवाद** प्रगतिशील काव्यधारा के समानांतर प्रवाहित होने वाली काव्य प्रवृत्ति है। इसमें कविता की निजता की सुरक्षा का आग्रह है। प्रयोगवाद में मोहभंग और उससे उत्पन्न व्यंग्य-विद्रूपता की मनःस्थिति प्रमुख है। स्वाधीनता के उपरांत व्यवस्था से असंतोष और द्वितीय विश्वयुद्ध में नरसंहार के कारण मानवीय प्रयत्नों पर से विश्वास उठ गया। देश-काल की असीमता के बोध ने मनुष्य को नगण्य बना दिया। इससे शिक्षित युवा-कवियों के मन में एक प्रकार के मोह भंग की स्थिति पैदा हुई। यह अज्ञेय और प्रभाकर माचवे की कविताओं में दिखलाई पड़ने लगता है। इसी मनःस्थिति में अज्ञेय चाँदनी को 'वंचना' कहते हैं और प्रभाकर माचवे लिखते हैं –

विज्जाकाया के दो पद्य सुनकर चित्त हुआ गद्गद।

'गद्गद' होना गद्गद होने का मज़ाक उड़ाना हुआ।

यह प्रवृत्ति प्रपद्यवाद में और आगे बढ़ी जिसमें मन को बिलकुल खुला छोड़कर कविता हुई तथा अनगढ़ और अपरिचित शब्दों का प्रयोग भी बहुत हुआ।

नई कविता

प्रयोगवाद में प्रयोग पर बल है। नई कविता में प्रयोग पर बल नहीं है। यह स्मरण रखना चाहिए कि कालांतर में मुक्तिबोध जैसे प्रगतिशील कवि ने भी स्वयं को नई कविता का कवि घोषित किया। नई कविता के कवियों में लक्ष्मीकांत वर्मा, जगदीश गुप्त, धर्मवीर भारती, विजयदेव नारायण साही, विपिन अग्रवाल एवं श्रीराम वर्मा प्रमुख हैं।

द्वितीय विश्वयुद्ध के उपरांत यूरोप में अस्तित्ववाद की लहर तेज़ी से फैली। सार्त्र और कामू इसके नए विचारक बने। अनिश्चय, चयन की पीड़ा, मानव-इतिहास की व्यर्थता, मृत्यु का संत्रास इसके प्रमुख सूत्र हैं। इससे हिंदी के विचारक और कवि भी प्रभावित हुए। अजनबीपन की बात यहाँ भी होने लगी। जिन ऐतिहासिक स्थितियों में यह यूरोप में बीसवीं सदी में प्रभावशाली बना था, वे स्थितियाँ भारत में नहीं थीं। लेकिन विचार में इससे प्रभावित होना अस्वाभाविक नहीं था। विशेष रूप से अज्ञेय, धर्मवीर भारती जैसे कवियों के लिए, जिनकी कविता 'साहित्येतर' अतिरेकों से अपने को सुरक्षित रखना चाहती थी। समाजवादी विचारधारा द्वितीय विश्वयुद्ध के उपरांत अस्तित्ववाद की अपेक्षा कहीं अधिक व्यापक पैमाने पर फैल रही थी। अनेक नए देशों में समाजवादी व्यवस्था आ गई थी। इससे कुछ कवियों को आशंका हुई।

अज्ञेय 'साहित्य एवं व्यक्ति की सुरक्षा' के प्रतिनिधि कवि हैं। उन्हें व्यक्तिवादी कवि कहा गया है। **नदी के द्वीप, यह दीप अकेला** आदि उनकी प्रतिनिधि कविताएँ हैं जो साहित्य की विशिष्टता की सुरक्षा और व्यक्ति-स्वातंत्र्य का प्रतिपादन करती हैं। एकरूपता की अस्वीकृति अज्ञेय की कविताओं की टेक है। उनके बिंब भी प्रायः ऐसे होते हैं जहाँ एकरूपता को चीर कर कोई दूसरी वस्तु अकेली गतिशील होती है। अज्ञेय जहाँ अपने व्यक्तित्व को किसी दृश्य या विचार में तल्लीन कर लेते हैं वहाँ वे उत्कृष्ट काव्य रचते हैं। उन्होंने प्रकृति पर अनेक उत्कृष्ट कविताएँ लिखी हैं।

नई कविता में सभी वादों से मुक्ति और 'लघुमानव' के महत्त्व की प्रतिष्ठा की गई है। इस प्रवृत्ति से यह अवश्य हुआ कि व्यक्ति की सामान्य मनःस्थितियों को अभिव्यक्त करने वाली कुछ ऐसी कविताएँ लिखी गईं जो सचमुच नई थीं। नई कविता के कवि मध्यवर्गीय व्यक्ति के मन की जटिलताओं को अधिक अपनापे से प्रकट करते हैं – यद्यपि उन्हें समझने का उतना प्रयास नहीं करते।

1960 ई. के बाद **अकविता** का जो दौर आया उसमें अस्वीकृति का तेवर सीमा पर पहुँच गया। अकविता का आशय ऐसी काव्य-प्रवृत्ति से था जैसी कविता अब तक नहीं हुई है। इसके लिए उसके नाम में ही परंपरा को पूरी तरह नकारने का भाव था। वस्तुतः यह विवेक पक्ष की उपेक्षा करके विद्रोह या व्यवस्था विरोध की काव्य प्रवृत्ति थी। अकविता के बाद एक बार फिर प्रगतिशील चेतना संपन्न युवा कवियों की कविताएँ कविता की मुख्यधारा बनी।

नई कविता की प्रवृत्तियाँ

- नई कविता 'लघुमानव' की कविता है। लघुमानव से आशय दिशाहारा एवं विचारधारा से रहित उपेक्षित सामान्य मनुष्य से है।
- नई कविता अपने को राजनीति से दूर रखती है। वह समाजवादी और पूँजीवादी दोनों शिविरों से समान दूरी रखती है।
- नई कविता लघुमानव के दैनंदिन सामान्य अनुभवों की अभिव्यक्ति करने में विश्वास रखती है।
- मुक्तिबोध ने **नई कविता** शब्द का प्रयोग व्यापक काव्यधारा के अर्थ में किया है।

प्रगतिशील काव्यधारा

प्रगतिशील काव्यधारा के कुछ कवियों का उल्लेख हम पिछले अध्याय में भी कर चुके हैं। स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी कविता में योगदान देने वाले कुछ अन्य कवियों एवं उनकी काव्य प्रवृत्तियों की चर्चा यहाँ की जा रही है। **शमशेर बहादुर सिंह** (1911-1993 ई.) यद्यपि प्रगतिशील चेतना के कवि हैं किंतु उनकी कविताएँ मन की गहरी परतों को सांकेतिकता और बहुत कुछ चित्रकला की सहायता से खोलती हैं। शमशेर बहादुर की कविताएँ शब्दों की बहुत मितव्ययिता बरतती हैं। अतः अर्थ निकालने का प्रयास काफी करना पड़ता है। इसी कारण उनकी कविताओं में मौन की (यानी जो कहा जाना चाहिए किंतु नहीं कहा गया) महिमा मिलती है। उनकी कविताएँ सहज उक्तियों में ढलकर सुगम हो जाती हैं। **अमन का राग, सलोना जिस्म, आओ न** ऐसी ही कविताएँ हैं।

गिरिजा कुमार माथुर (1919-1994 ई.) और **नरेश मेहता (1922-2000 ई.)** प्रगतिशील कवियों के रूप में प्रसिद्ध रहे हैं। नरेश मेहता बिंबों का प्रयोग करने में कुशल हैं। वे प्रगतिशीलता को सौंदर्य की व्यापक भूमि पर देखने वाले कवि के रूप में विख्यात हुए थे। उनकी **समय देवता** कविता एक 'विराट गतिशील बिंब' बनाती है। बाद में वैष्णव भावना और विशिष्ट भाषा-प्रयोग की ओर उनकी रुचि बढ़ गई।

गिरिजा कुमार माथुर इंद्रिय बोध के कवि हैं। उनके अनेक गीतों में रूप-वर्णन का आकर्षक चित्रण होता रहा। उनमें संगीतात्मकता का गुण भी है। बाद में वे नई कविता और उसमें भी वैज्ञानिकता का प्रभाव लाने में अधिक व्यस्त रहे। **पृथ्वीकल्प** इसी का परिणाम है।

भवानी प्रसाद मिश्र (1914-1985 ई.) भाषा के चलतेपन और भावों के खुलेपन के कवि हैं। उनकी कविताओं के प्रभाव के विषय में उनकी वाचन-पद्धति को भूलकर सोचना कठिन है। वे स्थितियों को सहजता से संयोजित करके प्रबंधकार के ढंग से मार्मिकता पैदा करते हैं। **सतपुड़ा के जंगल** में उनकी प्रबंध-प्रतिभा की झलक मिल जाती है। उनकी काव्य भाषा सहज किंतु मार्मिक हैं।

1964 ई. में मुक्तिबोध की मृत्यु हिंदी कविता के लिए एक ऐतिहासिक घटना बन गई। मुक्तिबोध सप्तक के कवि थे, लेकिन उनका कोई काव्य संकलन नहीं छपा था। उनकी लंबी कविताओं ने बहुत कम लोगों का ध्यान आकृष्ट किया था। अंतिम बीमारी में लोगों का ध्यान उनके जीवन-संघर्ष और काव्य-संघर्ष की ओर गया। मरणासन्न स्थिति में उनका प्रथम काव्य संकलन **चाँद का मुँह टेढ़ा है** (1964) प्रकाशित हुआ। लोगों को पता चला कि मुक्तिबोध की कविताएँ स्वाधीन भारत का 'इस्पाती दस्तावेज़' हैं। मुक्तिबोध अमानवीय व्यवस्था में पनपे और प्रचलित रुग्ण सौंदर्य-बोध के स्थान पर नए मानवीय प्रगतिशील सौंदर्य-बोध का निर्माण करते हैं। मुक्तिबोध स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत में दिखाई पड़ने वाले कथनी और करनी के अंतर को नाटकीय ढंग से प्रस्तुत करते हैं। इसके लिए वे स्वप्न कथा या फैंटेसी की शैली अपनाते हैं। मुक्तिबोध को परंपरा का गहरा बोध है। वे करुणा के कवि हैं। उनकी भाषा शैली और उनका सादृश्य-विधान बिल्कुल अपना है। वे गहन अनुभूति और तीव्र इंद्रिय-बोध के कवि हैं।

चाँद का मुँह टेढ़ा है के प्रकाशन-काल के ही लगभग **धूमिल** (1936-1975 ई.) ने काव्य-रचना प्रारंभ की। धूमिल का रचनाकाल केवल एक दशक रहा होगा, लेकिन स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत में पनपी-पली अवसरवादी सुविधाजीविता के वास्तविक रूप को उद्घाटित करने की क्षमता के कारण उनकी कविताओं ने शीघ्र ही अपनी ओर लोगों का ध्यान आकृष्ट कर लिया। धूमिल की कविता का तेवर जासूसी है जो छिपे-छिपाए मानव-विरोधी व्यवहार को ताड़ लेती है। **संसद से सड़क तक, कल सुनना मुझे** और **सुदामा पांडे का प्रजातंत्र** उनके काव्य संकलन हैं।

मुक्तिबोध और धूमिल की कविताओं से हिंदी कविता में एक प्रकार से प्रगतिशील कविता की धारा व्यापक और वेगवती हुई। कविता में दिन-प्रतिदिन होने वाली घटनाओं को महत्त्व देने से अखबारीपन भी आ गया।

इसका परिणाम हुआ कि **रघुवीर सहाय** (1929-1990 ई.), **सर्वेश्वर दयाल सक्सेना** (1927-1983 ई.), **केदारनाथ सिंह** (जन्म 1934 ई.) जैसे कवि सामाजिक यथार्थ की ओर उन्मुख हुए। सामान्य से सामान्य एवं परिचित से परिचित स्थिति में कुछ ऐसा देख लेना कि वह पहली बार मार्मिक लगे, रघुवीर सहाय की अचूक क्षमता है। लेकिन इस क्षमता का उपयोग पहले वे अधिकांशतः दृश्यों या मन की गहरी परतों को उघाड़ने में ही करते थे या व्यंग्य-विनोद में। बाद में उनकी कविताएँ गहरी राजनीतिक हुई हैं।

राष्ट्रगीत में भला कौन वह भारत-भाग्य विधाता है।
फटा सुथन्ना पहने जिसका गुन हरचरना गाता है।

लगता है जैसे नागार्जुन की पंक्तियाँ हों। **रामदास** जैसी संत्रास पैदा करने वाली कविताएँ हिंदी में कम लिखी गई होंगी। इस दृश्य की अति सामान्यता देखिए और इसके प्रभाव की गहराई –

मैंने गोद में बच्चा लिए स्त्री को बस में चढ़ते देखा
और मेरे मन में दूर तक कुछ घिसटता-सा चला गया।

राजनीतिक दबाव सर्वेश्वर की **कुआनो नदी** और केदारनाथ सिंह की **यहाँ से देखो** संकलन की कविताओं में द्रष्टव्य है। **श्रीकांत वर्मा** पर भी राजनीति का दबाव देखा जा सकता है। उन्होंने राजसत्ता, इतिहास और काल बोध का संश्लेष **मगध** की कविताओं में किया है।

राजनीतिधर्मा होने से हिंदी कविता के क्षेत्र में एक महत्त्वपूर्ण बात यह हुई कि नागार्जुन, केदारनाथ अग्रवाल और त्रिलोचन की ओर नई पीढ़ी का ध्यान नए सिरे से गया और वे कवि नई पीढ़ी के लिए अत्यंत प्रासंगिक हो उठे।

आधुनिक कविता ने तुक, छंद, अलंकार आदि का मोह छोड़कर गद्यात्मकता को यथार्थ-चित्र के लिए अपनाया था। लेकिन व्यक्तिवादी कवियों ने गद्यात्मकता को अपनाकर भी उसे और अमूर्त बना दिया। नागार्जुन, केदार, त्रिलोचन अधिकांशतः छंदों और तुकों में लिखते हैं। उनके यहाँ बोध और चित्रात्मकता कभी नहीं छूटते। उनका वाक्य गठन सुव्यवस्थित रहता है। इस विषय में **त्रिलोचन** की ठेठ भाषा का ठाठ अन्यत्र दुर्लभ है। नागार्जुन ने अपना बनाया हुआ काव्य-मार्ग कभी नहीं छोड़ा। वे दोहा, मंत्र, हर गंगा, सब लिखते रहें – बिना इस बात की परवाह किए कि लोग उन्हें आधुनिक समझेंगे या

नहीं। देश अपने विविध रूपों में इन कवियों के यहाँ मौजूद हैं। इनके फिर से प्रासंगिक होने का यही रहस्य आदि हैं।

इसी काल में गीत के क्षेत्र में भी कुछ उल्लेखनीय नाम उभर कर आए जिनमें वीरेंद्र मिश्र, शंभुनाथ सिंह, रमानाथ अवस्थी, ठाकुर प्रसाद सिंह, रामदरश मिश्र, रवींद्र भ्रमर, मुकुट बिहारी सरोज, गोपालदास नीरज आदि हैं।

समकालीन हिंदी काव्यधारा में अनेक दृष्टियों के कवि एक साथ रचनारत हैं। इसमें एक ओर त्रिलोचन, नागार्जुन और केदारनाथ अग्रवाल जैसे प्रगतिशील कवि रचनारत रहे हैं तो दूसरी ओर अकविता, साठोत्तरी कविता, जनवादी कविता आदि धाराओं में बँटे कवि भी। इस काव्य युग में विभिन्न आयु वर्ग और विचारधाराओं के कवि मौजूद हैं। उनकी रचनाशीलता में काव्य-संवेदना, विषयवस्तु, शिल्प और भाषा संबंधी विविधता है जिससे समकालीन हिंदी कविता समृद्ध हुई है। ऐसे कवियों में अजित कुमार, अशोक वाजपेयी, विनोद कुमार शुक्ल, विष्णु खरे, सोमदत्त, स्नेहमयी चौधरी, कुमार विकल, लीलाधर जगूड़ी, चंद्रकांत देवताले, प्रयाग शुक्ल, ऋतुराज और भगवत रावत जैसे वरिष्ठ कवि हैं तो दूसरी ओर अरुण कमल, मंगलेश डबराल, राजेश जोशी, नरेश सक्सेना, कात्यायनी, निर्मला गर्ग, अनामिका, एकांत श्रीवास्तव, कुमार अंबुज, संजय चतुर्वेदी आदि युवा पीढ़ी के कवि भी हैं जो हिंदी काव्य संसार को नया तेवर और नया मुहावरा प्रदान कर रहे हैं।

साहित्यिक पत्र-पत्रिकाएँ

साहित्यिक पत्र-पत्रिकाएँ साहित्य का मंच हैं। उनमें साहित्य के विविध रूप ही नहीं, आंतरिक विवाद, प्रेरणा, पाठक वर्ग की प्रतिक्रिया अर्थात समूचा साहित्य एवं साहित्यकार-संसार होता है। जो साहित्य पुस्तक-रूप में नहीं आ पाता, वह भी अपने मूलरूप में पत्रिकाओं में मिल जाता है। इसीलिए उनके संरक्षण की आवश्यकता अनुभव की जाती है। हिंदी के विविध आंदोलन और साहित्यिक प्रवृत्तियों को उद्भूत एवं सक्रिय करने में पत्रिकाओं की अग्रणी भूमिका रही है। **हरिश्चंद्र चंद्रिका, कविवचन सुधा, सरस्वती, हिंदी प्रदीप, मतवाला, विशाल भारत, हंस, रूपाभ** का नाम अपने-अपने समय की साहित्यिक प्रवृत्ति और युग से जुड़ा है। हिंदी साहित्य की सर्जना और बोध की प्रक्रिया इन पत्रिकाओं के माध्यम से ही संचालित और अभिव्यक्त हुई।

स्वातंत्र्योत्तर भारत में **हंस**, **प्रतीक**, **कल्पना**, **वसुधा**, **नई कविता**, **ज्ञानोदय** ने साहित्य को विकसित एवं प्रचारित करने में महत्त्वपूर्ण भूमिका निभाई। स्वातंत्र्योत्तर युग की साहित्यिक पत्रिकाओं के संपादन के क्षेत्र में महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी जैसी परंपरा का पालन यदि किसी साहित्यकार ने किया है तो भैरवप्रसाद गुप्त ने। उन्होंने **कहानी और नई कहानियाँ** के माध्यम से हिंदी कहानी के विकास में ऐतिहासिक योगदान किया।

कालांतर में हिंदी में लघु पत्रिकाओं का आंदोलन चला। उसका कारण यह है कि हिंदी की पत्रिकाएँ भी पूँजीपतियों के कब्ज़े में आ गईं। लघु पत्रिकाएँ प्रायः प्रगतिशील साहित्यकारों ने निकालीं। यदि लघु पत्रिका कोई पत्रकारिता आंदोलन था तो इसके प्रवर्तन का श्रेय श्री विष्णु चंद्र शर्मा को मिलना चाहिए। उन्होंने सन 1958 में काशी से **कवि** नामक पत्रिका प्रकाशित-संपादित की। इसका साहित्यिक स्तर ऊँचा था। **दस्तावेज़**, **पहल**, **अब**, **उत्तरशती**, **उत्तरार्द्ध**, **कथन**, **कथादेश**, **वागार्थ**, **तद्भव**, **कल के लिए**, **सर्वनाम** आदि कुछ अन्य महत्त्वपूर्ण साहित्यिक पत्रिकाएँ हैं जो समकालीन हिंदी रचनाशीलता को विकसित और प्रोत्साहित कर रही हैं।

इधर **आलोचना** नामक प्रसिद्ध समीक्षा पत्रिका डॉ. नामवर सिंह के संपादन में फिर से प्रकाशित होने लगी। इसके प्रथम संपादक **श्री शिवदान सिंह चौहान** थे। समीक्षा की ही एक अन्य पत्रिका– **समालोचक** डॉ. रामविलास शर्मा के संपादन में आगरा से कुछ दिनों तक निकलती रही।

सरकार भी साहित्य को प्रोत्साहन देने और उसका प्रचार करने के उद्देश्य से कुछ साहित्यिक पत्रिकाएँ निकाल रही हैं। इनमें **आजकल** प्रमुख है। इधर मध्य प्रदेश सरकार सांस्कृतिक गतिविधियों के क्षेत्र में सक्रिय हुई है। भोपाल से **पूर्वग्रह** और **साक्षात्कार** नामक स्तरीय पत्रिकाएँ प्रकाशित हो रही हैं। साहित्य अकादमी की ओर से सभी भारतीय भाषाओं के साहित्य को हिंदी में प्रस्तुत करने वाली पत्रिका **समकालीन भारतीय साहित्य** प्रकाशित हो रही है। हिंदी साहित्य सम्मेलन से **सम्मेलन-पत्रिका** और **माध्यम**, नागरीप्रचारिणी सभा की ओर से **नागरीप्रचारिणी पत्रिका** भी प्रकाशित हो रही है। **हंस** राजेंद्र यादव के संपादन में पुनः प्रकाशित हो रहा है।

ज्ञान का साहित्य

स्वाधीन भारत में हिंदी में ज्ञान-विज्ञान के साहित्य का विकास हो रहा है। आचार्य महावीर प्रसाद द्विवेदी ने **सरस्वती** के माध्यम से यह काम 1900 ई. के आस-पास ही प्रारंभ कर दिया था। इस युग में राहुल सांकृत्यायन, आचार्य नरेंद्र देव, डॉ. रामविलास शर्मा, डॉ. भरत सिंह उपाध्याय, जयंत विष्णु नार्लीकर, गुणाकर मुले आदि ने विशेष कार्य किया है। आचार्य नरेंद्र देव, डा. लोहिया ने प्राचीन भारतीय साहित्य और संस्कृति पर, डॉ. रामविलास शर्मा ने भारतीय भाषाओं, मार्क्सवाद और भारतीय राजनीति पर और डॉ. भरत सिंह उपाध्याय ने बुद्ध कालीन भारतीय भूगोल पर अत्यंत परिश्रमपूर्वक अनुंसधान किया। राहुल जी का इस क्षेत्र में सर्वाधिक योगदान रहा। उन्होंने मध्य एशिया, नेपाल और तिब्बत का इतिहास लिखा। विज्ञान और भारतीय भाषाओं के क्षेत्र में भी उनका महत्त्वपूर्ण योगदान है। पं. किशोरीदास वाजपेयी का **हिंदी शब्दानुशासन** इस दृष्टि से विशेष उल्लेखनीय है। इस क्षेत्र में अनेक सरकारी, अर्ध सरकारी संस्थाएँ भी कार्यरत हैं। नागरीप्रचारिणी सभा (काशी), हिंदी साहित्य सम्मेलन (प्रयाग), विज्ञान परिषद् (प्रयाग), बिहार राष्ट्र भाषा परिषद् आदि ने इस क्षेत्र में सराहनीय कार्य किया है। राजस्थान हिंदी ग्रंथ अकादमी और हरियाणा साहित्य अकादमी भी इस क्षेत्र में सक्रिय हैं। प्रायः सभी मंत्रालयों में हिंदी एकक स्थापित हैं जो सरकारी कामकाज का हिंदी अनुवाद करते हैं। केंद्र में भी अनुवाद ब्यूरो स्थापित है। हिंदी समिति उत्तर प्रदेश आदि ने ज्ञान-विज्ञान से संबद्ध अनेक महत्त्वपूर्ण पुस्तकों का हिंदी में अनुवाद कराया है।

उपसंहार

हिंदी साहित्य का इतिहास लगभग 1000 वर्ष पुराना है। यह प्रारंभ से ही अनेक प्रवृत्तियों का समुच्चय रहा है और इसमें अनेक मत-मतांतरों की वाणी अभिव्यक्त हुई है। हिंदी साहित्य के आदि कालीन साहित्य में ही वीरगाथाओं के साथ-साथ नाथ-सिद्धों, जैन-मुनियों और विष्णु के अवतारों की लीला से संबंधित रचनाएँ मिलती हैं। इसी काल में अब्दुल रहमान या अद्दहमाण नामक कवि की रचना भी मिली। हिंदी साहित्य अपने प्रारंभिक काल से ही व्यापक और बहुलतावादी दृष्टि का प्रतीक रहा है। कहना न होगा कि हिंदी साहित्य अपनी भौगोलिक विशालता और भाषा की विविधता की सक्षम अभिव्यक्ति है। विशालता एवं बोलियों की विविधता के बावजूद उसमें वह केंद्रोन्मुखता भी है जो उसे विशिष्टता प्रदान करती है।

भक्ति काल को हिंदी साहित्य के इतिहास का 'स्वर्ण काल' कहा जाता है। हिंदी साहित्य के बारे में जिस व्यापकता की बात कही गई है उसका सर्वोत्तम निदर्शन भक्ति काल में होता है। भक्ति काव्य में हिंदी भाषी क्षेत्र की भावना भक्ति का सहारा लेकर मानो ऊँच-नीच की सारी असमानता-विषमता दूर करने का रचनात्मक प्रयास कर रही थी। कबीर का शून्य-सरोवर, सूर का रास-मंडल और तुलसी का राम-राज्य आध्यात्मिक पद तो हैं ही, वे सर्व सुखद मानवीय स्वप्न भी हैं। हिंदी का भक्ति साहित्य हिंदी जाति का उदात्त, महान रचना-लोक है जो आज भी प्रासंगिक एवं प्रेरणाप्रद है। भक्ति-साहित्य ने हिंदी को कबीर, नानक, जायसी, सूर, तुलसी, मीरा जैसे रचनाकार दिए जिनके कारण वह संसार के समृद्ध से समृद्ध भाषा-साहित्य के साथ स्वाभिमानपूर्वक खड़ा हो सकता है।

रीति कालीन साहित्य का प्रधान स्वर शृंगार का है। इसी शृंगार में भक्ति भी लिपटी है। इस काल का संपूर्ण साहित्य दरबारी नहीं है। वस्तुतः अनेक दरबारी कवियों ने भी

कवियों की दरबारी प्रवृत्ति की आलोचना की है। रीति काल के साहित्य में सामान्य लोक जीवन के गार्हस्थिक रहन-सहन का सजीव चित्रण मिलता है। रीतिमुक्त कवियों ने निश्छल, सहज प्रेमभावना की मार्मिक अभिव्यक्ति की है। घनानंद, आलम, बोधा, ठाकुर ने उत्कृष्ट कोटि की ऐसी रचनाएँ की हैं जो आज के सहृदय पाठक को भी आनंद देती हैं। रीति कालीन कवियों में भूषण अपनी वीरतापरक रचनाओं के चलते विशिष्ट हैं तो बिहारी 'गागर में सागर भरने' की क्षमता के कारण।

नवजागरण आधुनिक युग के प्रवर्तन का आधार है। हिंदी साहित्य में आधुनिकता के प्रवर्तक भारतेंदु हैं। उन्होंने साहित्य में सामाजिक यथार्थ की चेतना का नए सिरे से समावेश किया। भारतेंदु युग में निबंध जैसी नई विधा का सूत्रपात हुआ और लोक प्रचलित नाट्य-रूपों से मिलते-जुलते व्यंग्यधर्मी नाटकों का प्रचलन हुआ। द्विवेदी युग में भाषा के मानकीकरण एवं नए ज्ञान-विज्ञान से हिंदी साहित्य को समृद्ध करने पर बल दिया गया। ब्रजभाषा के स्थान पर खड़ी बोली काव्य भाषा के रूप में प्रतिष्ठित हुई।

गांधी युग प्रधानतः स्वाधीनता प्राप्ति के लिए राजनीतिक संघर्ष का युग है किंतु उसका प्रभाव हिंदी क्षेत्र की सांस्कृतिक चेतना पर भी पड़ा। यह युग वस्तुतः यथार्थ-चित्रण और स्वप्निल कल्पना का युग है। इसमें एक ओर प्रेमचंद का यथार्थवादी लेखन है तो इसी के साथ छायावादी स्वप्न-लोक भी। कुल मिलाकर इस युग का साहित्य लोक-शक्ति की साधना का साहित्य है। उस साधना का जिसकी सिद्धि स्वाधीनता-प्राप्ति के रूप में हुई। स्वाधीनता-प्राप्ति के बाद पंचवर्षीय योजनाओं और आम चुनाव से भारतीय समाज, विशेषतः ग्रामीण-समाज की स्थिर-एकरसता टूटने लगी। शिक्षित युवक रोज़गार के लिए देहात छोड़कर नगरों, महानगरों में बसने लगे। इससे एक ओर तो अतीत की स्मृति की कचोट पर आधारित आंचलिक प्रवृत्ति आई तथा दूसरी ओर संयुक्त परिवार के टूटने की प्रक्रिया से नगरों, महानगरों के युवकों में एक प्रकार के अलगाव और अजनबीपन की भावना उभरी। स्वाधीनता-प्राप्ति के बाद जो आशाएँ-आकांक्षाएँ उभरी थीं, उनकी पूर्ति न होने से निराशा और मोहभंग का भाव भी दिखाई पड़ा। इसके विपरीत शिक्षा के प्रसार और आरक्षण की नीति से दलित-चेतना एवं नारी-चेतना का उभार दिखलाई पड़ने लगा। उधर भूमंडलीकरण और उत्तर आधुनिकता का दबाव भी किसी न किसी रूप में दिखलाई पड़ रहा है। यह दबाव चिंतन पर ज़्यादा है, साहित्य सर्जना पर कम। साहित्य-सस्कृति को व्यवसाय बनाने वाली शक्तियाँ अवश्य इस स्थिति से लाभ उठाने की ताक में है।

हिंदी साहित्य की सुदीर्घ परंपरा है। वह विशाल जनगण की आशाओं एवं आकांक्षाओं का जीवंत प्रमाण है और हिंदी भाषी जनता के सुख-दुख और निरंतर बेहतर लक्ष्य प्राप्ति के लिए संघर्षशील जनता के मनोजगत का रचनात्मक आलेख। हिंदी साहित्य अपनी मानवतावादी परंपरा का विकास करने की प्रक्रिया में आज भी संलग्न है।

प्रश्न-अभ्यास

आदि काल

1. आदि काल के नामकरण और कालावधि पर प्रकाश डालिए।
2. आदि काल के प्रमुख पाँच कवियों का संक्षिप्त परिचय दीजिए।
3. आदि कालीन साहित्य की प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियों पर प्रकाश डालिए।
4. आदि काल को वीरगाथा काल क्यों कहा गया? वीरगाथात्मक साहित्य की प्रमुख विशेषताएँ स्पष्ट कीजिए।
5. निम्नलिखित पर संक्षिप्त टिप्पणी लिखिए –
   सिद्ध साहित्य, नाथ साहित्य, जैन साहित्य, वैष्णव काव्य
6. 'अ' वर्ग में दिए गए रचनाकारों की रचनाएँ 'ब' वर्ग से छाँटिए –

अ	ब
1. नरपति नाल्ह	1. कीर्तिलता
2. जगनिक	2. विजयपाल रासो
3. नल्लसिंह	3. बीसलदेव रासो
4. विद्यापति	4. पृथ्वीराज रासो
5. चंदबरदाई	5. परमाल रासो

भक्ति काल

1. भक्ति आंदोलन की सामाजिक पृष्ठभूमि पर प्रकाश डालिए।
2. भक्ति के प्रमुख संप्रदायों का परिचय दीजिए।
3. संतकाव्य को ज्ञानमार्गी भक्तिकाव्य क्यों कहा गया? इसकी प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियों का उल्लेख कीजिए।
4. निर्गुण प्रेमाश्रयी काव्यधारा का आशय स्पष्ट करते हुए इसकी प्रमुख विशेषताएँ बताइए।

5. सगुण भक्तिकाव्य की प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियों पर प्रकाश डालिए।
6. निर्गुण भक्तिकाव्य एवं सगुण भक्तिकाव्य में अंतर स्पष्ट कीजिए।
7. निम्नलिखित पर संक्षिप्त टिप्पणी लिखिए –
   तुलसीदास, सूरदास, कबीर, जायसी, मीराबाई, रसखान, रहीम
8. रामभक्ति काव्य की प्रमुख विशेषताएँ बताते हुए दो प्रमुख कवियों का संक्षिप्त परिचय दीजिए।
9. कृष्णभक्ति काव्य की प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियों पर प्रकाश डालिए।
10. भक्ति काल को हिंदी साहित्य का 'स्वर्ण युग' क्यों कहा जाता है?

रीति काल

1. रीति काल की पृष्ठभूमि पर प्रकाश डालिए।
2. 'रीति कालीन कविता का प्रधान स्वर शृंगार का है' – इस कथन की तर्कसम्मत पुष्टि करते हुए रीति कालीन साहित्य की प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियाँ बताइए।
3. रीतिबद्ध काव्यधारा का आशय स्पष्ट करते हुए प्रमुख दो कवियों का परिचय दीजिए।
4. रीतिबद्ध एवं रीतिमुक्त काव्यधारा का अंतर स्पष्ट कीजिए।
5. रीतिमुक्त काव्य का क्या आशय है? इसकी प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियाँ बताइए।
6. रीति काल में शृंगार के अतिरिक्त कौन-कौन सी प्रवृत्तियाँ पाई जाती हैं?
7. निम्नलिखित पर संक्षिप्त टिप्पणी लिखिए –
   रीतिसिद्ध काव्यधारा, घनानंद, मतिराम, भूषण

आधुनिक काल

1. खड़ी बोली गद्य के विकास की परंपरा का संक्षिप्त परिचय दीजिए।
2. भारतेंदु युगीन साहित्य की पृष्ठभूमि पर प्रकाश डालते हुए इस युग के साहित्य की प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियाँ बताइए।
3. द्विवेदी युग को भारतेंदु युगीन चेतना के विकास का युग क्यों कहा जाता है?
4. भारतेंदु युगीन कविता की प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियाँ बताइए।
5. द्विवेदी युगीन गद्य की प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियों पर प्रकाश डालिए।
6. द्विवेदी युगीन कविता की प्रमुख विशेषताएँ स्पष्ट करते हुए दो प्रमुख कवियों का संक्षिप्त परिचय दीजिए।
7. गांधी युग के साहित्य को यथार्थ और स्वप्न की अभिव्यक्ति कहना कहाँ तक उचित है? तर्कसम्मत उत्तर दीजिए।
8. प्रेमचद के समकालीन प्रमुख कथाकारों तथा उनकी प्रमुख कृतियों का परिचय दीजिए।

कहा जाता है? छायावादी काव्य की प्रमुख

प्रमुख आधार स्तंभों के नाम बताइए तथा उनका संक्षिप्त परिचय दीजिए।

11. प्रगतिवाद से क्या तात्पर्य है? प्रगतिवादी काव्य की प्रमुख प्रवृत्तियाँ स्पष्ट कीजिए।
12. प्रगतिवाद और प्रयोगवाद का अंतर स्पष्ट कीजिए।
13. प्रयोगवादी काव्य की प्रमुख विशेषताएँ बताइए।
14. नई कविता की प्रमुख विशेषताओं का निरूपण कीजिए।
15. प्रमुख प्रगतिशील कवियों का संक्षिप्त परिचय दीजिए।
16. स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी उपन्यास की विकास यात्रा का संक्षिप्त वर्णन कीजिए।
17. 'नई कहानी' का संक्षिप्त परिचय दीजिए।
18. 'स्वातंत्र्योत्तर हिंदी कहानियों में शिक्षित और नौकरी प्राप्त नारियाँ भी कहानी का पात्र बनने लगी' – इस कथन की युक्तियुक्त समीक्षा कीजिए।
19. 'यदि गद्य कवियों की कसौटी है तो निबंध गद्य की कसौटी' - इस कथन को ध्यान में रखते हुए हिंदी निबंध साहित्य की प्रमुख विशेषताओं का उल्लेख कीजिए।
20. निम्नलिखित पर संक्षिप्त टिप्पणी लिखिए –
    रिपोर्ताज, रेखाचित्र, संस्मरण, यात्रा-वृत्तांत, जीवनी, पत्र-पत्रिकाएँ।

subjects, e.g. for certain forms of Craft work or for practical Science. The Head Teacher, with a fixed staff at his disposal, has to consider whether or not the gain is neutralised by large classes elsewhere. For example, to send a small party of children on a School Journey in charge of several teachers may be excellent in itself. Care should, however, be taken that the sacrifice of the other work is not too great. If " remainders " have to be grouped in consequence the value of the journey from the point of view of the school as a whole may be diminished. Staffing in other words should not be unduly concentrated on a few children in order to introduce special subjects. If, for example, only a few children are ready for a foreign language, it may be unwise to introduce it, especially if the group has to be drawn from several classes.

40. Organisation by " streams " and the problem of the dull child.—Organisation by " streams " has one serious danger. Many children of less intelligence before they enter the Senior School, will have been taught in classes with children brighter than themselves, and their relative failure, especially with the academic subjects, may already have impressed upon them a sense of their inferiority. It will be one of the main tasks of the senior school to counteract this. Something may be done to avoid the suggestion of inferiority by giving the " C " classes an attractive name, or by numbering all classes in order. Every effort should be made to find some pursuits in which the less intelligent children can excel, and to assign them responsible duties that they are able to carry out. What is far more important, however, is that the staff should regard the training of these children as at least as important as that of their more gifted schoolmates. To turn such children into contented and useful citizens is not only a more difficult task but it is at least as important. In the past

when schools were so organised that these children could not receive the special attention that they need, they too often left school lacking in self-respect and with a sense of inferiority fixed upon them It is a sufficient comment on this fact that the great majority of those who have come in conflict with the law after leaving school were originally what we now call " C " children. Further the " C " class besides being difficult to teach commonly has a wider range of ability than the " B ", and usually a wider range than the " A ", class. This is a strong argument for making it smaller.

41. The problem of the " leavers."—Groups of children in their last year at school present special difficulties. There are a few schools where the majority of an " A " stream, often encouraged by a course which is made specially attractive in the last term, will complete a three or four years' course. More often children leave term by term, so that the leavers' groups fall in numbers. The importance in these cases of providing self-contained terminal syllabuses, so that each child's course may be complete in itself, is dealt with elsewhere. The fact that there are smaller groups at the end of the educational year makes it possible to conduct the work on individual lines, to make special provision for the choice of occupations for future leisure, and to make a special effort to form a habit of self-direction in work and recreation before leaving school. Though the leavers' groups will be small it is obviously difficult to reduce their number without sacrificing the main principle on which the senior school is organised—differentiation of curriculum.

42. Staffing should be stable.—The most suitable staff for a Senior School cannot be determined solely on the basis of numbers on roll. It should as far as possible be stable throughout the educational year. The Head Teacher should be in a position to plan his organisation at the beginning of the year. If normal

fluctuations in numbers are allowed to influence the staffing it is very difficult for him to maintain a steady policy, and the advantages of "stream" classification are apt to be lost. Considerations that should be borne in mind in fixing the size of a staff are the need for leaving some margin over the bare minimum necessary to teach the ordinary classes so that organisation may be flexible, the desirability of occasionally forming small groups for special purposes, and the need for keeping within bounds the amount of out of school preparation and correction expected of each assistant.

Something can be done to economise staff and make organisation more flexible if the Head Teacher, where he has no class of his own, arranges his teaching so that someone else will be set free as a matter of course. Occasional relief will be given by the grouping of classes for special purposes, e.g. a wireless lesson, as described in the General Introduction.

43. Teachers with special qualifications.—The staff must include a number of teachers with special qualifications and interests and should be so well balanced that the more important educational requirements can be fully met. This is only possible, especially in small schools, if the requirements are carefully thought out and borne in mind whenever a new appointment is made. It is most important that the staff should not be merely thought of in terms of number and that the Head Teacher should be consulted before vacancies are filled.

44. The work of the specialist teacher.—The arguments for and against specialisation are set out in the General Introduction. The Head Teacher of a Senior School will naturally have to consider this problem in the light of the special abilities and tastes of his staff. He will bear in mind that while specialist knowledge and skill may be particularly valuable in the "A" classes knowledge of and sympathy with children are even more

important in the "C" classes; that while the specialist need not and often cannot cope with most of the teaching in his subject he may be especially valuable in laying down a policy, drawing up a syllabus, deciding on equipment, etc.; that if the staff includes an experienced teacher with special qualifications, some use should if possible be made for them, though it may be unwise to make him a specialist in the ordinary sense; that it is in the long run just as bad or worse to confine a teacher for a long period to a single subject as to a single class; that change of work and the assigning of special responsibility often have surprisingly good results. Many valuable specialist teachers owe their success to the fact that they set out to improve their qualifications for a task which in the first instance was arbitrarily assigned to them.

45. Devolution of authority.—The problem of specialisation is really part of the much wider problem of devolution of responsibility. While the head of any large organisation must ultimately be responsible for the whole of it, his success will largely depend on the wisdom with which he assigns responsibility to others. The school in which the Head Teacher does little else but organise and the staff little else but teach is probably not managed in the best way. In large Mixed Schools it is customary to appoint a Senior Mistress who is responsible for the discipline and general welfare of the girls.

V. THE ASSESSMENT OF RESULTS IN THE SENIOR SCHOOL

46. The Head Teacher's need of a clear criterion in internal examinations and tests.—Teachers and taught alike welcome the chance of testing their work from time to time, so as to find out how they stand. The problems of the internal examination have already been discussed in Chapter I, to which the reader is

referred for more detailed suggestions. It is only necessary to emphasise here that much of the work of the Senior School is difficult to assess. If tests are confined to what is measurable, what is not measurable tends to be neglected. In Art and Craft, in wide reading of Literature, in the working-out of practical topics in Mathematics the tangible results are not the only ones that matter; what is important in such work is the quality of the experience that lies behind it and this can hardly be summed up in quantitative terms. One cannot give marks for an attitude of mind. None the less the Head Teacher will wish to assure himself that such activities have been worth while; he should have definite ideas of the results that may be expected, and when these cannot be measured he must have some clear criterion by which to judge if they have been well done. Where he has to rely in the last resort on personal impression, he will make clear the evidence—often only unconsciously recognised—on which the impression has been formed.

47. The advantages of freedom from external examinations.—The Senior School is still in the experimental stage and will remain so for some time to come. It is therefore unwise to introduce outside influences in the shape of external examinations that would almost certainly tend to stereotype methods and curriculum and to cramp the initiative of the teachers and the independent development of the school. Success in an outside examination does indeed give children a sense of achievement, in itself desirable; but it is a confession of failure to suggest that they cannot get full satisfaction from the normal work of the school. In any case the number of children who can be presented for such examinations is small. The proper aim is to make sure that every child, whatever his ability, shall leave school with the sense that he has completed something that has

been worth the doing. If the work is organised so that children can see the beginning and end of each unit of the course and comprehend it as a whole, then the completion of each such unit can provide them with the consciousness of a job well done. It is within the discretion of the Head Teacher to frame his own leaving examination on the results of which a leaving certificate may be awarded ; the value of this will depend largely on the local prestige of the particular school.

48. The importance of teaching things that will endure after school life is finished.—To a great majority of its pupils the Senior School is the last stage of school life. Those who are in charge of it cannot evade the insistent question whether the school is fostering the knowledge, habits, interests and attitudes of mind which the child needs in order to pursue an almost independent course through the years that separate him from the full status of citizenship and to serve him in good stead when he attains that status. If the children have lived a full life in the earlier stages of education and have come up to the Senior School fresh and unsated, they may find it a pleasant and satisfying place and yet be unprepared for the final wrench from its shelter and its associations. No small part of the training of the school must be directed towards emancipating its pupils, and ensuring that they shall carry forward into adolescence as many as possible of the interests and activities that they have pursued at school. When school life is over, only those activities will endure which have acquired a sufficient momentum through a long period of self-direction and independence and have been drawn, as it were, into the main stream of the children's own lasting interests. This survival is worth securing even at the cost of curtailing the traditional school activities or of modifying them to suit the genius of the locality or of the teachers.

The real value of a school, then, must be judged by its lasting effects upon the children rather than by their attainments at the time of leaving school, important though these attainments are as evidence of abilities put to good use. Knowledge gained in school studies is bound to fade from the memory if it is not kept fresh by constant use, and skills inevitably diminish when opportunities for practice are withdrawn. But if, within the fields of learning and activity to which the school has introduced them, the children have come to know and to care for things of real worth, if they have formed habits of honest endeavour and have known the joy of worthy achievement in the exercise of such talents as they possess, then one may hope that they will continue to use well and wisely the gifts with which the school has endowed them. The children who leave our Elementary Schools at the age of 14 or 15 will have their part to play in shaping the society of the future. All the natural propensities of mankind that make for the ordered development of society will have germinated and made some progress towards maturity before school life is over. It is for the School to see that free conditions of growth and exercise are provided for those qualities of mind and heart which make for individual excellence and the common good.

PART III

PREFACE

THE VARIOUS SUBJECTS OF INSTRUCTION

1. Unity of the curriculum.—In this part of the present Handbook the main divisions of the curriculum, —commonly known as " subjects," though some might more appropriately be called " activities,"—are dealt with separately. It is true enough that education should be thought of as a unity and not in terms of individual subjects, and certainly it is not possible to divide the curriculum into self-contained compartments any more than it is to divide the mind of a child into separate faculties. " Subjects " are no more than aspects of a many-sided training ; but, so long as this is borne in mind, it is convenient to deal with them in detail one by one and to show how the ever-widening curriculum of the Senior School contains nothing that is not begun at the Nursery and Infant School stage and continued in the Junior School. The curriculum, in fact, may be likened to a fan, each leaf of which has its origin in the activities of the youngest children.

2. Valuable forms of school training that do not appear in a list of " subjects ".—It must not be supposed that the chapters which follow can deal with the whole of what is learnt in school. They cannot deal, for instance, with the valuable training that is given through the social life and daily routine of the school, and the personal influence of the teachers, or with the religious teaching which most people will agree has a powerful effect on life and character. Again, there are a number of activities which do not belong specifically to particular subjects, but involve the application of several subjects to one piece of work, and are all the more valuable on that account. Examples

of such activities—to which it would be not inappropriate to apply the term "project,"—are the production of a play, the making and use of model theatres and puppets, school entertainments of various kinds, or a school magazine.

3. The "Three Rs".—Finally what are still called the "Three Rs" are not dealt with specifically. That is not to say that they are less important than they were or that any school should be content with a low standard in them. It is rather that they are best regarded as forms of skill, as means to further ends, and are best acquired in close connexion with the other subjects or activities.

4. How "subjects" may be classified in groups.—The subjects which constitute the normal curriculum of the Elementary School are so intimately related one to another, both in actual content and in the sort of training they provide, that no hard and fast classification is possible. Indeed, it will be found in several parts of this Handbook that they are grouped differently for different purposes.

In the following brief summary the grouping--which is in no way intended to indicate any order of relative importance,—is based partly on the natural interests to which the different subjects appeal and partly on the extent to which they involve abstract thought.

(*a*) *The physical side of school training.*—Bodily health and bodily control depend to no small extent on home environment, but the school can do much to further them through the knowledge and practice of hygiene, through attention to good posture, and through physical training, organised games and the various forms of dancing.

(*b*) *Expression through various forms of art.*—The natural tendency to express through outward form

and satisfying arrangement ideas that are especially interesting or moving finds its outlet in the arts, whether creative or interpretative. The arts most commonly practised in school—and none should be without its effect in awakening the sense of beauty—are rhythmic movement, music, painting, drawing and modelling, decorative work of various kinds, dramatisation, recitation, verse speaking, reading aloud, and the writing of verse and some kinds of prose composition.

(c) *The crafts.*—The crafts, which appear to originate from an instinct to construct, are closely associated with some of the arts, in that good craftsmanship involves as well as manual skill the use of satisfying form, colour, and design. This is particularly true of such of the traditional crafts as it is possible to teach in the practical work rooms of the Elementary School.

(d) *Housecraft and gardening.*—The domestic arts, which aim at the making of healthy and satisfying home life, and gardening, especially now that more attention is given to other than its purely utilitarian aspects, partake of the nature of crafts. It is easy to see how both of these can profit by association with the arts.

(e) *English.*—Practice in the understanding and use of English occurs, for good or ill, almost continuously throughout the school day. It is almost exclusively through language that teaching is carried on, and the teacher's success depends in no small degree on the clearness and precision with which he expresses himself and the extent to which his words are understood. Thus English, whether it is regarded as the art of receiving and conveying ideas through the spoken or the written word, or as the means of forming ideas, that is to say, as the instrument of thought, is something much wider than a subject that can be confined to set periods of the school time-table.

(*f*) *Foreign languages.*—Where a foreign language is taken, its study in the Elementary School may be regarded partly as an indirect way of providing the children with increased skill in the use of their own language and partly as one of the humanities.

(*g*) *The study of humanity.*—The three subjects through which, in particular, children learn something which they cannot learn by direct experience about human beings, how they feel, think and act under various conditions, their hard struggle along the road of progress, their relations to their environment, and the relations of one community to another, are Literature, History and Geography.

(*h*) *The sciences.*—The last named of these three has much in common with the Sciences, which arise out of the study of nature, whether animate or inanimate, and of some of the works of man, and are concerned with a number of general principles and with methods of reasoning and discovery.

(*i*) *Mathematics.*—Arithmetic in its elementary form is no doubt a skill, of value in so far as it serves certain very practical everyday needs; but it is also part of the wider field of Mathematics, the study of ideas of number, time and space, that are of great importance in the world of science.

CHAPTER V

HEALTH AND PHYSICAL TRAINING

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. HEALTH EDUCATION

1. The importance of forming healthy habits.—In view of the publication by the Board in 1933 of the *Handbook of Suggestions on Health Education** it is not necessary here to do more than mention a few simple principles upon which its recommendations are based. Primarily, of course, health is healthy living and not a subject to be taught. Children are far more likely to acquire habits of healthy living through being trained to perform the actions upon which health depends than through merely receiving instruction which is mainly theoretical in character. Left to themselves, young children will not perform these acts by the light of nature. They require to be initiated into a life of health. They should accordingly be required to perform certain actions as a matter of regular routine: for example, the use of the handkerchief, the necessary attention to clothing before and after physical exercise, the care of the feet, hygiene relating to the use of swimming baths and the ventilation of classrooms, etc. Older children will be interested to know the reason

* Issued by the Board of Education, printed and published by H.M. Stationery Office, London, price 6d.

for such practices and the teacher should satisfy their reasonable curiosity Anything in the way of ambitious instruction in anatomy and physiology should however be avoided.

2. Some mistakes to be avoided.—It is fatal to the formation of healthy habits and the creation in the pupil's mind of the right attitude towards health to attempt to separate theory from practice. Against two mistakes, in particular, it is necessary for the teacher to be on his guard. One mistake is to regard the treatment of health as a separate subject of the curriculum. The fact is that health education is naturally and intimately connected with physical training, housecraft, and natural science, particularly in its biological aspect. It can no less profitably be linked up with other subjects, such as geography and history. There are, for instance, few more interesting themes than the effect on the settlement and development of the Empire of the great discoveries in tropical medicine or the influence of great epidemics on the social, the industrial and the political progress of the nation. The other mistake is to fail to relate instruction in health to the habits of the individual and the needs of the community The practice and study of health must form, from the first, part of the everyday life of the school. Only so will health education come to be connected in the mind of the child not only with duties to his comrades, his school and his home, but also with the welfare and happiness of the nation at large.

II. PHYSICAL TRAINING

A. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

3. The place of Physical Training in the school curriculum.—During the period of growth it is essential that children should have frequent opportunity for bodily activity. For them, as for any other young animals, free

and active movement is as necessary for health and development as are fresh air, sunshine, pure water, suitable food and ample sleep. Games and other physical activities provide a necessary outlet for the natural impulses of children and the real but easy discipline associated with them is one of the best means of training in self-management. Physical training helps children to build up strong, beautiful and graceful bodies and to keep them fit. It is probable, too, that the development of the brain itself is to a considerable extent connected with bodily activity. This, certainly, seems to be true of young children and there is reason to believe that it is true also of backward children at a later age.

Qualities, also, that are desirable in the future citizen —self control, self respect, courage, decision, good temper and a sense of well being—are promoted when the body as well as the mind is rightly educated. Moreover, in so far as many forms of physical activity call for combined effort and prompt co-operation on the part of a number of individuals, they are of value to the community in promoting and fostering a healthy public spirit.

Opportunity for such training must be given by the school, for it must be remembered that all children, even those brought up under healthy conditions with opportunities for play and bodily exercise, spend in sedentary work at school the best hours of the day,—hours when light and sun are strongest and when their potential energy is at its greatest. Circumstances in the home life of many children diminish their chances of making their bodies strong and healthy, and the school must therefore afford them every opportunity it can for full development. The child of sub-normal health is sent to the open-air school and enjoys there the special advantages of sunshine, fresh air and space for free exercise unhampered by superfluous clothing. It is

just as important to provide adequate facilities for the healthy development of the normal child who is the more able to take advantage of them.

4. Facilities needed for a satisfactory course.—The first essential for carrying out a comprehensive scheme of physical training is a suitable place in which to exercise and play games. Practically all schools have playgrounds though unfortunately many are ill-adapted for this purpose. The question of indoor accommodation is important and a gymnasium or physical training room is a necessity, if the modern type of training is to be properly carried out. There are many days in the year when outdoor lessons are impossible, and when, in many schools, classroom lessons, though obviously a makeshift, are the only alternative. Preparatory training in games can be given in a playground but full enjoyment and the acquisition of real skill in games and athletics are only fully obtainable, by senior boys and girls in particular, when regular use is made of a playing field. Children in schools which have only hard-surfaced playgrounds are debarred from some of the best and most advanced games.

To carry out the scheme of physical exercises and games given in the 1933 Syllabus a certain amount of inexpensive apparatus is required. The training in schools has suffered considerably in the past from lack of apparatus and until sufficient is provided and is used regularly in every lesson, progress will be slow.

The provision of a daily period of organised activity is most important and should be the aim of all schools dealing with children from 7 to 14 years or over. Schools which make such provision find that the loss of working time is amply compensated for by the more effective use the children make of the remaining time devoted to ordinary school work. The principle of " the daily period " should be observed even in schools where,

as in many Senior Schools, the older children are able to follow a more advanced scheme of gymnastic training, which demands a longer lesson period. When the longer period can be arranged on some days only in the week, on each of the other days there should be a shorter and vigorous lesson of not less than 20 minutes. Such an arrangement will do much to ensure that the general vigour, alertness and vitality of the children, which the training is intended to produce, lasts throughout the day and that good posture is maintained.

5. Clothing and Footwear.—In view of the emphasis which the modern practice of physical training places on agility and freedom of movement, it is important that children should be suitably clad and shod when taking part in physical exercise and games. As few clothes as possible should be worn, for reasons of hygiene as well as to allow of unhampered movement. The dress worn should be light and loose, and it is important, too, that it should not hide the outline of the body, or else bad faults of posture may be disguised.

Fortunately, more rational views have been taken in recent years of clothing in general and successful efforts have been made by teachers and others to secure that a more suitable type of dress is worn by children. In some areas singlets and shorts or even shorts alone for boys, and for girls knickers and blouse, or a simple one-piece dress allowing of free movement, have been adopted as the normal dress for physical exercise lessons and games. Changes of dress necessary for such purposes should be made before the children go out into the playground or playing field. The way in which children dress for their physical training—and this does not necessarily depend on cost, except perhaps for footwear,—is an indication of the value attached to it by a school and not infrequently of what may be expected in actual performance.

In an increasing number of schools the teachers responsible for Physical Training change into suitable attire for the lessons. This not only enables them to teach or coach more competently and in greater comfort, but it also sets an excellent example to the children.

6. Detection of children unfit for Physical Training.—Every teacher responsible for Physical Training should be able to decide which children are temporarily unfit to undertake the full course of gymnastic training. Children who while they are at rest give no indication of physical unfitness, sometimes show symptoms of breathlessness or excessive fatigue after exercises; they should be excluded from Physical Training until a medical opinion has been obtained. The Physical Training of girls should be in the hands of women teachers, and that of boys in the hands of men teachers.

7. The habit of good posture.—The habit of maintaining good posture is one of the most important contributions to personal hygiene that physical training has to offer. It is a habit which can only be said to be established when the framework of the body and its supporting muscles are so formed and trained by suitable exercise that the child adopts at all times a good posture as the most natural and least fatiguing for him. Good posture of the body is necessary if the maximum of effect is to be achieved with minimum expenditure of effort. Bad posture breeds fatigue, and fatigue bad posture, and so on in a vicious circle. Correct posture not only ensures a more skilful use of the body, but also results in the self respect and confidence, which come from good poise and graceful carriage.

The appreciation of good poise and bearing, whether in movement, in standing or in sitting, should be cultivated not only during the gymnastic exercises but at all times. The bad effect on posture of maintaining

one position for any length of time is now generally recognised, and in most schools frequent opportunities for movement are now given. More attention is also being devoted to the most suitable means of support for the body, when sitting in seats and at desks. Children who are uncomfortable and wrongly supported when sitting cannot be expected to maintain good posture for any length of time.

B. THE MAIN FORMS OF PHYSICAL ACTIVITY IN THE SCHOOL COURSE

8. What Physical Training includes.—The term "Physical Training" as used here includes gymnastic exercises, games and athletic sports, swimming, dancing, boxing etc. No one of these is sufficient in itself to constitute an all round training in general fitness and physical development; each is valuable for its own particular effects and all should be included if possible in the Physical Training programme.

The purpose of gymnastics is to secure certain definite effects on the structure and functions of the body, such as the controlled and balanced use of all joints and muscles. Such training gives poise and control of the limbs and is, therefore, an excellent preliminary to the more individual and skilled physical activities involved in work or recreation after school days are over.

Games, athletic sports, swimming, dancing, and boxing are of great value in contributing towards a general condition of health and well-being. The direct appeal they make to the natural interests of the child and the discipline and training inherent in them are sufficient reasons for the claim that they constitute an indispensable part of physical training. Swimming has of course an additional value and usefulness entirely its own. Dancing, especially if based on early training

in rhythmic movement, helps to give poise and grace. Because of its contribution to bodily and mental health it deserves to be included in the education of all children.

9. Gymnastics.—Systematic gymnastic exercises are necessary to aid growth and harmonious development of the body and to ensure the full range of movement in the joints. They help to give increased bodily control and enable the individual to use his strength to the best advantage. They constitute, therefore, a most useful foundation for many forms of bodily skill and activity as well as a valuable preliminary to, and accompaniment of, games and sports, especially those which require prolonged exertion. Through these exercises the body is enabled to withstand considerable exertion without injurious results ; the risk of overstrain, especially of the heart, is minimised, and weak and under-developed children often acquire strength and stamina, so that they can take their place on the playing fields with their naturally more vigorous companions.

Suitable courses of gymnastic exercises are described in the Board's publications on Physical Training but, in order to obtain full value from them, the teacher must possess the necessary vigour and inspiration and must thoroughly understand the purpose and the correct way of performing the exercises.

10. Games and Sports.—The educational value of games lies in cultivating a spirit of true and chivalrous sportsmanship. Success in this direction has, of course, little to do with direct teaching ; it depends largely upon the general tone and atmosphere of the school. The teacher's own example is a most potent factor, and the more closely he is able to identify himself with the children's play-time interests, the more influence he is likely to have.

Children are not likely to derive the fullest advantage from their participation in games, unless sufficient equipment is available to keep each member of a class fully employed. The simple apparatus needed for games in the playground is not expensive: it is often possible to make some of it in the school. Unless the teacher aims at developing in his pupils a satisfactory degree of skill and proficiency in the playing of games, the games themselves have little educational value, whether for the purpose of immediate training, or as a means of implanting a love of games for rational and healthy recreation in after life. The games played, just as much as the physical exercises, should be appropriate to the children's age and capabilities. To obtain the best results, it is necessary to follow a graded scheme beginning with the simple individual play of the youngest children and progressing, in the degree of skill and co-operation required, to the highly organised games, suitable for the older pupils, such as net-ball, shinty, hockey, rounders, cricket and football. Where the requisite grounds and prepared pitches for these latter games are not available the children need not be denied the benefit and interest of organised team play: for there are several good games such as touch-and-pass, rounders, stoolball, field handball, skittle ball, and long ball, which do not require much space or any specially prepared ground.

The games should have for their object the benefit of all the children in the school, and this is best achieved through some such organisation as a house system, which includes all and encourages each to take a part and to do his best according to his capacity. The formation of a school team for playing inter-school matches is useful and legitimate, when it is based on an organisation for games which includes all the children and its achievements are regarded as a test of the general training given in the school. Competition of this kind

is neither legitimate nor desirable, when the attention is given to a school team at the expense of those children who are not likely to find a place in it.

The 1933 issue of the Board's Syllabus contains a large section devoted to games. Teachers responsible for the games of a school will be interested not only in the description of suitable games, but also in the suggestions on organisation, on individual practice and team play, on coaching and on the part played by the children themselves in the management of their games as well as in the directions for the care of apparatus and grounds and many other allied subjects.

11. Swimming.—Swimming should be regarded as an integral part of health and physical training. Unless the school has its own bath, which rarely happens, swimming must necessarily take place away from the school; it is, therefore, desirable that close co-operation should exist between those in charge of the arrangements for swimming and the head teachers. Whenever possible, swimming instruction should be in the hands of members of the school staff. Generally it is inadvisable for a teacher to enter the water while engaged in teaching a class of beginners. It is, however, essential that he should be skilful in obtaining the confidence of his pupils and have the ability to encourage in them self confidence and a fearless attitude of mind. He must also have a thorough knowledge of the various strokes and of the best methods of organising class instruction when the children are in the water.

12. Dancing.—The type of dancing taken varies with the conditions and with the knowledge and ability of the teacher. Many schools will probably confine themselves to the national and folk dances of this and other countries. A certain number may be able to go further and include a more specialised type of dancing,

but the rhythm and character of the dance should always be emphasised and the dances built up gradually from natural movements to simple steps.

In all dancing the music should be the inspiring and guiding force, and the accompaniment to dancing should receive special attention. For a large number of folk dances gramophone records are obtainable; alternatively, the teacher, or even the children themselves, may be able to play the violin, pipe or mouth organ.

The dancing lesson should be a period of stimulating and enjoyable rhythmic activity giving definite training in easy, light and harmonious movement of the whole body. Every child should take part and have an equal share of the teaching given.

C. ADVANCED TRAINING AT THE SENIOR SCHOOL STAGE

13. Development of the training at the Senior School stage.—The Board's Syllabus of Physical Training gives a full scheme of training up to the age of 12. At the moment its new features and the fact that it envisages a higher standard and a wider scope of Physical Training than are common in the schools today make its use practically universal in all Schools. But Senior Schools will soon be ready to provide their pupils with a more advanced training than that described in this book. Already the introduction into Senior Schools of gymnastic apparatus, fixed and portable, the right use of which has been learnt by teachers at approved courses, has revolutionised the work in those schools.

14. Specialisation by Teachers.—The practice is increasing in Senior Schools of confining the teaching of gymnastic exercises to two or three teachers who are interested in and have special aptitude for this work. Any teacher "specialising" in this way should make it his business to attend courses from time to time in

order to keep in touch with the modern practice and methods of teaching the subject.

The need for teachers to acquire a practical knowledge of the right method both of executing and of teaching advanced exercises cannot be over emphasised. In particular, exercises on apparatus—a new development in the elementary school curriculum—must be adequately safeguarded. The training given in approved courses has already been mentioned. This may be supplemented by courses for teachers conducted by Organisers of Physical Training in their own areas. Advanced work cannot safely be undertaken by teachers who have not been trained to teach the use of apparatus, but steps have been taken in co-operation with certain Training Colleges to secure a supply of teachers qualified in this way, by the provision of advanced courses in Physical Training for teachers intending to take up work in Senior Schools.

15. Accommodation : Indoor and outdoor.—To ensure continuity of training and to allow for a more advanced course it is most desirable that Senior Schools should possess a gymnasium or large room which can be used for physical exercises. Special measures must be taken to secure adequate ventilation and to avoid dust. Since space is an important consideration in modern physical training all unnecessary furniture should be excluded. Where new gymnasia are erected changing rooms and shower baths are desirable.(1) Indoor accommodation, which is required particularly for apparatus work, is also needed for occasions when weather conditions make outdoor work impossible. The good habit of exercising in the open air should,

(1) Board of Education Educational Pamphlet Physical Training Series No. 14, *Memorandum on the Planning, Construction and Equipment of Gymnasia in all types of Schools and Educational Institutions, 1936*, printed and published by H.M. Stationery Office, London, price 1*s*. 0*d*. net.

of course, on no account be abandoned. When it is not convenient to carry the apparatus outside, the lesson can be conducted partly indoors, partly out of doors. The provision of playing fields for Senior Schools is a widely recognised necessity, and little need be said in its support here. Girls should have equal facilities with boys. More detailed suggestions relating to the use of playing fields are contained in the Board's Pamphlet *School Playing Fields*. Reference should be made more particularly to Sections 4, 7, 8, 11 and 12 of the Pamphlet.(2)

(2) Board of Education Educational Pamphlet, No 80, *School Playing Fields*, printed and published by H.M. Stationery Office, London, price 4*d*. (*Out of print*.)

CHAPTER VI

MUSIC

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

A. MUSIC IN THE SCHOOL

1. The place of music in education.—The value of Music in school life is now so well recognised that it is unnecessary to discuss it at length. Like the other Arts, Music is an expression of deep-seated instincts in human nature. Its appeal is no doubt fundamentally to the feelings and emotions; but it has its intellectual side also, and this is of no small importance. For children Music has a special value, in that, particularly in its rhythmic aspects, it involves bodily activity, controlled and harmonious effort in accordance with appropriate patterns and designs, and the sharing in

a common emotional and intellectual experience with a common purpose in view. A training which includes rhythmic expression, the correct and pleasing use of the voice in singing, the use of such instruments as are possible in schools, the concerted rendering of Music that is in itself worth while, and the appreciation of some of the works of great musicians can do much alike for the individual and for society in general.

2. Formation of a taste for music the main aim of the teaching.—Since the last edition of this Handbook there has been a noteworthy enlargement of scope and range in the treatment of the subject in Public Elementary Schools, to such an extent, indeed, that teachers generally find it impossible to include in the Music syllabus all the new branches of the subject that may rightly be recommended as educationally sound. Their appearance in the syllabus, however, is undoubtedly due to the growing realisation that singing is a means and not an end. The end is now regarded as the training of the musical instincts towards the formation of a taste for, and an understanding of, music. But though there has been this shifting of emphasis, singing must still be regarded as the best and most convenient means to use towards the fulfilment of this end. The encroachment of any of the new aspects of musical training upon the proper proportion of time allotted to song singing and sight singing must be strongly condemned. If the increased recognition of the value of such wider musical education is to have its due effect, adequate time will, of course, be required for the subject.

3. Listening to good music.—Listening to good music is an important part of a child's education. A school fortunate enough to be situated in a district where there are well managed children's concerts should take every opportunity of attending and profiting by

these concerts; and in addition concerts given by the school itself are strongly to be recommended as a stimulus to the musical life of the school. In this connexion, individual talent should be sought out and encouraged. The attendance of classes or choirs at Children's Festivals is also a splendid stimulus, especially because of the opportunity afforded of hearing other school choirs and of joining in the singing by the massed choirs. The teacher also can benefit greatly by the advice and suggestions offered by the adjudicator or director.

Interest in music may be further encouraged by the formation of Music Clubs or Societies which meet out of school hours. The most obvious form of these voluntary activities is the School Choir or Choral Society; but there is room for organisations of a more general type, such as listening and discussion groups and dinner-hour concerts; other activities will no doubt suggest themselves.

4. Equipment and provision for music teaching.—Every effort should be made to secure an adequate equipment for the teaching of Music. First in order of importance is the need for a good piano in every school or department. Next, care should be taken that a fair proportion of the general requisition is allotted to the purchase of song books, sheet music, and a manuscript book for each pupil. Plenty of blackboards should be available in the room used for Music teaching; the staff lines on the boards should not be too close together, and should be plainly visible from the furthest corner of the room. A good gramophone is desirable, as also are pictures showing orchestral instruments, charts illustrating musical history, and a well chosen selection of readable books, while, for use in Infant and Junior Schools, an adequate supply of good percussion band instruments, charts, scores and parts

is necessary where percussion band work is part of the curriculum.

As it is now generally recognised that nothing but suitable good music should ever be used for school purposes, little more need be said on this subject here. A basis of folk and national songs is essential. The great output of beautiful unison and part songs written by many of our distinguished composers make it possible for a school to have a large repertoire of first-rate British songs, as well as a fairly wide acquaintance with the songs of the great masters. It should be noted that the practice of copying the voice parts of copyright songs on the blackboard, or of reproducing voice parts by some other method, is illegal, inasmuch as it is an infringement of copyright. Every endeavour should be made to procure an adequate supply of printed copies.

For children at the Senior School stage, even in the smallest school, a collection of readable books on Music is desirable. Some of these books will appeal principally to the keener spirits ; a few will be in general demand. The provision of one of the periodicals for young musicians will be a stimulus to the children to read and enquire for themselves.

B. PLANNING THE COURSE OF INSTRUCTION

5. Need for a unified scheme.—There should be no difficulty in planning a syllabus which includes song singing, sight singing (including ear-training) and several of the appropriate new activities. But it is important that a unified scheme of Music teaching should be followed by the same children at different stages of their school life in a particular group of schools. Those responsible for the teaching of Music at the Infant, Junior and Senior School stages respectively, should keep in touch with one another, in order to ensure that a pupil is not subject to a disconcerting variety of method, or an irksome repetition of subjects to be

studied, in the course of his school career. Continuity of method and progressive grading of the work are essential.

It will be seen from the foregoing outline of the possibilities of Music in elementary education that the more modern ideal makes greater demands on the musical abilities of the teacher than did the more limited ideals of the past. He should, therefore, do all in his power to fit himself for the task. Freshness of outlook and a knowledge of better methods can be gained by attending teachers' courses from time to time. He should never allow himself to get into a rut of teaching, and he should miss no opportunity of broadening his musical knowledge and of improving his practical ability.

6. The scope of the course.—The work at each of the three stages of the Elementary School course should be so planned as to give due weight to singing, on the one hand, and, on the other, to "musicianship." By this term should be understood that training of the musical instincts towards the formation of a taste for and an understanding of music, which is the end to be achieved alike by this instruction in singing and by the other musical activities in which the children will have an opportunity of engaging.

In the following summary the musical exercises and activities which are recommended for inclusion in the course, where practicable, at the Infant, Junior and Senior School stages respectively, are arranged for convenience of reference under the two headings "singing" and "musicianship."

(i) *THE INFANT SCHOOL STAGE*

(a) *Singing* :—

Nursery rhymes and singing games.—Simple unison songs.—Very easy rounds.—Breathing.—Simple voice-training.

(b) *Musicianship* :—

Imitation of phrases.—Time names.—Recognition of note values.—Simple rhythmic movement on the lines of the B.B.C. course.—Percussion band.—Simple modulator exercises.

In the upper part of the school: very simple sight-singing, from suitably graded books.—Preliminary preparation for country dancing.—Attendance at festivals.

(ii) *THE JUNIOR SCHOOL STAGE*

(a) *Singing* :—

National and folk songs.—Singing games.—Rounds, canons and descants.—Suitable classical and modern unison songs.—Breathing.—Voice Training.

(b) *Musicianship* :—

Rhythmic movement and (possibly) percussion band work.—Easy musical dictation in (1) rhythm, (2) pitch, (3) rhythm and pitch combined.—More advanced sight-singing and further work in staff notation.—Recognition of cadences.

More advanced modulator exercises. Such theory of music as is suggested by the songs and other forms of music used for school purposes.—Pipe making and playing.—Country dancing.—Attendance at children's concerts and festivals.—The B.B.C. Junior Course.

(iii) *THE SENIOR SCHOOL STAGE*

(a) *Singing* :—

Traditional, classical and modern unison and part songs.—Rounds, canons and descants.—The singing of bass parts by older boys.—Breathing.—Voice training.

(b) *Musicianship* :—

More advanced sight-singing and dictation in staff notation.—Melody writing.—The aural recognition of chords.—Study of musical form.—The B.B.C. Senior Course.

More advanced work in rhythmic movement where suitable.—Country dancing, Morris dancing and sword dancing —Attendance at concerts and festivals —School orchestra.—Preparation for school concerts, carol services, operas, etc

In the remaining sections of this chapter the various aspects of school music are dealt with in detail. The sections on Ear Training and Sight Reading, Rhythmic Movement and Folk Dancing contain suggestions as to the way in which the instruction may be developed progressively through the successive stages of the school course in Music.

II. SINGING

7. Interpretation the chief factor in enjoyable song-singing.—A singer should have but one aim when he is singing a song . to reflect the character of the song. To this one aim all the details of training in the technique of singing must be made contributory and subservient, or the singer will have failed to give his message to an audience. A sound technique is of primary importance to the singer in the physical sense, inasmuch as it supplies him with the means to his end ; but it must ever be remembered that it is not an end in itself. It is therefore advisable for teachers, while steadily training the voices of their pupils, and cultivating an impeccable intonation and ensemble, to insist on interpretation as the first and foremost requisite for enjoyable song singing ; otherwise the spirit of the song will have no message for its hearers. Moreover, it will be found that if the character and mood of a song

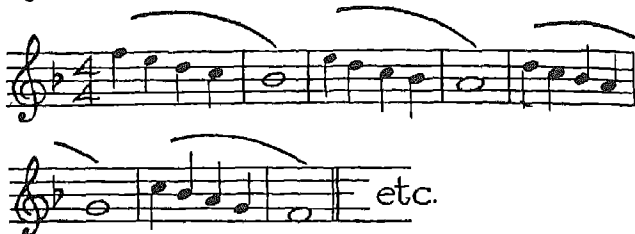
be reflected by the singers, they will the more easily be able to produce the right quality of tone, the appropriate phrasing, and the significant enunciation proper to the style of the song. It may be justly said that interpretation will often induce an improved technique, but that technique will not of itself induce a good interpretation.

It is unfortunate that it is beyond the power of any teacher to instil the feeling of a song into children by recognised pedagogic methods ; they can only be encouraged to feel, and appealed to for the vocal reflection of the feeling. The response is more often than not generous.

But there are pedagogic methods for the teaching of technique, and the wise teacher will make full use of these.

8. Breathing.—Correct breathing is essential to good phrasing. Breath control ensures continuity and length of phrase. Breath should always be taken in through the nostrils if time and opportunity permit . e.g. before the beginning of a song, or towards the end of an intervening instrumental passage. The lungs should be quietly and steadily filled, without the raising of the shoulders, or the protrusion of the abdomen. Short, quick breathing, so often necessary in the course of a song, should also be practised.

9. Voice Training.—The training of the head voice downwards is a fundamental principle. But this need not preclude the giving of exercises with other objects. The whole dynamic range of tone from *pp* to *ff* should be covered, and all the various vowels and consonants should be practised. The exercises should also vary in *tempo* from very quick to very slow. They should sometimes be made expressive of various emotions.

This can be done by setting suitable sentences to the exercise, which may perfectly well be unaccompanied, e.g.

This exercise may be sung to such words as

"Singing is a joy" (whole-hearted enthusiasm) or "Peace at eventide" (serene contentment) or "Furious howls the storm" (titanic energy), or "Toll for the brave" (the dignity of sorrow)—the word "Toll" to be sung to the first two crotchets.

A serious attempt to reflect the character of any of these sentences will be an excellent training for song singing, which, after all, is the purpose of voice training. The exercises should always be in pattern formation. A few suggestions are given below.

It will not be beyond the powers of a teacher to invent new exercises of this kind; and he may also encourage the children to invent melodic phrases. The vocalising of songs, phrase by phrase, will be found a useful exercise. The exercises should, and can easily, be made really enjoyable and interesting. High notes should be practised constantly; a young child's voice normally can easily take high A or B flat, but it should be remembered that as boys, and indeed girls, approach adolescence, they are less likely to feel comfortable when singing high notes.

The tone must never be allowed to become non-resonant, even in the very quiet exercises; it should

be unaffected, and all strain must be checked instantly. Resonant humming will prove a valuable corrective to harsh, unmusical tone.

10. Enunciation.—As a rule, far too little attention is given to enunciation. Good enunciation is essential to the expressiveness of a song. It goes without saying that the enunciation must have clarity; the outline of the words must be clear, and the vowels must be pure.

But beyond this there is a more subtle and difficult essential to be acquired: significance. This is often mistakenly termed "Expression," which is generally a matter of merely singing more loudly or softly. True significance can only come from a just appreciation of verbal values. The words of any sentence must be stressed rightly, and grouped correctly, if the sentence is to mean what the singer wishes it to mean. The stresses in song should approximate as closely as possible to those in speech,—irrespective of bar-line accent or varying note values.

Thus, in the sentence "He shall lead me forth beside the waters of comfort," the word "lead" and the first syllable of "waters" and of "comfort" should have *strong* stresses, the word "forth" and the second syllable of "beside" should have *medium* stresses, the remaining words and syllables having *weak* stresses.

It is a good plan to get the singers to practise speaking the words of a song naturally, at the same time noting where the stresses in the words occur; then for the singers to sing the words, preserving the same stresses, and taking care to lighten the tone on less important words and syllables. At the same time the shape of the musical phrase must not be sacrificed.

It is important that full value should be given to consonants. Such words as "strength," for example, lose significance if the consonants are slurred over. It should be remembered that in English speech consonants not only give clarity of outline, but also a rich significance. In this connexion opportunities should be found for collaboration with teachers responsible for speech training.

II. Phrasing.—The grace of song depends largely upon the singer's conception of its phrasing.

Continuity is of the utmost importance. There must be no gaps in the outline, no shortening of note values,

and no breaking of the phrase on account of faulty breath control. For example, " Drink to me only with thine eyes, and I will pledge with mine," is, musically, one continuous phrase, and it demands steady breath control to fill the whole phrase with tone, and to achieve a perfect *sostenuto.*

On the other hand, a perfect *sostenuto* in a song like " The British Grenadiers " would not be appropriate In this song most of the notes require a separate and pointed attack. Without this treatment the song would lack vigour.

The contour and the rise and fall of a phrase should be carefully studied. Generally a slight increase of tone is desirable in an upward tendency, and a decrease of tone in a downward tendency. For example, in the passage

> " O, don't deceive me ;
> O, never leave me ,
> How could you use a poor maiden so ? "

If the same amount of tone is used throughout, the effect is dull and uninteresting : but if each of the phrases received a slight *crescendo* and corresponding *diminuendo* the music becomes more interesting. It may be noted that the climax of a phrase is not always at the top of the curve. In the above example the climax of the first phrase happens to come at the top ; but in the last phrase it comes at the word " use," which is one degree below the highest note of the phrase.

12. Rhythm.—Rhythm is the life of song. It means more than time. A choir may be fastidiously correct in its note values, and yet sing unmusically. If the " lilt " or " sway " of the song is not caught by the singers, the song cannot be said to have come to life. Appropriate *tempo* is an important factor. Unsatisfactory rhythm is often the result of taking a song

either too quickly or too slowly. Experiment will decide what is the appropriate *tempo* of a song.

The rhythm of a song should never be interrupted merely for the purpose of making a picturesque effect.

13. Tone.—A good "normal" tone is a necessary foundation, yet it is seldom required in song singing, since it has constantly to be adapted to the character of the song, and must be coloured by its mood. To use the same tone for such a variety of songs as "Who is Sylvia?", "Rule, Britannia", "Early one Morning", "Boney was a Warrior", and "Golden Slumbers" would have the effect of reducing them all to a dead level of insignificance.

A good blend is sometimes difficult to secure in a choir. One or two voices may stand out from the others by reason of the different quality. Two "reedy" voices in a choir of "fluty" voices can easily cause an unsatisfactory blend. "Sing with your ears" and "Listen to your neighbours" are two effective directions to give in this contingency.

Vitality of tone must never be lost.

14. Intonation.—Many reasons are given for faulty intonation or, in other words, singing out of tune. Fatigue and atmospheric conditions are sometimes said to be contributory causes, but ultimately there are but two reasons: singing without listening and faulty production Listening is of vital importance to good intonation. A choir of well-trained "listening" singers never sings out of tune, however tired it may be or whatever the atmospheric conditions may be. Humming is an excellent corrective; for it is easier to listen when humming than when singing. Another corrective is to transpose the song up for flatness, down for sharpness.

15. Ensemble.—This is generally taken to mean "being together in point of time," and this is

undoubtedly an essential. But the word should also connote unanimity of spirit. All the singers should feel in the same way, express in the same way, vary their tone in the same way, phrase in the same way; they should, in fact, sing as one.

16. Marks of expression.—Marks of expression are never absolute in value; they are relative to the character of the song in which they occur. There are many kinds and degrees of *f* or *p*. A *crescendo* in the "Hallelujah chorus" is quite different in kind and degree from a *crescendo* in "Farewell, Manchester." Such directions as *poco accel* or *poco rit* require careful consideration. The tendency in general is to exaggerate them.

The signs < > are often only half obeyed; the singers generally find it easier to make the *crescendo* than the corresponding *diminuendo*. "Get back to where you started from" is a golden rule in this respect. A *crescendo* or a *diminuendo* should be graded carefully. Directions as to *tempo* also require careful consideration, e.g. *Andante*, which is often mistakenly interpreted as "slow."

17. Part singing.—This should only be attempted when, beyond all question, the unison singing is satisfactory. Even then, great care must be taken that the tone does not deteriorate. It is far too common an experience to hear a choir at a festival sing a unison song with attractive tone and, immediately after, sing a part song with unpleasant tone. Any tendency to force the tone, or to strain, in the under part, must be checked immediately. A sufficient number of singers must be allocated for the second part, so that they will not have to shout to make their part effective. A good balance is essential in part singing. Part songs for equal voices have an obvious advantage over songs in which the second part is confined to the lower register.

It need hardly be said that the practice, once not infrequent, of singing only the treble and alto parts of a four part chorus has nothing to commend it.

Canons, Rounds and Descants should be practised as preparation for part singing, though it must be remembered that the balance required in descant singing is by no means the same as that in the ordinary two-part song.

The same singers should not always sing the second part.

In mixed choirs it is advisable that each part should consist of both boys and girls, since in this way a better blend of tone may be expected.

III. EAR TRAINING AND SIGHT READING

18. Graded instruction necessary at every stage of the course.—The teaching of Music should include at every stage suitably graded instruction in ear training and sight reading.

The training of the ear to listen carefully and intelligently is of great importance and should form a definite part of every music lesson throughout the school. Experience shows that if it is methodically taught from the early school stages upwards, children can be trained to read simple music at an early age and that only about one per cent. turn out to be really tone-deaf.

(i) *THE INFANT SCHOOL STAGE*

19. Free expression and rhythmic training.—When they first come to school many young children may have something to unlearn about Music as a whole, so that at first it may be advisable to let them have plenty of free expression in, and movement to, music in order to prepare the right kind of environment in which the desire to know more about music will spontaneously grow. The resourceful teacher will, no doubt,

devise many ways in which this feeling for music may be fostered and developed.

As it is now generally agreed that education in music should begin with some form of rhythmic training it is suggested that the French system of teaching rhythm can be used to great advantage in the early stages of this work. It is based on the sense impression given by the sounds of certain monosyllables, the combination of which imitates the rhythm of the musical phrases. These time names are as valuable in the teaching of rhythm as are the solfa names in the teaching of pitch.

20. Progressive development of the instruction.— When the children are ready for an advance from the elementary stages of free expression work in music these names should be introduced gradually and may be practised from the blackboard in much the same way as the solfa names will be learnt at a slightly later stage.

Recently it has been found that the rhythm names can be put to excellent use in Percussion Band work: indeed, it would be hard to find an easier or more interesting way of introducing them. (See section 34 below.)

A useful exercise at this stage is for the teacher to tap or clap a series of simple rhythmic patterns and require the children to imitate them. At a later stage, however, they may be encouraged to give their own individual 'answers' to the various patterns set by the teacher. This is valuable, too, as breaking the ground in preparation for such melody making as they may be called upon to do when they have made further progress in ear training.

The next step will be the recognition of pitch, i.e. which of two sounds is the higher or lower, wide intervals, e g **dm', s'd,** being used at first. The hands may here be brought into play, the teacher and children moving them up and down according to the variation of pitch. In general, the visual training involved in tracing the

rise and fall of a tune by movements of the hands has much to commend it.

The children should have adequate practice in imitating short phrases, especially sequences, sung to a definite rhythm by the teacher to the solfa names : e.g.

but it is essential that the whole series of such phrases should be sung rhythmically and without a break from start to finish.

The next step will be to introduce the solfa names on the blackboard in scalewise order, the class singing the appropriate names as the teacher points up or down the scale, including upper **r** and **m** as well as lower **t** and **l**. Then simple stepwise phrases such as those suggested above may be patterned by the teacher and imitated by the children as she points them on the board. If this work is done by small groups in turn, as it undoubtedly should be, it will probably extend over many weeks.

21. From modulator to stave.—To bridge the gulf between the modulator and the stave, which to some seems so formidable a venture at this stage, the old-fashioned method of using the thumb and fingers of one hand as a stave and pointing on it with the other as if it were a modulator is recommended as a practical means of transition. In this the children can participate by using not only their voices but their hands in imitation of the teacher. After working on these lines the class is ready to sing as before short phrases from the solfa names, which are now written on the stave, but are later superseded by notes, of equal value, e.g. all crochets

or all minims. With a large stave drawn on the blackboard, its lines being at least three inches apart, useful exercises in reading can be given by the teacher using a movable note, i.e. of cardboard attached to a pointer, and practising from left to right with it, while the class sings the appropriate solfa names. Many successful teachers find the "mental effects" and their corollary, the hand-signs, useful, but these are not essential.

It is immaterial in which key a start is made, but key C enables young children to reach upper **r** and **m** without strain and key G brings lower **t** and **l** within easy range. There are those who advocate the principle of changing the key for each successive exercise even at this early stage, but progress is likely to be steadier and more uniform if the children are able to find their way about one key first. Other keys should then be taken according to the sight reading requirements of the class, for it is important that the reading should not be confined to any one key for too long a period.

22. Reading from the stave.—In some Infant Schools good use is made of class books for sight reading from the stave. It is important that they should be so well graded that a number of exercises may be sung at every lesson without repetition. As a spirit of confidence on the part of the class is an essential asset, since fluency in reading is the main purpose of this work, the first steps should be real steps and not hurdles. Moreover, the reading should invariably be done by groups within the class rather than by the whole class reading together, and both rhythm and solfa tune practice should be given from the blackboard for a few minutes at the beginning of every reading lesson. Before each exercise, the teacher should clearly set the *tempo*, or rate, and the children should be encouraged to look ahead as they

read. Side by side with the reading, practice in the converse process of giving the rhythm and solfa names of the notes of short phrases should be taken.

By the time they pass from the Infant School stage children may be expected to be able to give the solfa names of any stepwise progression sung or played by the teacher and to read a scalewise tune in simple rhythm; for while there are many experienced teachers who regard the tonic chord, **d m s**, as the most satisfactory starting point in ear training and sight reading, it has been found that the use of stepwise exercises during the first stages of the work is more conducive to confidence and progress.

(ii) *THE JUNIOR SCHOOL STAGE*

23. Exercises in rhythm and pitch.—At the beginning of the Junior School stage, careful revision of the work done in the Infant School is advisable, but when the class as a whole is ready to move forward, more difficult exercises in rhythm and pitch will be attempted. As each new rhythm name is introduced, its corresponding symbol will be drawn on the blackboard and used in conjunction with those which the class already knows, for further rhythmic practice. Indeed, it should be possible for children by this means to overcome the ordinary difficulties of rhythm during their Junior School course.

24. The use of the modulator.—The great value of the modulator when rightly used lies in the help it should give the children in anticipating any difficulties which may occur in sight reading from the staff. In pointing on the modulator, however, care should be taken that the passage does not become a series of ungainly and disjointed skips with no definite rhythm or melodic design. The exercises should consist only of such intervals as the children are likely to meet with in the music they sing, and some simple phrases should be chosen which will allow for regular breathing spaces.

Fully in keeping with this suggestion is the practice of using for this purpose tunes which the class already knows, the teacher pointing them on the modulator and the children singing the solfa names.

Later, they will be expected to sing the tunes to the correct solfa names without the help of the pointer. It need hardly be said that the tunes chosen should be free from rhythmic difficulties, as the main object of such exercises is the accurate pitching of intervals. Then the same tune should be pointed on the staff immediately after it has been pointed on the modulator, the teacher using, perhaps, the movable note referred to in a previous section, and the children singing the solfa names as before. It must be remembered, however, that when the teacher points to a note on the modulator he has told the children what note to sing, but when he points it on the staff they have to think for themselves what its solfa name is before they sing it. Ability to read the solfa names of a tune pointed on the staff is, therefore, a real step towards reading. In such ways the class will have learnt a large number of tunes with the solfa names attached.

25. Sight-reading and singing songs by ear.—The introduction of class books for sight reading from the stave should be effected as early as practicable, if indeed this has not already been done during the Infant School stage. When they are introduced, however, it is essential that they should be really well graded: for example no consecutive exercises should involve fresh difficulties in rhythm and pitch at the same time, for fluency is at first the most important aim. In the early stages the class should read through each exercise to the rhythm names and then sing it to the solfa names: when, after a lapse of time, the exercises are used again, they may be sung to any vowel sound or quietly hummed. Whatever mistakes are made, the children should be

encouraged to continue to the end, maintaining the time.

Later, the reading of songs may be attempted in this way, though as many songs as possible should of course be taught by ear until the children can read them without difficulty. Moreover, the practice of learning carefully chosen songs by ear at this stage provides many excellent opportunities for quickening their powers of musical apprehension.

It is highly desirable, where possible, to have daily practice in sight-reading from books and some form of ear training. Where this is impossible, such practice should form part of every Music lesson.

It should be borne in mind that a mistake in rhythm or in time is more serious than a mistake in pitch. In general, no exercise should be sung through more than once in the same lesson, and a number of exercises should be taken without unnecessary comments. If this is done, it will be found that the class will sing the last two or three exercises with much more fluency and accuracy than they sang the first. It should be the exception rather than the rule for the whole class to sing through any exercise together. The necessity for sectional and even individual work throughout the whole school course cannot be too strongly emphasised. If the children in each class are divided into a convenient number of groups, the phrases, which in the best reading books are marked, can be shared out among them, preferably by indications made by the teacher during the singing of the exercise.

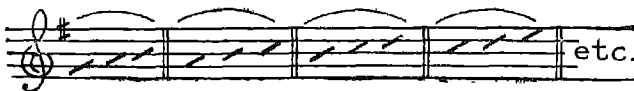
The little theory of music that is required at this stage, e.g. time signatures, keys, and clefs, should be introduced quite informally as it is required, whole lessons devoted to the teaching of theory being out of place.

26. Musical dictation.—At some period in the Junior School course—the earlier the better—musical dictation should be associated with the ear training,

and the children should be encouraged to set down on paper what they hear, singing it through once or twice beforehand. It is better to start with the dictation of rhythm, the teacher patterning a short phrase in rhythm names only and the children writing down the corresponding symbols. Thus, if the teacher patterns such a phrase as "Taa, Taa-tai, Taa-aa," the class would be expected to write down ♩ ♫ 𝅗𝅥, or simply | ⊓ 𝅗𝅥, (which, for the purpose of rhythmic dictation, is quite sufficient). In many schools, however, the use of an ingenious form of musical shorthand enables the children to write down any simple rhythm they hear more fluently.

The next step would be for the teacher to sing or play—at first without accompaniment—a tune with which the children are already familiar and then to ask them to write down its rhythm either in staff notation or in the shorthand. For this purpose hymn tunes are often suitable, as they seldom involve any serious rhythmic difficulties.

Side by side with this, much practice should be given in the solfaing of short melodic phrases, taken at first from tunes the children know, hummed by the teacher; but when it comes to writing them down, it is essential that at first they should be very short and simple. It is evidently more satisfactory that the majority of the class should be able to write down with facility **d r m**, or **s f m**, than that a very small proportion only should be able to reproduce with difficulty **d l s d' f r m**.

Later, short phrases will be written by the class on the stave. Children should be able to take down a musical phrase with fair rapidity, if they are to profit by the work in its later stages. At first stems need not be added: e.g.

For black notes, as above, round heads are not required, and are simply a waste of time. When stems are added the strokes should be thin and they need not actually join the heads : e.g. :

Dictation of rhythm and pitch combined should be attempted as the ability of the class to write each down separately develops. This may be done by first singing or playing a familiar musical phrase and requiring the children to reproduce its rhythm on paper. As an example, let the first two bars of " The Vicar of Bray " be taken, the rhythm of which should appear on paper as :—

The tune will then be heard again, and the class will be asked to insert the bar lines and at the next hearing to write down the solfa names over the symbols, thus :—

from which the transcription to the staff notation is easy. After much practice the children should be able to write down in staff notation any simple phrase without the help of these intermediate steps.

The ability to recognise cadences in their more familiar forms, especially in relation to phrase endings, might be expected of children about this time.

It cannot be urged too strongly that, if real progress in ear-training, sight-reading and dictation is to be made, the use of the solfa names should become instinctive.

(iii) *THE SENIOR SCHOOL STAGE*

27. Revision of the earlier work.—At the beginning of the Senior School Stage careful revision of the work done in the Junior School is advisable. When this has been done, the minor mode may be taken on the modulator and then pointed on the staff. The teacher may follow this up by pointing tunes which are written in a minor key and well known to the class. A number of suitable exercises should then be read from the books at each lesson until the peculiar difficulties are mastered, whether the " lah minor " or " doh minor " system is used.

If the children have had sufficient previous experience in the correct pitching of " *fe* " and " *ta,*" modulation to adjacent keys should present no serious obstacles: further, it is essential that they should be able not only to recognise that the " doh " of the original key has changed, but also to give the new " doh " its correct letter name. The order of the keys may be seen most clearly, perhaps, from a glance at the following table :—

C♭ | G♭ D♭ A♭ E♭ B♭ F | C | G D A E B F♯ | C♯

If theory is rightly described as the grouping and classification of musical facts that have been already learnt through practice, it is clear that many of these will have been introduced from time to time in the course of the sight reading lessons. These will include the note values of semibreves, minims, etc., the letter

names of the notes of the scale with special relation to the piano keyboard, the numerical description of intervals, the clefs, the cycle of key signatures, time signatures, the construction of the scale, and a knowledge of some of the more common musical terms. Up to this stage, no doubt, most of the reading will have been done from graded exercises, but it is important that these should give place to songs and instrumental tunes as soon as the teacher is satisfied that his class read fluently enough for this purpose. At the same time, themes from the works of the great composers can be cyclostyled or written on the blackboard for the class to read and, if necessary, to memorise. This greatly enhances the value of the lessons in which works of this kind are studied. The older boys should be introduced to the bass clef and sing chiefly from it, the passages sounding an octave higher than written. Where there are boys, however, who are able to sing at the actual pitch they should, of course, do so.

For practice in ear-training and dictation, short phrases containing more difficult intervals will now be attempted, and then longer phrases will be taken.

28. Chord analysis.—Some teachers will rightly want to do work in simple chord analysis. Much can be done with the help of the piano and of dummy keyboards, made of wood or cardboard, in encouraging older children to fit simple chords to suitably chosen songs during their class lessons. Ability to harmonise a melody at the keyboard is, after all, only a development from the recognition of cadence to that of other chords. If a chord can be recognised by the class when played by the teacher, any child should be able to find it on the keyboard.

Work of this kind is usually approached by setting exercises for distinguishing the notes of a chord. If, for example, a chord of two notes be played, the solfa

name of the upper one being given, the class will be asked to sing, and then to name, the lower. Then as progress in recognition is made, a chord of three notes will be taken and treated in much the same way. This would be followed by dictation of two-part, and later of three-part, chords.

The triads may be quickly learnt by some such exercise as the following, which should be sung slowly at first and then quickened as it becomes more familiar :—

In like manner, the first inversion may be introduced and quickly memorised :—

Other methods of introducing the triads will no doubt be attempted and tested, but it is essential that the necessity for careful listening should be insisted upon throughout and that nothing should be committed to paper which cannot first be heard correctly through the ear. Listening to music gains in interest when there is some background of harmonic appreciation.

29. Melody making.—With expert help and guidance, children may be taught to compose simple tunes; but to ensure that they do not write down what they do not hear, it is advisable to confine their earliest efforts to vocal extemporisation. If the idea of question and answer, which is the basis of melody making has already been presented by tapping or clapping in rhythmic form during the Infant stage, the next step is for the question and answer to be sung. First the children may be told to sing a fixed question, to which the teacher improvises various suitable answers: then the rôles may be reversed, the teacher improvising various questions to which the children reply with a fixed answer. When this principle of phrase balance has been established in their minds, pairs of children may be encouraged to do the same, the teacher suggesting the rhythm if necessary. The writing down of these tunes will afford additional practice in musical dictation. Excellent use may be made of the words of nursery rhymes and, indeed, of suitable verse in their poetry books, as soon as individual children are able to improvise the whole tune with reasonable fluency. When they are competent to write down correctly what they hear or sing, they may be expected to write down tunes that they hear mentally, without the necessity of vocalising them first.

IV. RHYTHMIC MOVEMENT

30. Conditions and facilities for rhythmic training.—One of the valuable developments of recent years in the teaching of music has been the use of rhythmic movement as a means of helping children to experience music, to understand the structure of the tunes they hear, and to express their knowledge in a way that is fundamentally satisfying and natural to them. Such training may take many different forms, some of them

highly systematised ; but valuable rhythmic work can be undertaken profitably by any teacher with sufficient musical ability to take the class singing.

The ideal conditions for such work are : good floor space, a class of children so dressed that their garments do not hamper free movement, a good piano, a sensitive and competent pianist who is also able to demonstrate the necessary movements and to inspire the class, and a stock of first-rate tunes, however simple. Much valuable work can, however, be done in very different circumstances. If floor space is limited small groups can take turns to move to music while the rest of the class is singing, playing pipes or percussion instruments, or even making simple hand or foot movements whilst seated in their desks. The piano can be supplemented by the pipe or percussion band or singing. It is sometimes found possible to combine two classes when the numbers are small so that one teacher plays while a second teaches and demonstrates. The pianist who has the necessary ability and knowledge will find it possible to illustrate particular points by improvising simple tunes containing, for example, the regular repetition of a rhythmic pattern ; this should not be overdone or a valuable opportunity of widening the children's musical repertoire will be lost.

National and folk songs, folk dance tunes, nursery rhymes and good hymn tunes will provide a storehouse of fine material from which a choice can be made to suit the varying capacities of the pianists ; some of the simpler compositions of the great masters are easily accessible, within the power of most players, and attractive and easy to interpret. Beyond this there is a wide range of compositions, both modern and classical, which can be drawn upon by the pianist of greater skill, and it is most desirable to build up a school library of suitable works of this kind. Care must be taken to avoid poor material in the form of inferior

compositions specially written down to what is supposed to be the children's level.

Fuller descriptions of the kind of work done, and detailed suggestions for the type of work suitable for each stage will follow, but there are certain features which should characterise the work at all stages. It is essential that from the very beginning the children's movements should be unaffected, that the pupils should grow in the power both to relax and to control and that there should be liberation from the stiff, awkward or unnecessary movements that are too often caused by the wrong kind of environment.

Children who have had teaching of the right kind show by the beauty and grace of their movements what the work has done for their bodies. Response to the stimulus of a fine tune, controlled expression through bodily movements, and a satisfaction of the rhythmic instinct, should make for health of mind as well as of body.

31. Some practical considerations.—Certain specific teaching must be given, and some definite forms of movement adopted to represent such things as note values and pulse. Unanimity of movement has a special beauty and value of its own, and the children can use these definite forms when the structure of the tune they are interpreting is suitable. At other times the movements may illustrate the form of the composition more freely and be in less detailed accordance with note values. A skilful teacher may find it possible to allow the children to express their own ideas of the character of the music.

The teacher should not read into the music an idea that the composer has not intended, nor force upon the class expressions of emotion that are not natural to the children at the stage of development which they have reached, nor should the movements become stereotyped like those associated with the "action song."

The music should not suffer any mutilation, and the pianist should avoid any such unmusical treatment as, for example, the undue stressing of the first beat of a bar.

It has been found from experience that boys react to this work differently from girls. They often require more robust and vigorous movement, but, given the right teaching from a man or woman whose opinion they respect and who believes in the work, they will take naturally to it, and show none of the self-consciousness or ungainly movement which is sometimes attributed to them.

Rhythmic movement, when the children listen intelligently, and assimilate and express fine tunes so that they become a part of themselves, is a very practical and valuable form of musical appreciation, which, moreoever, results in the awakening and development of the children's own creative faculties.

32. Development of the work through the successive stages of the school course.—(i) *The Infant School stage.*—There might well be a short daily lesson at this stage. The course may begin with relaxation exercises, and others, not necessarily in response to music, in which the children perform simple movements rhythmically, for example those illustrating pulling, sweeping, hammering. Response to tunes that invite walking, running, skipping, rocking and so on may follow.

The children can listen and show the change in movement when the pianist plays loudly, softly, quickly or slowly, and should be taught to listen for the end of a tune. The half-way point of a simple tune can be shown by a change of direction or position. Phrasing is most important, first of all in regular phrases, then in irregular. Phrasing and also simple form—(for example, "ternary" form, A B A) can be shown either

by the movements of different groups in turn, or by individual movements of body or arms.

At some point in the course it is useful to teach note values in connection with the rhythm names and definite foot movements, for example a walking step for " taa," a running step for " taatai," a skipping step for " taafe," a step-bend for " taa-aa."

Simple one bar rhythmic patterns regularly repeated may be taught at first, or a familiar tune with a very obvious pattern.

Arm movements may be used for 2, 3 and 4 pulse measures. It is wise here not to teach any movement that will conflict later with the recognised method of conducting.

The climax of a tune may be recognised and illustrated in some form of group or individual movement. The children can invent simple dances and games to illustrate the form of some of the tunes they hear.

(ii) *The Junior School stage.*—If the Juniors have had no previous experience of rhythmic work all the preparatory work indicated in the Infant School section must be taken. The Juniors will have more control but in all probability a larger proportion of relaxation exercises will be needed. The lessons now may be a little longer and possibly less frequent but the method may be used at any time as an illustration or corrective in the music lesson.

Any of the suggestions in the Infant School section may be used, but the work must develop. More definite teaching in form may be given and the children may be introduced to such terms as " binary," " ternary." The class may be taught to step more difficult rhythms, and to listen to and step bass and treble. Canons and rounds may be stepped, movements may be made for the different forms of cadences, and changes of key may all be shown by movement in groups.

(iii) *The Senior School stage.*—If the Infant and Junior School course has been followed, the work may be developed as a regular lesson for the class, or as an optional subject for those children who find it of especial value, or as an occasional method to be used at any time in the Music lesson. If there has been no previous training, it is not too late to begin.

Presuming a previous course there may be some revision of the Junior work and the development of the study and illustration of form, such as, for example, fugue and rondo. An understanding of counterpoint may be acquired by stepping all the independent parts. Recognition of more difficult subjects and the invention of dances, and so on, may be included in the course.

V. FOLK DANCING

33. The instruction at successive stages of the school course.—Dancing, and especially folk dancing, has come to be recognised as a most important form of the apprehension and expression of music. Its rhythmical qualities, and the fact that a good dancer must be able to study and appreciate a tune and then use his full mental and physical powers to express it in concerted motion, make it a proper part of a musical training. English folk dancing has such a wealth of beautiful tunes and such a variety of dances that it will easily supply the full wants of any school in this direction.

(i) *The Infant School stage.*—As with other forms of music, so with dancing, the Infant stage is one of preparation. The danger to avoid is to try to obtain at this age elaborate results for purpose of display. The first aim should be to teach the child to listen to a tune, to feel, though not necessarily to describe, its pulse and rhythm and to recognise and learn by heart and sing tunes and parts of tunes. With this should

go the power to move in accordance with a tune, not in a set pattern at first, but simply in time with it, using the ordinary steps of English Country dancing, walking, running and skipping; and learning to start with the music and, by knowing the tune as a whole, to feel when the tune, and therefore the movement, are about to end. Detailed technical instruction is out of place at this stage, but great attention should be given to freedom of movement and to the avoidance of stiffness in the arms, shoulders and carriage of the head; and children should be taught to run and skip with a free and natural spring, without the pointing of the toes or holding out of skirts which are proper to some other kinds of dancing. Once these fundamentals have been grasped, the children can easily learn some of the simplest Country Dances, though this involves a considerable advance in difficulty, since to remember the pattern and order of a dance is much harder, for a child, than to move, almost instinctively, to a tune. The dances chosen must therefore be very simple in construction.

It should not be necessary to say that the quality of the musical accompaniment is vital to good dancing and, if there is no good pianist, it is better to use a gramophone, for which a sufficient number of folk dances have now been recorded. Little children, because of their shorter stride, need to have the tunes played faster than would suit an adult.

(ii) *The Junior School stage.*—Careful training in listening is still imperative, and the children must learn that the tune comes before the dance and that they cannot do the latter properly till they thoroughly know the former. It will now be possible to spend more time on the technique of the dances, and the children can learn to watch for their own place in the set and to adjust their movements and positions to those of others.

As soon as possible they must learn to dance in any position in a set and with any partner.

The quality of the step must be watched: it should be a clear, but not high, spring, from one foot to the other, with the knee firm but not stiff, the waist muscles firm and the upper part of the body quite free. In the skipping step the weight of the body should be in front of the feet. For all movements the weight of the body should be put forward beforehand, not allowed to fall back on the heels. As a singer takes breath before singing, so a dancer poises himself before he moves.

For Country dances the habit of boys and girls dancing together should be ingrained at this stage. The boys however may also well be taught the Sword dances of Northern England, which are men's dances and appeal more strongly to boys than to girls.

(iii) *The Senior School stage.*—Given enough time and intelligent teaching, Country dancing can now be carried to a high pitch of excellence. But too difficult dances must not be attempted, and stress should be laid on the dance as a continuous whole, with a character of its own, and not as a succession of separate movements. Failure to observe this leads to dancing that is correct but lifeless. Boys and girls should dance together whenever possible, and both sexes may be taught how valuable dancing is for their games and physical training.

Besides Sword dances, boys may now begin Morris dances. These involve strong muscular effort and are therefore best reserved for boys of 11 and upwards, while the physically weak should not attempt them. Only the easier dances should be attempted, and the teacher himself must be properly trained and be prepared to get results slowly. Girls can dance the Morris, but it is essentially a man's dance. The temptation to give displays of dancing in public before the children are fit for it should be resisted. On the other hand,

folk dance festivals, where the dancing has to stand the test of criticism and other children's dancing can be watched, are most valuable. But care must be taken that the festival team do not monopolise too much of the time at the expense of the rest of the school.

The Hall is the best place for dancing : if a playground or grass be used the music must be slower. Light shoes make dancing much easier and should always be worn.

A school band, with pipes or mouth organs and a drum, can do much to help the dancing and is a delightful and profitable form of musical activity. To teach folk dancing well is difficult, and it is not enough merely to be able to get safely through the dances which it is proposed to teach. A much wider and deeper background of theory and practice is required. The tunes must be carefully studied, both in themselves and in relation to other tunes. The character of each dance must be appreciated, as well as the fact that the steps and figures of a dance are no more than the bare words of an actor's part, which are dead until he gives them life.

Finally, English folk dancing has its roots in English folk lore. Teachers will find much in its history that will interest children, will give atmosphere to their dancing and will acquaint them with one of the characteristic aspects of the social history of the English people.

VI. PERCUSSION BANDS

34. Purpose and scope of this activity.—In recent years the principles underlying the formation of percussion bands have undergone considerable change. Formerly the instruments in use were of poor quality, being regarded as mere toys, and the teacher was content to regard the ' playing ' as a form of harmless relaxation which the children appeared, for a season at any rate, to enjoy. The music used on these occasions was

often trivial or banal, and in an unequal contest to gain a hearing the ' players ' were usually more successful than the pianist. In fact, the whole idea seemed purposeless.

More enlightened teachers, however, have seen in the percussion band a means of introducing young children to the first steps of rhythmic reading in staff notation. This is achieved by the use of charts and, later, of individual parts which are written out in the same way as those from which the percussion player in an orchestra would play. It has been found by experience, too, that the class as a whole will progress with greater spe d and uniformity if this part of the work is carefully graded.

It is immaterial whether the teacher or a succession of children conduct the band, but it is important that the beat should be clearly seen by all the players, and that only recognised methods of conducting should be employed. If, however, a child does conduct, his directions, whether right or wrong, should be followed by the teacher as well as by the band.

That the music chosen should be worth hearing goes without saying, but it is sometimes forgotten that the instruments should be accompanying the piano or gramophone, and not vice versa, so that the children should be encouraged to listen for the music all the time. This is not a counsel of perfection incapable of realisation, but a matter of considerable practical importance in view of the fact that progress in music must depend primarily upon the development of the listening ear, so that the sooner the habit is formed the better.

With this object in view several National Songs, classical pieces, and other suitable works have been edited with percussion band parts, thus giving young children the opportunity of actually taking part in the

performance of such pieces in the only way possible for them at this early age. A number of gramophone records of those pieces, also, have been made in order to facilitate the introduction of band work in schools where there is no one on the staff who is competent to play the piano sufficiently well.

Band work may be introduced at any stage, of course, in the Infant or Junior School, but it is certainly not beyond the average capacity of the 5-year old and, therefore, might well be introduced early where conditions allow and circumstances permit. Experience has now proved that the percussion band, in the hands of an alert and musicianly teacher, fosters and develops children's inborn sense of rhythm and gives them the thrill which is invariably associated with all concerted work of the best type.

There is no reason why this work should not be continued in the Junior School, provided that it is genuinely continuous and not carried on by a teacher who takes no account of the stage which the children have reached in the Infant School. In the later stages of the work, the band parts should not merely reflect the melodic tone of the music, but should approximate more closely to the percussion parts of an orchestral score.

In some Senior Schools, too, the experiment has been tried with the most backward pupils—and has been found to have succeeded in quickening their powers of concentration and in arousing their interest and has given them something both useful and interesting to do, which other classes in the school do not do, and perhaps, for lack of practice, could not do.

VII. PIPE BANDS

35. Value of pipe-making and pipe-playing.—In a growing number of schools the art of pipe making and playing is being taught. Those most commonly made and used are the treble (Key D), alto (A) and tenor (D),

which are proportioned according to Eastern peasant tradition, that is to say, with the simplest possible fipple heads on a wide bamboo bore thus giving a mellow, musical tone. The range is ten notes of the diatonic scale, with all the intervening accidentals, which are obtained by cross-fingering. These pipes can be made, given the few requisite tools, for a few pence, and suitably embellished, if desired.

Work of this kind is valuable in many ways. The ear training involved in the making of a pipe, which is built up note by note by ear, is useful. The importance of careful tuning cannot be insisted upon too strongly. If there is failure in this respect, it is due far more to lack of care and standard than of ability. Moreover, through frequent use of such an instrument when completed, the ear becomes accustomed to the fixed sounds of the scale and the player begins to acquire a sense of absolute pitch. Further, mastery of the pipe gives children ample opportunity for sight reading and transposition, as well as for improvisation and the making of melodies.

The importance of phrasing correctly, which involves good breath control, is rightly insisted upon by the best teachers, for no musical activity is of any aesthetic value unless it tends to develop in the pupils a keener sense of musicianship.

From time to time every music teacher in the Senior School is faced with the problem of the boy whose voice is changing and of the proper course to pursue. The first inclination no doubt would be to encourage him to take up the study of some orchestral instrument, if suitable tuition were available ; but this would frequently be a difficulty, and the musical pipe provides one solution, at any rate, for the teacher who feels diffident about his ability to deal with the boy's voice at this stage.

In company with others such a boy will learn to play in two, three and four parts and thus gain first hand

experience of music with which he would otherwise never have come into contact. Moreover, if he develops an interest in pipe playing is it unreasonable to hope that he will desire, at a later stage, to test his ability at playing a genuine instrument of the orchestra? For where interest in ensemble playing has been aroused in early childhood through the percussion band, and sustained later on by means of the Pipe band, the formation of a school orchestra would appear to be the normal corollary.

These pipes are useful, too, for accompanying Country dances, and can sound effective in combination with or in contrast to the singing class, the string class, or the percussion band.

VIII. APPRECIATION OF MUSIC

36. Appreciation should permeate all the teaching.—It is now generally understood that the function of the teacher who takes a class in "Appreciation of Music" is to inculcate an understanding of music. This understanding will add greatly to the enjoyment of music. Appreciation should not be regarded as a separate subject, but rather as permeating the whole of the music teaching. Opportunities will be found in Song singing, Sight singing, Aural Training, and other branches of the subject.

The first step is to cultivate the children's power of listening. This should be begun in the Infant School, by means of Rhythmic Movement and the Percussion Band. From very simple beginnings, such as the recognition of high and low pitch, final cadence, and rhythmic pattern, can be developed a genuine musical sense. From this comes the ability to imitate phrases, and to add satisfactorily balanced cadential phrases to short phrases supplied by the teacher. From this to Melody writing is but a step, leading to the understanding of simple forms through the stringing of melodic

phrases together, as exemplified in National songs. This is an excellent preparation for the understanding of more extended forms, such as the Rondo and the Minuet and Trio. The clear cut form of a Fugue, simply considered, makes it an excellent listening study for a class of children.

The teacher should talk as little as possible. His explanations should be carefully prepared, so enabling him to be concise and brief.

For wider study a gramophone with a stock of good records is essential. Gramophone records have the additional advantage of enabling the teacher to introduce the instruments of the orchestra to the children though of course attendance at children's concerts where the instruments of the orchestra may be seen as well as heard will make this classroom knowledge come alive.

The children should sometimes be allowed to hear a piece of music without any explanation from the teacher, giving their own ideas of its form and characteristics to the teacher afterwards.

The importance of the training of the ear in connexion with this subject cannot be too strongly emphasised. No one can properly appreciate music if he cannot listen properly.

Some general idea of musical history can be given incidentally in the course of the teaching, without attempting a series of lessons on the subject.

IX. SCHOOL BROADCASTS

37. Broadcast lessons and the schools.—Good reception is a primary requisite for the effective use of the music lesson as of all wireless lessons. Further, the course selected should be one suited to the powers and understanding of the children. Most of the courses assume a certain preliminary knowledge and a certain amount of preparation and following up on the part of the teacher, who should be prepared with the help

of the pamphlets published terminally by the B.B.C. to anticipate difficulties and resolve misunderstandings as they occur. An elementary course, however, designed for small schools where it may happen that there is no teacher with musical gifts on the staff has much to recommend it, and it may well enable children to acquire some musical knowledge who would otherwise be deprived of the opportunity. But for schools where there are members of the staff well qualified to take music the broadcast lesson will doubtless make its chief contribution through features not ordinarily available in schools—in particular, through the concert lessons.

Children taking wireless lessons should be supplied with manuscript books and pencils, and with copies of the relevant B.B.C. pamphlet.

X. FESTIVALS

38. Competitive and non-competitive festivals.—Festivals are of two kinds, competitive and non-competitive, the latter being a new and flourishing development.

(i) *Competitive festivals.*

The competitive Festival ought to be, and now generally is, conducted with the competitive principle kept in strict subordination to the educative value derived from hearing a number of other schools and receiving a reasoned judgment from an experienced adjudicator. Performance by the massed choirs is most valuable and ought not to be omitted, where the nature of the song and other conditions allow.

Undue concentration on the one or two pieces set for a Festival is contrary to the spirit of music ; occasionally however it happens that for some time before a Festival no other music is practised but the ' test-pieces.' The wise teacher will know that the danger of staleness in such conditions is very real, and he will give the

children plenty of change. If the right spirit is caught from the beginning a test-piece may often be at its best at about the sixth lesson or so after it has been begun.

(ii) *Non-competitive festivals.*

The non-competitive Festivals usually aim at bringing together a large number of schools from a comparatively small area. They are often found to succeed where the competitive type of Festival has not been established or has lapsed for want of support. They afford an incentive to schools that do not feel themselves sufficiently good to enter into a somewhat specialised competition but desire the training and inspiration which a great co-operative effort can give them. There is no reason why the two movements, competitive and non-competitive, should not flourish side by side; the aim of both is educational.

Massed rehearsals and concerts, frank and informal criticism delivered in private to the conductors, and a wide selection of songs are among the many advantages secured by the non-competitive Festival, which may be found more fully described in the Board's Educational Pamphlet No. 95 (*Recent Developments in School Music*).

XI. CONCERTS FOR SCHOOLS

39. Some points suggested by past experience.— The practice is growing of organising Concerts for school children at which children from a number of schools attend by arrangement. A few points arising out of past experience may be helpful :—

(1) The concert should not greatly exceed $1\frac{1}{4}$ hours.

(2) The most interesting type is found to be the orchestral concert. A full orchestra is a sure attraction, but children will listen to a string orchestra if it is competent.

(3) Much chamber music is apt to be somewhat intimate for large audiences, and nearly all such music is in extended form, which taxes the powers of concentration of inexperienced listeners. But if the programme is carefully chosen, and the programme is varied by solo instrumental work, or songs sung by a soloist, or singing by the audience, such concerts can be successful. From the point of view of expense, they are in some localities the most convenient type.

(4) There are obvious possibilities in concerts comprising such items as solos and duets, preferably instrumental, and performances by various types of choir.

(5) The selection of the programme is of the greatest importance. Descriptive pieces, suites, tone-poems, ballet music and the like seem to be the most easily appreciated. It goes without saying that modern composers and British composers should be represented as well as the ' classics.'

(6) If notices can be sent round early to schools, a brief description of the pieces will probably assist teachers to acquaint their pupils to some extent with what they are to hear. Any symphonic movement, in particular, requires some previous preparation if it is to be heard intelligently. Themes can be quoted, perhaps memorised, and the general idea of the form grasped. In addition to illustration on the piano, gramophone records are sometimes useful. But preliminary preparation should not be overdone.

(7) At the concert, it is beneficial for an expert to give a brief talk. It must not be academic in character, and it is not always easy to find the right speaker—one who will combine with a lightness of touch some solidity of matter, and who will be content to be brief. The talk need not be given

all at once; for example, the instruments of the orchestra will be better understood, if they are not taken in rapid succession from the first Violins to the Glockenspiel, but are dealt with in two talks or perhaps three, incidentally as it were, during the remarks on a piece which is about to follow.

(8) At some point in the concert it is a good thing for the children assembled to sing, to orchestral accompaniment, a song or two which they have prepared. This need not take more than a few minutes.

XII. THE SCHOOL ORCHESTRA

40. Composition and training of the orchestra.—Among the out-of-school musical activities that are to be met with in many Senior Schools few are more interesting than the formation of a school orchestra. Many children now learn to play the violin and other instruments after school hours and the schools have put this fact to good use.

Early training in percussion band work is an excellent preliminary for orchestral work later. Children who have had the advantage of playing in a properly conducted percussion band will have had experience of taking part in ensemble work, of reading a part, of following a conductor's beat, and of counting rests accurately. If the school possesses or can command the loan of some of the bigger stringed instruments, an enterprising boy or girl may be attracted towards the viola or the 'cello, while a musical child will find little except physical difficulty in mastering a "tonic and dominant" part on the double bass. In schools that have experimented with a pipe band, a potential supply of wind-players is at hand: in any case the possibilities of wind instruments should not be lost sight of; their great advantage, apart from portability, is the comparatively short time required to obtain reasonable

proficiency for simple orchestral work. Of the woodwind the flute and clarinet, and of the brass the cornet, have perhaps most to recommend them. It may be found possible to attract members of the staff to deal with some of the more intractable instruments. Unless the orchestra is unusually complete it is probable that the piano part will be needed: this should not be a mere transcription of the full orchestral score—it should rather be a specially written part calculated to supply the place of missing instruments or possibly to support, without elaborate figuration, instruments which, though not missing, are for any reason unreliable.

The music chosen should combine the merits of being good in itself and being playable. There are nowadays plenty of suitable publications, both original pieces and arrangements by reputable and experienced composers. If an orchestra has for some reason to undertake some piece that requires a more advanced technique than the players possess, it is usually practicable to simplify passages or transfer them from one instrument to another. A viola part, for example, can almost always be "faked" for a third violin. The conductor should at all times be prepared to re-score to this end, and the labour involved is amply compensated for by the increased effectiveness of the performance. There is a great deal of truth in the saying: "The best music for school orchestras is that scored by the conductor who knows the habits and peculiarities, the merits and defects, of the ephemeral personnel of his own band."

It cannot be too strongly urged that a substantial proportion of every practice should be devoted to sight-reading, which among other advantages encourages fluency and agility, fosters a spirit of self-reliance, and widens the repertoire. The music read should, of course, be carefully graded according to the capacity of the players.

CHAPTER VII

ART AND CRAFT

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. THE COMMON AIMS IN THE TEACHING OF ART AND CRAFT

1. Design—the common ground of the arts and crafts.—The chief purpose in combining the hitherto separate chapters on "Drawing" and "Handwork" and substituting for them a single chapter with the title "Art and Craft" is to stress the importance of design, which forms the common ground shared by Handicraft with Drawing and every other form of graphic art.

Design, which among other qualities, includes proportion, harmony, rhythm and pattern, is an essential element not only in all forms of expressive art, whether Music or Literature or such " fine arts " as Painting or Sculpture, but also in all forms of Craft work, whether executed in wood, metal or other material. The various arts, which are primarily concerned with the expression in outward form of ideas and experiences which make some special appeal to the artist, have each its own technique. Whatever he creates or interprets, the artist seeks to achieve something that will cause both in himself and in others a feeling of satisfaction,—similar perhaps to what we experience in our response to the works of nature—through the use of design appropriate to the medium he has chosen. So, too, the crafts, which are primarily concerned with the making of serviceable things in various materials, have each its own technique. The good craftsman, whilst suiting his treatment of his material to the particular end he has in view, seeks, like the artist, to arouse similar feelings of satisfaction by the use of appropriate design. Thus, design,—the character of which is determined, in each art, by the experiences it expresses and the medium employed, and, in each craft, by its practical purpose and the material used,—provides a link between the arts and the crafts.

2. Only certain kinds of " art " and " craft " dealt with in this chapter.—The present chapter deals with only those forms of art, which are known as the " graphic " or " plastic " arts, and the appeal of which is primarily to the eye, and those forms of craft which are frequently spoken of as the traditional crafts. Between these crafts and drawing, painting, modelling and kindred activities the underlying connexion is particularly close and it is important that teachers both of art and of craft should lay greater emphasis than they have done in the past on good design, which here includes

the right use of materials, sound workmanship, good proportion and appropriate decoration.

Though the use of the term " art " in this chapter is restricted to graphic and plastic art, this limitation, necessary for the sake of convenience, should not be taken as implying either that what is said of them does not hold good, *mutatis mutandis*, of the other forms of artistic expression which have their part to play in a general education, or that the domestic crafts and gardening will not depend for life and interest on the extent to which they, too, exhibit the touch of the artist.

3. The need for co-operation between the art teacher and the craft teacher.—" Art " and " handicraft " then, are not two separate sections of the curriculum which imply different outlooks; they should properly be regarded as part and parcel of one important branch of teaching. Bookbinding, for instance, provides a useful example of a craft in which artistic considerations and qualities of good workmanship must be associated if it is to be successfully practised; it is immaterial whether it be put into a pigeon-hole labelled " art " or into one labelled " handicraft." This does not mean that drawing and design done on paper should not play an important part in the work of the school, but it is essential that the same spirit should govern both art and craft work throughout the school and that there should be no unreal distinction or artificial barrier between them.

But if we are to make the best possible use of the available teaching power, it follows that all concerned with art and craft must be very willing and ready to work together with a common aim and that anything in the nature of watertight compartments must be avoided. Moreover, co-operation should not be assumed to be complete when the art and the craft teachers have

entered into a successful partnership. The spirit which is made manifest in their teaching should permeate the whole school, and the choice of fittings and decorations should result in the provision of a cheerful and inspiring environment for all school activities.

4. The appreciation of design.—The school should do its utmost to provide each new generation as it passes through it with the power to appreciate and to demand well designed homes and well designed articles of all kinds. To achieve this the children themselves should be placed in a bright and cheerful environment, and surrounded with pleasant and soundly made articles of daily use. Secondly, the things they make in the handicraft or art room should be fully considered from the point of view of good design. There is, of course, a place for bringing to the attention of school children, specifically, what is good in design in everyday use outside the school; but the first thing to do is to attend to their immediate surroundings and to see that no ugly, over-decorated or unsuitable things of any kind are permitted to be made in the school.

5. The importance of art and craft in daily life.—There has been a tendency in the past to look upon some subjects of the curriculum as means of acquiring such knowledge or skill as would have a practical bearing on life, but to look upon art as an ornamental frilling, more or less desirable, applied to the fabric of education, admirable, possibly, as a preparation for leisure, but having little contact with everyday affairs. If, however, a wider view is taken, and art and craft are regarded as including design, as suggested above, it will be seen that nothing in the school curriculum has a closer contact with life. While few people are called upon to use draughtsmanship to any extent, all are called upon to exercise choice between what is good and what is less good in matters of shape and colour and craftsmanship,

and to take action, either as individuals or as members of the community, which will affect their environment. The choice of clothes, house, furniture, arrangement of furniture, and the decoration of a room, all call for discriminating judgment.

As a member of the community, the individual is called upon to exercise his judgment in matters concerned with public building, town planning, and the preservation of all that has beauty and character in his neighbourhood and in the countryside. The individual, of course, has little opportunity to exercise his influence directly in some of these matters, but a well informed and well disposed public opinion is a potent force. It has been said that a nation gets the art that it deserves. On the whole this is probably true, and so it is therefore important that the public opinion of the future in these matters shall be rightly formed in our schools today. With these considerations in mind it is possible to determine the place of Art and Craft in the education of the young.

6. The educational value of art and craft.—It is clear that training in draughtsmanship, although it may still be of value as a means to an end, is not a sufficient end in itself. The love of drawing, painting, and making things seems to be instinctive in every normal child. By such means he expresses ideas about the things which surround him, long before he can use the written word, and this outlet for his lively imagination must be fostered and developed to the full. The spontaneity, the freshness and vigour which are characteristic of the free expression of young children's drawing and painting should be recognised as of greater importance than an imitative accuracy, but it should equally be recognised that for the normal child it is as natural to make progress towards adult standards in the language of drawing as in the written word.

Imagination and the strengthening of the creative impulse may be fostered just as fully through craft work as by drawing and picture making : indeed some children will find greater satisfaction and more profit through handling other tools and material than pencil, brush and paper. The teacher should find time for discussion, for consideration of examples of the art and craftsmanship, hand or machine, not only of the past but of the present. For this purpose pictures and illustrations may be used when original works are not available, as they seldom will be. This method of teaching will not be confined to the study of museum pieces, but will deal with contemporary building and articles of everyday use. As a background to these more positive influences which are brought to bear on the child's development, there will be those which may be considered as more incidental but none the less very important, the influence of the environment provided by the class room, the school and its surroundings, and the active part which the children are called upon to take in creating that environment.

To sum up, it may be said that the purpose of including instruction in Art and Craft in the education of the child is twofold :—

(1) to encourage the child's natural impulse to give visible form to his ideas and to develop in him the power to do this with courage, sincerity and vividness ;

(2) to make him actively aware of what is beautiful in nature and art and what is fine and honest in craftsmanship.

7. Some considerations governing choice of method.—These are the aims towards which the methods of teaching will be directed. But there are many ways of reaching the same end, and the teacher's choice of method—apart from fundamental matters

of technique—will be determined by a variety of considerations. Among these will be his own individual interests and special aptitudes, the accommodation and equipment of the school, the type of locality, and the potential help of other institutions, such as Art Schools, Museums and Galleries, and, most important of all, the varying characteristics and abilities of his pupils. For this reason a rigid and uniform scheme of work is obviously undesirable.

8. Stages in the teaching of art and craft.—In Art and Craft no less than in other branches of school-work it is important that from the Infant to the Junior School stage, and from the Junior to the Senior School stage, development should be continuous and without any sudden deflection or interruption of the course. If anywhere a change in the method of approach is justified on the ground of a change in the child's way of looking at things, it is at the beginning of the Senior School stage, or at about the age of 11.

Up to that time, if there is no unwise interference, most children pass through stages which show a steady development of knowledge, a growing power to form and retain a visual image, and an increasingly vivid and lively use of such images. It would be misleading to say that the change in a child's attitude to drawing comes at any definite age; children do not conform to rule so readily, but it appears to be generally true that, after the age of eleven, most children become more conscious of the exact appearance of the things which surround them, and more ready to compare their own representation of an object with its actual appearance In the same way they pass through the stages of developing more and more muscular control, more and more skill and inventiveness in construction and design, until the time comes when they wish to achieve something that is comparable to the craftsmanship of adults.

II ART AND HANDWORK AT THE INFANT SCHOOL STAGE

A. DRAWING AND PAINTING

9. Drawing in the Infant School.—Teachers of Infants have long been aware that it is natural for the normal child to use drawing as a means of expression, and for many years drawing has had a clearly recognised place in many of the activities of the Infant School It should be realised, however, that the use of drawing as a language, as a sort of picture-writing with which to express ideas, is only one aspect of the artistic development of young children. Even at this stage the children's natural love of colour may be stimulated, and their sense of pattern developed, while they may be encouraged to take an active part in the decoration and arrangement of the school room.

The child's drawing begins with meaningless scribble, but these marks, whether by accident or by design, soon begin to assume forms to which names are given For the most part the earliest drawings of this type are formalised pictures of the human figure. Later, symbols representing houses, engines, trees, and animals, appear. In the early stages, one symbol may often be used to represent all animals ; later, additions or alterations are made to differentiate between various animals.

It is generally agreed that the free drawing of children before school age is almost entirely drawing from memory and remains so during the early years of school life, although exceptions to this generalisation may be found. It is of little use to ask a child of Infant School age to draw an object from sight. To do so, he has to face a complex problem, and the fact that he may not be conscious of the processes through which he has to go does not make the task easier. He has to envisage the new form, to analyse it, to form a mental picture

of each part that is being drawn, and to go through what may be completely new manual movements in transferring it to paper. In drawing from memory the child is using mental pictures which have already been formed and probably used before, either wholly or in part; for in representing new forms he usually adapts and adds fresh features to symbols which he has used before.

With the general mental development of the child come clearer and better defined mental pictures and a greater power of analysis and co-ordination between eye and hand, with a corresponding movement towards a more realistic treatment As the child's store of visual images is constantly being enriched by new experience, he becomes more and more able to differentiate between various shapes in his drawings. Even when young children are attempting to draw from sight, their drawings usually record what they know rather than what they see. Children's drawings of houses, showing not only three sides of the houses but all their contents, are examples of this characteristic.

It has been said that such early drawing has little in common with art, since it lacks conscious arrangement of the symbols used. But if in so occupying himself a child is seeking to represent his experiences, is struggling towards a more adequate way of expression, and is using his imagination in the arrangement of the formalised shapes he employs, then he is following the impulses that are the basis of all true art. Not that children's drawings can be called works of art: such works can only be the product of experiences of life richer and deeper than those of a child. It is possible, indeed, to exaggerate the intrinsic value of children's drawings, but scarcely possible to exaggerate the charm and spontaneity of the best work of this kind.

In the Infant School, then, the teacher's part is one of sympathetic encouragement rather than direct teaching,

but if she is to be ready with the right kind of encouragement, and to know when to give it, she must give some time to the study of the drawings of the individual children in her charge. It is realised that this is not an easy thing to do in large classes, but it is vital to any real progress.

10. The growth of observation in Infants' drawing. —As the children reach the upper classes of the Infant School, some of their pictures will show greater powers of observation; the content will be richer, and the pictorial form more complex. It is well at this stage deliberately to direct the children's attention to the interesting and colourful things about them, either by describing familiar scenes to them, or by suggesting for their observation subjects which are familiar to them, before asking them to make a picture. Some children have such lively and active imaginations that they are never at a loss for subjects to draw and paint. Such children may very well be allowed to choose their own subjects; but not all can do without some external stimulus. It will be found that some subjects have a common appeal for the majority of children in a class, and individuality will then show itself in the variety of ways in which the same subject will be tackled by different children.

In the attempt to "develop imagination," there has been a tendency to choose subjects which project the child's mind into a world of fantasy. Fairies and gnomes have been too frequently used as the main source of inspiration for imaginative work. Unfortunately, when asked to depict a fairy, the child has no visual image based on experience and inevitably falls back on memory of "picture book" fairies. As the artist of the picture book suffers from the same disability as the child, the result can only be a repetition of the popular version of the conventional fairy. As a general

rule, it is desirable to choose subjects which are within the personal experience of the children : though it is not suggested that subjects should never be set which introduce elements outside the child's experience. Some of the most delightful drawings and paintings done by children have had biblical or historical subjects for their themes, but here, although the background or the costumes may have been inspired by pictures seen at one time or another, the people and the situations portrayed are real to the child and are often treated with a charming naivety and simplicity.

Naturally the children's individual interests should be studied and encouraged. The boy who likes to watch trains should be encouraged to make pictures of them. Many children enjoy making a series of pictures of the various incidents in a connected story, and the drawings made by a number of children may be mounted to make a picture book, whether they illustrate a story, or an experience which they have enjoyed together, or which has been vividly described, such as, for example, a visit to a farm or to the Zoo.

II. The development of design in the work of young children.—The drawings of young children suggest that most of them have an instinctive feeling for pattern, but conscious recognition of design or composition comes considerably later than narrative drawing in the child's development, though many children at this stage will enjoy inventing patterns that involve the use of colour

These patterns may be built up from pieces of coloured paper, or from beads of various shapes, or may be carried out boldly with pastel or with a large brush and water-colour, on large pieces of paper. It may help the children to feel the rhythmic quality of pattern if the movements of the hand in making these large scale designs are sometimes related to other kinds of activity.

The beat of music, or of marching feet, will help to suggest pattern rhythm, and the child who has enjoyed rhythmic exercises is likely to have an added feeling for the rhythmic arrangement of shapes and colour which is fundamental to good pattern.

Coloured paper may be cut into various simple shapes and moved about on a background of paper until the child feels satisfied with the pattern which has been built up. This is an approach to pattern from a different angle, and the method will also be found very helpful in dealing with pictorial as well as with abstract pattern. Usually children realise the pattern made by their pictures more easily when dealing with the simple, bold shapes, which they cut from paper and arrange in this way, than when drawing with the pencil. But there is no end to the media which may be used in making simple patterns.

12. The teacher's function in regard to art in the Infant School.—There is no place for the specialist art teacher in the Infant School. The teacher's function here is not to show the children how to draw, but to give them guidance, and for this she need not be highly qualified as a practitioner, provided that she has sympathy, understanding, imagination and a love of beautiful things. The child should be free to use his own symbols and, if he is not hampered by imposed standards, these symbols will develop as his mind becomes fuller. He is constantly meeting fresh experiences and storing his imagination, not only with fantasy, but with memories of everyday occurrences, and it is the incidents of everyday life that are the real stimulus to imagination, and that form the inspiration of the pictures which most children enjoy making.

It is possible for the teacher to do much by suggestion and encouragement to stimulate ideas. Thus she may direct the children's attention to things worth studying,

—trees or clouds, for instance, or the effects of the wind, —so that their visualisation may be clearer and more lively. She will observe carefully the way in which the children set about their drawing. No doubt most of them will quite naturally or by imitation handle the pastel, brush, or crayon easily and effectively, but at times it may be necessary to correct certain faulty ways of manipulation, which, if left alone, might be difficult to alter later on.

13. Some suggestions on the choice of materials. —It is important, at this early stage especially, that drawings and paintings should be made on a large scale. Bold, vigorous movements of the hand and arm should be encouraged, and these are impossible when small pieces of paper and finely pointed tools are used.

The use of large sheets of paper undoubtedly raises serious difficulties in crowded classrooms provided with desks which are not suitable for drawing, but these difficulties are being successfully overcome in many schools. Sheets of ply-wood or stout millboard, with a spring clip to hold the paper, form excellent substitutes for drawing-boards. Powder or tempera colour, which can be obtained in tins ready for use, is comparatively cheap and may, therefore, be supplied to the children in the generous quantities which are necessary if large scale work is to be carried on.

B. HANDWORK

14. Handwork in the Infant School.—Handwork occupies an important place in the Infant School. It should not be treated as an isolated subject, nor indeed as a subject at all, but it should give reality to the general activities of the school. In the very early stages one of the most valuable forms of handwork for children is to be found in the performance of everyday duties, such as watering plants, attending to

flowers and flower pots, arranging things in the room, playing with and stacking away toys, and putting on their own clothes.

The children should have full opportunities for gaining experience in handling the ordinary materials that normally surround them and should, in this way, learn something about what can and what cannot be done with them.

Freedom of manipulation in a number of media is desirable, and the teacher may profitably suggest methods of using these media and new ideas of construction.

During the early days of childhood attempts at developing muscular control should be mainly concerned with the larger muscles : fine work with the hands and fingers should not be expected. Such informal work does not imply a lack of progress ; for the teacher will be fully occupied in helping the child to overcome difficulties as they occur. This is the stage when experience is gained in meeting and handling materials and in acquiring technique of a simple kind, and the children should have a rich field from which to choose. They will rarely need formal directions, since the child will find greater scope in experimenting with toys and improvised models of his own invention than in making things to the teacher's design and measurements.

15. Modelling and its uses.—Modelling provides most valuable experience at all stages of a child's development, not only as a means to fuller understanding of the shapes with which he is dealing, but as a means of expression. Children seem to get a special satisfaction from working in three dimensions. When modelling is used as a means to a fuller understanding of the appearance of things, it is sometimes helpful to relate it to the two-dimensional drawing, but at this stage, it will most often be used as a means of expressing ideas of things imagined. Undoubtedly clay is the best material for

the purpose ; its cheapness makes it possible to provide each child with a reasonably large quantity and to throw it away when it has become soiled. Much of the modelling done in the schools is dull and spiritless because the children have insufficient material to make any real freedom of treatment possible. It is realised, however, that there are disadvantages in the use of clay in the classroom. It may be messy, and many teachers have abandoned its use for this reason.

III. THE JUNIOR SCHOOL STAGE

A. DRAWING AND PAINTING

16. The transition to the Junior School.—There should be no abrupt change in the methods of teaching when children pass from the Infant to the Junior School. In their drawing and painting, courage, freedom and a lively imagination are still more important than technical accomplishment.

At this stage, a series of exercises, however carefully planned, showing how things should be drawn, often gives the child the impression that his spontaneous efforts are not acceptable : such help may result in making him afraid to commit himself, so that his drawing becomes stereotyped and lacking in individuality. It is the teacher's part to provide suitable materials through which the child can express his ideas with reasonable hope of success, and to help him to see with steadily increasing power the things that he wishes to draw. Even when provided with materials, many children will need the help of suggestion before their ideas can be brought together into pictorial form, but they should be free to accept or reject the suggestions that are made.

In the Junior School it is possible to introduce the first stages of practice in Lettering. The making of free rhythmic patterns with crayon, charcoal, or brush,

filled in with washes of colour, will be followed by the making of printed patterns by means of simple printing processes, e.g. printing from potato, stick, or rubber cuts, and these exercises in pattern-making will be linked with the simple craft operations which will be carried on throughout the course.

Even with children under the age of eleven early experiments in pattern-making may be applied to practical ends. Attractive drop-curtains and back-cloths may be made for model theatres and puppet-shows, dolls' houses may be decorated, and patterned papers may be made for the picture-books in which they bring together their pictorial drawings, while children of nine or ten will probably be making use of simple patterns in stitchery and in weaving.

17. What the art course in the Junior School may do for the child.—The child who is given the right experience and the right training in art will, as he progresses through the Junior School, acquire increased facility in the manipulation of the pencil or brush, and increased power of representing on paper what he has in mind; he will have developed skill and taste in the arrangement of colour and form and have become more vividly aware of what he sees around him.

B. HANDWORK

18. Gradual development based on interest.—In the teaching of handwork also it is important that there should be continuity from the Infant School stage when the child enters the Junior School. Much of what is now done will be directed by the child's own interests, but it should constantly be borne in mind that the child should be learning the right and proper use of materials. Thus, things should not be constructed in paper that are better made in cardboard, or in raffia that would be better made in wool.

The child in the Junior School soon takes a pleasure in making things that he can use. He will put a great deal of work into anything that helps him in his play or in his school interests. It must be remembered that the desire to make things is at the root of all craftsmanship, and unless the teacher is continually giving the children some stimulus to make things the teaching may become formal and a distaste for work may develop.

19. Types of work suitable for juniors.—Children at this stage begin to show a real interest in the traditional crafts: Needlework, Pottery, Weaving, Bookcrafts, and the simple Woodwork involved in making toys It is the teacher's task to see that the work that is undertaken is well within the power of the children and, while there should be no over-emphasis in the matter of technique, children must not be left to flounder aimlessly for lack of guidance, nor should slovenly work be tolerated. Most children will like to know the best methods of doing things, and it will be necessary to teach certain traditional methods, so that simple technique may be acquired and mastery over simple tools may be gained. As the junior course proceeds there will naturally be a narrower range of materials used, because the children will show a preference for dealing with the more resistant materials, and will tend consequently to discard other materials. At the same time they will realise the need for working with greater precision, and for measuring with a reasonable degree of accuracy. It is not too soon to make a beginning in one of the traditional crafts

The expression of ideas in a wide variety of media is generally considered to be best associated with the illustration of Geography, History and Literature. Excellent opportunities are afforded in communal work, where the best individual efforts are combined to make a well-constructed and pleasing whole. At this

stage children will be allowed considerable freedom in the selection of the things they wish to make and the formal side will not be emphasised, but work clearly beyond their capacity should be discouraged and they should not be left entirely to their own devices as this brings disappointment. The discriminating teacher will welcome the opportunity, however, of giving guidance at the right moment in the selection of material and the methods of construction, sometimes to a whole class, sometimes to individuals. Later in the course there will be lessons in which the teacher gives definite instruction to the class as a whole. It is hardly necessary to emphasise the importance of associating the art work with the handwork activities throughout the course.

20. The organisation of the course ; equipment ; use of staff.—Whether the work which is attempted is connected with the expression of ideas, the illustration of lessons in other subjects, or practice in the fundamentals of a traditional craft, the competence of the teacher will determine the progress that is made and the standard that is reached. No course is likely to be satisfactory unless there is a progressive scheme and the difficulties of the children are adequately dealt with as they naturally occur. While some class lessons will be necessary, there will be many occasions when the class will be split up into groups, so that the children may receive more individual help than is possible in a class lesson. It is not assumed that on these occasions all the pupils are necessarily engaged in craft work. It is the common practice now in well-equipped Junior Schools to provide a "practical" room with adequate floor space, and with tables, chairs or stools, sink, water supply and ample storage.

In the teaching of the traditional crafts much of the apparatus can be made in the school, as, for example,

sewing-frames for bookbinding and simple looms for weaving. Such apparatus should be well made and its making will provide sound training in adaptability and resource. The children have in fact reached the stage at which they can make really useful articles of various kinds; and it is in this way that their desire is strengthened to make things which serve their purpose and the satisfaction is gained that comes from doing things well.

While the Junior Schools may be better served by the appointment of general rather than specialist teachers, there are obvious advantages in making the best use of the special gifts and interests of the various members of the staff. This is especially true of craft teaching in the upper classes of the Junior School. Whenever the organisation of the School permits of some interchange of class teachers, full advantage should be taken of their special knowledge and skill.

21. What the handwork course in the Junior School may do for the child.—At the end of the course, whatever particular form it may have taken, the children should have developed greater muscular control than they had at the beginning and should in consequence be able to deal with more resistant materials. They should have learnt to use a wider range of tools and to work with greater precision. They should have acquired some skill in measurement and construction and should have begun to appreciate the value of careful workmanship.

IV. THE SENIOR SCHOOL STAGE

22. The unity of art.—Recognition of the fundamental unity of Art, whether it is expressed by means of brush and pencil or through some form of handicraft, is essential, especially in the Senior School. The association of the Art teaching with the Craft work in the school

should help teachers and children to realise that Art is not an isolated subject in the curriculum but has a bearing on the work and life of the school as a whole, and also on many aspects of everyday life outside its walls.

The growing public appreciation, however, of the value of instruction in craft work should not lead to undue neglect of drawing and painting, there will be many children in the Senior School who will continue to find great pleasure in draughtsmanship of all kinds, and even those who find greater satisfaction in craft work will discover that increased skill in drawing is a powerful factor in developing those qualities which make for fine design in craft.

A. DRAWING AND PAINTING

(1) *Self-expression*

23. Self-expression through drawing and painting. —The attitude of most children to drawing and painting undergoes a change in the period between the ages of nine and twelve. They begin to be more interested in the impressions made on them by external things than in their own visual images. But this change is usually a gradual one and there should be no sudden break in the methods of teaching. Certainly there is no justification for the abandonment of expressive or imaginative drawing and painting. No teacher would think of equipping children with the vocabulary of a language, a knowledge of its grammar, and the ability to make the symbols used in writing it, and then withhold all opportunity for the expression of ideas by the use of it. Yet it is still possible to find schools where the whole time given by the older children to drawing is spent in acquiring knowledge of the appearance of things and the technique of draughtsmanship, without making any use of this knowledge to express ideas. Some teachers, on the other

hand, have taken the view that at no period of the child's school life should any instruction be given which will equip it with a knowledge of technique approaching that of the adult. While it is true that work of very great interest has been done by children taught by those who hold this point of view, there appears to be a desire, even among teachers in countries where the most modern experimental methods have been adopted, to secure a reasonable balance between the acquisition of knowledge and skill and their use in the expression of ideas. This is not the place to make a critical comparison of various methods, but it seems reasonable to suppose that there will be some analogy between the normal child's progress towards adult conceptions and adult technique in graphic art and its progress in the use of the written word. Pretentiousness, self-consciousness and unintelligent imitation are to be avoided in both these means of expression, but few teachers would be prepared to withhold all formal teaching in the study of written and spoken language. Naivety is only a virtue when it is sincere. What is sometimes praised as naivety in the work of an older child may be either an indication of retarded development or an especially objectionable form of insincerity.

It is certainly desirable that the child should be free to use its own language of expression in its own way without the imposition of adult standards by the teacher, but teachers should not have too great a fear of influencing the child. The teacher is not dealing with virgin soil The average child has been subjected to many influences, good, bad and indifferent, before it comes into contact with the teacher. The child is influenced quite as much indirectly as directly, and often a teacher who carefully avoids actively influencing the child, does in fact exercise an unconscious influence by his or her preferences. The child has an uncanny gift for discovering what the teacher admires.

If, however, representational or imitative drawing and painting is to have its place in the scheme of instruction, the teacher should be sure that it is given at the right time and for the right reason, and that the objects used for study are suitable, and such as will excite the child's interest. Ability to represent faithfully and objectively the whole or a part of something seen may be of great value in connexion with many subjects of the curriculum, especially Nature Study and Science. There are occasions when a child draws an object in order to become better acquainted with its external qualities and to represent these qualities, or the more important of them, quite dispassionately, just as there are occasions when he seeks to express what that object means to him personally.

(ii) *Representational drawing*

24. Representational drawing considered as a means of acquiring knowledge and skill.—Some teachers hold the view that the right time for acquiring technique comes when it is clear that the child finds that his expression of ideas is hampered by his inability to depict a shape in a way which satisfies his growing realisation of the appearance of things, and that he should then be encouraged to study that shape in its simple basic form, and to draw it not only from one but from several points of view. These drawings should not be laborious examples of complete representation, but rather take the form of quickly made notes of the essentials. There is no doubt that most children gain a more comprehensive knowledge of the shape studied if they are allowed to handle the object, and, if it is a complex one, to study its construction and the working of any movable parts.

It is clear that the use of such a method, excellent as no doubt it is, is bound to be subject to the limitation of teaching conditions. Large classes and cramped

quarters will make its adoption difficult, and many teachers may still find it necessary to use methods less individual in character.

Some teachers who have to teach large classes feel that they can make the acquisition of knowledge reasonable and interesting to the children if the object or group of objects studied is used for a definite purpose in a later lesson. If this is done, the children should be encouraged to look upon the knowledge they have gained as suggesting ideas rather than demanding realistic reproduction, and they should be free to use any convention they wish, either of shape or colour, in making their design. It is very desirable that the children should be able to handle the objects and take an active part in their arrangement, but, again, the use of this method is affected by the size of classes and exigencies of accommodation. Even when children are making drawings or paintings from the actual objects, their imagination should have free play in their portrayal of these objects.

25. Representational drawing considered as an aid to the appreciation of form and colour.—Representational drawing may be considered as a means not only of acquiring knowledge, but also of developing a more sensitive appreciation of form, colour, texture, and pattern. This appreciation will come first through the teacher's choice of objects and secondly by his asking the pupils to compare shapes and to discuss them, in relation to other shapes and to their surroundings. It is as absurd to ask children to imitate poor, mean, and characterless shapes, and meretricious pattern, as it would be to ask them to sing inferior music or recite inferior verse. If a part of the lesson is given to discussion and comparison of such qualities as shape, colour, construction, or texture, and if all these qualities are considered in relation to fitness for purpose

representational drawing may be one of the most useful aids to the development of the power to choose between what is good and what is less good—one of the most important aims the teacher has in view. If the children also take a share in the grouping and arrangement of the objects under discussion, they are exercising their imagination by doing what they will be called upon to do in everyday life, that is to say by designing with actual things rather than with abstract shapes on paper.

The provision of objects worthy of study is a matter of selection rather than cost. They can be found in the kitchen and the workshop, in fact wherever the use clearly dictates the form. This is not to say that objects which have other qualities should be excluded. The texture and colour of a textile or a piece of pottery may not vitally affect its usefulness, but may be well worth study for its intrinsic beauty; the effect of light on shape and surface, the modification of colour caused by reflection, and the effect of balance in grouping, are all points of interest for study and discussion.

26. The drawing of plants and flowers, and their decorative treatment.—Representational drawing should by no means be limited to the drawing of inanimate objects Children are interested in living and growing things. Flowers, leaves and berries have long formed subjects for drawing and painting, but too often little has been done to help the children to see the characteristic growth, form and colour of the various plants studied, the individual beauty which is so often a result of their fitness for their particular struggle for existence. A twig broken from a tree may be beautiful in its detail, but seldom gives any conception of the magnificence of the tree from which it comes. It will not always be easy for children to draw from the growing tree, but even in large towns it will usually be possible for children to make rapid notes in parks and gardens,

which they can use when drawing and painting from memory in the classroom. Sometimes it is possible to provide plants growing in pots: the child need not necessarily draw the whole plant, but the part which is drawn will be seen in relation to the plant as a whole. When the drawings from plants and flowers are made with a view to filling a certain space in a pleasing manner the children are called upon to think of those questions of proportion, of spacing and distribution, which are some of the problems of the designer. Incidentally, in connexion with the teaching of nature drawing, it is desirable to stress the need for care and economy in the collection of specimens, so that the study of nature does not lead to the despoiling of the countryside.

27. Representational drawing and imagination.—Children will enjoy drawing one another, especially when engaged in the familiar activities of the school, the home and the street they will enjoy drawing other things that appeal to them—animals, buildings, ships, motor cars, or aeroplanes.

It may be said that some of these cannot be subjects for representational drawing, because they cannot be studied in the school room, but a drawing from memory may be a representational drawing. It is not unusual for teachers to speak of any drawing which has not been made from sight as an imaginative drawing, but this is not necessarily a correct description. A memory drawing in which an attempt is made to give an accurate representation of an object or a scene need not make any demands on the imagination. If, however, the elements of such a drawing are visualised in such a way as to produce pattern, or express an emotional experience, imagination has played a part

The teacher should foster the child's desire to arrange the elements of an exercise in picture making in such a way as to make a pleasing arrangement. The

imposition of any formal rules of composition is, of course, most undesirable; but inspiration may be found in the study of good examples of pattern in nature, in the various crafts, and in fine works of art. At a time also when children are drawing and painting flowers, the teacher may show them fine examples of the decorative treatment of plants and flowers, such as reproductions of Chinese and Japanese treatments of these subjects, or our own beautiful XVIII Century English Herbals. Imitation of such examples should, of course, be strongly discouraged, but to withhold from the children the pleasure and profit to be gained from the study of great works of art and craft for fear that they will imitate them is to carry caution too far. Children will often be found to have an instinctive sense of design of which they themselves are scarcely aware, and the skilful teacher will develop this characteristic without allowing their ideas to become stereotyped. Drawing from memory, which comes so naturally to the young child, should be encouraged throughout the whole period of school life. The ability to represent things seen depends more on the power to form and to retain a clear visual image than on manual dexterity, and a lively imagination depends for its expression on the richness and clarity of the store of visual images. The child draws only that part of an object of which it has a more or less clearly defined visual image, and the growth of its powers of draughtsmanship is very much in proportion to the growth of the power to form and retain such images. Much of the memory training will be incidental, the teacher encouraging the children to draw from objects or scenes studied sometime previously, inside the classroom or in their homes, in the streets or elsewhere. Some of the difficulties of overcrowded classrooms, with the consequent difficulties of giving a clear view of an object, will be minimised if the pupils are trained to depend less on sight and more on memory.

(iii) *Training in colour*

28. The "sense of colour."—Very diverse opinions are held by teachers as to the best method of developing the child's "sense of colour." There is little doubt of the importance of its place in any system of art training. The reaction of young children to the stimulus of bright colours is evident to all; but this instinctive emotional reaction will not give them the capacity to use colour with judgment. In one way or another, the power both to enjoy and to use colour with understanding as well as feeling should be developed.

It has been found that Infants, if given a set of colours, will often produce paintings which are surprisingly good from the point of view of "colour," without having had any colour training. This would seem to suggest that many very young children are naturally endowed with a "colour sense," and that it might be advisable to consider whether theoretical instruction is necessary at any stage of the child's training. Many teachers, indeed, hold that the formal teaching of colour on a scientific basis, even at later stages, is a barrier to the free use of colour which they hold to be an imperative necessity to the child. They prefer to leave the child entirely free in its selection and in its arrangement, leading it through its own experiments towards a use of colour which will be personal and expressive, and there is no doubt that some of the most stimulating and interesting work seen in schools has been the result of this way of teaching. It must be recognised, however, that the children's choice is bound to be limited by the materials provided, and that their arrangement of colour can scarcely escape the influence of their environment, their proneness to imitation of others, and the teacher's predilections.

Other teachers prefer to give progressive exercises in the use of colour. They argue that the child

should be trained to make a discriminating use of colour, based on knowledge, from the earliest stages of school life, starting with a restricted field, which progressively widens, and that the range of colours used should conform to a scientific theory. One advantage of such a system is that it provides a standard nomenclature for colour, thus simplifying teaching and discussion. It is claimed also that it removes many of the difficulties of dealing with design in relation to certain of the crafts, since it makes it possible to supply materials, such as wool, silk, and cotton, in colours standardised in accordance with the same colour system. The danger of attempting to train the " colour sense " by formulating rules is that it may be thought possible to provide a recipe for good colour. Reaction to colour is so personal that it is very difficult, if not impossible, to define " good " colour, and it is certain that no system of training will result in a person who is insensitive to colour becoming a good colourist, any more than a person who has no ear for music can become a good musician. This does not mean that ability to appreciate colour, even in unpromising pupils, cannot be brought out by skilful teaching Nature may be used as a source of inspiration: the children may study plants and flowers, butterflies, feathers and so on, with a view to making some simple analysis of the colours found and the proportions in which they appear, and the result of their analyses may form the basis of further experiment in the use of colour Later, works of art and examples of craft may be studied in the same manner.

B. CRAFT WORK

29. The importance of craft work at the Senior School stage.—Handwork and craftwork will form an important part of the curriculum for all types of children in the Senior School. It cannot be too strongly emphasised that the brighter children need this type

of activity just as much as those of lower mental capacity.

The acquired skill with the consequent mastery of materials should now be applied systematically to one or more of the traditional crafts, such as Woodwork, Metalwork, Needlework, Weaving, Bookcrafts, the Domestic crafts and Gardening. Both the technical and the cultural aspects will be borne in mind, and there should be no hard and fast line of demarcation between art and craftwork. The articles that are made should be of the right material, fit for their purpose, of sound construction, good proportion and pleasing finish. Stimulating and effective teaching, with appropriate apparatus, should develop in the children the power to make things which give lasting pleasure to use and to see. In such work they will find, later on, occupations for their leisure-time, and through it will be the better able to appreciate good design and sound workmanship.

Effective teaching should lead boys and girls to realise and appreciate the value of good craftsmanship, and their standard of taste should be raised through their own work as well as by examples around them, which should have been carefully chosen by the teacher.

A simple reference library as a source of ideas and information is a necessity, and visits to works, exhibitions, and museums, can be of great value.

(i) *Some general principles relating to craftwork.*

30. The transition to the Senior School.—The improved facilities for art and crafts in the Junior School have already been noted. An even more generous provision is now made in Senior Schools. In addition to the rooms for Woodwork, Metalwork and Housecraft, special rooms are being provided and equipped for art and crafts. The term "centre" is fast disappearing, and the new conditions have led to a realisation that handwork must be an integral part of the school course.

Under these conditions schools are able to give adequate instruction to all types of pupils.

It will be realised that the training in the Junior School has been a general training in handiness. The child has been encouraged to explore the possibilities and limitations of the materials he has been using, and to consider his reactions to these materials. What he has been gradually getting is a generalised aptitude, and not a specialised skill in any one direction or in any one material.

In the Senior School the pupil will in the main, pursue one definite craft. With boys this will usually, for various reasons, be Woodwork, while girls will naturally find their interests in the crafts of the home such as Needlework.

An increasing amount of time is now being devoted to art and craft work in the majority of schools. The crafts which have been begun in the Junior School stage will be continued on progressive lines in the Senior School. The interest and confidence which have been established in the Junior School will be carried further, and a higher standard of technique will be expected while emphasis will be laid on good design and good finish.

The effect of the occasional very fine piece of work that is executed in school should not be overlooked; it extends far beyond the child who is responsible for it. A single achievement of this kind may well play its part in raising the standard of work normally done in a particular school. One has only to observe a boy handling a really well-made article to see his joy in the fineness of the work, and his growing appreciation of the beauty of form.

All schools will not do the same type of work. Some may wish to make articles that will be useful in the garden or for poultry-keeping, others, where a strong Science bias exists, may make a good deal of Science

apparatus, though the majority will probably concentrate on cabinet-making. Whatever line of development is followed, it is essential that the fundamental technique should be soundly taught.

31. Systematic training in crafts and development of standards of taste.—The close association between the technical and the cultural aspects of Art and Craft training should be maintained. The experience of recent years in the development of constructional work, planned in accordance with the principles of true craftsmanship, has shown that children in the Senior Schools are capable of producing work of high quality, provided that they are guided by a teacher who is master of his craft and skilful in the art of teaching. If what has been done in the previous stages is consolidated and the technical basis at this stage is sound, it should be possible to reach a high standard.

Such a course of training on the lines indicated above naturally aims at inculcating a respect for, and an appreciation of, all that is fine and honest in craftsmanship and design, and a distaste for mean, ugly and insincere work. This systematic training in traditional crafts, such as those already mentioned, should lead, on the one hand, to the acquisition of greater skill in sound construction and the right use of materials and, on the other hand, to a keen sense of what is and what is not worthy of admiration.

Through the use of the lantern and the epidiascope, through visits to museums and through specimens placed on view in the classroom and craftrooms, much can be done to secure a standard of taste that will influence children in their outlook on what surrounds them, whether in the home, street, village, town, or countryside.

32. Need of using all available skill in the staff.—It is obvious, that in a Senior School a high standard of work cannot be expected unless the teachers have

some measure of ability as practitioners, and it is very desirable that the organisation of the staff should be sufficiently fluid to bring all the available skill to bear on the teaching of Art and Craft. Even when the teaching is in the hands of specialist teachers, the services of other members of the staff, who may have special gifts as practising craftsmen, should be used as fully as the organisation of the school permits, while the specialist teachers of Art and Craft will often benefit by taking part in the teaching of other subjects.

33. The allocation of time.—It is not proposed to suggest any definite allocation of time to Art and Craft, but it should be clearly understood that, while a reasonable balance should be held between the various branches of what is taught, there is no reason why the period nominally set aside for art teaching should always be spent in drawing and painting, and the period allocated to craft teaching entirely given to the manual operations involved in the various crafts. The total time allocated to Art and Craft should be used to the best advantage.

It will strengthen the feeling that their work is real if the children are encouraged to carry it through in a reasonable time. While the time factor should not in any way dominate, it is not without importance in the training of senior pupils.

34. Differences of ability and how they can be met.—One of the important results of reorganisation of schools has been to emphasise the need for discrimination in the curriculum for the various types of ability in children. As in other subjects so in Art and Craft the needs and capacities of the children must be taken into account. Many Senior Schools are large enough to allow for effective classification and differentiation, and teachers thus have the opportunity for devising appropriate schemes of instruction for the less able children. Sufficient experience will have been gained

of the capacity of these children in the previous stages to give an indication of what treatment will be most suitable for them in the Senior School course.

With the slower pupils it will often be sufficient to allow more time to complete their work ; with others defects in observational powers and a lack of manipulative skill will necessitate work of a simpler nature. The maintenance of interest is essential for them all, so that a careful selection of " projects " that make an appeal to them is desirable.

35. Accommodation and equipment.—While it is obvious that work of the highest standard can only be expected where satisfactory accommodation and equipment are provided, it is possible to teach art and craft successfully in schools which have no accommodation beyond the ordinary classroom, provided that some form of flat table is provided and adequate provision is made for the storage of equipment and work in progress. If it can possibly be arranged, a classroom should be set aside for this purpose and the place of the desks should be taken by tables and chairs. In some schools portable table-tops are used, supported on trestles which can, when desired, serve as easels. The equipment needed for most of the crafts is not extensive, and much of it can be made by the children themselves, if they are able to use woodworking tools. In Woodwork itself, for instance, while adequate equipment is, of course, necessary, much can be done to show that it is possible to use a limited tool supply to the best advantage, so that the boys may see that they can continue the work as a hobby in later years, and may be encouraged to acquire for themselves small kits of tools for use at home in their spare time, and as the foundation of a larger collection for use when they have left school. For the same reason it is useful to get them to make for their own use bench hooks, shooting boards and other appliances, and to

encourage resourcefulness in the improvisation of equipment such as cramps, where there is any shortage in the supply.

36. Handwork and the use of leisure.—Whereas handwork is included in the Junior School curriculum because doing is often the best way of learning, in the Senior School the teacher must have his eye on the after-life of the pupils, and handwork should be taught and encouraged as a pursuit for leisure. Many schools are providing facilities for voluntary work outside school hours, and craftwork is a valuable adjunct to many leisure time pursuits which are begun in school days and continued as hobbies in later life. Effective teaching with appropriate apparatus of the kind that the child can obtain for himself will do much to aid this development. Some schools, too, have found that Craft Guilds provide a valuable stimulus.

(ii) *Design and the crafts*

37. The making of designs and patterns.—The kind of teaching that holds a reasonable balance between the acquisition of knowledge and skill and their use in expressive drawing and painting, will probably ensure that many children will continue to enjoy picture making ; nevertheless it is very desirable that children should not be encouraged to think of Art as concerned only with designs made on canvas or paper and used for decoration. The patterns made by the younger children may have no immediate purpose except to give pleasure, but the pleasure which comes from the orderly and rhythmic arrangement of shapes and colours should soon lead to a study of design in relation to craftwork. It is possible, however, to secure this relation betwee theory and practice from almost the first exercises, and in very simple ways.

There has been much confusion of thought as to what is implied by the term "design." By some people

design has been thought to mean "ornament," by others to mean the use of the pencil or brush to fill a space with an arrangement of shapes and colours. It should be clear, however, that design is fundamental, and that fitness for purpose, the right use of tools and materials and the production of something worth living with are all considerations which have to be borne in mind by the designer. Surface decoration, if any be required, is only one factor in the whole problem and can only be considered in relation to the whole.

38. The first steps in crafts involving the use of patterns.—As soon as the first fundamental exercises in pattern making have been done, the children, having made patterns with the brush or crayon or with cut paper, using the simple shapes with which they are familiar, such as the straight line, the spot, simple curves and other shapes, can soon be led to see the waste of time involved in the repetition of the pattern units by hand. It is not a big step to the devising of various means of reproducing the units, by cutting the patterns in such materials as are suitable for the purpose of making a die or stamp. They are faced then with a choice of material, whether potato, wood, lino, rubber, or cork, and also with a choice of tools, and the pattern they make will be affected by the limitations of the materials and tools which they choose. They will soon discover that it is possible to cut patterns in linoleum blocks which cannot be cut so conveniently in potato; that prints made from potato cuts have a characteristic quality compared with prints made from a lino block, and that this quality is one that may be very desirable for certain purposes. They will discover that knife and gouge have each its proper use in cutting blocks for pattern making, so that even in this very elementary craft there is a strong element of choice. However elementary may be this attempt to make the best use

of materials and tools and to bring out their characteristic qualities, the pupil has been placed on the right road to an understanding of designing in the material. These blocks may be used for the production of patterned papers, for which there are many practical uses, as, for example, in book-binding, later they may be used in fabric-printing, when other and more complex problems will have to be solved, e g. the choice of fabrics, the use of dyes, and the methods of printing and fixing, all of which afford valuable experience.

(iii) *The choice of crafts*

39. Principles which should determine the choice. —It is realised that conditions governing the supply of materials have had a considerable effect in determining the choice of crafts to be taught in Elementary Schools, often with the unfortunate result that the choice has been determined or limited by the cheapness of the material used, or the saleability of the article made.

The operations involved should at all stages be of such a character as to make it possible for the pupils to reach a good standard of craftsmanship. it is better to make a simple thing well than to make a complex thing badly.

The craft chosen should afford opportunity for sound craftsmanship. This can only result from good materials used to the best advantage, from sound construction and from the proper use of tools. When, through the imagination of the designer, all these factors are brought into a right relation, further study of the craft will provide clear opportunities for progressive development. Fundamentally, the problem of the architect who designs a building, or of the designer who plans a complex piece of machinery, and that of the child who cuts a lino block, weaves a scarf or binds a book, are the same: the difference is only one of degree. From this it follows

that a training in good craftsmanship, even of the simplest kind, is a training in the appreciation of good design in a very wide sense.

When judged by the standards indicated above, many of the rather trivial occupations which have been taught in Elementary Schools will be seen to have little value. Fortunately, there are enough crafts providing the right kind of experience, which have not only a tradition behind them owing to their association with the history of human progress, but also a reality because of their place in the everyday life of the present time.

Space will not allow of more than a few general remarks about each of them. While a text book dealing with methods of art teaching in general may be of doubtful value, a book which describes the operations involved in a craft, gives some account of its historical development, and is well supplied with illustrations of really good examples of craftsmanship, may be very helpful both to teacher and pupils.

40. The traditional crafts.—The traditional crafts to which these older children will now be introduced will make considerably more demands not only upon their ability to use their hands but also upon their ability to use their wits, than the simpler work which they did in the Junior School. Such crafts as Woodwork, Metalwork, Weaving, and Pottery, are crafts with a long tradition behind them and they all have a well-developed technique. No one can become really adept at any of these crafts without in some way having mastered its technique, and it is clearly necessary at the Senior School stage to give some definitely formal instruction. The extent to which this is done will vary from craft to craft, but it is obviously unwise to stress it to such a degree as to discourage the child. The teacher will rather encourage his pupil to attempt such work as will lead the pupil to see for himself the reason for

acquiring a real technique and therefore to submit willingly to the necessary routine, because he can appreciate the purpose behind it. In Woodwork, for example, a boy must learn how to make the basic joints if he is ever to make anything worthy of the craft. In Metalwork there are various tool processes demanding great care and accuracy, and these processes, while they can be most boring and discouraging if taught unintelligently, can, on the other hand, become really interesting, if approached in the right spirit. The same remark is largely true also of such crafts as Weaving and Pottery. In all these crafts the approach to the technique should be a purposeful one. A boy or girl who is encouraged to look ahead will see the purpose of learning the technique, and will be inspired by the vision of coming achievement, so that present difficulties will be no great obstacle. When the crafts are approached in this spirit, older pupils are often willing to put in a great deal of hard work in order to master a technique which they realise is necessary, if they are to achieve what they wish to accomplish.

(iv) *Some of the more important crafts*

41. Needlework.—Needlework* as a craft has immense educational possibilities on account both of its constructive and of its decorative qualities. On the constructive side it includes a study of the varied and interesting ways in which a length of material can be so cut and stitched and arranged as to form serviceable and pleasing garments. The craft here is usefully allied to both weaving and knitting, by which material is actually produced and its varying qualities made apparent.

The making up of material, in general, involves a wide range of processes varying in difficulty from the simple operation of hemming a handkerchief to the

* Needlework is dealt with more fully in Chapter VIII of this Handbook.

most advanced forms of tailoring. A girl can only master such processes as are within her powers, and careful thought is necessary on the part of the teacher to devise a method of approach to the craft and to select processes which are compatible with the age, proficiency and outlook of children.

Needlework will not have its full appeal unless construction, measurement and fitting are studied in relation to stitchery both by hand and machine, and unless these aspects of the craft are illuminated by a consideration of the quality and character of the material used. Needlework can be a very dull business, if the craft is limited, on the one hand, to calculations and drafting and measurement and, on the other, to the acquirement of proficiency in stitchery, or if it is shorn of its interesting possibilities for design in colour and shape.

In addition to the art of constructing garments, and closely allied to it, is embroidery, which will include designing not merely in stitches overlaid upon material, but in the varying qualities and textures of materials applied in some considered form.

In a school, something must be selected from this important craft that will be within the children's power both to master and to express. Generally speaking, the work should aim at giving them sufficient skill to use the craft for the practical purpose of making simple garments and household necessities, and mending them when worn, and also to experience the pleasure of expressing their own interests and taste in design.

42. Weaving.—Weaving is one of the oldest crafts, and it always has been and still is among the most important. The fact that the hand-loom has very largely passed out of use in industry does not lessen the value of the craft as a means to the end the teacher has in view.

Hand-loom weaving gives almost unlimited scope for experiments in colour changes and varied textures. The character of woven patterns can be very charming, even when worked on the simplest of looms and within the strict limitations imposed by warp and weft.

It has also the advantages that material of a high standard of craftsmanship and of an eminently useful type may be woven on looms of very simple construction, such as can be made in the school by the pupils themselves. This craft also provides for progressive development, from the use of simple looms suitable for children in Infant Schools or Junior Schools to the use of the table-looms or foot-power looms in the top classes of Senior Schools.

At this later stage, when the use of the foot-,or table-,loom is reached, care should be taken to provide a loom that is accurately made of well seasoned wood. The use of metal should be avoided, as far as possible, since it is liable to rust. The loom should be of such a width that it can be used by children without undue strain. A table-loom is of advantage in that it takes up no floor space, and, if a good type is chosen, it will do all that a foot-loom can do, and with greater ease in the setting up.

It is important that the children should learn to use the right kind of yarn for warp and weft, and experiments can be tried in the growing and use of flax.

At some time, spinning might be practised, with progressive treatment from the use of a home-made spindle to the use of the wheel; while experiments in the preparation of wool from the fleece and in the use of natural dyes will be found to be of great value The children can be encouraged to make every use of local resources, and to construct their own booklets with pictures, diagrams, notes and records. It is possible in this way to find a real centre of interest for the

children, and in some cases to revive interest in local occupations of the past, or to make the life of a modern mill take on a new significance.

43. Book production.—Book production includes all the processes concerned with making, preserving, and decorating, printed or pictorial records. These processes, some of which in themselves are crafts, are brought into close relationship one with another, and are made real and purposeful, when they are employed to achieve a common aim, the making of a book. Thus, the children may be engaged not only in the actual business of binding books, but in lettering and writing, designing the layout of pages, making illustrations by pencil, pen or brush, making lino- or wood-cut prints, making patterns for "end papers" and designs for covers in paper or other material, and, if the equipment is available, typography. Here they find opportunities for selection and arrangement of colour and material, inventiveness in the making of patterns and designs and for the exercise of real craftsmanship. Unless it is associated with other crafts and made real and purposeful in the manner indicated above, the practice of bookbinding is apt to resolve itself into a series of graded exercises demanding neatness and precision, ingenuity in using waste material, or arithmetical calculation.

For success in this branch of craftwork skill must be acquired in certain basic operations : cutting, folding, pasting, covering, hinging, stitching, and pressing. To these may be added the making of potato-cuts, lino- and wood-blocks for use in decoration, tooling or printing of cloth, and blind or gilt tooling of leather. Where the work is sufficiently advanced, the children will be capable of single-section and multi-section binding, case-binding, and quarter, half, and full binding.

Admirable typographical work, in which good design has shown itself in the beautiful lay-out of a printed

page, is being accomplished in a good many schools and its inclusion has been fully justified where type setting and printing constitute a valuable part of a course of work in book production. The success of this work, however, depends on the use of a good type and machine for printing, and the cost of the equipment may prohibit its general introduction in schools.

44. Lettering.—Although mentioned as one of the crafts comprised within the general title of Book-production, Lettering is so important that it is desirable to deal with it separately and in rather more detail.

Training in the appreciation of good lettering is very desirable as a part of every school course. Contemporary lettering owes much to the Roman alphabet, and designers of type have been influenced by the Roman letter, particularly in matters of shape and proportion. Photographs or reproductions of the Roman and other good alphabets are available, and it is advisable to have a range of good examples at hand for display in the classroom. Much of the modification which the Roman letter has undergone is due to the influence of the pen-made letter. The study and practice of the written letter are therefore of especial value, apart from the fact that pen lettering bears a closer relationship to ordinary handwriting than does that made by the pencil or brush. Children should be encouraged to acquire a formal book hand, written with metal pens (usually known as "one-stroke" pens). At the same time they may tackle simple pen-made capitals, but it is only at a later stage that they will have enough subtlety of discrimination to learn to draw the Roman and other alphabets.

Children should be dissuaded from the all too prevalent practice of spurious decoration. A piece of good lettering is beautiful because of the perfection of the forms, the spacing and the layout or arrangement, and no amount of so-called decoration added to lettering which does

not already possess these qualities will make it appear beautiful. Children may be expected to acquire a certain standard of taste that will enable them to discriminate between good and bad printing and will awaken their interest in the many and varied examples of lettering which they see every day.

45. Fabric-printing.—The experience which can be gained by children in printing patterned papers from blocks made of potato, lino, wood or other material may lead to the more complex problems which have to be mastered in the block printing of fabrics. Not only does the cutting of the block for the new purpose present a fresh problem,—for it must be made suitable for printing a surface of a kind very different from that of the paper which the children have used in the past,—but the actual operation of printing requires a higher degree of dexterity and judgment, which can only come with practice and intelligent forethought. There are available fabric-printing inks which are reasonably permanent and which do not stiffen the material unduly. Experiments may be carried out in the use and fixing of dyes, where accommodation and equipment make this possible, and where the teacher has had some experience of this branch of the craft. There is no reason to think that fabric-printing makes undue demands on the children's skill. It has produced results which are quite remarkable, not only in Senior but also in Junior Schools, where some of the most interesting work has been done.

The process known as "screen-printing" provides another practical method by which fabric printing may be carried out.

46. Pottery.—Few crafts provide so rich a background of tradition as Pottery, and it is certainly one of the most valuable in providing a well balanced training in skill and in promoting appreciation of form, colour and texture. While, however, most schools can provide for

some elementary experience of the craft, few are able to provide the complete equipment which is necessary in order to get the best results.

For schools which possess suitable rooms and equipment pottery offers a field for experiment which, for diversity and educative value, perhaps has no superior among the crafts. So far as concerns equipment, the main expense involved is in the provision of a kiln for firing the ware. Apart from this, the essential tools and apparatus for pottery making may be acquired for a very small sum, or they can quite readily be made in the school workshop. The difficulty of firing the ware may sometimes be overcome by co-operation with Art Schools, many of which are equipped with pottery kilns; or alternatively it is possible to construct for a few pounds a satisfactory kiln of a type that is capable of meeting the normal requirements of a school.

A throwing-wheel is clearly a desirable piece of equipment for a pottery class, but it is not essential that one should be provided at the outset, as there are many kinds of pottery which do not require its use. Indeed, in view of the fact that the throwing-wheel can only be used by one pupil at a time the instructor must necessarily rely largely upon such methods as pressing, tile making, slab building, coiling and casting, all of which are standard processes of pottery making and are well within the capacity of the average child; moreover, they are admirably adapted for class work.

47. Woodwork and Metalwork.—Although Woodwork and Metalwork are the most expensive in equipment of the crafts and require specially furnished rooms of their own, they are rightly the crafts most universally taught to the older boys in Elementary Schools. The materials employed enter into the construction of very many of the articles in common use in daily life; they offer just enough resistance to cutting and shaping

to make suitable demands on the muscular control of boys of this age; they call for the skilled use of a variety of tools; and they involve a wide range of technical processes, which can be so graded as to produce a progressive course of instruction. Though it is possible to reach a level of accomplishment which is satisfactory in itself at each stage of such a course, there is no upper limit of achievement, however long a boy may remain at school. Moreover, what he has learned in school, whether much or little, will be of the greatest value to him in after life, whatever his occupation may be. The value of general handiness needs no emphasis, but, if the course has been rightly conceived, it will do more than produce this quality. It will give a boy an insight into the construction of many things and help him to understand why they are made as they are; it will enable him to appreciate good craftsmanship in wood and metal and thus add variety to his interests; it will help him later to select, for his own home, articles that are well constructed and well designed; and, to some at least, it will give the power to design and make many articles which demand a high standard of craftsmanship.

Among all the crafts, Woodwork and Metalwork may claim pre-eminence not only for the range of beautiful objects that can be made and the variety of processes involved, but also for the degree of accuracy necessary in working the material employed. An error of $\frac{1}{16}$th of an inch in a woodwork joint, or of $\frac{1}{100}$th of an inch in a metalwork fitting, results in a misfit which is easily perceived by the pupil responsible. He does not need to have the error shown to him by his teacher. To perceive an error without having it pointed out by the teacher is the best way for a boy to learn the value of accuracy; to make a thing accurately and to know that it has been made accurately will give him self-respect as a craftsman.

48. Woodwork.—(a) *Successive stages of the work.*—The peculiar qualities of wood have led to fixed design in the traditional three main tools,—the saw, the plane and the chisel; and the shape and form of these tools in turn have given rise to a definite technique. It is therefore of considerable importance that, if a reasonably high standard of craftsmanship is to be reached in school, the necessity for concentration on tool manipulation in the early stages of Woodwork should be realised.

It is idle to expect, however, that the power of cutting and shaping accurately in wood can be attained by the boy without a definite training in technique. He must gain a mastery over the tools he uses, and the teacher must demonstrate how they should be used. But such instruction should be limited, as far as possible, to the early part of the course, where, if it is given systematically on the right lines, the boys can acquire sufficient familiarity with the necessary processes, the correct use of the tools and the making of the common joints, in a very few months. As soon as this necessary technical skill has been acquired, it is desirable that it should be applied to some useful end, and some teachers, even in the early stages, prefer to arrange for small useful articles to be made which give practice in the processes that have to be taught.

The next step is to enlarge the scope of the instruction so that articles can be made which will serve some definite purpose in connexion with the school or the home Individual needs and interests can now be considered, and the boys can play some part in designing the things they make. As they become more self-reliant they may rightly be allowed greater latitude, so that finally there will be considerable variety in the type of work done, not only by one boy and another, but even by one school and another.

In some schools opportunities are afforded for the girls to receive instruction in Woodwork. Much of this work is still in the experimental stage, but the results so far are encouraging.

(b) *Design in Woodwork.*—The wise teacher does not expect a developed taste in his pupils. It is part of his business to ensure that they receive the right sort of impressions, and look at and study the right sort of articles. Their early attempts at design should be discussed with the teacher and modified for one good reason or another. The particular proportions of a rectangle for instance, or the particular sweep of a curve, should be criticised by reference to some other piece of work which has been accepted as in good taste; and the arrangement of colour and tone and the modification of outline should be considered in relation to the particular woods used. In this way the boys will gradually develop their own standards in Design, selecting this quality and rejecting that, and so expressing in some measure their own individuality and their own individual tastes.

Work which is inspired by ideas such as these may quite fairly be described as creative. Its quality will depend largely on the teacher's own background. A teacher who takes advantage of every opportunity that offers itself of seeing exhibitions of good craftsmanship and who makes a habit of studying good publications on design will have his mind stored with ideas through which he may stimulate his boys to turn out pleasing specimens of craftsmanship.

49. Woodwork: some practical details.—(a) *Choice of woods; importance of good finish.*—Whatever is made should be soundly constructed and as well finished as the nature of the object requires in each case. Even if the course consists of no more than "rural carpentry," pride of workmanship should be evident

and the objects made should be shaped true and made weather-proof where necessary by creosoting or painting.

Articles made in deal or white wood, which form part of every course, should bear the mark of accurate cutting and careful planing and, when their purpose demands it, should be suitably treated with paint, varnish or cellulose.

At least some experience with hard woods is, however, desirable for every boy and it is here that most scope will be found for accuracy and good finish. Care should be taken in the selection of the milder forms of hard woods, such as Japanese oak and straight-grained mahogany, and the quality should be as good as can be afforded. Though hard woods are more expensive than soft woods, well-finished articles made of the former take a considerable time to construct, and the average cost of timber over a year will probably not be found to be unduly increased by the inclusion of hard woods.

When an article is completed, it should be "finished," so as to stand the handling it is likely to get. The "finish" will depend on the nature of the wood and the purpose which the article made is intended to serve. Opinion differs as to the advisability of using veneer; French polishing may sometimes be appropriate or even indispensable, but for most work polishing with linseed oil and wax will be sufficient.

(b) *Sharpening the tools.*—It is clearly most important that tools should be kept sharp and in good condition, so that no time is wasted during the lessons. If the boys are trained to sharpen the tools themselves, they will be better able to recognise when they are in good condition and to take proper care of tools of their own. The ability to sharpen tools can only be acquired gradually; most teachers, therefore, keep a small stock of old tools on which beginners can practise so as to avoid damage to those in general use.

(c) *Working Drawings.*—It is not necessary for the boys to make drawings of their work in the early stages of the course. The main use of the workshop is for practical work. In some schools the drawings are done in the classroom, and, as a rule, the boys are taught to read drawings before they attempt to make them. Full-size drawings are helpful. There is no need to teach " oblique " or " isometric " projections at any stage.

Towards the end of the course the boys should be able to make and read simple working drawings, as well as " blue prints," such as are used by workmen. It is suggested that the recommendations of the British Standards Institution on drawing should be adopted.

(d) *Notes and Records.*—Short talks and informal discussions will be found useful at all times, but much time can be saved if cyclostyled notes and instructions are freely used. The boys should keep notes in folders or note-books in which they make simple sketches of the objects constructed, and enter the quantity and cost of the material used, the time spent on the job and such other points as may be relevant. The information thus recorded will, amongst other uses, be found valuable as data for exercises in the Mathematics lessons. In addition, the teacher will probably find it necessary to adopt some system for recording the work done by each boy in his class so that the time factor may be watched and a comprehensive course ensured for all.

(e) *Books and illustrations.*—It need hardly be said that the workshop for woodwork or metalwork should be well arranged and tidy. Suitable illustrations should be displayed on the walls, in frames made by the boys, and some space should be set aside for the exhibition from time to time of really good specimens of work. It should also contain a small reference library of carefully chosen books and periodicals.

50. Metalwork.—Metalwork is a craft that is gaining popularity in the schools for many reasons.

The material used is one in which the craftsmen of every period have delighted to work. It is common and cheap, and from it are made a great many articles in daily use. Through practice in the craft a boy acquires general handiness and facility in the use of tools, and the power of working to fairly fine limits.

While in the graphic arts it is possible to allow very considerable freedom,—for pencil marks can be removed, and paint can be washed out,—with metalwork every tool takes its toll and no mark can be removed. Hence the worker in metal cannot like the artist change his method of approach as he goes on, but must be at pains to execute what is already a clear conception in his mind.

Metalworking processes cover a wide range and therefore naturally lend themselves to schemes of various types. The two main branches of metalwork now taught in schools may be described as:

(*a*) Formal Metalwork—in materials such as iron, steel, and brass.

(*b*) Constructive Hammered Metalwork—usually in copper.

(a) *Formal Metalwork.*—This term is intended to cover a wide range of processes such as filing, fitting, turning, tapping, drilling, soldering and brazing, which are needed in the making of a large variety of appliances and articles. Here again as in woodwork, on account of the resistance of the material used, definitely formal teaching is needed if the work is to be successfully done. A sound foundation in fundamental processes must be established before the attempt is made to specialise in any particular direction.

The possibilities in metalwork are many and varied. In some schools the course has centred round the making

of simple tools, covering all the fundamental processes and demanding a reasonably high standard of accuracy. A boy who is given possession of the tools he has made may well be inclined to add to his collection later on and to devote some of his leisure time to metalwork as a hobby. In other schools the boys have made the majority of their garden implements and tools, and have found in this work scope for considerable ingenuity in adapting and modifying to their own use types of the things they see around them.

In some schemes, again, a useful course has been found in the making of mathematical apparatus, such as plane tables, theodolites, angle-meters, or clinometers, for use in surveying, while in others it is based on the making of much of the science apparatus, e.g. appliances for registering or measuring heat, a model of a water circulation system, or various types of electrical gear and wireless appliances.

(b) *Constructive Hammered Metalwork.*—Hammered metalwork introduces a boy to a wide range of processes which he is unlikely to learn in other ways and which may be very useful to him in later life. It is an attractive craft, providing scope for some individuality in design and affording the pleasure that comes from making really useful things. The beauty of the objects made depends on their form and workmanship rather than on any extraneous decoration, e.g. by repoussé tool marks, a process which should be discouraged. Since the articles made are raised from sheet metal, usually copper and occasionally gilding metal, they are essentially hollow ware, ranging from simple ash trays to large trays, pin and flower bowls, cups and vases, sports trophies and so on.

The woodwork or metalwork shop is the most convenient room for this craft, but it may be done in the craft-room or an ordinary classroom if there are facilities

for annealing and soldering. The work, however, tends to be noisy, and for this reason arrangements must be made to prevent the disturbance of neighbouring classes. It is usual to draw on paper a careful representation of the articles to be made, since once they are raised into shape the form cannot be altered. The copper or gilding metal is carefully cleaned, and the blemishes are stoned out. The metal is then marked out to shape and worked to form, the joints being hard soldered and soft soldered. It is pickled at every stage to clean it and the final planishing must be done with mirror-bright hammers and stakes.

Some of the tools required may be made by the boys for themselves and it is often found convenient to delay the introduction of hammered metalwork until the boys have done some formal metalwork.

(iv) *Some applications of school Woodwork and Metalwork*

51. Repairs and the making of equipment and apparatus.—(a) *Repairs.*—Since much of the handwork of the home consists in executing repairs, the school course should, whenever possible, afford boys practice in such jobs as the repair of furniture, garden equipment and science apparatus.

(b) *Making of equipment and apparatus.*—Part of the time allocated to Woodwork and Metalwork may well be devoted to the making of equipment, for use in some of the crafts,* such as a loom or a printing press, and of apparatus needed for practical Science, Gardening and various school activities.

Sometimes the apparatus may most conveniently be made in one of the Craft rooms or in the Science laboratory, and at other times in the workshop itself,

* *See* Sections 19, 34 and 56 of this Chapter.

but in any case the teacher responsible for Woodwork and Metalwork should advise as to constructional details and as to the selection of boys capable of undertaking the work.

(c) *Larger "projects."*—Some schools have found it possible to carry out more ambitious projects such as the construction of a small sports pavilion or the complete furnishing of a room in the model flat which sometimes forms part of the accommodation for Housecraft for girls in the same school.

52. Handicraft in rural schools.—The rural school presents a somewhat different problem from that of the town school. Some rural schools in unreorganised areas have to be content at present with accommodation and equipment for handicraft which are not quite of the same standard as that commonly found in urban areas, and the work attempted has necessarily to be of a simpler character and more restricted in range. This is a condition, however, which is rapidly passing. The rural school, indeed, has an advantage in finding opportunities, that do not always exist in town schools, of applying its handicraft to many real needs, which may not arise in urban communities, e.g., in connexion with the implements required for the cottage, the home or the farm. For these it may often be necessary to use materials that are ready to hand and to improvise. But, though the materials used will often be rough, a boy who has been trained in the basic processes will suffer no undue handicap.

At all stages of the course there is a wealth of objects to which these processes can be applied, from the simple garden label (suitably painted and lettered) or the seed-box to the wheel-barrow or the greenhouse. In schools where small livestock is kept the range of useful objects that may be made is considerably widened. It would

include such things, for instance, as hutches, bee-hives, coops, trap-nests or bins and fowl-houses.

Even with a limited equipment much profitable work may also be done in metal, either used in conjunction with wood, or alone, e.g., in the making of certain garden tools such as hoes, rakes, mechanical seeders, tree-pruners; latches for gates, garden rollers from strip-iron and old oil drums filled with concrete, markers for tennis courts, apparatus for weather observations such as sunshine recorders and anemometers. Still other materials may sometimes be used with advantage, e g., cement for making steps for the rock-garden or ponds for water plants, bird baths and pedestals for sundials, etc. Occasionally opportunities may arise for little jobs in brickwork or stonework, or in thatching. In the country repair-work is almost as important as new construction, and considerable ingenuity may often be called for in making good some defective piece of equipment about the school or brought from home. In some schools cobbling has been taught with successful results and this craft is equally applicable to urban schools of certain types.

The increasing tendency to concentrate Senior scholars in larger numbers in Area Rural Schools has made it possible to provide generously for the school garden, with its appurtenances of sheds for the storage of tools and crops, cold frames and greenhouses, potting and repair sheds; and the conception of the outdoor accommodation of the rural school as an estate for the development and management of which the scholars are responsible is growing Some schools have even found it possible to teach the principles of the petrol engine and to utilise it in various ways. In all this work there is ample scope for the exercise of craft skill and many schools have been quick to seize their opportunities.

V. FACILITIES FOR ART AND CRAFT

53. Use of the ordinary classroom for art and craft lessons.—If the school has a specially equipped Art room, the work of the Art teacher is greatly facilitated, but if the only available accommodation for Art and Craft teaching is a classroom which is used for general purposes, some adaptation of existing conditions must be made. For the Art lessons, the most suitable classroom furniture has been found to be flat-topped tables with chairs, for some kind of rearrangement is then possible for the Art lessons. The children should preferably use drawing boards (or a suitable substitute such as ply-board or heavy millboard), either resting on their knees in the most comfortable position for drawing, or merely to supply a better surface than the desk itself often provides. It will be found possible, with movable tables, to place those children who are aotually drawing from objects so that the light falls from the left. If the classroom equipment is difficult to move, it will be wise to adapt the scheme of instruction to the conditions and reduce drawing from sight to a minimum, training the children to rely on memory as much as possible.

For Craft teaching in the ordinary classroom, some kind of bench is almost a necessity, although surprising results are secured in schools where ordinary desks only are available. A fixed bench running along a wall under the main window will be found to be of great assistance, and has the advantage of economising space. As an alternative, one or two trestle tables of a portable type will be found useful. In classroom conditions it is advisable to allow the children to carry on a variety of work so that both desks and benches are in use at the same time.

54. Materials and equipment in art and craft.—As far as actual materials for drawing are concerned, experience has shown that children of all ages are more

encouraged to produce "live" and vigorous work if they have opportunities for working on a large scale, whereas small pieces of paper often result in timid work. Loose paper is preferable to drawing books which are not only inconvenient to use, but tend to standardise the size and type of drawing. Children should be given sheets of paper as large as can be easily dealt with on their desks or tables, and the provision of large sheets of paper need not entail additional expense. Kitchen lining paper, and grey sugar paper, which can be obtained in sheets (20″ × 25″) at low cost if bought in bulk, are both excellent for the purpose, especially when charcoal or soft crayon is used as a drawing tool. It is good for the children to form a habit of storing their drawings neatly and in the order in which they are made, and for this purpose portfolios can be constructed as part of their work.

Water colour is the most appropriate and attractive medium for general purposes for children of any age, but many of the small water colour boxes often provided are not altogether suitable. It is usually better to select a few colours, for if these are skilfully chosen an almost infinite range of colour becomes possible. For some purposes, such as pattern making, or for covering large areas, paste or powder colours will be found useful and economical. They may be used as an opaque colour or as a transparent wash. A brush which has no elasticity is useless as a drawing tool; obviously a sable brush is the best tool, but the cost is prohibitive. A good substitute may be found in large cheap hog hair fitches, especially for work on a large scale. Provision should be made for the mixing of colours. Plain, white glazed tiles are extremely convenient for this purpose, and take up little storage space when not in use.

Clay for modelling is cheap, and with occasional attention it will keep in good condition for a long time, if kept in galvanised tins with tight fitting lids.

Materials for the various crafts are too numerous and varied to make detailed suggestions possible : they should be of as good quality as possible, and all materials which imitate others should be excluded. It is unreasonable to expect children to form high standards of craftsmanship if the material they are given to use is shoddy and inferior, or if they are taught to use cheap fabrics which ape those which are more durable.

Much of the equipment for weaving, book-production, and other crafts, may be made in school, and the pupils gain a great deal in knowledge of a craft when this is done. The ingenuity shown by teachers and pupils in the use of waste material and in the invention and improvement of apparatus is remarkable, and wherever this is found, there also is something of the true tradition of craftsmanship.

VI. THE INFLUENCE OF ENVIRONMENT IN ART TRAINING

55. Some general considerations.—Though the importance of environment during the impressionable period of the child's school life is now fully recognised, it is not always regarded as one of the practical problems of teaching. But it is obviously absurd to attempt to develop a sensitiveness to form and colour in a room which is a negation of all that Art stands for. It is true that some of the adverse conditions to be found in schools may seem beyond the power of the teacher to remedy: the architectural style, or lack of it, of the building in which he teaches must be accepted. Sometimes, too, his opinion has not been asked in the matter of colour schemes for the interior decoration of the school. There is no doubt, however, that teachers are now consulted on such questions much more frequently than in the past, and when re-decoration of the premises is proposed the Art Teacher should take this opportunity of giving practical consideration to the colour schemes

most suitable for the various rooms, having regard to their lighting, aspect, proportions and purpose.

Lightness and gaiety of colour are a great asset to a schoolroom, and the idea which still persists that neutral tints of rather a depressing quality are necessary in an Art room or any other schoolroom is a very unfortunate one. It is true that, if pictures are to hang in the room, it is well to avoid too positive a colouring for their background, but the colour may still be lively and stimulating. The woodwork in a classroom often provides surfaces which may suitably be painted in bright colours. It is often considered desirable that the lower part of the wall of the rooms or corridors should be darker in colour in order that marks, which will almost inevitably be made, should be less apparent. There is no need, however, for this darker tint to be dull and heavy. Of two colours that are of the same tone, one may be dull and heavy, the other full of vitality: both serve the purpose of protection equally well, but there is a great difference in their effect on the people who spend many hours a week in contact with them.

56. The environment of the art room.—There is no doubt that the provision of a specially designed Art room, or even a classroom set aside for the purpose of teaching Art, has a marked influence on the teaching of the subject. The Art room should be the centre of all the Art and Craft activities of the school. Especially where Craft teaching is well-developed, it is a great gain to have the equipment ready for use at all times, so that, where the time-table permits, children may have free access to it in order to carry on a piece of work.

The walls of the Art room should not be crowded with pictures and illustrations, for it is well to give the children an opportunity to appreciate the restful effect of large, clear, well-proportioned spaces. A few pictures at a time should be used as decoration, and these should

be chosen for their well marked decorative qualities, and should be sufficiently large to do justice to those qualities. In addition, two or three imperial frames of narrow wood, fitted with movable backs of ply-wood, may be hung permanently on the walls, and used to display illustrations for lessons or to illustrate various aspects of design and craftsmanship. Examples such as the extremely valuable series of post cards in black and white and colour published by the British Museum, the Victoria and Albert Museum, the National Gallery, etc., provide at small cost a great range of subjects which may be displayed in this way. When children have little opportunity to visit museums and art galleries, these small reproductions offer a wide field for discussion, not only of pictures, drawings, engravings and sculpture, but of manuscript, pottery, furniture, fabrics and other examples of craftsmanship. It will be unfortunate, however, if this study is limited to the examples of traditional art and craftsmanship stored in museums and galleries ; illustrations of local examples will also be of great interest. Nor is it sufficient to consider the work of the past. It is equally important that the art, the architecture and the craftsmanship of the present should be considered and discussed. Photographs and illustrations of representative work of the present time, of building, of town planning, of furniture, fabrics, ships and motor cars, of the best examples of those things which make up our everyday surroundings, should be collected for the same purpose. It may be possible then to help the children to see the vital connexion of art with everyday life, and to realise that design is not limited by fixed principles invented in past ages, but is a living force sensitively reflecting the changes in the social and economic background of the time, and governed by the new materials, the new methods of manufacture, and the new standards of every period.

57. The environment of the classroom.—The great majority of teachers, however, will still be teaching in schools which are not provided with a room set aside as an Art room, and will have to ensure that the ordinary classroom provides an environment which is as inspiring as circumstances permit. This may not be an easy task in some schools, but much may be done in a simple and practical way. Pictures which do not serve a useful purpose or have lost their original interest should be taken down; in fact, it is not a bad thing to clear the whole of the wall space periodically and start again with a definite scheme in view. Some of the diagrams, maps and illustrations which are arranged indiscriminately on the walls may well be a necessary part of the teaching equipment, but they should only be displayed where they are of most effective use, and they must be kept in neat and workmanlike order, if they are not to offend the eye. Those which are not of immediate use are best kept in folders, where they will be preserved from dust and other damage. One or two pictures, if they are worthy of a place as decoration, may then be hung with due regard to their decorative effect in relation to the whole wall space. It will be better to leave the walls bare than to hang inferior or faded pictures. A well proportioned clear space has great value in a scheme of decoration. It is taken for granted that the pictures will be hung where they can be seen by the children to the best advantage.

School furniture often makes if difficult to secure an orderly arrangement of a room. Fixed cupboards running along the base of the wall and rising to a height which children can reach, usually present a satisfactory appearance, but where cupboards of varying heights and shapes have been added as required, merely to provide additional shelf space, it is not easy to make a pleasant arrangement. Their uneven heights break the areas of wall space in a meaningless way and the

sense of unity in the room is often lost. Sometimes it is possible, however, to group these cupboards together so as to make one unified mass which is not unpleasing, especially if they are painted the same colour and shade as the lower part of the walls.

Many teachers encourage the children to take an active part in the orderly arrangement of the room and in its decoration. The arrangement of flowers, apparatus, pictures, etc. should be considered as practical experiments in design, often far more valuable and intelligible to the pupils than many more theoretical exercises on paper. Where lettering is taught, and few schools can afford to omit this valuable training, school notices provide many opportunities for its practice. The consideration of orderly arrangement should extend beyond the limits of the classroom to the corridors, the cloakroom and the playground. If good habits are consistently inculcated and use made of baskets for litter in school and playground, the countryside will need less protection.

58. The environment of the locality.—Children are usually encouraged to study the history, the geography and the literature of their locality. They should also be aware of the architectural treasures and fine examples of craftsmanship, both of the past and the present, which their own neighbourhood possesses. The teacher should encourage the children's natural interest in their surroundings, in the life of the farm, the local industries, the beauty of the countryside, the sea shore or the street, and thus stimulate interests and pleasures which will probably last into adult life. These scenes of everyday life are the natural subjects for drawing and painting and when the child intends to make a picture he studies his material with a new intensity and becomes aware of things in a much more complete sense.

Where the school is in one of the larger towns, it may be possible for the pupils to see good examples of modern building, and of design based on the use of modern materials and modern methods of construction. Girls will need little encouragement to discuss the use of colour, line and material in clothes and to make some critical study of furniture and articles of everyday use. Visits to museums and picture galleries provide most valuable opportunities for widening the children's interest and experience, but unless they are very carefully organised they will probably be ineffective. Indeed, any attempts to develop an appreciation of Art will certainly fail, if they take the form of aimless or ill-directed study. Experience has shown, however, that if a wide view of Art is taken, it is quite possible to give children a real interest in well designed things, and to help them to form an honest first-hand opinion about a work of art. Whether their conclusions are right or not will always be a matter of opinion, but it is at least possible to encourage them to be sincere. It is hoped too that the art training will lead to a real enjoyment of the English landscape and to the respect for its amenities which springs from a sincere appreciation of beauty. The preservation of the countryside will never be secured by the threat of legal penalties : people will not respect that for which they have no personal appreciation. The future of the countryside depends on the public opinion which is developing in our schools today.

It is scarcely necessary to point out that the Art teaching which is limited in its scope to classroom exercises is a poor thing, and may produce little of lasting value. There may on the other hand be many Art lessons which have a permanent influence on the outlook of the pupils in which possibly no actual drawing has been done but a real contact with life has been made.

CHAPTER VIII

NEEDLEWORK

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

1. The place of Needlework in the school generally.—Needlework* occupies a place of traditional importance in girls' schools, due originally to the position held by women as the makers and menders of the clothes of the household. This position has, in recent years, been somewhat shaken owing to the enormous increase of machine-made goods, both stitched and woven, which the trade produces at a cheap rate. On this account Needlework in school has lost what association it may ever have had with domestic drudgery, and is free to flourish as a fine constructive and decorative craft on its own merits. The products of this craft form part of the texture of daily life; and this adds to the significance and interest of the craft which, for girls arriving at the stage of adolescence, provides not only an outlet for their natural taste and their desire to be well dressed, but also the discipline of good workmanship.

* The position of Needlework among the arts and the crafts in general is dealt with in Chapter VII, section 41, of this Handbook Teachers of Needlework will find it useful to study also the preceding sections of that chapter, in which are discussed the principles underlying the teaching of art and craft.

Needlework, like all other crafts, has particular qualities of its own shared by no other craft: from the simple use of a needle and thread to join or adorn material, a wide range of processes has been developed such as cutting, manipulating, and sewing material in order to produce new forms. These processes reveal incidentally almost limitless possibilities of design in line, colour and the interplay of textures.

2. Needlework not a suitable activity for young children.—At the Nursery and Infant School stages of a child's education Needlework is not an appropriate exercise because the craft has too rigid a technique to be suitable for immature hands and eyes. In fact, even in Junior Schools care should be taken to ensure that children do not, for long periods, do work demanding close concentration or involving excessive eye strain. None the less, much goes on in the daily work and life of Nursery and Infant Schools which is invaluable as a basis for later exercises in Needlework. In the daily training in clean and orderly habits, the care of possessions, the use of simple tools and utensils, the manipulation of varied materials, and in the pleasure derived from gay colours and interesting shapes, lie the beginnings of craftsmanship.

II. THE JUNIOR SCHOOL STAGE

3. The conditions for a successful beginning.—It is generally recognised that exercises which involve actual needlework should be deferred until the Junior School age is reached, and, even then, the tools and materials for the early stages of the craft should be very carefully selected to suit the hands, eyes and understanding of the children. Needles should have eyes large enough to be threaded easily, but should be sufficiently short for small fingers to control; thread should be smooth in texture and of a colour that is in

clear contrast to the material on which it is worked; materials should be soft but firm in texture, so that they do not offer unnecessary difficulty in manipulation, and strongly striped and checked materials should be avoided, in order to prevent strain on the eyes. Further, the children should not attempt types of work which involve processes too difficult for them to complete unaided, for they should gradually acquire the sense of power and constructive ability which grows with independent skill.

Briefly, the successful beginning of Needlework depends mainly on two things: skill and understanding. The children should learn how to use a needle in the right way, gaining gradually a more marked rhythm of movement by sewing with the *thimble finger* avoiding the bad habit of pushing the needle into the material with thumb and forefinger: for it is harmful to allow children to adopt a faulty technique.

4. The work should have a definite meaning for the children.—The kind of exercises which children attempt at early stages must be sufficiently interesting to appeal to them, and so selected that they are within their power to carry out. It is not enough that the children's part in the work should be limited to sewing the processes of planning, measuring, cutting and fixing are all part of the craft, and the child's individual contribution in the matter of colour or pattern will add greatly to the value of any exercise.

It will probably be found that the most productive and educative exercises in needlework will arise, in the Junior School stage, in connexion with other activities, for the children will have more pleasure, and progress more rapidly, when making things for their home or their school, or for use in their own dramatic plays, games or projects, than when doing work which has

no clearly defined meaning for them. In the same way, if children have a real purpose before them in making something, they will understand how important it is to preserve their work in good condition. Thus clean hands, careful folding, and suitable storage, will become matters of personal responsibility rather than mere classroom rules. In order to assist in this side of the work, the girls should be equipped with an apron or pinafore, a sewing bag or other means for keeping work clean, flat and uncreased between lesson periods, and the proper supply of thimble, scissors, tape measure, needle-book and pin-cushion.

5. First lessons in Stitchery.—The actual stitchery done by Juniors should be watched carefully by the teacher. She should see not only that the children are making genuine progress, but also that their progress is appropriate to the stage of development which they have reached. In the early stages the stitches will be irregular, for only as the eye begins to judge distances and muscular control develops, will evenly spaced sewing become possible. A system known sometimes as "decorative stitchery" is often adopted in Junior Schools in order to teach simple stitches which are easy to see and at the same time compose a pleasing pattern in colour. This twofold purpose will however be missed if the stitches used are of no value constructively, either because they are too large or are merely imposed as a decoration on the top of other stitches. The method of teaching sewing to Juniors should be based on common sense, with the recognition that coloured stitches are easy to see and pleasant to look at, but that for the sake of learning the craft all the ordinary simple stitches in common use are the most valuable ones to practise. If these stitches can be combined to form a pattern, the early exercises will be more interesting than the dull repetition of practice specimens.

6. Knitting.—The craft of knitting, like the early stages of weaving, may well find its beginnings in the Junior School, but care should be taken to ensure that it has purpose and interest, and does not degenerate into a merely mechanical occupation. There is no necessity to labour over specimen work, for a variety of small and useful articles can be made as a result of well graded teaching. As with the early exercises in sewing, the choice of tools for beginners is important. Needles should be neither too thick nor too long, and steel needles should not be used at all until some skill in knitting has been acquired.

III. THE SENIOR SCHOOL STAGE

7. The aim of the course.—In a Senior School it will not as a rule be necessary to have recourse to special devices in order to help children to realise the practical use of Needlework. By the age of 11 girls will be familiar with the simpler processes in sewing and knitting and they are reaching the age at which the value of Needlework in everyday life as a constructive and decorative craft is readily appreciated. The important thing for the teacher at this stage is to plan a really practical scheme of work by means of which she will aim at teaching the craft progressively, so that the girls make use of the knowledge they already possess and add to it gradually by definite stages. Emphasis on independent work is as important here as in the Junior School for it will be impossible to ensure that girls really understand new stitches and processes if they only do a small part of the work which the teacher has planned. Again, little advance will be made unless the tools and materials are suitable for the stage of progress the children have reached, and the interest will not be genuine nor the possibility of the craft fully realised, unless the girls themselves have some outlet for their own taste and invention.

8. Schemes of work.—A good course in Needlework in a Senior School should aim at the following wide range of interest and skill :—

(*a*) A knowledge of the appropriate tools and their use, and due understanding of differences in the texture and manipulation of various materials.

(*b*) Proficiency in stitchery both for purposes of construction and decoration.

(*c*) Some understanding of the simpler ways of planning, and of cutting out materials, to make garments and of the relation of these operations to measuring and fitting.

(*d*) A knowledge of simple ways of mending, renovating and reconstructing garments.

(*e*) Skill and construction in knitting.

Throughout the course there should be an appreciation of the part played by colour, texture and shape in designing for Needlework of any kind.

9. Tools and Materials.—The right selection and manipulation of the tools used in Needlework is an important part of the craft, and should form the subject of definite teaching. The relation of the size of the needle and the thickness and tension of the thread to the character of the stitch and the quality of the material is one of the fundamental elements in Needlework, which girls should learn gradually to appreciate for themselves. This knowledge forms the basis of good technique, and is equally applicable to hand sewing and to machine sewing. The working and care of a sewing machine should certainly form a part of the course for older girls, and the study should include a consideration of the appropriate choice between machine and hand sewing in any piece of work. It should be realised that accurate fixing and careful tacking are necessary for good machining, and that correct technique is

better than speed. The first practice should be on long stretches of material to avoid constant stopping, turning and starting. Failing other material, useful practice in machining can be obtained by stitching a newspaper with an unthreaded needle and this can be followed by stitching on appropriate articles such as dusters and pillow-cases.

Every opportunity should be used to give experience in understanding the differences in the texture, colour and pattern of materials. In making garments, the suitability or unsuitability for their purpose of materials of varying width and texture is an important factor; while in decorative needlework the varying qualities of fabrics of all kinds are of no less interest. The study of materials may well include some investigation into their sources, as well as the history of manufactured fabrics. Strength, warmth, durability, and suitability for laundering, are all qualities of material which are of interest to a needlewoman. Closely related to this study is the craft of hand weaving, providing an opportunity for experience in the actual construction of materials, and unlimited possibilities for creative design. By experiments in cutting patterns in blocks or dies and printing them on material an introduction to the craft of fabric-printing and the uses of printed material may be made. The making of designs by applying one fabric on another or by embroidery opens out another field of interest in connexion with materials.

The value of some such creative work in colour and pattern by means of materials cannot be over-estimated, as it is in this way, rather than by exercises entirely restricted to drawing and painting, that some understanding of the qualities of design can be developed.

10. Stitchery and Processes.—It may be assumed that the main basic stitches required in needlework will be known by the time the Senior School is reached,

but the girls' natural growth, both physical and mental, will demand a somewhat different approach to this part of the craft. Practice, however, will be necessary in order to obtain regularity and rhythm in sewing, to gain proficiency in handling materials so as to produce a workmanlike result. A certain doubt exists as to the value of learning stitches and processes which are not needed in the prevailing fashion in clothes, such, for instance, as the making of button-holes. But it is not difficult to recognise what, in general, are the fundamental processes in needlework as applied in the making of garments; for instance, it is clearly important to understand the various ways of dealing with fulness of material, and with raw edges; methods of making and finishing an opening, and of fastening; what can be done with material cut on the cross, and so on. The aim should be to give girls some solid foundation of knowledge and technique on which they may work later on.

In addition to using stitches, in making garments, girls should have the pleasure of experimenting with a number of new stitches which can be combined in various ways, and in a variety of threads, to form part of a design for embroidery.

II. Construction of garments : use of needlework patterns : cutting out.—From the early stages of teaching constructive needlework, the business of planning, measuring and cutting should form part of the practical work. Junior children can take simple measurements with tape measures, do easy calculations, make simple flat patterns and cut them out in paper before using material. For example, in the construction of a book cover or a bag for a brush and comb, the children should begin by measuring the dimensions of the book or the brush, and should note carefully the appearance of the cover or the bag when laid out flat before further construction takes place.

From simple beginnings such as this the older girls may be taught by progressive stages to see the relation between a flat pattern for a garment and the shape of the human form for which it is designed. Opinions will differ as to the advisability of taking pattern drafting with the girls, but it will probably add to their general understanding of a bought flat pattern if they have made some attempt, by modelling or paper folding, to relate the parts of the pattern to the human shape. If this is coupled with as much experience as possible in measuring and fitting, the girls will gain an appreciation of line and form, and be able to use bought patterns intelligently. It may generally be said that if girls know from experience how a pattern is obtained they are better able to make what alterations and adjustments are necessary in using bought patterns. They will understand, too, how variations can be made on a foundation pattern or how a pattern can be altered to suit a particular wearer's taste. They should be trained to consider the design of a garment as a whole, thinking out where necessary openings can best be placed, the best means of fastening, and the finish of neck and sleeves Any personal and individual notes of decoration should be planned to form an essential part of the design for the garment.

Two main points should be emphasised : the *purpose* should decide the choice of material, and the *material* should influence the design and the choice of the processes and stitches.

It is clearly very important that, in spite of classroom difficulties girls should learn to plan and cut out materials. Only by constant practice in identifying the parts of a pattern, laying them correctly and economically on material and actually cutting, can they acquire the confidence which will enable them to make use of their experience when deprived of the teacher's help.

12. Repairs and renovation.—In the Senior School the girls' increasing proficiency in handling tools and materials, and their knowledge of construction make it possible to give valuable teaching in the matter of repairs and renovation. As a foundation for this, Juniors can be trained to adopt the right attitude to repairs by learning, for instance, to replace worn stitches on a hem or the seam of a frock, or to fasten broken tags on coats, or to sew on buttons.

This punctilious attention to "running repairs" should be carried on in the Senior School, and girls should be encouraged to mend torn button-holes and pockets, repair gloves, replace hat linings, and attend to all similar matters which the self-respecting person does not neglect.

This elementary work is little more than a matter of discipline, but it is not so easy to collect sufficient material for lessons on more advanced forms of renovation. It should, however, be regarded as a matter of great importance that girls should learn how to deal neatly with necessary household repairs, and they can at any rate start with those that the school itself provides, from the Housecraft room, the canteen, or the staff rooms. In household mending it is useful to know when the use of the sewing machine is permissible or even desirable.

Darning should be taught as far as possible on actual stockings, socks, or similar knitted or woven materials, and followed at a later stage by the darning of table and house linen. Probably the best method of arranging for a suitable supply of material for darning practice is to assign this type of work to groups of girls rather than to the whole class. The same may be said of learning patching, for this is most satisfactory when practised on actual garments rather than on specimens, and it will usually be difficult to secure a large supply. Whatever methods of patching and renewing small

sections of a garment are taught should be closely related to principles of construction.

If the girls are to be given instruction in the renovation of partly worn or out-of-date garments, they will appreciate this type of work most at the end of their school course. This is difficult work for girls of school age, as it demands a considerable degree of skill and some knowledge of dressmaking, and it is often too difficult for girls to tackle satisfactorily. To be able, however, to deal with alterations in garments is of great service, especially in connexion with the use of ready-made garments, and if the girls are sufficiently skilful to undertake it they will find it a valuable part of their course. Garments which are to be renovated should first be unpicked, then cleaned or washed and pressed; this may usefully be carried out in Housecraft lessons.

13. Knitting.—In knitting, Juniors usually make rapid progress, acquiring such mastery over the elementary processes that the chief business of the Senior School is to give further practice, until the girls knit evenly and rhythmically and can undertake more advanced work. From a relatively early age they should learn to work from printed or written directions. While the elements of knitting are still being learnt, a fair amount of time must be given to it, but once this is accomplished the work tends to become mechanical, and it is undesirable to spend much time on it in school hours

IV. THE ORGANISATION OF NEEDLEWORK

14. Responsibility for the teaching.—Where several members of a school Staff share the teaching in Needlework there should clearly be close co-operation between them, and it is generally desirable, in the interests of continuity, that one member of the staff should be

responsible for the general oversight and co-ordination of the teaching. This, together with a carefully planned scheme, should make it possible to ensure progression in the course, and to prevent unnecessary repetition or omissions.

15. Length of lesson period, and class organisation.—With Needlework, as with any other craft, the length of period in the time-table is a serious consideration. In Junior Schools the normal lesson period may be long enough, but with Senior girls, an arrangement of the available time with a view to securing a longer working period is desirable and will generally produce a more practical output and considerably greater interest. Where the school organisation allows of it, the re-classification of girls in groups for Needlework lessons, so that work can be planned to suit their ability, is often found very successful. Even if this is impossible, it is important to grade the work to meet the needs of individual girls in a class, while not diverging too widely from the main scheme in operation.

16. Methods of teaching.—The teacher of Needlework should make use of various methods of teaching the subject, for all have their particular uses There is need for class teaching, group teaching, and individual teaching; often the need for all three will arise in a single lesson

Class teaching, to be successful, requires carefully planned illustrative material, large scale diagrams, and working specimens for actual demonstration. The display of examples of stitches, or of a finished garment, will give a useful stimulus to the work. Group teaching will be useful in such exercises as cutting out material, when obviously the teacher cannot supervise more than a small number at one time. It is also a useful way of dealing with difficulties or mistakes which are common in the work of a number of girls in a class.

Community or co-operative work will provide other opportunities for group teaching and for the production of larger pieces of work than an individual worker can manage. Such work should be carried out on a design which has been discussed by the group as a whole.

17. The work of nervous and backward girls.—The needlework lesson will call for careful watching, by the teacher, of the posture and expression of the children, since the effort to carry out work which is beyond their powers may lead to nervous strain. Processes which require the manipulation of small or delicate tools, such as a fine steel knitting needle, depend on a neuro-muscular co-ordination which no effort of will can sustain if the eye and the hand have not reached the necessary stage of development. Very tight sewing or knitting may be distress signals, not wilful faults, and the observant teacher will act upon such indications of the varying needs of her class.

It is of great importance, too, to plan work very carefully for the less intelligent pupils. Girls who are backward in their school work sometimes obtain proficiency in stitching by hand or machine, but find difficulty in constructive or inventive work of any kind. The teacher should ensure that, because of this, such girls are not relegated to purely mechanical work, but should give them opportunities of attempting very simple planning, cutting and fixing, and decorative work which will make an appeal through colour and pattern.

18. Text-books and records.—A good supply of text-books and interesting books of reference in Needlework and allied crafts should be available in the Senior School. They are valuable for the teachers' use, and the girls should learn to consult them. It is also desirable that the girls should keep records of

their own work, showing stitches learnt, patterns used, cost of materials bought, all of which will form a useful guide for future reference.

19. Tests.—It is both salutary and encouraging to set tests of skill and ability at intervals during the course. The tests bring to light general weaknesses and show the teacher the outstanding merits or faults in the work of individuals, and often are the only means of discovering how far the girls are able to work independently.

20. Material for use.—A responsibility rests with the teacher in the matter of the supply of material for Needlework lessons, and this responsibility is not merely connected with the need for selling the finished work. By means of the fabrics, wools, cottons, silks and other materials for use in the learning of this craft, the children will be gaining their earliest experience in colour and form, and in many cases they will be attempting to create satisfactory designs from material which has in the first place been selected by someone else, and may be uninteresting in colour and limited in range. It is usually possible, by exercising care and discrimination, to provide children with material to work with which is pleasing and inspiring, and in view of the very marked effect this may have, the effort is surely worth while.

CHAPTER IX

HOUSECRAFT

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

1. The beginnings of housecraft.—The practice of the arts of home life does not, by any means, have its beginnings in the Senior School. If his first introduction to school is in a Nursery School, a child experiences there the advantages of fresh air, regular habits, food and sleep ; he learns to keep himself neat and clean, and to understand the necessity for co-operation and unselfishness if his life as one of a group of people is to be happy. In addition to these general forms of social training he takes his part, in so far as he is able, in serving and clearing away meals, learns to carry plates and use utensils, to brush the floor and fold a cloth. The practice of these simple achievements is carried further in the Infants' School in the arrangements for the mid-morning lunch and in the care for the order and beauty of the classroom. Here too a child makes his first attempts at

handling materials, folding, cutting, tying and modelling. These social activities are often combined by the child himself in dramatic play in which he pictures himself as the centre of a household, cleaning, laying meals, looking after children, and generally experimenting in the domestic arts.

The Junior School carries on these various activities, giving a child further experience in materials and tools, and widening his responsibility for keeping order both in his own person and the school, and satisfying his pleasure in games and plays.

2. Housecraft in the Senior School.—As the child of the Junior School grows towards adolescence, the activities which have hitherto satisfied his play interests assume a different significance. The "make believe" character of these activities fades, and the child begins, on the one hand, to take an enjoyable part in games demanding skill and co-operation, and, on the other, to practise crafts which produce real things and supply actual necessities. A sense of reality may now be said to inspire the practical work of the school, for children are reaching the age when they can appreciate the difference between good and bad workmanship, or technique in relation to purpose, to understand the part played by the creative crafts in life, and to show keen preferences for colours and shapes.

3. The Senior School environment.—This emphasis on reality forms the keynote of the Senior School, and with it comes the necessity for space in which, on the foundation of social training already given, and the general educational activities of the Infant and Junior School a more direct training for life may be given. The ordinary school classroom imposes too great a restriction on such training, and to

remove it to a separate building tends to divorce it from the other parts of the curriculum. The modern school building has therefore acquired important additional facilities specially designed for practical purposes, and aims also at giving the children the experience of surroundings which are well-ordered and made attractive both indoors and out-of-doors. Man's need for food, shelter and clothing, and his desire for order, cleanliness and beauty lie behind those parts of a child's training which deal with cookery and dietetics, the crafts of the needle, the handling of wood and metal, the care of a garden and the practice of hygiene, laundrywork and housewifery. The study of colour and design naturally plays an important part in the making of a home, while to its proper conduct belongs the humane consideration of the care of infants and of the sick and injured. These pursuits cannot be separated from scientific knowledge, which is vital to the study of the health, diet, clothing, equipment and labour-saving mechanism of a modern home.

As far as possible, therefore, the domestic arts and crafts should not be regarded as a number of isolated subjects to be followed as a matter of routine, but, rather, they should combine to form both a reality and an ideal in the child's mind. To this end it is of the utmost importance that the aims and principles of these very practical activities should be actually demonstrated in the school itself, which should be clean, orderly and attractive and provide an environment which the children are proud to maintain.

4. The scope of housecraft.—Enough has been said to emphasise the importance of regarding the domestic crafts as part of a wide course of practical training in which the various elements are drawn together by a common purpose into a complete whole. For the sake of convenience these parts must be considered separately,

and the present section deals more particularly with Cookery, Laundrywork and Housewifery, often combined under the composite title " Housecraft ".

Housecraft is, from one point of view, a matter of practical proficiency which is attained by repetition of processes until good performance has become so much a matter of habit as to be almost automatic. This gives prominence at the outset to the activity aspect and subordinates the relevant theory. With younger children, theory detached from practice has little meaning, but, as they grow older, girls will make better use of their proficiency, if they understand the principles on which the processes are based and learn to use this theoretical knowledge to enable them to approach unfamiliar problems with confidence. As the course progresses practice and relevant theory may be dealt with at each stage, and at the end of the course it should be possible for the girls to work more independently and less by imitation basing their work upon principles which they understand. In this way they should leave school with a body of experiences which not only provide a working knowledge of the various necessary processes, but also some understanding of the fundamentals of good housecraft. Such girls can be said to be really skilled in this group of crafts.

II. THE ORGANISATION OF HOUSECRAFT

5. The age of beginning.—One of the problems connected with the organisation of Housecraft is to decide at what stage in the girl's school life it is advisable to begin, and how to plan the work most wisely and economically in the time available. As a general rule, a girl entering a Senior School is too undeveloped to do effective practical Housecraft, and the postponement of the practice to a rather later stage has an added advantage in the fact that the girls bring to it a quicker understanding of its meaning and a more marked

interest in home life. If the work is begun in the early stages of the Senior School, it should be sufficiently attractive to capture a young girl's interest; it should aim at developing sensible habits of work and learning the correct use of tools and utensils. Possibly at this stage a shorter lesson than is practicable later on may be found satisfactory.

6. Length of course and session.—Differentiation in the type of work and allocation of time are essential to suit the needs of girls of varying ability; indeed, from a teacher's point of view, it is advisable to admit some flexibility in the length of period at all stages of the Housecraft course. Not only must the age and skill of pupils be considered, but the very varying facilities of the schools. It is clear, too, that quite different purposes are served by the whole and the half-day's sessions, and this purpose should be the deciding factor in planning the length of period. The shorter period is suitable for specific instruction and practice, the longer period, approximating more nearly to the conditions of a home, provides opportunity for the organisation and carrying out of the variety of duties which constitute a day's work. Taking the same logical standpoint, it is evident that, if a course in Housecraft is to have its full educational value, it should be continuous throughout the girls' school life, so that they may see some progression in the scheme and enjoy their increasing independence.

The best results of Housecraft teaching are usually obtained when the girls who form a group for Housecraft are drawn from the same class in the school. This principle should, if possible, be maintained till the leaving age. Specially interesting work and visits can be planned for the older girls in their last term at school, the arrangements for which will be complicated, if younger and less experienced pupils are mixed with the same group.

III. CONTENT OF A SCHOOL COURSE IN HOUSECRAFT

7. The main aim : to set a higher standard of home life.—In any practical work it should be remembered that the acquisition of skill is a slow process, and much slower with some children than others, and that the mastery of a limited syllabus is more satisfactory than a superficial acquaintance with an extended scheme In planning a course in Housecraft it is convenient to decide what processes in ordinary household work every girl should be able to carry out, and how much of the theory behind it she may be expected to understand. An outline of the necessary daily work connected with a small home will furnish the best basis for such a scheme. Possibly many girls derive their earliest ideas of Housecraft from household drudgery in difficult conditions, and the school will aim at setting them a higher standard of home life in conditions that provide a practical illustration of the way in which this standard can be achieved.

8. The introductory stage : the practice of the common round of home duties.—A girl should begin by learning to carry out as well as possible all those ordinary duties which she might reasonably be expected to perform at home, so as to give her from the first a high standard of personal hygiene and simple healthy living. These duties include keeping her own person in scrupulous order, learning to do well such elementary processes as cleaning shoes, making beds, washing hairbrushes, washing and ironing handkerchiefs, cleaning silver, cutting bread and butter and making tea. In planning this preliminary work it is always important to remember the particular outlook and rather limited skill of the younger girls, and to select duties which it is within their power to carry out effectively. Even at this stage the work can be used not

merely to provide disciplinary exercises, but in order to give the first thoughtful approach to larger problems such as the causes and removal of dirt, the variety of agents for cleansing, the care of implements and utensils, and the satisfaction derived from order and beauty.

9. The intermediate stage : a graded scheme of cookery and laundrywork, based on the normal work of the home.—This introductory work should be followed by a graded scheme in cookery and laundrywork, still closely related to the life of a home, but aiming at the development both of skill and of such an attitude to the work as will make for orderly habits and the intelligent use of time and material. This can only be achieved if, at all stages, the work is suited to the capacity and understanding of the girls, and if there is a reasonable amount of revision and sufficient progression to allow for a proper development.

In planning this intermediate stage of the course the normal work of a house will again provide the essential basis The processes involved in a family wash will include practice in all the ordinary washing processes, and give opportunity for acquiring the technique of ironing and finishing and the pleasure of wearing clean, well laundered garments. In cookery, the fundamental processes such as boiling, steaming and baking which all occur in simple meals, will suggest the necessary scheme. Progress will inevitably be slow, for each of the activities will involve fresh instruction, practice in using implements, an understanding of the use and care of ovens, stoves, boilers and other parts of the equipment of the kitchen. The girls should become accustomed to looking at their work as a series of household jobs, rather than as an isolated school lesson, practising not only the processes involved in a specific kind of exercise, but giving attention as well to the planning of time in

relation to other duties, to preparation and clearing up, and to the business-like use of instructions and recipes.

10. The final stage: independent management of a day's work in a home.—The final stage of work in Housecraft will give opportunities for assembling the parts of the foregoing course, and give the girls the interest of planning and carrying out independently the combined work of a house. The fact must not be overlooked that some of the less able pupils may find this kind of work too difficult, and for them interest must be maintained in more extensive practice of the simpler things till they have the satisfaction of doing them easily and well. But the majority of the Senior School pupils will have, before they leave, this interesting experience, and approach the problem of managing a day's work in a home, putting into practice the various parts of the instruction which their course has been comprised. It is at this stage that the school will most appropriately insert some sensible instruction in the care of young children, which will thus take its proper place as part of the natural interest and duty of a home rather than form a separate class-room topic.

IV. METHODS OF APPROACH

11. Arrangement of the courses with regard to local conditions.—One of the first responsibilities of the Housecraft teacher is the business of grading and arranging the work. This arrangement should be based on a number of important considerations.

The general plan for a year or a term must be decided upon, and due regard should be given to the requirements of the seasons; for instance, the period of fruit bottling, the interests of Christmas or the needs of school functions. The conditions and neighbourhood of the school must also affect the type of course which is carried on. For instance, where gardening is taken in

a school, attention will be given to the cooking and preservation of fruit and vegetables in their seasons, and useful experimental work can be done, for example, in cooking different varieties of potatoes and root vegetables. In rural schools, particularly, economic biology, the effect of sunshine on food stuffs and other interesting investigations may well be included. Where, on the other hand the school is situated in a congested city, industrial town or mining village, it is clear that the scheme must be of a different character, and the emphasis will be laid on problems which will be only too obvious to need specific reference here.

In order that the schemes shall be really practical, therefore, the homes, interests and needs of the children must be an important consideration, and the scheme should reflect the careful thought which the teacher has given to it.

12. Arrangement of the work according to its difficulties.—Apart from the neighbourhood and the seasons, the work must be graded according to the difficulty it presents, not only in understanding the processes, but in actual manipulation. To take a single example, the making of a good cornflour mould is a more complicated process than the preparation of a rice pudding, yet both are sometimes taken together with inexperienced pupils because the ingredients are similar. The good teacher is the one who recognises these grades of difficulty and can plan a course which will lead her pupils slowly from one stage to another.

Similarly there is an art in associating in the children's minds causes and results which are alike, so that each lesson and exercise is not an isolated experience but adds some new element to already familiar knowledge. Much of the scientific exactness which the teacher gives to the planning of the work will be lost upon her pupils in the early stages, but as they progress they will realise

that their proficiency has grown out of the ordered association of ideas.

13. Procedure in housecraft lessons.—Lessons in Housecraft were at one time invariably conducted on the same plan, that is, a preliminary demonstration by the teacher followed by practice in the same piece of work by the class. At the present time by no means all work in Housecraft follows this procedure, and much encouraging progress is being made on more liberal and independent lines. Following some definite and systematic preliminary practice in handling tools and materials, it is possible to allow girls to carry out assignments of work, preparing and arranging their day's programme in accordance with written instructions, and by discussion with the teachers, and finding out the necessary procedure for themselves from carefully tabulated directions. This plan, which is capable of many variations, demands the utmost attention and concentration on the part of the pupils, and undoubtedly gives valuable training in self-reliance and judgment.

It cannot however be denied that practical demonstration by the teacher is a necessary feature of all Housecraft courses, whether it is given regularly or periodically. A good demonstration teaches correct manipulation, gives visual instruction by showing the class not only each stage of the process but also the finished result. The teacher who carries out, before an audience in a certain time and to a high standard, the process she is teaching, keeps up her own technique and has material for reference, when she criticises the girls' work.

Girls who are used to working independently, and have reached a fairly advanced stage of proficiency, will experience the same sense of confidence if they, too, have occasional opportunities of preparing and giving a demonstration for the rest of the class.

14. Revision lessons and tests of progress.—The function of revision lessons is to review and relate previous lessons from a fresh aspect, consolidating knowledge, removing misconceptions, and generally strengthening weak places before proceeding with new work. Such lessons should give practice in variations of a familiar process, and generally develop confidence and speed.

The difference between revision lessons of this kind and tests to ascertain the proficiency and progress of a class should be emphasised. The teacher will have opportunities, when testing the class, of noticing methods, choice and correct use of utensils, economy of time and material, and the power to produce a finished result. It is usually advisable to test a small group rather than the whole class, and the results should be fully criticised. The advantages of having an examiner who is not the class teacher should sometimes be considered, and it is occasionally possible for teachers to exchange classes for this purpose.

15. Pupils' records of work.—It is not always possible for the members of a Housecraft group to remain together throughout school life, and so it is important that each girl should keep some kind of record of her work. This need not be very full but should show exactly what practical work she has done and possibly a summary of criticisms given by the teacher.

At one time notebooks were regarded as the girl's text-book made by herself as the course proceeded and designed to last for future years. To this end, notes were often dictated or written on the blackboard and carefully copied by the girls, little or no individual effort being involved. Much of this laborious work is now replaced by the use of text-books, and notebooks are more generally used for notes made by the girls as

records of their lessons or their reading, or for answers to questions set by the teacher.

In addition to the use of text-books, recipes or notes on methods of work can be duplicated by the teacher for the use of the class. These can be pasted into note-books, or, better still, incorporated in loose-leaf files, additional notes or illustrations added by the girls providing their own individual contribution. Newspapers and magazines provide excellent illustrations. Often the records and recipes that are produced in this way are not only invaluable in organising individual work but also form collections that are worth preserving.

Some children of limited general ability will find the practical work as much as they can accomplish, and for these the minimum amount of written work, in the form of copying from the printed page or memorising by reading from simply written books or studying simple illustrations, will be sufficient. Written work has a definite place in the Housecraft class, but too great insistence on it creates a dislike in the case of the child who has been discouraged throughout his whole school life by failure on the academic side. On the other hand, patient training in the written expression of methods of work often awakens an idea of the connexion between speech and action which, with encouragement, gives confidence to the backward child.

The increasing use of text-books, books of reference and periodicals in general school work should give a lead to the Housecraft teacher, and there is no need for detailed discussion of their use here.

V. SOME OF THE WIDER ASPECTS OF HOUSECRAFT

16. The need for taking a broad view of the training.—It has been emphasised throughout that Housecraft is essentially a practical activity and that proficiency in the craft should be the main aim of a

course. But the educational value of the work will be much strengthened by some knowledge of the scientific and aesthetic values which it possesses.

The responsibility for this is not, of course, borne by the Housecraft teacher alone, but is shared by the teachers of Science, Hygiene, Art, Geography, and by other members of the staff. Any method of approach will be informal and incidental, though some definite formulation at the end of the course may be possible and advisable for those girls who seem equal to making it.

A. COOKERY

17. Choice and price of food stuffs.—The choice and price of food stuffs will be dealt with, from the earliest lessons, by practical observation and the selection of materials used for practice work. The difference between fresh and preserved fruits, vegetables and meat, the appearance and price of joints of meat, expensive and cheaper cuts, kinds of cheese, standard brown and white flours, will be dealt with informally as occasion arises. During the shopping, which is part of the course, prices will be noted, with seasonal and local variations. At each stage, the cost of dishes and of whole meals will be worked out, so that the girls gradually gain an idea of relative prices and are prepared to make family budgets at a later stage. Home-made foods should be compared with those supplied in the shops, not only from the costing standpoint, but as regards ingredients and freshness.

18. Knowledge of food values.—The cost of food is only one factor in choosing suitable meals, and the relative value of different foods in a diet must be generally considered from the beginning. The value of such foods as milk, butter, eggs, bread, meat and vegetables should be broadly compared and their functions indicated: always using simple terms and appealing to the children's general knowledge.

Children can understand such terms as bone-making, body-building, heat-giving, power-giving, but chemical terms convey little or nothing in the early stages, and should only be introduced when the more able girls can relate them to their work in Science.

Experiments to show the physical reaction of ingredients to cooking operations may be performed either in the Science laboratory or the Housecraft room, but elaborate chemical tests particularly of a quantitative character are as a rule unnecessary and misleading. Continuous practice will lead the girls to associate a food not only with its main dietetic value but with its price and the correct method of cooking it. The study of food values and prices will enable them to construct menus, first for a day and then for a week, at the lowest cost consistent with adequate nutritive value The relative amount of food stuffs needed per person can be found from tables, and standard rations can be memorised.

When the girls understand what is meant by a minimum diet, they can suggest variations in it and, working in groups, prepare and serve illustrative dishes for typical meals. The arrangement, too, of the midday school dinner, whether served in a hall or canteen or eaten by the Housecraft class only, is the most telling example of practical food values

If girls have learned to choose, buy, cook, and serve well balanced meals for their own consumption and to criticise their own work with discrimination they will be the better equipped for the management of a home.

19. Some factors that promote nutrition.—Much more than cookery is involved in the consideration of nutrition. The girls at all stages of the course should realise the importance of regularity and punctuality in serving meals, quietness and good manners at table, and of pleasant surroundings. Where meals are served

in school and visitors entertained, much can be done to obtain the right attitude and, where girls help with Nursery Classes, their own early training is revived. In addition, such topics as the value of rest after meals, influence of fatigue on appetite, the variation of diet in summer and winter will all form a basis for useful discussion.

The most lasting results will be obtained where a body of knowledge has been built up on the practice of good economical cookery. Isolated lessons on vegetarianism and similar deviations from normal diet have little value. Such topics should be dealt with incidentally

B. LAUNDRYWORK

20. The science of laundrywork.—In dealing with the theoretical side of laundrywork, close co-operation with the courses in Needlework and in Science will develop a critical attitude to the composition of materials used in ready-made clothing and their reaction to washing processes. The various ingredients used in laundrywork should be studied experimentally and their physical reactions observed. Hardness of the water supplied, quality of soap, value of washing powder and similar commercial productions, cost of materials for washing day are only some of the subjects which may profitably be discussed.

Chemical formulae are generally out of place, but cost and quality of materials should be carefully considered in a practical way. The amount and cost of soap used for each class, for example, may be recorded, and teacher and girls will secure economy by careful checking of stores and price.

The changing conditions in housing, particularly in the increase of flat-dwellings, the limitation of drying facilities, and the difficulties involved in open-air drying, are all important aspects of home laundrywork. The

use of public wash-houses, the selection and preparation of articles sent to trade laundries and the treatment of semi-finished work, are subjects for consideration in laundry lessons.

C. HOME MANAGEMENT

21. The need for co-ordinating "housewifery", cookery and laundrywork.—The somewhat narrow conception of "housewifery" as a course of instruction in cleaning and other household duties, distinct from cookery and laundrywork, has now been replaced by a broader idea of the scope of Housecraft as a whole Since the premises specially designed for practical work in the newer schools provide many opportunities for this wider scheme of household management, it is no longer appropriate to consider the duties of house-work apart from their association with other practical domestic activities. The harmonious working of a house depends upon good organisation, suitable conditions, and technical skill, and a course in housecraft must include some guidance in these matters as well as giving practical instruction in cookery and laundrywork If a broad view is taken of the course, all the elements of home-making will, it is hoped, fit into their places in the scheme. The way of healthy living has been indicated through instruction and training in Hygiene; the girls have received some instruction in the care of young children; Science has illuminated everyday phenomena and the wonderful domestic equipment of today, which is so often accepted without question. Experience gained in the arts and crafts has shown that colour, harmony, and the individual expression of ideas play a vivid part in the life of a home. In addition to acquiring these elements, the home-maker should realise that rest and food, cleanliness and colour, exercise and recreation all affect the running of the household, and an attempt should be made by teacher and pupils to formulate

plans, by which these can be secured with the least strain to the worker and the utmost benefit to the family.

22. Planning and preparation of the work.—The "housewifery" side of the work will not therefore consist solely of a separate study of methods of cleaning, examples of household needlework, and similar domestic duties. The high ideal of creating better citizens and better homes should inspire the whole course. This ideal can only be realised by the constant practice of relating one piece of work to another. From planning the work of a morning, or a week or a year, the girls may develop an intelligent interest in the planning of a house. The elementary calculation of the cost of a single meal will lead naturally to estimating the cost of running the meals of a household or a weekly budget, or considering the relative advantages of using coal, gas, electricity or oil. This general aspect of housewifery should not consist purely of talks or lectures on the part of the teacher. An understanding of good housewifery can only be achieved by practical experience. This emphasises first of all the orderly and reasonable preparation and organisation of the girls' own work, the use of a time-table thoughtfully compiled by themselves, the realisation that carelessness and unpunctuality actually lead to unnecessary labour, and the value of economy which grows from the elimination of waste of all kinds. In addition the girls should, if possible, have opportunities of making and creating things to add beauty or comfort to the home, and discover how these may best be kept in good order and repair.

23. The study of modern developments in Housecraft.—Following the suggestion that actual experience is of the greatest practical value, there should be opportunities during the course for seeing examples of the most recent experiments and achievements in home-making, furnishing and equipment. To the perusal of books,

papers and catalogues may occasionally be added visits to good housing estates or exhibitions. Interest may well be aroused in the supply of water, food, fuel, and the production of articles in daily use, and this active interest may lead girls to feel that unsatisfactory home conditions are not inevitable but can be improved with knowledge and skill.

Modern mechanical appliances can be more easily used and explained at school under skilled direction than in later years without assistance, and the acquisition of a working knowledge of labour-saving equipment should form part of a Housecraft course wherever possible. The girls should be trained, before using any apparatus for the first time, to study the directions issued with it and to follow them carefully step by step. Safety rules should be enforced, and responsibility for seeing that taps and switches are turned off when necessary should become a regular habit.

24. The use of additional accommodation for housecraft in the school.—Special accommodation designed to give more meaning to the Housecraft of a school is now provided in many areas. A suite of small rooms consisting of bedroom, sitting-room, bathroom and perhaps a small kitchen is sometimes provided in addition to the Housecraft rooms, in order to familiarise the girls with the common problems of a small house. In some cases a house on a separate site, is taken, and this provides for the additional and more intensive study of home management with a smaller group of pupils than is usual in the Housecraft room. Both types of accommodation are designed to give reality to the practice and, where they are not available, it is most important to make up for their absence by eliminating as far as possible the school atmosphere, so that the girls may still associate their work with the requirements of a home.

This accommodation, which is usually in the school itself, but sometimes in a house specially rented for the purpose, is intended not only to increase the facilities for training in Housecraft but also to enrich the general life of the school.

This means that the additional rooms, if provided, should be regarded as an integral part of the school and should be in constant use for purposes that arise naturally out of the life of the school itself. Every school will find its own ways of employing these rooms. They may, for instance, serve as a quiet place for the use of some of the older girls, or as a means of dispensing school hospitality on occasion.

CHAPTER X

GARDENING AND OTHER RURAL ACTIVITIES

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I.—GARDENING

I. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

1. Gardening as a school activity.—Gardening as a form of school craft is now well established, and it is generally recognised that some provision for it is as desirable in towns as in the country. In the rural school it may be regarded as the key activity, for it is more closely related than any other school activity to the life and work of the countryside and lends reality and purpose to other practical subjects, particularly to the wood and the metal crafts and to science. There is in fact little in the curriculum of the country school which

cannot with advantage find some point of contact with, or some practical application in, the gardening course.

Although gardening does not occupy the same pivotal position in the education of town children, it is specially desirable for them because it is an open-air occupation and brings them into direct contact with nature. Again, it is as valuable for girls as for boys, and there is no reason why the former should not take a full share in the work, if the soil is not too heavy and the tools are suitable in size. When it is not possible for the girls to take the full course in gardening, they should, at least, be made responsible for the care of some of the flower beds and borders.

Gardening demands skill in the use of a variety of tools and the intelligent application of that skill to different tillage operations. In learning to raise and tend plants and to wait patiently for results, the pupils get to know something of their needs and uses and of their infinite variety and beauty. As the course proceeds they begin to see, too, that everything they and their fellows do helps towards the realisation of a carefully planned scheme.

2. The garden as a school amenity.—The ideal setting for a school, whether Infant School, Junior School or Senior School, is a garden. In the selection and lay-out of new sites the conception should be the school estate of which the garden is an important part, beautiful and at the same time an integral part of the school life. Much of the charm and joy of the garden will depend upon the variety and arrangement of its features and their blending to form a harmonious whole. The garden should be regarded as belonging to the entire school and all pupils ought to have some direct interest, some work to do in it, and so share both the enjoyment of its amenities and the responsibility for its upkeep. Thus it becomes a place of pleasurable resort in which

all may take a pride. These advantages are less easily secured when the garden is not part of the school site: for not only is the continuous observation which is so valuable a part of the school training seriously curtailed, but a detached garden makes very little contribution to the amenities of the school. Whenever possible, a long narrow site should be avoided. Such a site is difficult to lay out effectively so as to form an attractive and natural setting for the school.

3. The nature of the garden.—Any aspect is suitable for the school garden, though it is well to avoid a prominent slope to the north, on which the land is likely to be cold and the crops late. Warm slopes to the south are suitable for early crops. If the slope is considerable, the terracing that may be necessary to prevent heavy rains from washing away the soil offers scope for attractive planning.

A windswept site requires a shield. This may be a hedge or a belt of quickly growing trees which may need some protection until established. When fully grown either will break the wind, add variety to the lay-out of the garden and afford useful data for observations on the effect of a wind break on growth and soil temperature.

A deep loam is undoubtedly the best soil for a school garden, but almost any soil can be made reasonably satisfactory by tillage and manuring. If there is any alternative, a really stiff clay or land which is heavily shaded by trees is to be avoided. Land which is liable to be water-logged is quite unsuitable for most purposes, unless it can be drained easily.

The size of the garden depends not only upon the number of pupils but also upon the kinds of work attempted. The more intensive the cultivation the smaller is the amount of ground needed per pupil. All gardens must, however, be large enough to provide

adequate opportunity for practical work by all the pupils engaged. No hard and fast rule can be laid down ; but, where gardening is a part of the school course, there should generally be not less than half an acre of garden for a single-stream Senior School and at least an acre for a two-stream or larger school. Considerably larger areas will be required where it is intended to develop such special features as a permanent fruit plantation, plots for growing large quantities of vegetables for the school canteen, plots for farm crops, or grassland for manurial experiments. Separate provision of land should be made for any small live-stock kept.

For an unreorganised rural school of about 100 children a minimum area of a quarter of an acre is required for the satisfactory development of a comprehensive course of gardening. Quite a small garden can be made to serve a useful purpose in providing training in flower cultivation and producing varied material for Nature Study.

4. The planning and lay-out of the School garden. —In laying out the garden provision should be made for progressive training in the cultivation of vegetables, flowers and fruit. Skilful planning will be required to ensure this training and, at the same time, to provide attractive features such as a lawn, a pool, a rockery, a pergola, or groups of ornamental shrubs. Such features should be treated boldly, each being suitably merged into its surroundings and, when necessary, so arranged as to break monotony and prevent incongruous groupings. It is useful to include in the plan an assembly point, where the children can be called together for short talks and discussions on problems that arise. This should be easily accessible from every part of the garden and should constitute its natural centre and be set off by some of its most decorative features.

Any attempt to adopt throughout a particular area a standardised type of garden is to be deprecated. The

lay-out of the garden will naturally embody the teacher's, and often the children's, ideas and have a character of its own. It should not be fixed once and for all. Need for change will arise from time to time and the teacher should lay his plans in advance so that any changes that are made shall in no way lessen the attractiveness of the garden as a whole: they will in fact form part of the pupils' training in the orderly development of a garden.

The main paths should be of permanent construction, and should vary in their width according to the size of the garden. A large garden requires a wide main path which, if suitably flanked by flowers or bushes, gives it character and distinction. Seats may be provided here and there so that pupils and visitors may enjoy the garden at their ease.

Permanent paths should be properly made and finished off with a suitable surface. Unless the soil is fairly porous, it may be necessary to drain the path by digging a trench down the middle and filling it with stones or brick rubble. Gravel makes a satisfactory surface, but ashes generally give an unsightly patchy surface and should not be used unless they are perfectly homogeneous. Edgings of various kinds serve to keep soil off the path. They should be unobtrusive and should not be allowed to become permanently infested by weeds. Grass paths are attractive if well made and kept mown and edged, but are unsuited for heavy traffic.

Although it is undesirable to divide the garden into a large number of small plots separated by narrow paths, some temporary paths are necessary. These should be made of trodden earth, so that they can be periodically dug over and kept clean. Their surface should be level and their edges neatly and accurately cut.

5. The teacher of gardening.—The staff of a Senior School where gardening is taught may be expected to

include a master or mistress with special qualifications for teaching the subject. It is clearly desirable that the head teacher of an unreorganised rural school, or a member of the assistant staff, should also be qualified. But a teacher who, though lacking special qualifications, is interested in gardening, has a practical knowledge of it and is convinced of its value, is likely to achieve success if he is prepared to equip himself further by such means as courses organised by Local Authorities and advice from expert organisers. No keen teacher of gardening, however well qualified, will neglect to take advantage of any source of new ideas and knowledge within his reach.

The many points of contact between gardening and the rest of the school curriculum may again be emphasised and the mutual co-operation of all members of the staff to make the most of these contacts may be taken for granted.

II. THE COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN GARDENING

A. THE SCOPE OF SCHOOL GARDENING

6. The cultivation of vegetables.—It will be clear from what has already been said that the school garden should be much more than a vegetable allotment. Nevertheless, the cultivation of vegetables is an essential part of school garden practice and gains in interest and value from being associated with other forms of cultivation.

To begin with, pupils will concentrate on a few crops, in general those commonly grown in a cottage garden or allotment. In doing so they will learn to prepare seed beds, to sow seeds, to carry out the subsequent treatment suited to the requirements of each crop and to understand a simple rotation. Later more intensive cultivation and a much wider range of crops will be undertaken.

At this stage growing for succession should have an important place in the course; and the pupils should learn how to prolong the season of growth of particular crops, e.g. peas, beans or brassicas. Inter-cropping and catch cropping will also be practised and the pupils will realise that the fertility of the land must be maintained since the ground is never free of crops for long and is often bearing two crops at the same time. They will understand, too, that such culture requires a very different rotation from the simple type followed in their first year. Clearly work of this intensive kind cannot be carried out on small individual plots. Communal cultivation on one or more large plots is necessary.

The cultivation of the less commonly grown vegetables, such as artichokes, asparagus, celery, endive, salsify, seakale and spinach, and of such herbs as thyme, sage, parsley, mint, balm, sorrel, should also be included.

7. The cultivation of flowers.—Flowers play an important part in the making of an attractive garden, and it should be recognised that sound craftsmanship can be taught as well through the growing of flowers as through the growing of vegetables. The raising of annuals from seeds and the different methods of propagating herbaceous plants and shrubs present a wide range of operations of varying difficulty. The consideration of colour, of colour blending, of the sizes of plants and their times of flowering, and of massing for effect, is essential to the making of a beautiful garden. The growing of plants for cut flowers and simple experiments in plant breeding may also be undertaken. Work on this scale obviously requires considerable space and equipment for propagation.

It is not always realised that the fertility of the flower beds must be maintained by suitable manuring. Neglect of this important matter inevitably means disappointing results.

A lawn, of fine grass, should be laid down wherever space permits. It should be kept free from weeds and closely cut and neatly edged. Frequent cutting and judicious rolling will do much to produce a fine sward. Weeds such as daisies, plantains and "self-heal" should be eradicated. Periodical treatment with sulphate of ammonia or lawn sand will kill or discourage weeds and promote the growth of grass. An occasional dressing during the winter of finely divided leaf mould will restore soil fertility which tends to be lowered by constant mowing and the removal of grass cuttings.

8. The cultivation of fruit.—It is essential that provision should be made in every garden for some training in fruit growing. In some areas this may well be one of the main features of the gardening. Much of the most instructive part of fruit culture occurs in the nursery-garden stage. The school fruit plot, once it is established, should, therefore, at all times illustrate the progressive stages of the tree or bush from propagation to the mature fruiting condition. If there is sufficient space, a small orchard or fruit plantation of mature trees should also be gradually planted. On no account, however, must the formative stages of the work be crowded out. There must always be the nursery. When there is insufficient space to provide an orchard plot, closely trained forms such as cordons and espaliers may be grown on part of the vegetable garden; but it cannot be too strongly emphasised that the planting of standard and half-standard trees on a vegetable plot is undesirable.

Cuttings of red and black currants and gooseberries should be taken and planted each year. At the end of five years there will be a series of bushes showing each stage from the cutting to the fruiting bush and illustrating the pruning required to train a bush in such a way as to produce the best results. After this the oldest bushes

should be removed each year in order to make room for younger ones and so preserve a succession of stages.

The culture of fruit trees should begin with the formation of stool beds, which, if large enough, will provide abundant material for budding and grafting in the nursery beds. There ought to be sufficient stocks to supply every member of the class with two or more for budding or grafting. In general, named stocks, e.g. East Malling Types II and IX, are the most suitable for apples, quince stocks for pears, and Pershore stocks for plums. With these, as with bush fruits, the progressive stages of development should always be shown in the nursery plot. In a large garden different forms of training, bush, cordon, and espalier, may well be exemplified.

Space should also be found for strawberries and raspberries, while loganberries and similar hybrids yield acceptable fruit and are useful for covering a fence or making a break between one part of the garden and another.

9. Some general points connected with the cultivation of vegetables, flowers and fruit.—Every garden should have at least one frame and a whole range of frames may be needed in gardens where it is intended that the older pupils should carry out an extensive programme of winter work with vegetables and salads and propagation from cuttings. The management of frames is an important part of their training and adequate facilities should be provided for it. Given frames and sufficient stable manure, hot-bed culture may also be undertaken and the pupils taught how to temper fresh manure, to build and consolidate the heap and to attend to watering and ventilating it.

Pests and diseases of plants observed in the garden must be investigated immediately and dealt with in the appropriate manner. The winter washing of fruit trees

should be the regular practice, while grease banding and spring spraying are also desirable.

As a rule, only named varieties of vegetables, flowers and fruits should be grown, and these, as well as any ornamental shrubs, should be clearly labelled, so that the pupils may become familiar with the names of the plants they cultivate and learn as far as possible to recognise characteristics which distinguish one variety from another. The garden exists for the benefit of the whole school, and it becomes a much more interesting and educative place if plants are labelled, so that the children can find out the names of the plants for themselves.

The common weeds should be known by sight, their habits studied, and the best ways of getting rid of them discussed and practised.

Useful work may be done in the way of testing samples of seeds for purity and germination.

10. Economics of the garden.—The primary object of school gardening is not the production of food. Food is, however, produced and must not be wasted. There is no reason why some or all of the vegetables and some of the flowers and fruit should not be sold, but no gardening teacher should ever have to feel that, for the purpose of recovering the whole or even a large part of the expenses, the course of instruction is restricted to the growing of produce that will sell readily. Nor should the teacher have to provide seeds and manures and take the produce. Any profits from sales should normally be expended on further development of the garden.

It has been found possible in some schools to establish delightful gardens, with all the variety needed for progressive work and at the same time to make a speciality of certain crops which bring in considerable revenue. These are often flowers which command a relatively high price when well grown. Supplies of fresh fruit and vegetables for use in the school cookery room or canteen

should be obtained from the garden and charged or allowed for at a fair figure.

Pupils should keep accounts of receipts and expenditure for the garden as a whole or for the production of some particular crop. These accounts will not be comparable with those of a commercial garden, but they will impress the facts that there is a financial aspect of gardening and that waste and carelessness are expensive.

B. THE PLANNING OF THE SCHOOL COURSE

11. Planning ahead essential.—Planning for the future is essential in all gardening, and the plans that are made should be understood by the pupils as well as the teacher. Land must often be prepared or plants raised months in advance of requirements ; and developments such as a progressive course of fruit culture call for plans extending several years ahead. If the right time for sowing or planting is missed, it may be necessary to wait nearly a year before the opportunity again occurs. Plans set out on paper may not always be exactly followed in practice, but to try to work without them is to court failure.

It is clearly more difficult to organise progressive instruction in the unreorganised school, with one gardening class drawn from three age groups, than in the large senior school where there is a class or more than a class in each group. In the former the planning of the garden will naturally be simpler and the older pupils may share indirectly in the training of the beginners. In such schools group work is usually possible, and the first year pupils should be taught to carry out by themselves simple operations, in order that the teacher may be sometimes free to give special instruction in more advanced work to groups of older pupils. It is most important that each group or class should have its own sphere of operations, apart of course from such permanent

features as the orchard, flower borders and lawn in which all share.

It has already been stated that gardening may properly be regarded as the key outdoor activity of a rural school. Adequate time should therefore be given to its practice. Not less than two hours per week throughout the year, exclusive of the time allotted to the associated course in Science, should be allowed for a course of instruction of the kind outlined above. It is general experience that pupils enjoy gardening and that many of them willingly undertake voluntary work out of school-hours in term time and during holidays.

12. Progressive courses of instruction.—It should not be difficult to select from the wide range of vegetable, flower, and fruit cultivation outlined above the content of a progressive syllabus extending over three or four years and showing clearly the work allotted to the different age groups.

The first year courses should provide for instruction in tillage operations, in the preparation of seed beds, and in the growing of the commoner vegetables and flowers. In carrying out the various operations involved the pupils will learn the correct use of tools, gain experience of, and share in, ordinary garden routine, and become familiar with simple rotations. They will also observe some of the work done by their seniors.

The second year course, in addition to the more advanced vegetable culture indicated earlier in this chapter, might include the main part of flower propagation, the laying-out of flower beds and borders, and the planting and pruning of roses and flowering shrubs, together with preliminary training in the use of frames and the management of the fruit plot.

Greater responsibility in all directions should be assumed in the third and fourth years when the work

will normally include the charge of frames or the fruit plot, various experiments, and the cultivation of special crops and flowers. The pupils may now be expected to keep a watchful eye on the whole of the garden and to be ready to report or to deal with any matter that needs attention.

It is clear that it will not be possible to include in every garden all the features suggested earlier in this chapter and that it may, indeed, not be desirable, even if it were possible, to carry out in all schools the wide range of work outlined above.

C. WORK IN THE SCHOOL GARDEN

13. The handling of the tools.—The correct handling of tools should be taught from the very first, if the best results are to be secured with the minimum effort. Pupils should know the use of each tool, how to handle it properly and the reason for handling it in a particular way. To obtain the best effects, the tools must be large enough for thorough work and suited in size to the physique of those using them. Nevertheless they must be real tools and not mere playthings.

14. Tillage operations.—The pupils should have sufficient practice in simple digging, and in trenching, when the ground is suitable and the operation necessary. They must recognise the difference between soil and subsoil and know why each should normally be kept in its place. They should learn the use of fork and rake in preparing seed beds and understand the need for suitable consolidation of the soil while preserving a loose surface. They should also learn to use the line and hoe, rake or spade, in preparing straight drills of correct depth, to sow neither too thickly nor too thinly, to single plants in good time and in the right way, to transplant properly, and to use the hoe in surface cultivation. In effect, the pupils should acquire skill

in the use of a variety of tools and learn to take pride in work done well and in workmanlike style.

Careful supervision is required and the pupils should be trained to observe closely, to report matters that need attention, to ask questions and to look for information in books, and to be generally resourceful, handy and self-reliant.

The teacher should always make it clear that the operations in the garden and those on the farm are applications of the same principle. Thus digging may be compared with ploughing, and the use of fork, cultivator and rake in preparing a garden seed-bed with the use of cultivator, harrow and roller in the preparations of a field for sowing. These and similar comparisons with farm practice will acquire more reality through visits to farms, orchards and market gardens. Gardening, then becomes the means of acquiring a steadily growing insight into some of the activities in which many of the pupils will play a part later on.

15. The use of manures.—It is essential that the soil should be maintained in good condition. For good tilth and fertility it must contain a fair amount of decayed organic matter, some of which will be supplied from the compost heap that should be found in every garden. But, when available, farmyard or stable manure will be the chief material used. If enough of this is not obtainable, a portion of the garden can be set aside each year for green manuring, and a succession of such crops as vetches, rye, rape or mustard grown and dug in.

The special needs of different crops should be studied and supplied by means of artificial fertilisers. The characteristics and uses of the common nitrogenous, phosphatic, and potash fertilisers should be considered and as far as possible demonstrated.

The soil must never be allowed to become deficient in lime. Its condition should be discovered by means of a simple soil testing outfit, involving the use of a universal indicator. The mechanical improvement of a clay soil due to the flocculating action of lime can easily be demonstrated by suitable means.

The manurial treatment of the garden should be compared with that of a neighbouring farm or market garden. Complete manuring for potatoes or mangolds, the application of superphosphate to promote root action and of basic slag to improve grass herbage are examples of the kind of practice to which attention may well be given.

D. EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

16. Tools required.—A minimum schedule of tools will include :—

spades and forks—as many altogether as the number of pupils in a gardening class. (For heavy land there should be more forks than spades) ,

hoes—one for each pupil, at least half being Dutch hoes ;

rakes and cultivators—half as many altogether as the number of pupils in the class ;

a large *hay-rake* is most useful for securing a level surface on a large bed ;

trowels and weeders—one for each pupil in the class ,

wheelbarrows—one for a medium-sized garden, two for a garden that exceeds half an acre ;

two long *garden-lines* and several short ones ; several *dibbers* ;

a *mower*, and *edging shears* for grass paths or lawn, and *hedge-shears* ;

pruning and budding knives—at least two of each for a class of twenty; one pair of *secateurs*, preferably of the Rolcut pattern;

one *sprayer* if fruit is cultivated;

a set of *scales and weights*; a *spring balance*; a *measuring tape*.

17. The tool-shed.—The tools must be kept in good order. Toolsheds should therefore be large enough to be fitted with racks on which the tools can be neatly and conveniently stored. The best type is one with a good window, a bench below it and sufficient floor space to shelter a class in bad weather. It is invaluable for potting, drying, sorting and storing of seeds, and for assembling a class for discussions and making notes. When the school is without a workshop, the toolshed should be equipped with a carpenter's bench and set of tools.

The importance of frames has already been mentioned. A greenhouse, which may be erected by the pupils, is a valuable adjunct in gardens where tomato-growing, or the cultivation of chrysanthemums and similar flowers or propagation on a large scale is undertaken.

18. Seeds.—Seeds should be of satisfactory quality and in sufficient variety and should be available some time before they are needed for sowing. The teacher of gardening should be as free as possible to make his own choice of seeds. It is well worth while to provide the senior gardening pupils with seedsmen's catalogues in the winter and to give them good practice in working out schemes of sowing for the ensuing season, after taking into account the past cropping, the system of rotation, and times of sowing and harvesting.

A piece of ground should be set aside for the saving of seeds, in particular those of the biennial vegetables.

The seeds saved may not always be very valuable, but the practice enables pupils to follow the complete life-histories of a number of plants.

When a new garden is started an initial supply of ornamental shrubs, fruit stocks and cuttings should be provided. The stock subsequently required can then be obtained by propagation.

19. The keeping of garden records.—Pupils should be trained to make concise records of their work in the garden—e.g. the operations necessary for the cultivation of a particular crop, observations on its growth, or the grafting and subsequent development of an apple stock. Observations that have to be recorded regularly are for that reason the more likely to be accurate. The records ought to be so arranged that reference can quickly be made to any particular topic. Hence they are best kept in a loose-leaf notebook, where they can be filed according to subject, additional pages being inserted, when necessary, in their proper sequence. Pupils will then possess a valuable record of the whole of their gardening course. A mere diary in which the entries are not classified and indexed is almost useless.

Careful sketches or diagrams, properly annotated, and graphs are often a good form of record. Newspaper cuttings may sometimes be filed with the records, but the teacher must be careful to see that they are well selected. The laborious copying of letter-press and drawings from the blackboard or from books is usually a waste of time, and may indeed result in failure by the pupil to look attentively at real things. Some of the most valuable records are those of experiments and observations extending over a series of years and preserved for reference by successive classes.

20. The reference library.—It is important that the pupils should realise the help to be gained from books

about gardening and, in country districts at least, about the whole range of rural pursuits. A reference library of books and periodicals on gardening, of illustrated catalogues issued by leading firms of seedsmen and nurserymen, and of the bound volumes of leaflets and some of the pamphlets and bulletins issued by the Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries, is an essential. The Science library of the school will no doubt include books about insects, birds and other living creatures. The pupils should be encouraged to consult these books for information on specific aspects of their work, and use them freely in connexion with their observations in the garden.

E. THE SCIENCE OF THE GARDEN

21. The science and gardening courses should be complementary.—Science courses in country schools include, as a rule, a simple study of air, water and soil, and of plant and animal life, in addition to an elementary treatment of heat, electricity, and mechanics, and thus deal with the more important principles underlying farm and garden practice. The master or mistress who takes the Science is accustomed to draw freely upon the outdoor work for illustrations. Similarly, the teacher who takes the gardening has many opportunities of supplementing classroom teaching; and it is most important that, when the Science and the Gardening are in different hands, the two teachers should co-operate closely, in order that the courses may be complementary in the fullest sense of the term.

Pupils should be trained to observe closely and systematically in the garden. They should note the relation of soil conditions to weather; the effect of varying soil conditions, of warmth, moisture, aspect, and of the relative amounts of light and shade, upon sowing, rate of germination, thinning, transplanting and character of growth; and the effect of manurial treatment, hoeing, and watering, on the growth of plants

and on their yield A great part of the value of the gardening course is lost if it fails to make the pupils quick to see and eager to inquire. With minds thus alert they can, with advantage, carry out carefully planned out-door experiments. These should bear upon garden practice, have a simple and clear aim, and be likely to give definite results. Conflicting factors should be eliminated or allowed for ; the space devoted to experiments should be reasonably large ; and the preparation and setting out should be done with care. Observation should be accurate, frequent, and regular, and careful records should be made of what has been observed.

22. Types of experimental work.—The following may serve to indicate the type of problem which may be investigated experimentally . the depths of sowing of different seeds ; the results of early and of late thinning ; the effects of transplanting at various distances apart ; the influence of hoeing upon a growing crop , the effects of shade, shelter, or invading tree roots , the effects of simple manurial treatment ; variety trials ; the effect of stocks on scions ; and the methods of dealing with pests and diseases. Whenever possible, advice should be obtained from the nearest Agricultural or Horticultural College about the planning and arrangement of experiments The interest and value of such work will be greatly increased if the same experiment or set of experiments can be carried out, under expert supervision, in a number of schools in a particular district.

II.—THE KEEPING OF SMALL LIVESTOCK AND ALLIED ACTIVITIES

I. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

23. The keeping of small livestock as part of the practical training in a country school.—Teachers with experience in the keeping of small livestock are agreed that the work makes a strong appeal to the

many children who are naturally interested in animals and that, when it is combined with gardening and handicraft, the whole forms a broad course of practical education specially suited to the setting and to the needs of the country school. The marked increase in recent years of work of this kind, and the facilities which the new Senior Schools offer for it, make it desirable to outline its possibilities and to indicate how it may best be developed and extended.

At the outset it should be realised that the instruction is not intended to be vocational; nor should it consist solely of a series of classroom lessons. It is impossible, in the limited time available, for children to acquire a high degree of craft skill or to gain a detailed knowledge of every process. On the other hand, experience has shown that many boys and girls in country schools can become familiar with a wide range of sound practice, particularly in bee-keeping and poultry-keeping, and, as a result of their experience and the science teaching associated with it, gain an intelligent understanding of some of the more important principles underlying the life and work of the country-side. The training may also lead to hobbies of lasting interest and value. Finally, children are quick to appreciate the fact that, under satisfactory conditions and with proper care, the keeping of small livestock may be made to pay.

The most suitable activities are bee-keeping, poultry-husbandry, the keeping of rabbits, and dairying. It is not suggested that many schools will attempt all these or that the entire work connected with dairying, for example, can be carried out satisfactorily on the school premises. The best plan in the case of other livestock such as pigs and goats, which are sometimes kept at school, is undoubtedly to encourage the pupils to form Young Farmers' Clubs and keep the animals at home. It is not, therefore, proposed to include any further reference to these in this chapter.

24. Desirable conditions.—Provided that the school has a garden in which a quiet corner sheltered from north and east winds can be found for one or more hives bee-keeping is quite practicable. An orchard in which the hives can be set to face south-east is probably one of the best places. Care must, however, be taken to find a site where the hives will not directly abut on a path which is frequently used by the children.

Although, under the " intensive " system, poultry can be kept quite satisfactorily in a corner of the school garden, it is better, wherever possible, to reserve for the purpose a small paddock or part of a meadow. It is essential, too, that the area should be adequate. Thus, an area of 20 sq. yds. per bird is suggested, when poultry are to be kept on the " semi-intensive " system. A south or south-east aspect is to be preferred, so that the birds may get ample sunlight ; but shade from excessive sun and protection from strong winds must also be considered in connexion with the choice of site.

Adequate provision must be made for the storage of food stuffs and of the appliances and equipment when not in use.

25. Housing and appliances.—The housing for the school livestock should, whenever possible, be made by the children. Thus, when poultry are kept, visits might be paid to up-to-date farms in the district for the purpose of examining and measuring suitable types of houses. Plans can then be drawn and estimates made as to the quantity and cost of the necessary materials. The actual construction and erection involve the consideration of stresses and strains ; the effective use of several kinds of joints ; the hanging of doors and windows ; protection against wind and rain ; provision for lighting and ventilation ; food and water supplies ; and finally, the actual work of building on the selected site. Some Education Authorities provide one house

as a model, which the boys can copy if more are required. While this arrangement doubtless makes it easier to get poultry-keeping started in the first instance, the value of the training is materially increased if all houses and appliances are made by the children themselves. The planning and making of a poultry house give children an insight into the purposes of its various parts, which they cannot get from lessons.

Most of the appliances connected with poultry-keeping and bee-keeping such as coops, mash hoppers, water stands, brooders, houses, hives, observation hives, brood boxes, clearer boards, frames and feeders can be made in the school workshops. Similarly, veils, quilts and covers may form part of the needlework.

26. Experience necessary for teaching.—It is desirable that the master or mistress undertaking the instruction should have had some previous training in the subject or at least possess some knowledge of it as well as practical experience and skill. A keen interest in country life and close contact with it in childhood and youth will often prove a satisfactory starting point. It is not, however, unusual for the necessary knowledge and experience to be gradually acquired by keenly interested teachers who take up the work on appointment to country schools and make a start by attending short courses or reading about the subject and paying visits to well-managed poultry farms and apiaries. Valuable advice and information can usually be obtained from farmers and bee-keepers, as well as from County Agricultural Organisers, whose active help should be enlisted from the outset. Wherever possible, too, arrangements should be made for periodical visits by the county experts.

Before undertaking any branch of small livestock keeping teachers should consult the bulletins and leaflets issued by the Ministry of Agriculture, together with

some of the numerous inexpensive books which deal with the practical side of the work. A selection of these should be available in the school library for the children to refer to.

27. Range and scope of the work.—Teachers are advised to start bee-keeping or poultry-keeping on a small scale, with one stock of bees, for instance, or a pen of about a dozen birds. This provision is sufficient for showing most of the common operations and for illustrating essential principles; and many teachers may not wish to exceed it Schools with suitable facilities or with teachers specially interested in either bees or poultry will naturally extend their stocks, so as to provide a wider training, and this deserves encouragement. On the other hand, if the school is to set, as it should, a high standard in the details of practical management, it is imperative that the stock carried should never be greater than can be effectively dealt with by the children. The main purpose of the training will be defeated if the hives, houses and appliances are not kept perfectly clean, if the bees and birds do not receive regular and proper attention, or if the demands made by routine operations on the children's time prevent them from receiving the necessary training in scientific principles.

For success in the work, theory must be closely linked throughout with practice; and, just as with other forms of Practical Instruction, some of the most effective teaching will take the form of incidental talks and discussions during routine operations and the demonstration of new ideas or processes.

28. Links with other subjects.—Brief reference may be made here to the use to which outdoor work of this kind can be put in classroom teaching. The Science master or mistress will doubtless be quick to seize on many of the outdoor operations for the illustration of scientific principles. Similarly, sound practice in any

form of livestock keeping is based on the elementary rules of hygiene ; and the penalty, which seldom fails to follow any neglect of these, is usually sufficiently swift and real to carry conviction. The measurements and calculations connected with the construction of bee hives and poultry houses, the purchase of food stuffs, the mixing of rations for growing, laying and fattening birds, and the keeping of accounts and records of all kinds, provide invaluable data for practical arithmetic. There are many other ways in which the work may be called upon to lend reality to classroom teaching, though care should be taken to avoid forced or unnatural correlation.

As with Gardening, the records kept should be restricted mainly to simple accounts of the work done and the observations made. All essential figures relating to housing, current costs, yields and receipts, should be recorded in tabular and graphical form.

29. Care of livestock when the school is closed.—The care of livestock during week-ends and holidays is undoubtedly a difficulty which may even cause some schools to hesitate to undertake work of this kind ; but the difficulty is not so great as is sometimes alleged. In most schools there are children with homes nearby, who can be relied on to tend the animals at such times ; and usually it is possible for the livestock club to make some small payments for their services. It is a good plan to arrange for some experienced poultry farmer or bee-keeper, who is interested in the school, to pay periodical visits during the longer holidays and, if necessary, to report any signs of neglect to the teacher.

II. POULTRY-KEEPING

30. How to begin.—Poultry-keeping is probably the most suitable form of livestock work for the older boys and girls in country schools. It offers a fairly

wide range of daily or seasonal activities connected with cleaning, feeding, watering, breeding, hatching, rearing, fattening and preparing table birds for market.

Teachers proposing to begin poultry-keeping are advised to get into touch with local experts from whom valuable advice and assistance can be obtained.

When the time comes to provide housing, visits should be paid by the class to one or more farms with up-to-date equipment, and measurements and sketches should be made. The Ministry of Agriculture's pamphlet on *The Housing of Poultry* (Bulletin No. 56) might also be consulted and the plans in it studied.

31. Housing the poultry.—In deciding the type and size of house to be adopted various factors will have to be taken into consideration, as, for instance, the condition and aspect of the site, the size of the unit, and the system to be followed. Usually one of the "semi-intensive" types of houses with space for about 20 birds will be found best suited for beginners. The necessity for ample floor space will be appreciated, when it is remembered that the house must serve as an exercise ground in bad weather, as well as a place for roosting and egg laying. It should also be high enough to ensure good ventilation and plenty of head room for the pupils when engaged in cleaning it out. It should have a floor space of three square feet per bird: if a larger floor space can be allowed, all the better. The children are quite capable, under the teacher's direction, of building the sections, bolting them together and making all the necessary fitments, perches and perch sockets, dropping boards, nest boxes, trap nests, and hoppers. Given sufficient ground, other types of housing will doubtless be designed and built, if only for instructional and experimental purposes, as the teaching develops.

It will be found useful to divide the ground for each pen into two runs and to place the house so that the runs can be used alternately. This arrangement gives time for the grass to recover after each period of use and so lessens the risk of disease due to the ground becoming foul. A cinder or asphalt path to ensure a clean access to the house is desirable.

32. Choice of breed.—The nature of the actual start will depend partly on the season and partly on the funds available. Three or four sittings of eggs may be bought and broody hens borrowed or hired to hatch them ; or a dozen three month old pullets may be bought, or, again, the school may start with a breeding pen of its own, say a cockerel and six hens. The first plan is perhaps the most interesting, but it must be remembered that, for the beginner, the rearing of chicks is probably more difficult than any other branch of poultry-keeping. Whichever method is adopted, careful enquiries should be made as to the pedigree, egg records and robustness of the vendor's stock and the measures, such as blood testing, which he has taken to ensure a clean bill of health. The choice of breed will be conditioned to some extent by the soil, aspect and accommodation, and on this point advice will doubtless be sought from experienced breeders in the district. It should perhaps be stressed here that in egg-production strain is of very great importance, and that loyalty to one breed over a period of years is essential.

33. Routine practical work.—It is expected that the majority of the older boys and girls will share in routine practical work, and that for this they will normally be divided into weekly rotas, each rota being under the charge of a leader who is responsible for seeing that the directions for watering, feeding, cleaning and general attention are carried out satisfactorily. Copies of the detailed written instructions should be posted

in the classroom and food-shed and it should be made clear to the class that cleanliness, regular feeding and clean water are essential for success in poultry-keeping.

A selection must be made from the many food mixtures in common use, and this is a point on which the advice of the County expert may well be sought If the school has more than one pen of birds, experiments can be made with different rations and the results noted. The importance of good grass on the runs and of a supply of grit and oyster shell or limestone should be stressed.

From the point of view of egg production it is advisable that birds should not normally be retained beyond the second year, and arrangements must accordingly be made to replace the older birds every year. While it is a growing practice in the industry to leave breeding to the specialist, in school work the older pupils should gain as wide experience as possible. The greatest care must be taken in the selection of eggs for hatching. Birds of known pedigree and of sound constitution must always be used for breeding. In order to introduce fresh blood, it is advisable to go outside at least every two years for a cockerel or one sitting of eggs. Where the number of new birds required each year is small, it will usually be found most convenient to hatch them under broody hens in coops placed in shelter. A number of schools, however, possess incubators, and, when greater numbers of chicks have to be reared and conditions are satisfactory, it will be better to make use of these. The subsequent rearing, particularly of artificially hatched chicks, is a matter involving regular attention if losses are to be avoided; and it is this side of school poultry-keeping with which most difficulty is experienced For successful rearing the chicks should be kept on a separate range which can be changed from year to year.

The fattening of cockerels as well as of older birds enables the children to gain a further insight into food values and to become familiar with the preparation of table birds for market. In some schools the production of table poultry may occupy a more prominent part in the work, and the pupils consequently gain experience of the breeds most suited for the purpose.

34. Science teaching and poultry-keeping.—Poultry-keeping offers abundant material for good biological teaching in connexion with housing, feeding, breeding, hatching, rearing and general management, while a simple study of the structure of the fowl and the egg and of the early development of the chick makes a very valuable addition to any biology course.

Given a successful start, development will depend on the enthusiasm of the teacher and pupils and the amount of time available. There are many directions in which the work may be developed without materially increasing the stock, e.g. experiments in connexion with breeding and crossing , artificial incubation and rearing ; and trials of different types of houses and food mixtures, and of fresh breeds. There are schools, too, in which, for various reasons, poultry-keeping may be the main out-door activity. In such schools expansion should be gradual, and it must never be forgotten that nothing in livestock keeping is so certain of retribution as overcrowding and dirty housing.

III. BEE-KEEPING

35. Bee-keeping a specialised craft.—Although bee-keeping is an excellent subject for inclusion in the curriculum of a rural school where conditions are suitable, a course in it should not on this account be lightly embarked upon, for, the lore of the craft being specialised and so to speak " peculiar," it is not every man's hobby.

In fact one of the first requisites is that the teacher himself should be a keen and knowing bee-keeper; for on him will depend the success of the course.

Another important point to keep in mind is that, while a course in Bee-keeping may be rich in educational value to all the boys and girls in a class, the actual handling of the bees in and around the hive should be a purely voluntary exercise so far as the pupils are concerned.

36. How to begin.—It will be advisable to begin bee-keeping, as has already been suggested, with one or two hives. This number is adequate for giving the pupils some knowledge of the rudiments of the subject, and in many schools it may never be desirable or necessary to increase it. In other schools, however, bee-keeping may be one of the main features of the rural work, and a dozen or more hives may be kept going, the various processes involved in building up the hives and stocking them and in the production of honey and by-products being dealt with in some detail.

It is advisable to begin in a modest way with a double-walled hive, built to take the British standard frame. Although more troublesome to construct than the simpler single-walled variety, this type of hive has the advantages of having air space completely surrounding the brood chamber. If it seems desirable to extend the scope of the course by having a number of hives, one or two of single-walled type may usefully be installed for comparison.

37. Acquiring the stock.—Circumstances and available money will usually decide whether the hive is to be stocked by means of a colony of bees, a nucleus, or a swarm. If sufficient funds are available it will probably be found best to purchase a colony of bees, for, barring accidents, a surplus of honey will normally be ensured in the first year; and the early enthusiasm

of the young bee-keepers will not be damped by a tedious wait for results. Buying a nucleus is a less costly method, but only sufficient skill and knowledge can ensure a surplus of honey before the end of the year. A more generally satisfactory method for school purposes is to stock the first hive from a swarm, for, although a surplus the first year is very problematical, the method has the advantage that swarms will probably be obtainable free of charge from local bee-keepers interested in the rural activities of the school.

38. Scope and character of the work.—Bee-keeping as a practical training does not require the kind of regular attention and rota work that are necessary in poultry or rabbit keeping; and the fact that only incidental attention is necessary, especially during the summer, simplifies the problem of tending the hives during the holiday season. The pupils should be carefully instructed in the care of the swarm, in winter feeding and attention, and in the various methods and devices used to increase the production of honey and the size of the colonies of bees. Bee-keeping is an excellent example of an activity in which success can be assured only by attention to the minutest details.

In schools in which bee-keeping is a special feature considerable attention is naturally paid to such processes as the extraction of honey and beeswax. Some schools indeed possess their own extractors. The activity can in this way be linked up with the Housecraft instruction, particularly in relation to the extraction, straining, bottling and grading of honey, the packing for sale, and the making of syrup, candy and furniture cream.

39. Science teaching and bee-keeping.—The subject will not attain its proper objective in the curriculum unless the various routine processes involved, too often taught as mere rule of thumb methods,

find meaning and reason through the study of the biology of the bee, with all that this implies. As careful and detailed a study of the anatomy of the bee as accommodation and equipment will permit should be made in the laboratory or classroom, special attention being given to the structures which have special significance for the course in hand—pollen basket, legs, tongue, spiracles, tracheæ, wax pocket, and sting The functions of the various parts should be considered, even if only theoretically : for instance, the tracheæ, the mechanism of respiration, are of special importance on account of their liability in certain conditions to become blocked up by mites, giving rise to Isle of Wight disease. A good compound microscope will be found useful in studying the structure of the bee and in examining tracheæ for mites. When this is not available a micro-projector will, for teaching purposes at least, form a good substitute. A simple dissecting microscope, such as can easily be made in school, will be found invaluable in investigating the general structure of the insect

A detailed study should next be made of its life-history, the difference in the life cycles of queens, workers, and drones being carefully noted. A study of the individual insect leads naturally to some consideration of the internal economy of the hive itself, and of the respective contributions which the three kinds of bees make to the life of the whole community. The communal life of the bee can be followed by means of an observation hive, which should be part of the standard equipment of every school which has bee-keeping in its curriculum. This hive may well be installed inside the school buildings, with an aperture to permit of the passage of bees to and from the open air. Quite apart from instruction in bee-keeping, a hive of this kind is a valuable addition to the equipment for biology teaching in any school. Attention should be drawn to the interesting biological phenomenon of swarming, and to the fact

that the masses of bees thus sent adrift to fend for themselves form organised and complete communities.

Any study of the biology of bees would be incomplete without some knowledge of the flowers from which the nectar is gathered. This implies examination and identification of the flora of the countryside with special reference to the activities of bees and cross pollination. Where a microscope is available a study of the pollen of the predominant wild and cultivated flowers will form an interesting adjunct to the study of the insects themselves.

IV. RABBIT-KEEPING

40. Value and scope of the work as a school activity.—Rabbit-keeping is easily begun and entails a relatively small initial outlay : it can also be easily continued by a pupil when he leaves school. There is no need for elaborate accommodation, and much of the food will consist of the surplus green stuff of the garden. Of late years rabbit keeping in this country has become more important, partly because of the increased consumption of hutch-bred rabbits and partly on account of the demand for pelts and Angora wool School rabbit-keeping may therefore be of some influence in suggesting profitable side-line occupations for leisure and home industries for children and parents.

In the classroom, good use may be made of rabbit-keeping in connexion with the study of biology and hygiene. The work also has undoubted possibilities on the practical side : the pupils, in addition to making hutches, nest boxes, exhibition boxes, and crates and boxes for the despatch of pelts and carcases to market, can take part in dressing skins, making rabbit fur garments, and, if Angoras are kept, hand spinning of the wool.

For guidance on details of housing, feeding and general routine teachers should consult the Ministry of

Agriculture's Bulletin (No. 50) on *Rabbit-keeping*, along with other books, and pay visits to well-established studs.

41. Choice of breed.—The choice of breed will depend to some extent on the personal preference of the beginner. A visit to a show where rabbits are exhibited is perhaps the best way to become acquainted with the characteristics of the various breeds.

Each established breed of rabbit has its specialist club which fixes standards and aims at fostering the breed and helping the breeder. The beginner will find it sound policy to join the club catering for his particular breed and to make his start with stock purchased from a member of the Club. One, or at the most two, good does should be purchased and mated at the vendor's rabbitry. The initial capital should be invested in one good doe rather than in several moderate ones. With careful attention rabbits increase rapidly and the provision of accommodation for young stock is generally the most serious housing problem to solve. The size of the stud should be kept well within bounds, and on no account should more rabbits be kept than can be provided regularly with green food or roots.

V. DAIRYING

42. Scope of the work.—Because of its importance among rural industries, dairying may fittingly find a place in the curriculum of the country school. In addition, the wide use of milk and its value as a food make it highly desirable to include some instruction on it in every school. The extension of milk consumption by children under the " Milk in School " Scheme supplies an added argument for this, and provides many opportunities for incidental teaching.

Any instruction undertaken may be expected to vary considerably in scope, even in country schools. In most it will naturally be concerned mainly with the value

of milk as a food, the necessity of keeping the supply pure, and ways and means of ensuring this, particularly in the handling and treatment of milk during distribution and in the home.

In country schools this course will often be followed by lessons on clean milk production, supplemented by visits to carefully selected farms With a view to stressing still further the importance of absolute cleanliness at every stage in the production and handling of milk and its products, and, it may well be, with the purpose of stimulating deeper interest in the work, Education Authorities and teachers in dairying areas may quite naturally wish to extend the teaching to include demonstrations of clean milk production and of butter and cheese making and to arrange for some of the older children to take an active part in the work.

There is a real need for good practice in the handling of the school milk supply, and such practice, combined with very simple incidental teaching throughout the earlier stages of school life, probably forms the best introduction to more definite instruction in the Senior School. Even in the case of Senior School children some teachers may consider it undesirable to do more than continue or slightly extend this teaching, particularly as some instruction is included in the Housecraft course.

As the most important part of any simple course of instruction on milk is concerned largely with its liability to contamination and the steps necessary to prevent this, the teaching may best be linked up with Science and included as part of biology. The ordinary equipment of the Science laboratory will usually be found adequate for the necessary demonstrations and practical work.

43. Planning the course of instruction.—In planning a general course of this kind the teacher will normally make arrangements for a simple study of milk and its products (including the treatment of their composition

in so far as this is necessary to throw light on their keeping qualities and handling) ; " clean " and " dirty " milk ; natural and artificial souring ; simple methods for preventing the increase of or for destroying bacteria in milk, e.g. cooling, pasteurisation and sterilisation ; and the treatment of dishes and utensils in which the milk is kept. The study of bacteria and moulds, including the growing of cultures on nutritive media, and simple experiments in controlling their growth, which will normally accompany this side of the work, should prove of great value in connexion with the housecraft and hygiene teaching. The question of pathogenic bacteria in milk requires careful treatment by the teacher, who must be careful not to lay undue emphasis on this topic.

Instruction in clean milk production will involve additional lessons on such topics as cowsheds and, in particular, their lighting, ventilation and cleaning ; the methods adopted for the cleaning and sterilising of milk utensils, including milking machinery , the preparation of the cows and other steps to be taken by milkers prior to milking ; the treatment of the first drawn milk ; the precautions taken to prevent pollution from the air ; cooling , and the subsequent handling in the dairy prior to distribution. Visits to examine cowsheds and to watch all operations will be necessary. With a view to making the teaching still more effective teachers may arrange for some practical work by the children, e.g. actual practice in cleaning the milk pails, grooming the cows and washing down their flanks, washing the udder, and even milking. Such work should not as a rule amount to more than the practice necessary to impress the pupils with the need for absolute cleanliness at every stage in the production of milk

44. Butter and cheese making.—Practical work in connexion with butter making and cheese making

involves a supply of relatively expensive apparatus and appliances. As the equipment is needed in any one school for a very short time only each year and few teachers are as yet qualified to undertake the instruction, the Education Authorities who have developed work of this kind usually employ peripatetic instructresses. This arrangement works quite well with small groups of children, and is probably the best way of meeting the problem. It should be understood, however, that, although lessons on butter and cheese making may be specially appropriate for selected children in a dairying district, practical instruction of this kind is less valuable educationally for most children than the more general course of instruction in the handling of milk.

CHAPTER XI

ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

1. General aims of English teaching.—In no other subject of the curriculum is it so difficult to define the immediate aims of the teaching. In English the teacher has several tasks to perform, all inter-related and all vital. "Language is a skill, an art, a feeling, and a doing:" and in language the selected experience of mankind is concentrated for our delight and instruction. We may perhaps distinguish four main phases of the child's relationship to language. There is a certain practical control of words and phrases that must be learnt, there is a capacity for reacting to the meanings of

words, to their intellectual and emotional associations, which must be acquired ; there is the power to organise words for the purposes of self-expression to be taught ; and there is the experience of the best kinds of self-expression, of literature, to be gained

2. Responsibility of the whole school staff.—It is, of course, the business of the whole school to forward the child's mastery of language, for this is the medium by which he is to be educated and by which he will further his education. In particular, it is the responsibility of the School in general to make him lively and exact and fluent in speech, to insist that any written expression of his shall convey the thought with accuracy and orderliness. It is not so much that the English will benefit if, for example, the Science teacher does this. It is rather that the Science teacher cannot teach his own subject effectively unless this insistence constantly accompanies his teaching The study of any book is necessarily a language lesson : and, if this is duly remembered in the earlier and middle stages, the older pupils will be fitter to cope with the difficulties of their more advanced work. The children should be required to do much more than make brief answers to questions. They should be encouraged to restate in words of their own the substance of what they have read and, with the teacher's help, to turn it over in their minds until they apprehend its meaning completely. For this both oral and written exercises will be needed. Apparent failure when the work in various subjects comes to be tested is often due to the ill-defined impressions the children have received from what they have heard or read. It should be remembered how many expressions, even in books specially written for children, are vague and abstract With these principles and admonitions in mind, every teacher in the school will do much to further and strengthen the child's control of words.

3. The special responsibility of the teacher of English.—Like every other teacher, the teacher of English must have these aims constantly in view, though at times his treatment of specific aspects may be more formal. But he has the particular duty of introducing children to the world of Literature and of enriching thereby their experience of life through that broad and lively discipline which their discovery of books will afford them. The teaching of English, however, includes more than this, for children need opportunities for putting into appropriate language their own thoughts and experiences, and in this part of their English work it has been found that their own outlook upon life, their knowledge gained in school, and their interests and hobbies, afford the most natural material for such practice in the art of expression. In these two ways they will thus acquire not only some acquaintance with good literature of a type suitable to their age, but also some standards of judgment and appreciation which may stand them in good stead in later life.

The virtual disappearance of illiteracy has resulted in the production of a mass of reading material which appeals almost exclusively to cheap sentiment and facile emotion, which neither has, nor claims to have any literary value, and which is concerned above all things to spare the reader any exercise of thought. It is certainly true, on the other hand, that good books of every kind were never before so inexpensive and universally accessible as now, and the existence side by side of these two fields of literature creates the present problem with which the teacher of English is inevitably concerned. In view of the comparatively early age at which children finish the Elementary School course, it would be unreasonable to blame the school if, later on, they yield overmuch to an appetite which is easily, and may be dangerously, satisfied. But something, and in the hands of a good teacher a great

deal, can be done towards leading them to prefer the better to the worse and towards instilling into them certain standards of taste which may last. It behoves the teacher of English to further this aim by every means in his power.

Literary education is, after all, a systematic attempt to build up a sense of values, to persuade the mind to accept certain types of experience which are of cultural and personal significance, it is a method of retaining in activity our traditional and characteristic modes of feeling and thinking that have given our civilisation its distinctive flavour and direction, but which are in danger of disappearing under the conditions of modern life.

Such broad considerations as these may, at first sight, seem remote from the practical issues of the classroom, but in reality they can never be irrelevant to the teacher of English. In a modern civilised community it is his privilege and his responsibility to educate minds into toughness and sensitivity, to train children to think hard and clearly and, at the same time, to recognise and enjoy, so far as children may, some of the finest and deepest experiences of humanity. Only if these aims are vigorously pursued can our society keep its sanity and wholeness.

4. What may be achieved by the end of the Elementary School course.—How far can these views be practically related to the task of teaching? An obvious starting point is to ask how far we may reasonably expect to have progressed by the time the child leaves the Senior School. The answer need not imply that in the English lessons we are trying to teach a large number of separate capacities with separate techniques. If a teacher attempts to apportion his time rigidly between Reading, Recitation, Spelling, and the like, he will certainly not travel so far or so happily as he might do. Systematic planning of work there must be, but it need not follow

the lead of an obsolete and over-classified time-table. But if we have a full sense of the needs of the community and the needs of the child our demands will take shape somewhat like this. The child should be able to express himself sensibly on plain matters in sound and unself conscious speech; he should be able to arrange a variety of ideas on the subjects he has been taught and on matters of common interest into orderly and effective written form, however briefly; he should be skilful in apprehending the spoken and written thoughts of other people, responsive to the beauty of appropriate poetry and prose, interested in human beings, in their motives and actions, able to appreciate his surroundings with discrimination, and familiar in some measure with the great ideals, beliefs, and standards of conduct, which give life and spirit to the society in which we live.

5. The approach adopted in this chapter.—It will be convenient to approach under separate headings the problems of English teaching in the Infant School, the Junior School and the Senior School. Naturally very closely related issues have to be discussed at each stage of the Elementary School course, and a full grasp of the whole process of English instruction throughout school life is indispensable to an understanding of the difficulties of any stage; but these divisions correspond to real phases in the development of the child's mind, and, consequently, in his relationship to the written and spoken word. At each stage a rough distinction may be made between English as Understanding and English as Expression, intimately connected with each other though these processes must in fact be. Understanding will include not only the intellectual comprehension of spoken and written language, but also some responsiveness to feelings and experiences expressed in words, and will involve the acquisition of an effective vocabulary through listening and reading, the receiving and using

of new ideas and interests, and the general intellectual and emotional awareness of life which language and literature exist mainly to create. Expression will comprise training, not merely in the respective techniques of speaking and writing but also in the adequate and ordered expression of ideas in either medium. English, in short, is on the one side listening and reading, on the other side speaking and writing; and each of these groups of activities will call for separate consideration.

II. ENGLISH IN THE INFANT SCHOOL

A.—UNDERSTANDING

6. Understanding and Conversation.—The first task in English in the Infant School is to promote understanding. No unreal separation is here suggested. In the first years of school life the greater part of the teaching is English teaching; the enlargement of the child's ideas is inseparably bound up with the acquisition of new words and expressions. Opportunities for talking should, accordingly, not be restricted to a few so-called conversation lessons; on the contrary, most of the school hours should be devoted—above all with the youngest children—to informal conversation between teacher and pupils. Such conversation will arise naturally, when the children have overcome their first feeling of shyness, on an unending variety of topics—themselves, their homes, the schoolroom and its contents, the occupations in which they are engaged at the moment, and so forth. It should follow a natural, not a pre-arranged, course, and the more reticent as well as the more talkative children should be drawn in. Children should be encouraged to ask questions from the first, since their interests and needs will thus be more easily recognised.

7. The material to be studied.—The means by which children are introduced to new ideas and activities, so that their desire to talk and ask questions is aroused,

are of great importance. Pictures and picture-books appeal most readily, and much use should also be made of nursery rhymes, poems, fairy-tales, and folk-lore and other stories. These should be told or read to the class by the teacher and it will not matter if the meaning of occasional words or phrases is unknown to the children. If the rhyme or story deals in the main with an experience which the children can appreciate, there is no need to break the unity of the impression by overmuch explanation of details. The desire to avoid difficulties of language should not lead teachers to choose poems, songs and stories devoid of literary merit and lacking the qualities of vigorous rhythm and diction which appeal to young children.

Some stories must be read, others may be read, and others must be told. When, for example, the language of the story is the great part of its effect, it would be a mistake to tell it from memory. But in recent years there appears to have been some decay in the ability of teachers to tell stories to children, though there are happily signs of a revival of interest in this art. The replacement of good story-telling by the reading of stories from children's reading books is not to be welcomed. A list of stories derived from good writers, and graded as to type, content, complexity, and vocabulary, should be in the syllabus of every Infant School.

8. The teacher's language and the child's vocabulary.—The language used by the teacher herself is of great importance, and should be a stimulus and an example to the child. She will, for example, carefully avoid watering down everything that she says into the "baby-language" that is sometimes thought suitable. The vocabulary of a normal child of five is far more extensive than is commonly supposed. The experienced teacher knows how to ask questions that require more than one word in answer, and, equally important, how to increase

the children's understanding of and command over language by deliberately introducing and explaining new words. System and foresight are of great value here. A wide vocabulary cannot be imposed on the child, but, if the course planned for the year is thoughtfully examined, it should be possible to construct a list of words and phrases, arising naturally from the child's school life, which should be known by the end of the year.

9. The beginnings of dramatic activity.—When the class have heard a story or poem, it may be repeated or retold by individual children. The interval between hearing it and reproducing it will vary according to their age and capacity, and the repetition will take different forms. For nursery rhymes and poems it will consist of exact reproduction of the words of the teacher. At first the reproduction of stories will also be largely a repetition of what the teacher has said. At a later stage, e.g. by the age of six or seven years, the child may be allowed to vary the expression for himself. Dramatisation, which is discussed below, is of great assistance. There are other possible methods by which the child may be trained in the understanding and control of language, e.g. guessing games in which children are called upon to describe things without actually naming them and to identify things described by other children.

10. First steps in learning to read.—Various methods of teaching the child to read have achieved popularity at different times. At present there appears to be a tendency for "phonic methods" to be reinforced by the "look-and-say" methods and, on general grounds, this seems to be a reasonable approach. Much can be learned also from the "sentence method," though it is doubtful whether the exclusive use of this system can be generally successful. Probably the child will learn to read by a combination of all three methods. He may start by learning the names of his companions

through seeing them in bold letters on bags, lockers, etc. He may learn the names of objects from labels or he may in the same way learn short sentences such as " This is a door," in order to give him a stock of names of things, and other short sentences designed to give him the words for various types of activity. He may even learn the titles of pictures on the walls, or find out words by reading a nursery rhyme which he already knows by heart. But he will not learn the sounds of letters until he knows a fair number of words by sight and until he has had some preparatory speech training. Learning to use the instrument must never be entirely separated from the enjoyment of its use: and he will not read a book until it conveys some meaning to him, while the first books that he reads will ring the changes on sentences or phrases rather than on individual words.

11. Individual and group methods in reading.—After only a few months the children will be found to vary greatly in their power of reading, owing to differences in natural quickness and in home influence. The method of breaking up a class into suitably graded sections has by now established itself. The most forward children are classed in a separate section, promotion to which is treated as a reward. They are encouraged to help each other, and to note the words which they have failed to recognise, with a view to asking the teacher about them afterwards. In many Infant Schools in which individual methods are applied with success the quicker children really teach themselves to read. They are given a start by being taught a certain number of easy words, and then, with the help of such apparatus as pictures of unmistakable objects with the names first attached and afterwards separated, or boxes of letters or words, they prepare themselves for reading primers and story books.

B.—EXPRESSION

(1) TRAINING IN SPEECH

12. Some criteria of oral expression.—In the good Infant School with its activity and lack of constraint, the oral expression of the children may be expected to display four characteristics. It will be alive: the pupils in expressing themselves will feel that they are expressing something that is of significance and interest to them. It will be clear: clearness of expression develops with clearness of thought, the two are mutually interdependent and none of the school's work can be effective without them. It will be expressive: it will not only be full of the children's own ideas and interests, but the children will have the power to use those modulations of voice and those forms of language by which feelings are normally conveyed. It will have an element of beauty: even small children appreciate rhythm and the charm of words and take a real delight in good speech. It would be idle to pretend that these things are often found together. But they are found together when the full opportunities of English training in the Infant School are clearly realised and seized.

13. The importance of spontaneity.—The wise teacher will understand in the first place that nothing must be done to suppress the child's natural spontaneity of speech. Common faults of expression will, of course, be corrected, such, for example, as the colloquial misuse of grammatical agreements. If the child is familiarised regularly and frequently with the correct form used in a context which he is unlikely to forget, and if a few minutes' daily practice is given, much can be achieved. But good speech is much more than a passively accepted familiarity with the correct conventions. It consists also of good vocalisation, clearness of idea, continuity of thought, and cheerful self-reliance. These things are

intimately bound up with what we have called understanding. But the teacher must deliberately set herself to foster their development.

14. Training in articulation and pronunciation.—Poor vocalisation and faulty utterance spring from two main errors : (*a*) indistinctness of articulation—the sounds of which a word is composed not being definitely produced ; and (*b*) incorrectness of pronunciation—the wrong sound being made instead of the right one. In most cases the training depends almost entirely on conscious or unconscious imitation of the teacher, who should therefore be especially on her guard against falling into habits of slipshod and indistinct speaking, or of artificial and strained intonation. It is important that every teacher should know how the individual sounds should be articulated. Thus equipped, she can do much, provided that her aim is restricted to overcoming obvious and childish difficulties of speech and to securing clearness of articulation ; and provided also that every precaution is taken with nervous children who may be likely to become stammerers.

Attention should be paid especially to initial and final consonants. Some warning may even now be needed against setting up false standards of correctness in speech.

15. Confidence and freedom in self-expression.—But the most vital thing of all is that the young child should move in an environment of easy, pleasant and continuous speech. He should be encouraged to reproduce what he has heard and read. When he is giving his impression of some experience he should not be interrupted, except indeed for the correction of some glaring vulgarism. His understanding of English should be based on stories and poems that are rhythmic, simple and graceful. It should be realised that there is

an art of listening, in which training is possible. Every new experience should be followed by an enlargement of the child's vocabulary. Particularly in dramatic activity the child will find a joyful game in which he is almost unconsciously trained in all the virtues of effective expression. Perhaps the best starting point for drama in the Infant School is the use of simple occupational mimes. This can be followed by the acting of familiar stories in which one or two of the characters speak. By the time he leaves this stage of his school career the child should have acted frequently in suitable classroom plays. There is no need for these plays to be childish and sentimental affairs. Many teachers may prefer to dramatise the well-known children's stories—often highly dramatic in content—by themselves. But the language should be straightforward and expressive: the characters should know *why* they behave and speak as they do. There should be much preliminary discussion and reading before the play is actually rendered in front of the rest of the class. In all modes of expression the children must be encouraged to gain and retain self-confidence.

(ii) TRAINING IN WRITING

16. First steps in learning to write.—While this broader English training is being carried on, the children will at the same time be acquiring manual skill, and learning to make letters and reproduce words in writing Certain principles laid down in Chapter II of this Handbook, regarding the first stage of learning to write, need perhaps some elaboration here.

In the first place, it was said that in its beginning writing should always have meaning for the children, and that the symbols used should resemble those they have been accustomed to see in print. Young children can have little need to record or communicate anything in writing; but, just as they like to draw their experience

of the world, so do they like to reproduce the forms of printed words they are able to recognise and name. In other words, writing is essentially the converse of reading. Where the formal teaching of writing is postponed as suggested until the second year in the Infant School, i.e. until the children are about six years of age, there will be little need of special devices such as sandpaper letters, since the various forms of hand-training already given and the greater power of hand-control of the six-year old will make it easier for him to imitate the forms of letters.

Definite teaching will be necessary in order to ensure the right sequence of strokes, and a continuous striving towards regularity of size, shape and spacing. Various tools and materials should be available for use, and the progress from chalk to soft pencil, and thence to broad pen, should be a matter for the individual, not for the class. Nor need these tools be mutually exclusive; adults use pencils as often as pens. The size of letters should be determined by the kind of tool chosen and by the relative ease in writing, i.e. by the physiological mechanism of the writer. It is time to abandon the traditional requirement of large writing from small hands wielding fine pencils. For young children ordinary exercise books should be halved in width, in order to obviate the need for spacing lines. With paper 3″ to 4″ wide they are able to maintain a reasonable straightness of line, and regularity in spacing is better and more permanently achieved through gradual training than through the use of guide-lines.

The second principle laid down is that children should write with reasonable speed. It is possible for children of six to write fairly quickly—seven words a minute—if their tools are smooth and no artificial requirements are imposed; but, with unsuitable pens and the interruption caused by having to touch this line and that,

their rate may easily be slowed down to 35 letters in half-an-hour.

With the statement that children should be able to spell correctly words with which they are familiar, a new aspect of writing is introduced. The usual custom in Infant Schools is to limit the exercise of writing almost entirely to the careful imitation of the forms of letters and words. Even in formal practice, however, children welcome the opportunity of independent effort in reproduction from memory as a prelude to correction by copying. As they become proficient enough to use these remembered forms in carrying out various wider activities, some help in spelling may occasionally be necessary; but the need will arise naturally and the help be purely incidental. Children who find exceptional difficulty in spelling may first be given boxes of letters with which to make their words, so that they are not confronted with the double task of reproducing the forms of letters as well as their order in the word.

17. The first beginnings of written expression.—No form of written composition belongs properly to the Infant School, but many children at this stage enjoy putting simple ideas of their own on paper and of course they should be encouraged to do so. As far as possible, children at this stage should write nothing that is without meaning or interest to them. They can answer simple questions in words taken from their reading-books, and they can transcribe words and sentences which are of value to them in developing understanding, and with which they are familiar. But if their powers of lively comprehension and confident and easy speech have been effectively developed in the Infant School, and if they have mastered some of the preliminary difficulties of handwriting there, their written composition in the Junior School can be made adequate and vigorous.

III. ENGLISH IN THE JUNIOR SCHOOL

A.—UNDERSTANDING

18. The Aims of the English teaching in the Junior School.—It is the task of the Junior School to ensure that by the age of 11 normal children have become acquainted with a fair amount of literature, in prose and verse, such as appeals naturally to boys and girls, have enjoyed it and know something about it; and that they should also have acquired some proficiency in understanding and using the language. Thus, they should be able to understand what is said to them and to give relevant answers to questions when the subject-matter they are studying is discussed; they should have mastered the mechanical difficulties of reading sufficiently to grasp the content of a not too difficult book, passage, or sentence, and to discuss the ideas it contains; they should, as a result of their training, have some power of continuous and lively speech, and be able to take part in simple classroom plays without being self-conscious, and read aloud or recite expressively and with clear articulation; they should be capable of writing a few lines of simple narrative and description and of expressing intelligibly their own thoughts on matters of common interest. In training the children to attain this standard there will, of course, be no sudden break with the methods of the Infant School. Conversation, narration, dramatisation, reading aloud,—all these will play a large part in the work, especially during the earlier stages. No doubt the time available for practising these various sides of spoken language will diminish as the claims of written English become more insistent. None the less, during the greater part of the Junior School stage at any rate, the emphasis will be on the oral aspects of language in the widest sense of the term.

19. The Teaching of Reading.—A number of children, on account of natural dullness or irregular attendance, or from other causes, will come up to the Junior School more or less backward in reading. It is accordingly important that teachers of at any rate the lowest classes in a Junior School should be acquainted with methods of teaching Infants to read and with methods for dealing with the reading difficulties of backward children.

The large size of the classes in many schools renders it difficult to give each child the necessary amount of practice. The plan of breaking up the class into sections for reading and allowing the better readers to work by themselves is now generally practised, and should be adopted with increasing frequency as the children grow older. It makes considerable demands on the skill and resource of the teacher, for he must possess not merely the ability to ascertain by judicious questions where help is needed, but also the power—which is one infallible sign of a real teacher—of perceiving, as it were instinctively, when a child is working, and when he is merely idling with eyes fixed on his book. It is true that at first a great deal of practice in reading aloud will be necessary, especially with less proficient pupils, in order to correct mispronunciation of words and to secure reasonable fluency. But silent reading for " content " is equally important; and it should on no account be supposed that reading of this kind is something of which only older children are capable.

It is essential that almost from the earliest stage children should be taught to make the phrase and not the word the unit of reading. Every care should be taken to prevent the reading practice taking the form of a monotonous droning of apparently unrelated words. Such a performance is still too common, and, when it becomes a habit, is most difficult to eradicate, sometimes persisting even high up in the Senior School.

It is also to be hoped that the type of lesson will now at length disappear which consists solely of setting child after child, often in a large class, to read aloud a few lines in turn without previous preparation, while the rest of the class are required to follow word by word. The emphatic warning against it contained in the last edition of this *Handbook of Suggestions* must be repeated.

20. Reading aloud.—" Reading aloud " should mean the practising by the children, under the guidance of the teacher, of the clear and effective rendering of a paragraph, story, or poem: or it should mean the reading to the class of something likely to interest them by children who have previously prepared carefully what they are going to read, if possible with the help of the teacher:, or again, it should mean the reading by the teacher to the class of some carefully chosen passage, which, if he has a high conception of what the art of reading aloud really is, he will find it necessary to prepare beforehand. The children should be encouraged to criticise and discuss one another's performances ; but it is the teacher's standard which will be the chief factor in determining the quality of the reading aloud in his class.

The essential quality which should be secured in reading is clearness of utterance. The reader should be easily audible to all who are supposed to be listening to him ; the class will often close their books while a passage of any length is being read, and be trained to attend carefully. Next, he should read with sufficient fluency to keep the listeners' attention. Further he should read with expression. Expression should not be thought of as something which is to be brought into the reading after a certain stage of mechanical proficiency has been reached. If children understand, as they should, the meaning of what they read, they will read with expression, modulating their voices naturally and throwing

the accent on the key word of the phrase or clause. The teacher should not tolerate, much less require, exaggerated or affected "expression," nor give such merely mechanical rules as "Raise the voice at a comma." The children should not be allowed to suppose that their pauses should be entirely regulated by the punctuation marks; they should consider for themselves how each sentence may be most effectively phrased. The teacher will find himself better able to criticise the reading, especially from the point of view of clearness of articulation, if he does not always follow it in his own book. Otherwise, he may often be led to pass over faults, e.g. mumbling or slurring of sounds, which could not have escaped his notice had he been entirely dependent for knowledge of what was being read on the child's own rendering.

21. The content of reading.—The nature of the material offered to children for their reading and understanding is of vital importance in the Junior School. Their books will include fiction, and, especially as the children grow older, simple books of travel, hobbies, and other kinds of information, which appeal directly to their interests. They should not be too difficult, for the children must be encouraged to gain confidence in reading by themselves. There will also be books of graduated prose extracts from good authors. These extracts should be of interest and significance in themselves, long enough to provide genuine matter for a lesson's work, and free from an elaborate accompaniment of exercises and questions which are either irrelevant to the context and do not contribute anything towards a fuller understanding of its meaning, or are of a kind that any competent teacher can compose for himself with direct reference to his own method of teaching. To their poetry further reference will be made later, but it is to be hoped that, among the stories

which the children will hear or read, there will be included those old stories—whether from the Old Testament, the Ballads, or the Arthurian Legends—which are part of our national heritage.

22. English in relation to other subjects.—The pervading importance of English in the Junior School hardly needs emphasis. It is difficult to keep the teaching of English, History, Geography and Nature Study apart in their early stages. Careful co-operative planning is clearly necessary in order that work may not be inappropriately arranged. It is a matter of real importance, for example, that children should not be given too many written exercises in successive lessons. Their written work at this stage should be the short and refreshing expression of an untired mind. Again, historical stories may well form the basis of some of the written work in English. It may be worth while to illustrate the vital connexion of the teaching of English with that of Arithmetic. Many children find arithmetical problems difficult simply because they cannot read the sentence : it may demand far closer attention and more exact realisation of meaning than is usually expected from them in reading. Consider the following :—" A man who walks four miles an hour starts at 8 a.m. on a journey of 29 miles. If he rests twice for twenty minutes at a time, when will he arrive ? " The Arithmetic is easy, but several distinct facts have to be separately realised and their bearing on the matter considered. It is primarily a matter of understanding language.

23.—Development of the child's vocabulary.—The children will, to a varying extent, gradually increase their command of language by speaking, reading, and writing, in the ordinary way. But it appears that some form of practice more definitely directed to increasing their stock of words will be desirable, at least in the earlier stages. It has already been suggested that the

Infants' teachers should begin this process, and it should be continued in the Junior School. Needless to say, it will not be a matter of learning lists of words which are unrelated to one another, or meaningless to the children. At the earliest stages of the Junior School the words will generally be associated with things —with the contents of a room, a shop, a school; with pictures and with common objects of many kinds; with the material dealt with in the Nature Study, History, and Geography lessons, and with the Handwork done and the models made. Progress will be, broadly speaking, from the concrete to the abstract. "Word chains" and other games in which one word suggests another, may be of value if not overdone. Advantage will, of course, be frequently taken of the reading lesson for relating one word to another, either by association or by contrast.

24. The choice of reading matter and its treatment in class.—As the children grow older, this form of language training will probably become more definitely based on some reading lessons of a more intensive type, and possibly, for the cleverer children, with the close study of a short and not too difficult piece of English prose. As soon as the meaning of the whole has been grasped and, very likely, reproduced more or less in the children's own words, they will go on to details, and study the words, phrases, and sentences, with an increasing degree of exactness. Work of this kind will not only be directed to increasing the child's mastery of language, but will serve as a centre for the widening of his range of information and experience. It is important that the extracts studied should be selected with this end in view. Will this interest the children and, at the same time, afford a genuine opportunity for enlarging their experience? Mere tit-bits of information are not required, but glimpses of the way in which people live, think, and behave. It is not necessary

that all the passages should be " literary," but at least they should be good of their kind, soundly written, well-ordered, and fit material for language study that is not merely grammatical. The children should be encouraged to ask and answer questions about them, and not merely to accept slavishly the authority of the written word.

25. Learning to study with the aid of books.—Even in the Junior School, it is probable that far more could be done in the way of teaching children to find out simple things for themselves from books. The habit of using books for purposes of reference or search is a study habit of supreme importance, and teachers will readily think of many exercises, oral and written, by which this can be developed. Such exercises in the Junior School should be short, simple, direct, and well-suited to the books used. They cannot, as a rule, be extemporised in class.

26. Poetry at the Junior School stage and its treatment.—Poetry will not be the least important part of the English work in the Junior School. The essential thing to keep in mind, especially at this stage, is that poetry should be a source of genuine enjoyment to the children no less than to the teacher. The children's enjoyment will be greatest when the poetry chosen:

(1) reflects experiences which they themselves have had or can readily understand ;

(2) deals with matters which appeal to children between 7 and 11, such as stirring or unusual events, the simpler kinds of clash of character, or even humour of a primitive sort associated with any form of incongruity ;

(3) has a rhythm which is lively and emphatic, and a diction which attracts them through its forcefulness, or some striking combination of sounds or even a play upon words.

This does not mean that Junior School children are insensitive to genuine poetry or that they should never be given it. But their appreciation of poetry of the highest quality will be all the more genuine and sincere if their approach to it has been through verse which appeals to their natural interests. There is abundance of verse which of its kind is first rate, not only by well-known writers of the past, but also by poets of the present day. The child—and this warning cannot be stated too emphatically—does not require verse which is written down to his supposed intellectual level and written especially for school use.

The child at the Junior School stage is by nature neither introspective nor reflective and does not take kindly to the bookish study of poetry. He wants to be up and doing, and to savour the rhythm, the language and the sentiment of the poetry he likes through active forms of expression : reading it aloud, saying it aloud, chanting it in chorus or even dramatising it ; he may even be impelled by his enjoyment of it to compose verse of his own. This will do more to awaken his power of appreciation than either the mere compulsory committing to memory of poems considered good for him, or the elaborate study of the printed word. Embarrassing questions asked about a child's personal reactions to the sentiments and phraseology of the poem do more harm than good. To ask a child to consider objectively a line or a phrase—in regard to its sound or meaning—is useful ; but to ask him to explain how he feels in regard to a particular passage is calculated to breed hypocrisy and sentimentality.

It must not, however, be supposed that the Junior School child's acquaintance with poetry should be a mere matter of vocalisation, or that he is likely to appreciate it properly without the example and help of the teacher. Before the children deal with a poem

themselves, the teacher should introduce it to them in the most effective manner: first, by calling up in their minds the appropriate set of ideas and the accompanying mood, and secondly, by reading the poem aloud so that, to the best of his ability, he brings out its particular qualities.

The more the children like a poem, the more they will, as a rule, wish to know about it, in regard not so much to the particular words used as to the situations which form its subject-matter. Thus the teacher would be justified, provided always that the children's response is real, in telling them something about the background of the poem, the motive or the circumstances which prompted it, or anything relating to rhythm or language which is likely to increase their interest in the poem. He will find that, if he can get them to discuss the poem with him, they will often ask questions or express opinions which will give him a useful lead.

If the teaching in the Junior School has been successful, it will be found that the children not only like their poetry, and, to some extent, understand it, but also know a good deal of it by heart.

In the past there has undoubtedly been a tendency to make children remember too much verse and enjoy too little. But, though memorisation is not the sole function of the approach to poetry at this age, the young child's active memory may well be stored with fine and gracious fragments of poetry and prose. These should be carefully selected, although the children may sometimes be asked to memorise something they choose for themselves from their anthologies. Pieces so committed to memory should be frequently revised. Children should be encouraged to get the sense of the whole before they start to memorise, and should try to commit to memory passages of a reasonable length rather than a few words or a line at a time.

B.—EXPRESSION

(i) TRAINING IN SPEECH

27. The broader conception of Speech Training.—It is hardly necessary to emphasise the social as well as the educational importance of effective training in the proper use and comprehension of language. No school can be held entirely responsible for the speech of children attending it, which may be more or less strongly influenced for good or bad by factors beyond its control. None the less, teachers do in fact provide a model for the speech of children during their most impressionable years. Good speech, like good behaviour, is best learnt naturally and indirectly in a good school. Most lessons, too, will assist in the purpose of speech training and will afford practice in speech—whether it be talking about something that the children have read or are going to write about, describing something before them in a Nature Study lesson, explaining "How it works" or "How it is done," or shewing how to perform some process in Mathematics.

28. Training in Articulation.—Speech Training in the narrower sense, begun in the Infant School, should be continued in the Junior School. It should be continued, if for no other reason, because endless friction and waste of time are caused in school by inaudible answering. The first essential of speech is clarity: the basis of clear speaking is precise articulation, which can only be secured by careful training. A knowledge of how the individual sounds should be articulated is not difficult for the teacher to acquire, and he cannot easily improve the indistinct speech of the children, if he is without this knowledge. Tone in speech can also be trained. The aim should be to secure clear and pleasant speech, irrespective of dialect: whatever dialect a person may be speaking, he can learn to articulate

clearly and with good quality of tone. A short daily practice is necessary for the purpose of acquiring clearness in speaking and a consciousness of what good speech is. When the oral work that is being attempted is formal in character, more attention can clearly be given to speech than when it is oral work demanding thought and expression of self. But this practice will be of little value, if, when once begun, it is not continued. This is one of the many matters in which co-operation between the Junior and the Senior School is necessary.

29. Opportunities for Speech Training.—Almost every lesson, however, will afford opportunities for developing the children's power of clear and connected speech. As the child grows older he should be expected, in giving an account of anything he has done, heard, or learnt, to speak for a longer time than is usual in an Infants' class. The best way to make sure of improvement is to encourage the child to give a full and connected account of what he has read or been told, and, so far as possible, to avoid concluding the recapitulation or revision of reading or other lessons by a series of questions requiring merely a word or clause in reply. It is difficult to give each pupil sufficient practice in continuous oral statement, but if full advantage is taken of the countless opportunities for the practice of speech that arise much can be done. There are many ways in which the teacher can supplement the usual methods of speech training. Particular children may occasionally tell a story or speak on a suitable subject. When a book is being read by a class or group working together, the children may be called upon, at the conclusion of a paragraph or chapter, to state what they have gathered from it. In general, it may be stated that English lessons should invariably give opportunity and encouragement for discussion, the statement of agreement and disagreement, the asking of questions by the children, and

constructive digression by the teacher. English in all its aspects will be most successfully taught in an atmosphere of sensible, friendly and co-operative discussion.

30. Dramatic Activity.—(a) *The function of dramatic activity.*—In recent years there has been a notable growth of interest in dramatic activity in the school, and it is certain that drama is a most effective method for improving the clarity and fluency of children's speech. It should be realised, however, that drama is also a good deal more than this. In the school it may perhaps be appropriately defined as a training, a study, and an art. It is an excellent discipline in speech, poise and self-confidence. It affords remarkable opportunities for active literary study: and it is a natural and effective mode of artistic expression for children. In the Junior School the miming and dramatisation begun in the Infant School should be continued. Volumes of plays may afford material for classroom production. The mere reading of parts round the class has nothing to recommend it. However simple the play may be it should always be prepared—an attempt should be made to understand the characters, the movements, the situations; it may be produced in the Hall or an empty classroom or even in a clear space in front of the class; a really active and stage-like reading should be given; and it should be criticised, the rest of the class being encouraged to comment on the representation and its meaning. Dramatic activity should never be confined to the more capable or histrionically gifted members of the class. It is particularly useful in "bringing out" the dull boy.

(b) *The choice of material.*—The same principles that dictate our choice of poetry in the Junior School may govern also our selection of plays for class use. They should not be too obviously written down to children, they should be free from the vices of artificiality

and sentimentality, they should deal with characters who are of real interest in situations that afford material for discussion, and they should be written in language that has at least the merits of simplicity and forcefulness. It is evident that work of this kind needs careful planning. It must never be allowed to degenerate into noisy reading by a few and partial inattention by the many. A tradition of brisk and workmanlike dramatic lessons must be created. The division of the class into teams is an expedient which must often be employed, so that each child may get a chance.

(c) *Dramatic activity in the classroom.*—The intensive study of dramatic literature has no place in the Junior School, but it should not be forgotten that dramatisation —i.e. the creation of plays by the class from non-dramatic material—is an excellent exercise in written and spoken expression, of which children can see the intention and into which they throw themselves with understanding and enthusiasm. There is much suitable material in ballads, short narrative poems, and familiar stories. There should always be plenty of discussion beforehand. The teacher should not ask too much in the way of constructive genius from the children, but he will realise that he can teach them simple elements of craftsmanship that will prevent dramatisation from becoming merely the manufacturing of dialogue.

Besides promoting classroom plays and dramatisation the keen English teacher will want to try his hand occasionally at dramatic production on a large scale. In a good school play many energies and talents are called into service, the children taste the joys of personal achievement, and added colour and life are given to the work of the school. The teacher can easily make himself acquainted with good, simple books on producing, staging and lighting. It goes without saying that the aim will be to create a final product that is joyful and stimulating

to children, not necessarily impressive to the adult onlooker: and if the teacher is an enthusiast, he will not be too easily satisfied.

31. The problem of dialect.—Indistinctness of utterance, in children who are physically capable of speaking distinctly, ought not to be excused on any grounds. It is due chiefly to laziness in the use of the speech organs. But training in pronunciation presents certain special difficulties. It may be taken for granted that the school should ensure, so far as it can, that its pupils leave it able to make themselves understood in any part of the country to which they may go; and it is a motive to which the teacher can appeal at the proper time.

"Standard English" need not be interpreted in a narrow and pedantic sense. But the English to be aimed at should be at any rate a kind of English which both in idioms and in pronunciation is generally intelligible, and in pronunciation approximates to that which is used, though with many permissible if small variations, by educated persons. In matters such as accentuation and "quantity" the teacher is bound to be dogmatic; he cannot but insist, for example, upon the sounding of consonants which are dropped in blurred and slovenly speech.

But in various parts of the country dialects are spoken which differ materially from Standard English in pronunciation and also in form. Some of these dialects have a history and associations which entitle them to respect; others are regarded, not always on logical grounds, as debased and reprehensible. Teachers should not consider themselves in any sense called upon to extirpate a genuine local dialect. Yet experience shows that it is not impossible to encourage, at least for public occasions, a pronunciation in which variations from the normal are diminished.

So much the school must no doubt endeavour to do. Its success will depend upon the extent to which the teacher—assuming him to have no special knowledge of phonetics—can acquaint himself with the characters of the sounds in dialect and in Standard English respectively and with the manner in which they are produced, and upon his skill in getting his pupils to realise these differences themselves. The result will no doubt be that the children will become what is rather loosely called "bilingual." But a teacher with an interest in the subject may well go further and encourage the children to take a pride in their dialect, thus rendering them consciously "bilingual." He might encourage them occasionally to speak their dialect in school, to recite in it, to act in it, and to compare it deliberately with Standard English. Such a procedure, in skilled hands, could hardly fail to increase their interest in language, and their command over it; it is, in fact, by no means difficult to interest children in the study of sounds and idioms. But, since methods of this kind postulate a certain development of linguistic consciousness, they had perhaps better be postponed until the Senior School is reached. All attempts to correct dialectical peculiarities, as well as other peculiarities, too early, will be almost certain to have a depressing effect upon a child's power of speech, an effect which must be carefully avoided. Teachers should encourage the children to speak their dialect freely and boldly in the Infant School and in the earlier stages of the Junior School, and then build upon that.

32. The content of English for the backward child. —The methods to be adopted for children who are naturally dull and backward have not yet been adequately explored, and there is abundant room for experiment. Speech will obviously be of more importance here than with normal children; inability to speak with any

confidence is probably a contributory cause of backwardness. It seems that these children require more stimulating oral teaching and practice and less writing than normal children; that they should have more stories read or told to them; that the teaching should be mainly based on their own experience and on things that they have seen, done, or made; and that no opportunity should be lost of illustrating it from the commonest matters of daily life. With them, even more than with normal children, training in speech and writing will mean training them to fit the appropriate words to a situation that they have experienced directly; and to devise exercises to this end will be a chief part of the skill of the teacher. In reading, a supply of easy and interesting story books should be available. If the text is too difficult, the beginning of the paragraph, or even of the sentence, will be forgotten before the end is reached, and confidence—a very important thing—will be lost.

33. The importance of naturalness in children's speech.—There remain certain difficult problems in connexion with the guidance and development of language in school. Problems of this kind call for a clear realisation on the part of the teacher of the different forms which spoken language may assume. There is, for example, language which embodies a direct reaction to a subject or a situation and is a spontaneous expression of feeling or thought. Such language is not necessarily subject to the grammatical rules that are appropriate when exact and reasoned statement is called for. If the teaching is directed entirely to securing a "correct" use of language it is very easy to suppress in young children free and natural modes of expression, a result which would be very undesirable. On the other hand, the children's speech may show, in more or less abundance, elements which cannot be

regarded in this light, which are hardly spontaneous, and are not vivid in expression—tricks of speech, in fact, which are generally held to be vulgarisms. To correct these, without unduly depressing the children's native powers of speech, is a task which will make considerable demands on the teacher's taste and skill.

(ii) TRAINING IN WRITING

34. Differences between spoken and written English.—In considering how to introduce young children to written composition, the teacher would do well to ponder the differences between written and spoken language. Some apology may be needed for calling attention to a few fundamental considerations about this. Speech, it should be remembered, is informal, elliptical, aided by facial expression and vocal intonation; writing is, by comparison, formal, consecutive and ordered; the mental attitudes which underlie and accompany speaking and writing respectively are not the same; when we talk in the ordinary way, it is not formal prose that we speak; the language of conversation should on no account be regarded as an inferior kind of prose. In the earlier stages the children will write more or less as they speak, but, as they progress towards written composition in the real sense, they will have to learn conventions which do not come naturally to them. "Composition" will have been practised in the Infant School through oral methods mainly. If the children have been trained to speak continuously, they will find it easier to express and arrange their ideas in writing. The transition from oral work to written work may be a difficult matter, and, where direct instruction of this kind seems called for, skilled teaching may be necessary to avoid artificiality. It may be assisted by various devices, e.g. by the teacher's writing on the blackboard to the children's dictation an unpunctuated version of a story which they have learned and then, by comparison with

the original, breaking it up into sentences. This is a method which is obviously capable of many variations.

35. The treatment of written composition.—On arrival at the Junior School the pupils will begin, no doubt, to write short and simple exercises of various types. But this is not a process which need be hurried ; written composition is generally begun too soon and practised too often. Too much of it should not be required until the children can write easily in the mechanical sense, and long exercises should not be demanded.

It would be unreasonable to say that children should not begin to express themselves in writing until they feel the need to do so ; many would not feel any such need until too late. But the suggestion does contain this truth, that children should feel that what they write has some point and purpose ; they should not be set to write on topics quite unconnected with anything that they have been doing, seeing, reading or discussing. If the material that they read matures into active discussion lessons, the transition to brief written exercises will be natural and easy. They can answer briefly in writing questions about the meaning of what they have read. They can be asked to deduce something further from a passage that they have been discussing and to express it in a sentence. They can deny statements in their reading and find a reason for doing so. They can begin the practice of dramatisation by writing out the dialogue implicit in a brief episode of a story. Exercises artificially contrived to illustrate mistakes should be avoided. If the oral basis of the child's written work is fully maintained, the distinction between free composition and assisted composition becomes somewhat unreal. Opportunities for writing will arise out of the work of the class. The more independent kind of child will give a touch of originality to what he writes ; the slower child will be content with recapitulating and

arranging ideas which have already been discussed, sometimes even writing these out under the teacher's guidance; the cleverer child will be given occasional openings for more definitely original work like story-writing, but this will not be the regular field for written activity. There must, of course, be sectionising, in order that the written work shall not demand too much or too little.

36. Formal training in written expression.—Most of the capacity to write English in an ordered form and according to the accepted conventions is derived from familiarity with books and from the practice of moderately formal and continuous speech. But some direct teaching will save time and repeated explanations. There will be abundant practice, for example, in the use of the full stop and the capital letter, and later on in the use of the relative pronoun and of the inverted relative, of quotation marks and question marks. Such practice need not be purely formal, or without its element of fun or provocation to thought. It should never become merely tedious and it should progress by single steps. It is closely related to the question of the teacher's correction. This should be directed to substance as well as to form ; it should deal with statements of fact, with matters of taste, and with the sense of orderliness. Where it is concerned with grammar and construction, it will not overwhelm the child with details, but will emphasise particular errors at a particular time.

The formal English practice indicated above will take account, no doubt, of the difficulties and lapses which the written work of the class exhibits. With regard to the children's own diction in the wider sense, the teacher may find dealing with it a task of some delicacy. He will avoid trying to force it too much into a conventional mould ; he will welcome any instance of vigour and originality in expression, even if it be not technically correct, and he will be chary of condemning language because it savours of colloquial speech. The

children will learn in time when such language is suitable and when it is not; and they will come to realise that what may be appropriate in writing a dialogue or a conversation would be inappropriate in a piece of straightforward composition.

37. Spelling.—A certain amount of spelling drill is probably necessary in the Junior School: but such drill should be, as far as possible, individual. It is a waste of time to keep calling on good spellers to spell words in which they are not liable to make mistakes. The teacher's task is to devise means for helping each child to master his own peculiar difficulties, and the best guide in selecting the words which he should be taught to spell is to be found in his own written exercises. The children should be taught at an early stage to verify the spelling of the words they use, for a large number of spelling mistakes are due to carelessness rather than ignorance and occur in common and simple words, often because they are mispronounced.

The more closely spelling is connected with composition, and composition with reading, the more effectively will children be taught to spell. Opportunities for incidental teaching will constantly occur and a good teacher will have no difficulty in making this apparently incidental teaching genuinely systematic, while he avoids the dangers of boredom and inattention produced by the old formal lesson in spelling. Little is to be gained from oral spelling lessons. It is a good plan for the children occasionally to make a special study of the spelling of the words on a particular page which is to form the basis of an exercise in composition, so that they may train themselves to retain mental pictures of words and be able to visualise them easily! It cannot be emphasised too strongly that to spend time in early years on the spelling of words which the child will not use, if at all, for some years to come, is wasted labour.

38. Dictation.—Dictation has long occupied a place of some importance in the traditional scheme of English instruction. It is still frequently allotted a prominent position in the time-table. As a regular and definite constituent of the teaching of English it is to be deprecated. It is a convenient method of testing spellings that have already been committed to memory, although it is of no value in the direct teaching of spelling. For young children it is useful in providing practice in the correct writing of words that they already know. Modifications of the traditional form of dictation can occasionally be used for training in careful listening, in getting the real gist and argument from a spoken passage.

39. Grammar in the Junior School.—It is only by direct contact with the spoken and written language that the teaching of Grammar can be redeemed from the unreality and sterility which have so often accompanied its teaching in the past. It must be recognised that there are many children in the Elementary Schools for whom Grammar is the least suitable and useful part of their training in the use of the mother tongue. In the Junior School the study of Grammar, in any case, has only a small place. The child may well become familiar with some of the simpler grammatical terms, but this does not imply the mere memorising of a set of definitions. Any exercises that may be given will be all the more effective if they are not merely grammatical, but are concerned with meaning as well as with form. There is no need whatever for a separate Grammar lesson in the Junior School, and very little need for written grammatical exercises.

40. Handwriting: the development of a "cursive" hand.—As writing becomes purely automatic and therefore swifter there is a natural tendency to run on between combinations of letters so that no time may be lost in

the pursuit of the hurrying thought. This tendency should be looked for and guided, and simple combinations and slight modifications of form suggested, so that the child gradually acquires a cursive hand based on the simple forms he has already acquired. With most children the change begins to appear somewhere about nine or ten years of age, but children who find difficulty in the simpler form of writing will not do any better if forced to adopt the more difficult. Backward children who show a fairly satisfactory and pleasing print-script may fall still farther behind in their written exercises if the change to a cursive hand absorbs an unreasonable amount of attention and energy.

If for any reason the school makes a point of teaching a particular style of writing other than that based upon print-script, intensive practice in the last year is likely to prove more effective, because more consciously followed, than weekly writing periods for several years beforehand. In any case no style should be taught which involves an emphasis upon meaningless strokes, e.g. joins and introductions, to the disadvantage of significant forms. Moreover, for many purposes, such as the writing of lists and notices, headings, mapping etc., print-script should continue to be practised side by side with cursive script. For capital letters in combination with cursive writing, too, print forms are far less subject to degeneration than the elaborate flourishes in which some schools take great pride.

IV. ENGLISH IN THE SENIOR SCHOOL

A.—UNDERSTANDING

41. The importance of choosing the right kind of reading-matter.—By the time the child reaches the Senior School he should as a rule have mastered the mechanical difficulties of reading. It is, as we have seen, the teacher's task first of all to awaken in these

children an understanding of their environment, particularly when it seeks to affect them through the written word. The Senior School course should include an approach to a wide variety of reading-matter, carefully selected and sensibly arranged. The basis of the work in the understanding of language will be the discussion-lesson. Suitable passages will be read in class and subjected to a thoughtful and critical examination by the class and the teacher. An examination of this kind will be concerned with meaning, with structure and with feeling. The passages chosen will probably be taken from a suitable "reader" of some sort; they should be, like the passages studied in the Junior School, aspects of human experience, within the child's grasp, but not written down to him, containing matter worthy of thought and discussion, and unembarrassed by too many editorial aids.

42. The place of independent reading.—In the Senior School many books will be read, and they may well be read for different purposes. The teacher will make himself responsible for some oversight of the child's independent reading. He may issue library lists and discuss them, keep some record of what the child is reading, and occasionally ask him questions or set him written compositions upon this material. It would be foolish to attempt to impose any kind of artificial adult standard of literary values upon the child, but it is equally foolish to hope for much in the way of critical development in the child's mind if his independent reading is cut off entirely from his work in school.

43. Systematic training in study.—It is, of course, important that children should develop some definite capacity for reading for information before they leave the Senior School. The teacher will take trouble to see that the English course systematically furthers this end. There should be a class, or school, library

which contains works of reference, some at least of which are not specifically designed for use by children. Pupils should be encouraged to find the requisite information for such purposes as writing an essay or giving a brief discourse to the class. The use of a dictionary should be a recognised part of English study. More reciprocity might well exist between the teacher of English and the teachers of other subjects. Books of common interest might be read in whole or in part by arrangement with the Geography teacher, the History teacher and the Science teacher. The teacher should endeavour to impress upon his pupils some conception of the *usefulness* of books for many practical purposes of life. Reading of this kind should always be tested by question and discussion or by some kind of written exercise. The use of other sources of information, such as the newspaper, should find some place in the preparation of the child for the understanding of the complexities of his environment.

44. Libraries and their use.—The provision of adequate school libraries is a matter of importance. Much is already being done in this way, e.g. by providing circulating libraries for schools in rural as well as urban districts. None the less, far too many schools are till to be found where there are not enough library books; where there are not enough shelves for what books there are, and where, in the absence of a special room, there is no classroom allocated for the purpose of a library.

As has already been suggested, school libraries should not consist wholly of story-books, though there must indeed be a supply of such books if the pupils are to be encouraged to read as copiously as is desirable. They must also cater for the numerous boys and girls who have an interest in plants and animals, aeroplanes, ships, steam engines and railways, motor-cars, photography, wireless telegraphy, architecture, pictures,

games, scout-lore, arts and crafts, or whatever it may be. Books of reference, such as almanacs and encyclopædias, and a first-rate English dictionary, should be included; and the provision of some newspapers and magazines (which need not be absolutely up-to-date) is desirable also. In choosing books of the character indicated above, it may often be desirable to choose those not designed by their authors for use as school books. The management of the library should as far as possible be entrusted to individual pupils, who would be responsible for looking after the books generally and keeping the catalogue up-to-date.

Efforts are now generally made to bring schools into close touch with public libraries, where they exist, by means of co-operation between the librarians and the teachers. The assistance of librarians in giving help and advice to young readers is often of great value. It has sometimes been found possible to arrange for school classes to do some of their work in the reference room of public libraries—an excellent plan. One particular recommendation was made in the last issue of this *Handbook of Suggestions*, and may be repeated: Local Authorities can afford much assistance to teachers by forming libraries at convenient centres from which they can borrow books, and in which they can see specimens of school books.

45. The wider aims of the Senior School child's reading.—Reading for information is one aspect of the work in the understanding of language which should face the child in the Senior School. He will also have to read for something more than information, however valuable and interesting; he will read for some familiarity with the experience which finds expression in literature, for imaginative contact with the lives of others, for the acquisition of a set of values which will stand him in good stead in the world of books and in the wider world

in which his life must be lived, and, incidentally for the enjoyment of what is well written. The supervision of this reading is a difficult task. It is easy for the teacher to attempt too much, and it is a matter for great regret if the teacher attempts too little.

In the discussion of poems a wider vocabulary will be used and perception of somewhat more subtle characteristics be expected. In the last year in the Senior School, poems more definitely concerned with simple views of life, man, and society, may reasonably be introduced and discussed. The method of comparison of one poem with another will prove very useful at this stage. It is natural that the teacher should find work of this kind difficult; but if he begins this task willingly, he will not easily be turned back.

46. The study of prose fiction.—The study of prose fiction has always held some place in the teaching of English and there are excellent reasons for this. The novel is the one form of literature with which we may be certain the vast majority of the children who leave Elementary Schools will continue to maintain familiarity. It is a form of literature which appeals very naturally and easily to the child with his intense love of story and action. The teacher should realise that the mere reading of a novel, in class or out of it, coupled with an occasional question about the progress of the story, is not the sum of the possibilities of this phase of literary teaching. Attention should be directed to the author's use of words and to the kind of experience and outlook that is expressed therein. The novel should form the centre of discussion-lessons much as poetry does. Codes of human behaviour, diverse facets of man's experience, and the intimacies of character, are topics readily extracted from a good novel Effective teaching with its centre in prose fiction would be much easier and commoner

if the work were adequately planned, and the novel carefully examined and divided into sections before its reading was begun.

47. Poetry in the Senior School.—In the section on poetry in the Junior School, emphasis was laid upon the importance of the child's approaching poetry through the gateway of his natural interests. In the Senior School the same vital principle must be observed, but it will be realised that the child's interests have broadened and that it is now possible to undertake more in the way of simple reflection upon and criticism of the verses studied. In the discussion of poems a wider vocabulary will be used and somewhat more subtle perceptions of differences in feeling and treatment between one poem and another may reasonably be expected. The study of poetry should not be neglected because it is difficult, or because there are dangers of sentimentality and insincerity in the attempt to develop anything in the nature of "appreciation."

The poems to be studied should be carefully chosen. They will include narrative, lyric, dramatic, and simple satiric pieces, dealing with material that can be brought within the child's comprehension. The teacher may well attempt to build up the background of the poem by illustration and description before any attempt at discussion is begun. The imagery of the poem may be examined and its structure, rhythm and meaning studied by the teacher and the class. The poetry lesson should, in fact, be a real attempt at the understanding of language in its most concentrated and evocative form. It should not degenerate into the observation of metrical tricks and niceties, into a suggested and insincere appreciation, or merely into the committing of a number of lines to memory. This, of course, does not mean that it is any less important a part of the teaching in the Senior School than it is

in the Junior School to ensure that the children are learning by heart some memorable poetry.

In many schools the children are encouraged to make their own attempts at verse composition. It is clear that they find real pleasure in this method of expressing their experiences and that, by so doing, they have in addition increased their power of appreciating the poetry they study.

B.—EXPRESSION

(i) TRAINING IN SPEECH

48. Further development of the child's vocabulary. —To ensure real understanding of relevant literary material is one main objective which the English teacher in the Senior School will set before himself. He will also seek to carry further the capacities for spoken and written expression to which reference was made when the work of the Junior School was under discussion. In the Senior School the teacher will find plenty of occasions for the exercise of tact and skill in dealing with certain wider aspects of the children's speech. He will, for example, seek to encourage their power of vigorous and racy expression. He will realise that even slang has its place, and will try and get them to understand what that place is. In so doing, he will have frequent occasion to remind himself that language is the creation of the many and not of the few ; that it takes all sorts of people to make a language ; that it is from the speech, not so much of the study, as of the street, the factory, and the field, that language is vitalised and recruited ; and that the broad processes of linguistic change operate in their own way, resisting all attempts to regulate them by authority. But it is of no use pretending that this aspect of the subject, regarded from the point of view of the school, is not one of great difficulty, and one upon which it is almost impossible to offer definite suggestions.

49. Encouragement of clear speech.—There is, however, a tendency in children as they grow older to speak less clearly and less coherently, a tendency which is perhaps more marked with boys than girls. A training in clear articulation and in the quality of the speaking voice is as essential at the Senior stage as it is earlier, and therefore should not be dropped. The principles which should underlie the training are the same as those for the Junior School ; and the desire to speak well can be stimulated through verse-speaking, dramatic work and class discussions.

50. Reading aloud.—Mention has already been made of the " reading lesson " in which a passage is read and discussed with a view to the understanding of its content. There will be room also for a reading lesson for the purpose of training in reading aloud, about which a few words may be said. Two faults which should especially be avoided are artificial modulation of the voice without due regard to the meaning, and exaggeration of emphasis. The pupils should realise that their object must be to reveal by their reading the full meaning of the author. The niceties of rendering may now be carefully studied, and in this connexion it should be remembered that punctuation is a guide to the eye rather than to the voice. Such points should be discussed as where breath should be taken and pauses made ; the best way to phrase a sentence ; and the effect of changes of emphasis, tone, and speed. Suitable poems should still be occasionally memorised and recited. The reading aloud of poetry should receive careful attention.

51. Dramatic activity and dramatic literature.—Something has already been said of the function of drama in the Junior School. In the Senior School dramatic activity should be vigorously continued. Classroom productions, the dramatisation of longer

stories or more complex ballads, discussion, criticism and school production, all have their place. At this stage the study of dramatic literature may also be considered. There are plays which have a traditional place in the classroom and, rightly studied, should continue to do so. Much of Shakespeare has a direct appeal to the young, who enjoy acting scenes from such plays as *A Midsummer Night's Dream, The Merchant of Venice, Macbeth*, and *Julius Caesar*.

52. Dialect and speech training.—The comments made on the problem of dialect in the Junior School may well be brought back into consideration here. Much depends on the particular environment of each school, but in areas where there is a vigorous local dialect some degree of bilingualism seems to be the likeliest solution. As the children grow older their linguistic sense will grow, and it will be the teacher's aim to foster this sense directly and indirectly. They will become more alive to the fact that language varies according to its purpose ; and they will gain more insight into the conventions which govern some of the most elementary of these differences, such as the difference between colloquial speech and more formal speech. It may again be emphasised that if all English lessons are lessons in which active understanding and continuous discussion are encouraged, the child's speech is more likely to progress soundly, than if much formal work is supplemented by some formal speech training.

(ii) TRAINING IN WRITING

53. Exercises in Composition and other forms of written work.—The written work in the Senior School should follow much the same principles as that set in the Junior School. It should never be remote from the child's experience. It should be definite and clear in intention. It should frequently be based on the child's

reading. In the Senior School the elements of written composition will have to be studied more thoroughly than in the Junior School, with special reference to such matters as the sound choice of words, emphasis, variety in sentence structure, and paragraphing.

Descriptive exercises, concerned with familiar sights, scenes, objects, and processes, including operations done in the Practical Instruction and the Science rooms, should form a definite part of the work. The writing of letters dealing with the most ordinary occasions of life should of course be included. History, Geography, and Science lessons, at any rate in the later stages, will afford a training in answering questions briefly and to the point, a training of which it would be hard to exaggerate the practical importance; and the teacher of English would do well to acquaint himself with what the children are doing in these subjects. Books read will also provide topics; and exercises which involve obtaining information from more than one book will sometimes be set, at any rate to the cleverer children.

Nor should the written exercises be confined to "composition" so-called; they should include practice, for example, in taking notes from a spoken discussion or from a wireless talk. The summarising of paragraphs may well be attempted; but whether exercises in formal précis writing are possible for children up to the age of fourteen is more doubtful. Such exercises, if attempted at all, should only be attempted by the most advanced.

54. Opportunities for training in written expression provided by work in various subjects of the curriculum.—The extent to which written work done primarily for the purpose of History, Geography, or Science lessons might be accepted as part of the English work is a matter calling for serious consideration; as suggested in the preceding paragraph, a mutual arrangement between the teachers concerned might do something to

lessen the burden of written work all round. The work in the Science room and the Practical Instruction room will afford opportunities for the accurate description of processes. The work in Mathematics may also subserve the same purpose, and especially perhaps that in Elementary Geometry—e.g. a verbal or written description may be called for of how to bisect a line, or of how to construct an equilateral triangle. The essential part which comprehension of language may play in the solution of problems in Arithmetic has already been referred to in connexion with the Junior School. Good setting out of written work of every kind may be used to provide an elementary training, not only in exact thought, but in concise expression and the correct use of technical terms.

55. Some principles to be remembered in teaching Composition.—The teacher will not set too many long compositions of a more formal kind. Most exercises set for written work should be discussed generally in class before they are attempted. The reading of the child will constantly provide opportunities for written work, sometimes brief, sometimes more extensive. The importance of the capacity to develop an argument in writing will not be forgotten.

56. The Written Expression of the dull and backward child.—For the most backward anything like formal composition would be quite out of place. The aim of the teacher will be rather to get them to want to write, and to provide them with exercises in which they can see some purpose. Any interesting thing that they are doing or making may serve as a basis for simple written work. Notes can be made about games and school events, or a little newspaper can be compiled by the class. It is to be hoped, it may be added, that the backward classes in a school will be taken by the same teacher for at any rate all lessons that involve

the use of books. Before they leave school, these children must have been trained in some of the most obvious and practical uses of language, e.g. they must have had some practice in understanding and transmitting simple instructions, verbal and written; in taking down messages; in interpreting some of the printed forms and instructions which they will deal with later; in writing simple letters, postcards, and telegrams, for the ordinary purposes of daily life. All this may involve a good deal of sheer mechanical repetition, but it cannot be helped. Some elementary accomplishments of this character must be learned by as many children as possible before they go out into life.

57. The importance of truthfulness in composition.—Precision in writing rather than mere fluency should be aimed at, especially as the children grow older; and the endeavour to secure it will provide a valuable discipline for the cleverer or more imaginative among them. The chief criterion by which the pupils' compositions will be judged will be their truthfulness in the widest sense—the truthfulness with which they record their experiences and impressions; the accuracy with which they describe things or scenes; and the honesty which they show in stating, when called upon to do so, what they really think or feel, and not what they imagine that they are called upon to think or feel. Truthfulness to observed fact and to impression is, after all, a virtue which can be cultivated at an early stage; it is, moreover, the one quality which the humblest writer may possess in common with the greatest.

58. Correction and revision.—Ideally, no doubt, the best plan would be to go through each exercise with the child who wrote it; and the value of this direct contact of mind with mind is so great that every effort should be made to secure it. But it must be admitted at once that in many schools this would be quite

impracticable owing to the size of the classes, and the teacher will have to vary his methods according to the conditions. Mistakes made by several children in common can be dealt with collectively. At times a whole lesson may well be spent in hearing pieces of composition read aloud by their authors, and in making and inviting oral comments. Important principles as to the build and balance of sentences, variety or monotony of diction, and correctness of punctuation, can be illustrated in this way. The essential point, however, must be that the child should understand what is wrong and know how to correct it. This can never be secured if the teacher's revision goes no further than merely marking every mistake, without regard to its relative importance, and handing the exercise back without comment.

As regards the pupils' part, it would be neither desirable nor possible to ask them to rewrite every composition; but sometimes they will be asked to write a rough draft, to correct that draft themselves, and then to produce a more finished composition for submission to the teacher. By this means they will realise that a piece of writing can be improved by further work upon it. As regards correction by the teacher, Senior and Junior School will no doubt agree upon a code of correction for elementary mistakes. Correction should be progressive; the existence of a mistake in a line could be indicated by some mark, but the child could be left to find it out for himself. Above all, attention should not be confined to elementary blunders. The rewriting of a badly formed sentence may be more important still, and constructive criticism, alternative suggestions for wording, and so on, should be given. The teacher, again, might mark the exercises at different times for different purposes, the purpose being made clear to the class when the exercises are given back.

It is fully realised that this more thorough and constructive type of correction will impose a heavy burden

on the teacher of a large class. This burden might to some extent be mitigated by more class discussion of the composition exercises themselves, and, possibly, through arrangement with other teachers, by fewer and shorter exercises being written in the time specifically allotted to English. But the whole matter must be regarded as a major problem of school work and organisation, and one that is well worthy of investigation over a wide field.

59. The Function of Grammar.—There has been much controversy about the place of Grammar in the school, and it cannot be pretended that this controversy is finally settled. Certain guiding principles may, however, be suggested. Any grammatical work attempted should rather be done incidentally than in a definite period on the time-table. It should spring from reading or from composition and should not consist in formal exercises in the application of so-called "grammatical rules." By far the greater part of grammatical work should be oral. The teaching should be confined to essentials such as the differentiation of the various parts of speech, the recognition that clauses and phrases can stand in the same relationships to the rest of the sentence as individual words can, the difference between co-ordination and subordination, and simple functional analysis. Care should be taken to recognise idioms for what they are, and not to force them into supposed obedience to grammatical conventions. Such grammatical work as is introduced should arise naturally from actual speech, writing and reading in the work of the class, rather than consist of formal exercises in abstract grammar. Experience tends to show that such exercises have not much value for giving command of the native tongue, which comes rather through imitation and practice.

60. Handwriting.—Whatever may be the fo of handwriting approved in any school, for the writer's sake it must be easy to write and, for the reader's, easy to read. For ease and speed of reading, writing must be plain, regular, and clearly laid out on the page, i.e. with adequate margins and spacing between the lines. Smooth paper and nibs that are not too fine are among the requisites. Printed lines impose a spacing which is often inappropriate to the size of individual handwriting, and in themselves interfere with the reader's vision. It is many years since children were taught to draw on squared paper; but the art of writing has not yet escaped from lines.

Provided that the two essential qualities of handwriting—legibility and speed—are ensured, the particular style adopted is of little importance. Such children as make any frequent use of writing after leaving school will most probably change their style of writing for one reason or another during their adolescent years. What is important is to make clear to them the essential qualities common to all accepted styles.

V. CONTACT WITH A WIDER ENVIRONMENT

61. The teacher's knowledge of his pupils' contact with a wider environment out of school.—The child's contact with his wider environment is of vital importance to the English teacher, for it will form the focus of his teaching. He should know something of the cinema, of the films which the children see and of those which they ought to see He should know something of the libraries, the museums and art galleries, the places of historical or of general interest, which can be utilised in the child's education. It is his task to broaden and deepen the child's understanding of life, and he cannot easily neglect these things.

Something, too, should be said of the place of wireless broadcasts in the English lesson. Here is an excellent opportunity for bringing the child into contact with new sources of ideas and experience, for training him to use a new cultural instrument which he may neglect if he is not trained, and for familiarising him with clear standardised English speech.

VI. CONCLUSION

62. The larger view of the English teacher's task.—It is evident that the task of the English teacher is no light one. It requires an interest in children, an interest in words, and an interest in the larger world. Specialised knowledge is of less importance than such interests as these, for they can easily flower into the relevant kind of knowledge, whereas knowledge without these interests can only succeed in imprisoning the child's vital and curious mind within a mesh of facts. With such interests and aims the English teacher in the Senior School should succeed in the essentials of his task: the training of a young citizen who can speak clearly and sensibly, who can write with order and expressiveness, who can find what he wants in books, who is alive to the fulness of words, and who confronts his environment with enjoyment, with self-reliance, and with an openness to new ideas and new experiences.

CHAPTER XII

HISTORY

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

A. HISTORY AS A SCHOOL SUBJECT

1. The main aims of the teaching.—History is the story of the doings of human beings and the society in which they lived, and this story has to be told to children mostly under the age of 15. First-hand experience is obviously impossible for the child, who must depend upon his teacher or on books for his knowledge of facts and events and of the relations between them, which form the subject-matter of History. Many of the connecting links between past events are beyond the comprehension of any but the brighter children, and the notion, in particular, of communities or states acting as wholes is difficult for a child whose experience is limited to the comparatively narrow environment of his home and his school.

The story of things that have happened to human beings in the past is, however, of natural interest for children, if it is presented in a lively, vivid way with due regard to its proper setting in time and place. We can, at least, ensure that they have in their minds a body of stories of notable events and people pictured against a background which, though it may be incomplete, is yet clear and true as far as it goes. None the less, if History is to be to the child anything more than a succession of interesting stories, the teacher will have to present them in such a way as to help him to realise that the world is always changing—and not in a fortuitous way. He can show how a particular event may influence many subsequent events, and he can let his pupil feel that some events are vastly more important than others. It is from his History lessons that the child will come to learn that the present grows out of the past and conditions the future, and that what happens in one community may affect other communities. Thus he will see that the story of England is not an isolated story, but is linked up with that of other parts of the world. In this way, the teacher may arouse in his pupils, through a sense of its significance, a lasting interest in the past and a desire to extend their knowledge of History after they have left school, and he may hope that his teaching at school will lead them later to look on current events in their broader aspects and as affecting the lives and interests of others as well as their own.

2. The appeal to children's enthusiasms.—There is one aspect of History which is of first importance to the teacher. From its study the mature reader may gain a wider intellectual outlook and a saner judgment, and these benefits in their degree may also accrue to older children. For all children, however, history is preeminently of value as a stimulus to their imagination and as an appeal to their enthusiasms. The content

The story of things that have happened to human beings in the past is, however, of natural interest for children, if it is presented in a lively, vivid way with due regard to its proper setting in time and place. We can, at least, ensure that they have in their minds a body of stories of notable events and people pictured against a background which, though it may be incomplete, is yet clear and true as far as it goes. None the less, if History is to be to the child anything more than a succession of interesting stories, the teacher will have to present them in such a way as to help him to realise that the world is always changing—and not in a fortuitous way. He can show how a particular event may influence many subsequent events, and he can let his pupil feel that some events are vastly more important than others. It is from his History lessons that the child will come to learn that the present grows out of the past and conditions the future, and that what happens in one community may affect other communities. Thus he will see that the story of England is not an isolated story, but is linked up with that of other parts of the world. In this way, the teacher may arouse in his pupils, through a sense of its significance, a lasting interest in the past and a desire to extend their knowledge of History after they have left school, and he may hope that his teaching at school will lead them later to look on current events in their broader aspects and as affecting the lives and interests of others as well as their own.

2. The appeal to children's enthusiasms.—There is one aspect of History which is of first importance to the teacher. From its study the mature reader may gain a wider intellectual outlook and a saner judgment, and these benefits in their degree may also accrue to older children. For all children, however, history is preeminently of value as a stimulus to their imagination and as an appeal to their enthusiasms. The content

of the syllabus or of any lesson in it is of much less importance to children of this age, and especially to those who are slow to learn, than the spirit behind the teaching. History deals with true stories of real men and women, of actual communities and nations; it is a record writ large of their influence for good or evil. There is no need for the teacher to turn his lessons into sermons; still less should he encourage the children to sit in judgment on the great men and nations of the past If he makes History living to the children, they will learn naturally in how many different ways the great figures of history have helped mankind, and by what sort of actions nations and individuals have earned the gratitude of posterity. Without any laboured exhortations they will feel the splendour of heroism, the worth of unselfishness and loyalty, and the meanness of cruelty and cowardice; and the influence of their lessons in history will be at work long after the information imparted to them has been forgotten

3. The need for careful selection of subject-matter. —In the treatment of a subject of which the range is so vast careful selection is all-important. The teacher's choice will, of course, be determined partly by his own interests and reading, but he should deal, first and foremost, only with what children can understand: with personal character and prowess, adventure, discovery, invention, and with the way in which men have lived and worked; but with statutes only so far as their purport and meaning can be made plain to a child; and with economic, political or religious conflict only so far as its main issues and results are necessary for an elementary understanding of great changes in national life and of the rights and duties of a citizen of today. It has always to be borne in mind that history is a continuous narrative of events and that the teaching should avoid the danger of leaving in the child's mind a series of isolated episodes.

4. Syllabuses should vary with the circumstances of the schools.—Schools, moreover, vary widely in their circumstances. In large schools, especially in those which draw their pupils from homes where reading is encouraged, where travelling is not unknown, and conditions are generally favourable, a more extended treatment of the subject will be possible than in those which enjoy fewer advantages. The suggestions that follow are intended to apply to their full extent only to schools where the work is done under generally favourable conditions. Indications are, however, given of the lines on which schools with special difficulties might proceed. It is not intended in these suggestions to recommend a definite course for general adoption as a whole, and History syllabuses, even for schools in similar circumstances, may properly vary according to the capacity and interests of the teacher. Each teacher should think out and frame his own scheme, having regard to the circumstances of his school, its environment, its staffing and internal organisation, and in some measure also to the books and the topics which most appeal to him.

B. READING THE ESSENTIAL FOUNDATION OF HISTORY TEACHING

5. The teacher's reading.—In History, perhaps more than in most studies, the teacher's own reading and his power to make judicious use of it are of the first importance, and many teachers with a special interest in the subject will naturally wish to get together little libraries of their own. While it is not difficult, even in the country, for teachers to obtain the books of reference they need, nevertheless, the teaching sometimes displays insufficient breadth of knowledge and therefore insufficient power of selecting such facts as give vividness, reality and historical balance to the story. The study of the writings of some of the great historians of the past

such as Gibbon, Froude and Macaulay and of the best modern historical works dealing with the social and economic aspects of the subject, will give life and reality to the narrative of events, and enrich the presentation of them.

In the vast store-house of English literature the teacher may find inspiration; for the literature of any period is often the expression of the life and thought of that period. Readings from Chaucer and Piers Plowman, for example, are almost indispensable for a true appreciation of life in the later Middle Ages; Spenser and Shakespeare light up the Elizabethan period, Milton, Bunyan and Pepys the 17th Century; Addison, Steele and Boswell's Johnson the 18th Century; Cobbett and the great Victorian novelists the early 19th Century.

The continuous refreshment which the best literature may give will help teachers from day to day and year to year to clothe the dry bones of History with flesh and blood.

6. The children's reading.—(a) *Text-books and reference-books.*—As History offers exceptional opportunities for independent study on the part of children, the selection of a good text-book is of great importance. The best students' histories are too difficult for children, yet no book should be chosen for the senior classes which does not represent good historical scholarship. The language of the books chosen without being unduly childish, should be sufficiently simple and vivid to be followed by young pupils with interest and should not require too much verbal explanation by the teacher. The matter should be historically sound, the descriptions of important persons and events reasonably full; and the narrative, though brief, so presented as to impress the reader with a sense of its continuity.

In addition to text-books it would be well also, where possible, to provide for each school, or for a group of

schools, a collection of good histories of different periods, monographs, biographies, etc., which would together cover the ground. Such books can, as a rule, be obtained from Public Libraries and, in rural areas, from County Libraries.

(b) *Library facilities.*—Most Public Libraries now offer special facilities for children. In many of them an arrangement has been made by which the children in the senior classes of the school have tickets entitling them to borrow a book. A list of suitable books is made by the teacher, and thus a kind of circulating library is started in school, which in course of time is replaced by another. Those teachers are particularly fortunate whose children have access to a special reading room in the Public Library. But no matter what reading the Public Library may offer, it does not remove the need for a historical section in the School Library.

(c) *The use of historical fiction.*—Every encouragement should be given to the children to read good historical fiction. There is scarcely an episode of importance, from the Roman Invasion onwards, which has not been dealt with by a writer of ability. A collection of such books, which should be of real literary merit, should be in every school library for the use of pupils as well as teachers; historical novels are, if possible, better read at home than at school, for the habit of reading at home for pleasure will strengthen the older pupils' power of independent study. It will help them to use books to good purpose in the classroom and to prepare many of their lessons for themselves with pleasure and with excellent effect upon their general education.

Among these books should be some from which the children should on occasion hear or read a story as it was told first-hand, especially when the writers are also excellent story-tellers.

C. THE SCHOOL COURSE

7. General arrangement of the school course.—In the following pages the Junior School stage and the Senior School stage are dealt with separately. It is not suggested, however, that any definite break in the course is to be desired for its own sake. Indeed, always assuming that the teachers of the Junior School are left free to choose the topics they are to handle, with the tastes and interests of their children to guide them, there is a great deal to be said for a close connexion between the work of the Junior and Senior School, by means of which the syllabus of the latter can be adjusted to the foundations already laid.

In addition many schools contain a considerable proportion of children, whose mentality, even where they are Seniors in point of age, makes necessary a very simple treatment of the subject, little if at all in advance of that suggested for Juniors.

II. THE JUNIOR SCHOOL STAGE

8. Aim of the work at this stage.—Though the approach to the teaching of History in the Junior School should be direct and simple, and though the most natural methods of instruction may be expected to be the most successful, it must not be thought that the work done in this subject in these early years is not of the greatest importance. Only in the hands of a teacher who loses no chance of stimulating the natural interests and curiosity of the children will a foundation be laid on which the more advanced teaching of subsequent years can be built to advantage. If, however, the course is well arranged and well presented, the pupil, by the age of 11, should have gained acquaintance with some of the outstanding figures and types of history in a rough chronological order, should have some idea

of the circumstances under which they lived, and should have begun to develop some curiosity as to their motives and aims.

9. The approach through stories.—It is specially important to remember the value of a successful appeal to the imagination of the young child. In all good History teaching such an appeal must play a great part, but here, where the children are young and the subject fresh, its value is perhaps greatest. Early impressions are of great importance and produce an attitude of mind which it is not easy to eradicate afterwards. Our own sense of values has been so moulded by our early training that we may easily go wrong in taking it for granted that the lessons of our childhood are the right ones for children of today.

Simple and attractive stories are the obvious means of arousing this interest in very young children and should form the main substance of the instruction. These stories need not be confined to any one country or to any one age. They should be so arranged as to introduce the child to a gallery of striking pictures drawn from the whole range of history. In addition to stories from the history of the British Isles, the course might well include some stories of the Bible lands, of the Siege of Troy, of Leonidas, Socrates and Alexander, Horatius and Hannibal, Roland and Charlemagne, Dante and Giotto, St. Louis, St. Francis of Assisi, William Tell, Joan of Arc, Columbus, Cartier and Cortez, as well as similarly outstanding characters of more modern times.

It is not difficult to find, in good literary form, stories of the Tale of Troy and the Odyssey; stories from Herodotus, Plutarch and Froissart; from the Sagas, the Arthurian cycle, the Arabian Nights, and so on, and whether the story lesson is labelled "Literature" or "History" is immaterial. The younger the children, the stronger should be the romantic element in the

narrative; and during the earlier years it may be inadvisable, even if it were possible, to distinguish between legend and history There is also force in the contention that to the child's mind it is the older part of the story which is the least complex and the most tinged with romance. No doubt there are characters in comparatively modern history such as Florence Nightingale, Garibaldi and Livingstone whose stories can be made to appeal strongly to young children: and the teacher to whose taste these appeal will do well to include them. Nevertheless the balance of advantage under normal conditions probably lies with the heroes and heroines of the remoter past, and experience suggests that the child can often feel a deeper and a more personal interest in the story of Leonidas at Thermopylae, of Regulus returning to captivity at Carthage, of William falling as he landed at Pevensey, and in the doings of Marco Polo and of Joan of Arc, than in the incidents of more recent centuries.

10. Selection and grouping of the stories.—Each teacher will, no doubt, arrange his own scheme of stories largely according to his taste and the books at his disposal. As regards the content of the scheme it will probably be best, at least in the initial stages, to deal mainly with personalities, but the interest most children naturally take in the accessories of a story can be used quite early to place each personality in something like its proper historical setting. Stories which deal with typical or imaginary characters may also have a real value if they successfully bring out something of the life of the people rather than of their rulers. As the top of the Junior School is reached, the subjects chosen for the stories will naturally be presented in a somewhat maturer way, and the satisfaction of the children's curiosity may transform the story imperceptibly into the history lesson.

In arranging the stories there may be real advantage in classifying them according to their character and content, while even at the outset it is wise to take them in such groups as will give them a certain unity of form and colour. These groups might illustrate certain great ideas or types of character, or might be based on place or nationality. Within the limits of the groups, however, it is probably wise to adhere fairly closely to a chronological arrangement, and whenever the arrangement of groups involves a serious breach of chronological sequence, the breach should be made very clear to the children.

Whatever decision the teacher may make on these points, it is essential that the work should be so planned, and so carried out in practice as to give the child's imagination plenty of scope, to let it receive vivid impressions of other ages in which manners, ideas and environment were very different from those of today.

II. Methods of instruction.—(a) *Reading, narration and discussion.*—The stories can be told to the children, and it is also an excellent, though much neglected, practice to read aloud to them well written tales. In any case, the children themselves should take an active part in the lesson, and not be merely passive listeners. Thus, they should be encouraged to ask questions; it is a useful practice, if not carried to excess, to let them re-tell the stories which they have heard; and when once the initial difficulties of composition have been overcome, they should attempt to write down their impressions of some simple scene or incident chosen from the narrative. When they can read with sufficient ease, they should often be set to read the story in the book by themselves, preferably before the lesson is given.

Nothing is so likely to deaden the interest of the child as the type of lesson still sometimes heard in which the

children read aloud in turn from the class reader and the teacher follows with a running commentary.

(b) *Illustrations* —Full scope should be given to the constructive powers of the children in making models to illustrate their stories. They should be encouraged to draw pictures and picture charts, and also, within suitable limits, to collect illustrations bearing on their work.

Pictures of historical interest are of real value, but it is not easy to arrange for their provision on a scale which gives every individual child adequate opportunity for reflection. Again, visits to places of historical interest in the immediate neighbourhood may prove stimulating.

(c) *Dramatisation.*—The children's expressive powers may also be exercised by dramatisation and the Juniors may well act their history stories as naturally as Infants act fairy tales. With the help of suitable pictures and contemporary illustrations shewing armour and dress, the class can co-operate with the teacher in arranging their own parts. They may thus learn something of the life and colour, speech and habits of the periods from which the scenes are taken. But a good deal of selection and preparation is necessary if this method is to yield its best results and give as many of the class as possible an opportunity to help.

III. THE SENIOR SCHOOL STAGE

A. SOME PRINCIPLES GOVERNING THE CHOICE OF SUBJECT-MATTER

12. Importance of not overloading the syllabus.— Assuming that the teaching in the Junior School has successfully followed the lines already indicated, the pupil's interest in History will have been stimulated by clear pictures of outstanding personalities and events. He has now come to an age when he can begin to study History as a connected story, in which there is a sequence

of events together with a thread of development of which he may become conscious. There can be no greater mistake than to attempt so wide a survey that it is necessary to hurry in order to cover it in the time available, and that no time is left for anything but lists of names and events and generalisations for which the basis has to be taken largely for granted. It is of far more value to give the pupil so lively an interest in the study of History that he will welcome any opportunity to pursue it further, than to burden his memory with facts which can have little or no significance for him. One of the main causes why this purpose is too seldom achieved is the overloading of the syllabus and of the lesson in the attempt to make them complete and exhaustive rather than selective. Much that appears—and rightly appears—in the ordinary text-books and is known to the adult student of History, is beyond the reach of children. It is forgotten that in the selection of personalities and events for study by his pupils, the important question for the teacher is "What are the essential incidents and personalities and the details associated with them that I must not omit?", and for the rest not "How much can I put in?" but "How much can I leave out?". Significant detail should not be omitted from a mistaken desire for completeness. It must be frankly recognised that a good deal must be sacrificed, even of what may fairly be regarded as important and attractive to older students.

Much is frequently included in History syllabuses for children under fourteen years of age because it is felt that, in the absence of further education, many children will never have the chance of being introduced to such topics; yet it is clear that matter introduced prematurely can be of no permanent value, and it is also clear that if further education were assured to these boys and girls much that the syllabuses contain could be more profitably and suitably dealt with at a later age.

13. What may be achieved by the end of the course.—When conditions are favourable, the child may perhaps be expected, by the time he leaves the Elementary School, to have some idea of the stage in world history at which British history begins ; of the peoples that were merged in the English nation ; of the main social and economic changes through which the country has passed in the last thousand years ; of the development of the national system of government ; of the growth of the Empire ; and of the present position of the British Commonwealth of Nations in the world. Above all, he should have begun to realise also that this story has some bearing on everyday life, and that the England of today and the British Commonwealth of Nations are the result of changes that can be traced through centuries.

This is the ideal, but it is recognised that to attain it fully may be beyond the reach of many schools. The variations in plan necessary in the case of classes where the children are of less capacity, must be left to the judgment of the teacher, and it is fully recognised that, for such children and in schools where conditions are difficult, a less extended but well-considered treatment of the subject may be all that is possible. In such cases it must be remembered that the maintenance of interest in the subject is the primary and all important consideration. To keep this alive it may well be desirable to shape the whole course substantially on the lines suggested for the Junior School, so that the pupil shall leave school with at least some knowledge of those outstanding characters in our national story whose names are commonplaces of our daily life and thought. Alternatively, it may be prudent to omit many topics, in themselves of great importance, in which the children can feel little interest, such as, for instance, industrial conditions when the school is deep in the country, or modern history outside Britain when they have little

effective touch with the outside world. It is in cases like these that the interest in local and social history to which reference has already been made, may be expected to make a particularly strong appeal, where a wider and more general scheme would arouse comparatively little interest.

But whatever is selected and whatever is omitted the course should always be continued to modern times. Even in the smallest schools children should not spend two or more years on a single period, or leave school without a knowledge of events which have happened in their own life-time.

14. Topics selected should have significance to the school child.—Without limitation of topics to those which are of primary importance and interest to children, it is impossible to secure emphasis when emphasis is needed, or to find room for the detail necessary to create reasonably clear ideas and pictures. Children, also, need the picturesque element which appeals to the imagination and gives life and reality to persons and events. Whatever helps them to believe in the story and to see the actors in it as real men and women, is of value. Thus the personal appearance of great men, their characteristic action and bearing at decisive moments, and their recorded sayings, are all details; yet in numerous cases they have stamped themselves on the popular imagination, and no wise teacher will omit them in a course of History for children.

The teacher's guiding principle will, therefore, be that the selected topic should be both of historical value and easily and naturally intelligible to the pupils. Children like to hear or read about the lives of great men and women. They can take the keenest interest in Archimedes and Caesar, in the heroes of Agincourt, in Drake and Raleigh, in Wolfe and Montcalm, and can appreciate much of what Alfred or Edward I, Chatham or Clive,

Blake or Nelson, Champlain or Cook, Wilberforce or Lincoln, Harvey or Lister or Pasteur achieved in their different ways. But they need not, indeed should not, be harassed with the details of the divorce of Henry VIII, or with the intrigues of Charles II's reign, or with the conflicts of political parties in the 18th or later centuries.

15. Value of social and local history.—Both social and local history, again, have a natural interest for children. Their curiosity is easily aroused by the story of changes in such matters of daily concern as houses and dress, food and means of transport, and they may be led on from these to some consideration of more difficult matters, such as changes in the condition of agriculture, trade, industry and war. Every child too should know something of the history of his own village, town or county, and local history will often supply excellent examples of changes in the mode and character of life at different epochs. Visits, too, where these are possible, to the actual scene of historic events or to the actual remains of times which have passed away are of great value in creating atmosphere and in making history live. But under normal conditions care must be taken lest the line of approach through social or local history tends to obliterate the great land-marks in history. Local history is perhaps better taught, not as a separate course, but by constant reference to the history of the locality as illustrations of the national story.

16. The value of some background of world history.—Whatever the topics selected for inclusion in the Senior School course, it is desirable that the teacher should so present them that his pupils can see them against a background of world history. Thus, the story of our kith and kin beyond the seas, of their settlements and struggles, of the great deeds they have accomplished, of the development of the lands in which they have

settled, or which they have administered, should be presented as an important and integral part of the story of the British peoples as a whole. But even British history only becomes intelligible when the pupil realises its place in the story of the world. When dealing, therefore, with the history of the British Dominions and Colonies, the teacher will have abundant opportunity to bring home to his class the fact that they cannot learn British history without learning it as part of a larger whole, and that their sympathy and respect are due to other nations and races, with whom whether as allies or rivals, fellow-colonists, rulers or traders, Englishmen have had, and still have, so many dealings. A respect for other civilisations than that of Western Europe will best grow out of a knowledge, however small, of their history. Even to hear once that the Chinese were a cultured people when our ancestors were savages may exercise a lasting effect on the outlook of a child.

B. BRITISH HISTORY AS A PART OF WORLD HISTORY

17. Some ways of dealing with ancient history.—No course of History can be satisfactory that leaves the pupil with the impression that the story of the world began with Julius Cæsar's visits to Britain. To give an adequate picture of the history of the Ancient World is of course impossible, but since we all enjoy the fruits of ancient wisdom and civilisation, many teachers may think that we ought to know something of how these things came to be. Some teachers, accordingly, commence the course by making the Bible their main source for ancient history, adding such references to the ancient empires of Egypt, Assyria and Persia as are necessary. Other teachers make a practice of giving at a suitable stage in the school course, a very simple sketch of world history by means of biographical studies of outstanding figures. leading the pupil to see, not merely disconnected

lives, but something of the character of the civilisations which they represent. The important thing in such teaching is to concentrate on those parts of the world's story from which modern civilisation can trace a direct descent, i.e. Palestine, Greece and Rome; it is easy to waste time on stories of primitive man or to devote too much attention to stories of the Asiatic Empires and Egypt. But, through Ancient History rightly taught in biography and story and picture, the pupil may learn to recognise what we owe to Greece and Rome: the feeling for beauty and the beginnings of scientific thought and method, on the one hand, the spread of law and order, on the other; and how the fusion of the two made western civilisation, as we know it, possible. Again, he may be shown how, as the Middle Ages drew to their close, renewed interest in the ancient Greeks and Romans altered the outlook of all western peoples, and how the university and the printing press passed on the inheritance.

In Ancient History, some of the more important stories of the ancient world which the pupils have learnt at the Junior School stage might be reviewed, and where possible a few lessons might be given on some of the main features of the early civilisations which those biographies and stories illustrate, especially where they bear on our own history.

18. Linking up British history with world history.— Where a series of lessons on the Ancient World is given, it is usually followed by the topics chosen from British history with allusion to the concurrent stream of general history, and experience shows that this is a practicable plan of attacking the wider relations of History. Though time is seldom found for the systematic teaching of foreign or world history, the course should make it possible for children to see such parts of our own history as are parts of world movements in due proportion.

For example, if such topics as the following are dealt with boldly and simply the children may be expected to have a better understanding of our own history: Britain as a province of the Roman Empire; the raids and settlements of the Northmen; the Crusades, the Renaissance and the Reformation; the expansion of Europe overseas; the position of Spain under Philip II, of France under Louis XIV and Napoleon; the unification of Germany and Italy; the development of the United States of America; and the international growth of modern industry and commerce.

19. The League of Nations.—If the teacher brings to his work a broad conception of the treatment of the history of Great Britain and the British Commonwealth of Nations, dwelling not less upon the points of contact between nations than upon the differences which have separated them, he will naturally wish that the children should learn something of the League of Nations and of the ideals for which it stands. In most cases, opportunity will offer, not only in the History lessons, but at other times, for drawing attention to that form of international co-operation which the League represents. It may be pointed out that in the modern industrial world the increased communication between nations, owing to improved methods of transport, the economic interdependence of nations upon one another, and above all the vast scale and terrible machinery of modern warfare, have made it necessary that the peoples of the world should combine with their natural sense of local patriotism a conception of their common interests and duties.

C. SOME EXAMPLES OF THE WAY IN WHICH THE SCHOOL COURSE MAY BE DEALT WITH

20. The teacher should make his own selection of periods and topics.—The teacher will naturally himself determine what period of History he will deal with

at any particular stage and what topics he will include in his treatment of that period. Something has already been said as to the kind of selection that may be made from the field of Ancient History, but it may be found useful to give some examples of the way in which a typical course in History may be handled in accordance with some of the principles mentioned in the opening sections of this chapter These examples, however, are only intended to suggest a method of approach; they are not offered as the basis of a school syllabus, nor is it to be expected that any one school could deal satisfactorily with all of them.

21. Early English History.—In Early English History, the period of Saxon and Danish invasions may be passed over briefly, the children's attention being drawn to a few outstanding figures such as St Augustine, Bede, Alfred and St. Dunstan. In districts where local material in a form readily intelligible to children is available, somewhat extended treatment of the details of the period will readily suggest itself: for example, the visible traces of themselves which Celt, and Roman, Saxon and Dane have left in the names of places, remains of buildings and earthworks, roads, coins and pottery. Living witnesses to the story of those times can be found in the Celtic inhabitants and Celtic speech of Wales, and in the Saxon framework of our own language.

Maps are of special value in this connexion, and every teacher should be familiar with the publications of the Ordnance Office, particularly those maps and reproductions which have an obvious historical interest. All children should be familiarised in a simple way with places and with routes, and more advanced pupils should learn how the waterways helped, and forest, marsh, and highland impeded, the movements of bodies of men. Upon the map, when the story of the Roman occupation is being told, the pupils should mark the great military

posts of the Romans, and their important towns: e.g London, Colchester, York, Chester, Lincoln, Bath, Silchester, etc. and the great Roman roads and walls. They should learn how the line of the Roman roads can be traced by place-names derived from the Latin *strata*: Stratford, Streetly, etc. They should learn that when a town or village ends in "ham" or "ton" or "burgh" it is of Saxon origin, and that "by" or "rigg" or "thorpe" indicates a Danish settlement. They should understand why such names occur frequently in certain parts of England and are entirely absent in others.

22. The Middle Ages.—In the treatment of the Middle Ages, outstanding features should be selected and illustrated by accounts of interesting and important personalities. Thus life in Norman times could be illustrated by William I and Henry II; the beginnings of Parliament by Simon de Montfort and Edward I; the story of the Church by Hildebrand, Becket, St. Francis and Wycliffe; the wars of the Middle Ages, including the Crusades and ideals of chivalry, by Richard I and the Black Prince; the story of Wales and Scotland by Llewellyn, Wallace and Bruce; the growth of knowledge by Dante, Roger Bacon, Marco Polo, Prince Henry of Portugal, and Caxton; and the story of France by St. Louis, Edward III, Henry V and Joan of Arc. Such a selection of topics, if treated with proper attention to detail, would take up the time likely to be available for this period, and, with many classes, too great emphasis need not be laid on the thread of political continuity connecting them.

Without any attempt to define precisely such terms as feudalism, the gild, the Church or the manor, it will frequently be possible to bring home to the children's minds by concrete examples, how these characteristic institutions of the Middle Ages influenced the lives and actions of men of that day: what a prominent part,

for example, the churchmen played in the making of history, how much power the ownership of land brought with it, and what life was like to the town dweller.

The names of streets, roads, buildings—e.g. Watling Street, Greyfriars, Friargate, Priory Lane, Abbey Street, Jury Street, Old Jewry, Old Bailey, Guildhall—should become names with meaning. Similarly, but far more important, the most striking differences from age to age in the style of architecture, such as the change from Norman to Early English, and in the methods of building, such as the change in the use of building material, can frequently be shown by local churches and other buildings. Some teachers devote a few lessons to two or three battles of decisive character, such as Hastings, Sluys, and Agincourt, which lend themselves to picturesque treatment, and help the children to understand how different warfare used to be, and how weapons, armour and transport have changed.

23. The Tudor Period.—In studying the Tudor Period and the Sixteenth Century, several lessons might with advantage be given to the life and work of Columbus, Vasco da Gama, Frobisher and other discoverers, to the story of the Armada and of other famous exploits of Elizabethan sailors, and also to the beginnings of the East India Company. The story of the Navy becomes of special interest and importance from the time of the Tudors. With the help of pictures the children will readily appreciate the contrast between the Spanish galleon and the "Great Harry" of Henry VIII—the first British battleship—or the "Sovereign of the Seas" of Charles I; or again between the "Revenge" of Grenville and the "Revenge" of today.

It is probably not wise, under normal conditions, to devote much time to the Renaissance and the Reformation—both difficult—but the pupils can be helped to realise how in life and in literature, in art and architecture,

no less than in discovery and religion, the Tudor period marks the beginning of modern history. The teacher might tell of Copernicus and Leonardo da Vinci, of Erasmus and Luther, More and Colet, as well as of Queen Mary, Queen Elizabeth and Mary Queen of Scots; and he will explain that the Reformation in England was only part of a general movement. That the position of the clergy was altered, that the monasteries were destroyed, that a service in English replaced a service in Latin, and that there were then—as there are now—different kinds of Protestants in England as well as elsewhere, are facts which a child can appreciate. But the theological discussions which accompanied these external changes must obviously be left untouched.

24. The XVIIth Century. — The constitutional struggle of the Seventeenth Century should be presented as simply as possible, and illustrated mainly by the careers of outstanding personalities like Hampden and Strafford. But there should be no attempt to teach the bewildering succession of Acts of Parliament, Remonstrances, Petitions, etc., which if not unintelligible, are at least wearisome to children. Some of the essential features of the Constitution under which we live are the direct result of the Revolution of 1688, and these should be made clear to the older pupils.

The history of the Civil War, however, presents peculiar opportunities for connecting local with national history, for it has left its traditions and associations in nearly every county. Events that happened in the neighbourhood of the school, the part played by the ancestors of local families, the material traces of the conflict which still remain, not only command a special interest in themselves, but add reality to the whole study. The London child should know how Charles was baffled at Brentford, and how the London trainbands held their own at Newbury. The west-country child should know

the parts played by Bristol, Gloucester, Plymouth and Taunton. The East Anglian will be moved by the tragic story of Colchester, and he ought to understand why his own neighbourhood was happy in its general freedom from the incidents of war.

The beginnings of the British Empire in the Seventeenth and the first half of the Eighteenth Century—the story of the American Colonies, the early struggles of the East India Company, the settlements in Newfoundland and the capture of Jamaica—should receive due attention. Here the teacher will find great opportunities for an interesting treatment of Geography, for instance, by indicating the gradual penetration of the American continent from the French settlements in Canada and the English settlements in Virginia, Pennsylvania and New England, the Jesuit missionary stations on the Great Lakes, the explorations of La Salle and the founding of New Orleans, the line of frontier posts along the Alleghanies and the advance from West Virginia and Pennsylvania into Kentucky.

25. The XVIIIth Century.—The Eighteenth Century, which, for the purposes of this survey, may be regarded as commencing with the English Revolution and ending with the Congress of Vienna, is only too frequently dealt with in either a dull or else a one-sided manner. The dull way is to work chronologically through a series of wars, dealing mainly with their continental aspects; while the reaction from this method has led some teachers—and the writers of the text-books they follow—to lay such emphasis on industrial and mechanical development that the children have never heard of Marlborough, Chatham, Clive, Wellington and all the colourful story of the struggle with the French in America and India, of the French Revolution and the Saga of the Peninsular War. It should not be impossible to strike a balance between these two modes of approach.

Without neglecting to trace the great changes consequent upon the development of machinery and more intense methods of cultivation, usually summed up in the two dangerous catchwords—the "Industrial" and "Agrarian" Revolutions—one may well make the most of the vigorous and appealing personalities who, overseas, were laying the foundations of the British Commonwealth of Nations and those of other nations whom they were fighting. No child, anywhere, can be interested in the politics of the period, nor should this be expected of him. In a purely urban district, in which children do not know the difference between a plough and a harrow, the importance of Townshend, Jethro Tull and Bakewell, can with difficulty be appreciated; in purely rural districts the inventions of Arkwright and Crompton offer similar difficulties of comprehension. Both these sides of Eighteenth Century development should indeed be touched upon: the town children should learn how it is that the landscape of England, which they see on their excursions, has taken its peculiar and characteristic aspect; the country children should learn how and why the huge growth of towns, with the problems created for us by that growth, was the result of the inventions of the Eighteenth Century. But the detail should be adapted to the circumstances of the school.

In purely domestic history, the easier approach may be by means of topics, such as, "the change from the open field system to modern farming," or "the growth of the factory system". In dealing with developments overseas, where the protagonists lend themselves to more picturesque treatment, the personal approach may be better: the stories of Marlborough, Clive, the elder Pitt, Wolfe, Captain Cook, Washington, Napoleon, Nelson, Wellington and his men, have, if properly treated, a strong appeal for children.

26. The history of recent times (1815 to the present day).—(a) *Difficulty of the period.*—This period is one of peculiar difficulty and should be taken towards the end of the school course, when the minds of the children are most mature. For though it deals with conditions which are similar to those with which the children are familiar, it involves the introduction of economic and political conceptions that are difficult for any child to grasp, important as their influence may well be on their later life.

While this period can never be made interesting when treated reign by reign, there are dangers in treating it by reference to isolated movements, such as " Social Reform," or " Progress of Science and Invention," if the children have an insufficient background of fact. This method leads to the accumulation of knowledge in watertight compartments, with a consequent loss of time sense and of understanding of gradual development.

(b) *History of the present day.*—The great importance of bringing the story down to the present day has already been pointed out and should need no emphasis. We have to deal with a generation of children born since the conclusion of the Great War, which tends to become for them a matter of legend. In presenting the history of the immediate past it is best that the controversial sides of questions closely connected with modern politics should not be stressed. On the other hand, it is perhaps equally inadvisable that these questions should be awkwardly shelved when the natural interests of the children bring them to the front. But if the History teacher deals with such topics he should remember that he has the responsibility of making it clear that every question has more than one side, and therefore that it is obligatory on him to see that no one side of any question is presented alone or in undue prominence.

(c) *The biographical method.*—Some teachers prefer to deal with movements through the lives of the men and women who played a principal part in them. Thus the story of the British Dominions is taught by the lives and deeds of early settlers, of explorers like Sturt and Eyre, of administrators and soldiers such as Gibbon Wakefield, Lawrence, Grey, Gordon, Kitchener, Roberts, Rhodes and Botha; social reform and the great struggle against slavery, which commences this period, through accounts of Clarkson, Wilberforce, Elizabeth Fry, Shaftesbury and General Booth; the progress of invention and science through the work of Stephenson, Edison, Marconi, Pasteur and Lister.

But such a method will probably be found to be inadequate in dealing with quite recent history, if only because of the obvious difficulty of dealing with the careers of men still alive; it is therefore necessary, in order to bring the story down to the present day, to devise methods of treating more recent events and movements which allude only incidentally to personalities.

(d) *Tracing local results of important changes.*—The results of great industrial and political changes, such as the increased use of machinery, the Reform Bills, the Factory and Education Acts, can often be made clear to the children by tracing the actual effect of such changes in their own town or locality. In this way they should learn something of the shifting of the great centres of industry and population from the east and south to the north and the reverse movement in recent times; of the connexion of their town or country with parliamentary institutions; of the contrast between life in a large manufacturing town of today and life at a time when most people lived in villages and market towns; of the conditions of industry before and after the great reforms of the Nineteenth Century.

(e) *Comparisons between the present and the past.*—It is specially necessary in this modern period, where the wealth of material is so great, that attention should be concentrated on the broadest and simplest aspects of the subject. Comparisons between the present and the past will frequently suggest themselves, and it is by the method of comparison rather than by set lessons or direct instruction that the foundations of intelligent citizenship can be best laid. Any attempt to deal elaborately with the parts of the British Constitution, the local government of the country, or the administration of justice, is wearisome and must be largely unintelligible to children.

Children can easily perceive how many of the institutions which they see around them have their roots in the past, and how often, though they are called by the old name, they fulfil new functions. Without any pretence of studying constitutional history in detail, they can be led to see—in fact they can often discover for themselves—that the powers of the monarch have altered in practice from time to time; that Parliament as set up by Edward I was composed of very different people, and was summoned for a very different purpose and in a very different way from the Parliament of today; that a sheriff in England was one thing in the Twelfth Century and is another in the Twentieth; that the custom of the judges going on assize dates back to Norman times; and that from first to last there has been continuous growth and development.

Social conditions lend themselves even more readily to this method of treatment. The teacher will be almost compelled to touch upon the differences between the present day and, for example, Tudor times, in such matters as the provision made for the infirm and aged, the mobility of labour, and the facilities for travel, especially by sea. The way, too, in which the progress

of science has knit together not only single countries, but all parts of the modern world, is a striking and profoundly important fact which should be impressed upon the pupils.

(f) *The teaching of "citizenship."*—Considerations of this kind have led many teachers to believe that the history lessons provide the best medium in which to develop the beginnings of training in intelligent citizenship; and there can be little doubt that, in the hands of skilful and broadminded teachers, lessons and discussions on current economic, political and social problems arising naturally from the History lessons and shown, as far as may be, in a historical setting, will do much to stimulate a thoughtful interest in current affairs and in the duties of citizenship.

Other teachers are, however, equally convinced that before children leave school, they should receive definite lessons and training in "Civics" or "Citizenship" or "Simple Economics," or as some prefer to call it "Current Topics." But most, if not all, of these teachers rely in the main on a historical treatment and, so long as they avoid troublesome details and keep their lessons, reading and discussions broad and full of human interest and practical application to everyday life, they achieve a real success in developing some measure of civic spirit.

D. SOME PRACTICAL CONSIDERATIONS

27. The history teacher.—It is of great advantage if the staff of a school includes some member who is specially interested in History, and who will therefore throw himself into the work with enthusiasm. Even where it is not possible to delegate to the specialist a very large share of actual teaching, he can be of great service in advising other teachers, in helping to draw up the syllabus, and in suggesting books for reading and reference and other aids to historical study.

28. Planning the syllabus.—However the syllabus may be arranged, it will be clear that, in most schools, it will not adhere strictly to either of the two plans which have been described as "periodic" or "concentric." There is no reason why the two plans should be mutually exclusive. But it is necessary to take care that no period shall be isolated, for History cannot be properly taught if it is merely cut up into convenient lengths and presented in detailed sections, which are not treated as component parts of a whole. Every era stands related to its predecessor and to the facts which encompass us today; so that in a sense the teacher of a period is the teacher of the whole of history. It is, therefore, essential that there should be frequent reference, in the course of each year's work, to those earlier events which bear upon it, as well as illustration from the institutions and customs of today. Intelligent revision at regular intervals will of course form an essential part of the scheme; but, even where the syllabus has been judiciously lightened, the amount of ground to be covered will remain so great that it is unlikely that room will be found in the normal school course for any regular recapitulation of the full story. Any time, however, that the child may have at his disposal after the completion of that course may be used very profitably for this purpose. In such a revision, however arranged, the connexion of present with past may be emphasised with particular effect and the chain of causation more fully emphasised.

29. The desirability of private study by the pupil.—Exposition by the teacher in vivid and simple language has its place in History teaching and may be more inspiring than any book. But if the teaching of History is to be worthy of its place in the school curriculum, occasions must be found for sustained effort on the pupils' part, and for real study and thought

To create a fleeting impression is not enough. Something more is necessary. Essential facts should be learnt and regularly revised, and outstanding dates which serve as useful landmarks should be definitely memorised throughout the Senior School. And when the pupils have been trained to read a book, many teachers find it a good plan to throw on the class the responsibility for mastering the relevant chapters of the text-book, and to postpone the oral lesson until the pupils have first done their best to wrestle with difficulties and to assimilate the main points. A series of oral lessons, however brilliant and entertaining, cannot be expected to be more than evanescent, unless it is supported by solid study on the part of the pupil; nor can any devices, however ingenious and attractive, be made an efficient substitute for hard work. Any attempt to teach History by reading the book aloud paragraph by paragraph will prove entirely ineffective. When the teacher has discovered how far the pupils understand what they have read, he will be able to illumine and supplement the book, by amplifying stories, opening up new ground, quoting some telling phrases associated with a person or event, and answering the children's questions.

30. Oral and written questions. Note-making.—It will, of course, be necessary for the teacher to test the children's ability to master the substance of their books by means of oral and written answers to questions and occasionally by longer compositions. The more advanced pupils may perhaps be systematically trained to make for themselves brief notes of summaries of lessons or chapters. At any rate, some of their written work should be illustrated by sketches, maps and pictures; and it should be remembered that notes which are not clear in substance, and legible, and properly arranged fail in one of the main purposes for which they are intended, i.e. speedy revision.

31. The use of illustration.—Pictorial illustration, contemporary work especially, is indispensable in all stages of the teaching. Portraits of eminent persons, reproductions of old prints, documents and other famous records, such as the Bayeux tapestry, will often form the best means of representing social life and customs, pageants and battles, and the apparatus of husbandry, industry, trade and war. Some modern pictures of historic scenes may also be useful. Guidance as to the sources from which such illustrations may be obtained will be found in the excellent Leaflet No. 82 published by the Historical Association. Nor should it be overlooked that the bound volumes of the illustrated periodicals of the last fifty to one hundred years contain useful matter.

32. Films and wireless broadcasts.—The teacher will also consider how far the cinematograph film and the wireless broadcast can serve the aims of the teaching of History. Through these media representations of the past, of the daily life of the people, of their work and their recreations, of the great changes in industry and commerce can do much to help children to make pictures in their minds of what the past was really like. And, if the teaching of History is to touch events of the present day, teachers may find it useful to have at their disposal, as opportunity offers and as need arises, material presented by one, who is outside the school and who perhaps possesses greater knowledge of national and world affairs or greater power of impartial presentation.

33. Chronology.—Dates are an important means of tracing and fixing the course of events. For a time some teachers tried to do without them with the result that many children lost all sense of historical sequence. " The When, the Where and the Why " are the essential points in the study of History, and may be connected,

in that order, with "the Who," which should take a leading place in the earliest stage.

With a view to giving the children clear ideas about dates and the duration of periods, it is a good practice to require them to construct time charts, on the principle of allotting equal spaces to equal intervals of time. As a rule, the more simple the time chart the more arresting and effective it is.* In addition to these time charts, which will normally be made in the children's note books, a general chart for the classroom wall is found useful by some teachers, especially if its illustrations are simple and striking.

34. The connexion of history with geography.—Geography and History may often go hand-in-hand, to their mutual advantage, though the attempt to combine them in a single scheme is rarely successful. The influence of Geography, especially in its broader physical aspects, cannot be too strongly emphasised. For example, the pupil can be led to observe how the fertile river valleys of Egypt and Mesopotamia became the early homes of civilisation, how the sea has profoundly affected the life of Britain and Holland, and how the mountains dividing valley from valley were a determining factor in the development both of ancient Greece and of modern Switzerland. And Geography helps to explain the consequences to Great Britain of her insular position, of her nearness to Europe, of her long narrow shape and of the character of her seaboard, and of the discovery of America. It suggests why the Low Countries have so often been the seat of war and why British policy has always been concerned for the fate of this part of Europe.

In the same way, if the teaching of Geography is intelligent, much knowledge that is essential for a

* See pamphlet *Time Charts*, published by The Historical Association.

proper study of History can be acquired through it. Thus, in some schools the study of the geography of Asia includes elementary ideas about the rise and spread of Mohammedanism, with special reference to the numerous Mohammedan peoples living under the British flag. Moreover, to those teachers who are specially interested in world history, the connexion with Geography offers great attractions, for in Geography teachers have always aimed at some knowledge of the whole world, and if the History is more closely connected with the Geography, it tends also to become the history of the world.

The historical atlas should be constantly at hand, and the importance of rapid sketch-maps, in illustration of the history, drawn both by teachers and by children, should not be forgotten. Good historical maps will often be needed to show, for instance, the medieval trade routes, the early French and English colonies in North America, the gradual development of the British Commonwealth of Nations, and the vast scale of the Great War.

CHAPTER XIII

GEOGRAPHY

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

1. The aims of the teaching.—The claim of Geography to a place in the curriculum of the Elementary School is now generally recognised. Any exhaustive treatment of the subject must, indeed, be reserved for adult students, but even in its early stages it involves so many facts within the range of a child's experience, —such as, for instance, the varying altitude of the sun, the connexion between rainfall and certain winds, the crops in the fields, the colourful display of the grocer's or the fruiterer's shop,—that it provides frequent opportunities for encouraging children to reflect upon their immediate surroundings and to exercise their imagination about the world in which they live. If Geography be treated from the human standpoint, the child at school may be trained to realise how the conditions under which men live have helped to mould their lives and their activities. As he grows older, he

may learn something of the relationships, commercial and cultural, which link his own district with other parts of his country, with the Empire and with the rest of the world and so be in a better position to understand the problems of peoples in lands other than his own.

A well planned course of Geography should, therefore, supply the pupil with a definite body of ordered facts, topographical, commercial, economic and scientific, that are part of the stock of information which members of a modern civilised community need for the understanding of current events. It should give him, also, some acquaintance with the more important geographical principles and some power of applying his knowledge of them, especially in regard to his own country and his own district. It should help him, further, to understand, and to be able to use, maps and diagrams illustrating such characteristics of any particular region as its physical features, its climate or its productions. Such a course should, finally, give the pupil some training in finding out for himself how and where to obtain information on geographical topics in which he is interested and in testing the truth of geographical statements.

2. The relation of geography to other subjects.— It would be a great mistake to regard Geography as a self-contained subject and to ignore its wide and vital connexions with other branches of the curriculum. Thus, History cannot be studied without reference to Geography, just as many problems in Geography cannot be solved without reference to the facts of History. Geography involves calculations, practical measurements and the use of graphs, which constitute a valuable part of a child's training in Mathematics. The subject-matter of Natural Science—observations of changes in the weather and of phenomena in the garden and

experiments in physics and biology—all this contributes to the proper understanding of Geography. Conversely, questions dealing with the spread of plants and animals, and the incidence of certain diseases, such, for instance, as malaria, are generally unintelligible without some background of scientific knowledge. It should hardly be necessary to add that the teacher of Geography, no less than the teacher of any other subject, is a teacher of English both spoken and written.

3. The scope of the course.—The range of Geography is so wide that careful selection of matter for study is essential, and in framing a syllabus every teacher will have to ask himself what is best suited to the particular needs and resources of his school. The answer must depend partly on the district in which the school is situated, and on the circumstances of the children, but even more, perhaps, on the qualifications and experience of the teacher himself and his colleagues and the time allotted to the subject.

In the reorganised Senior School there is usually a specially-qualified teacher in charge, and in these schools it is possible to cover a good deal of ground, and to undertake some fairly advanced work, particularly with the brighter classes. In other schools where circumstances do not permit of specialisation or in which the teachers have not had the advantage of studying Geography in its modern developments under competent guidance, a less ambitious syllabus should be attempted. Some of the principles and methods described in this chapter may be unfamiliar; and it is clear that a really comprehensive course can only be followed in a school where there is a competent specialist; but many of the suggestions made in it, will, it is hoped, be of use in helping teachers to improve their lessons even on the most familiar topics, and in indicating possible lines of reading which they can follow up for themselves

The importance indeed, of the teacher's own reading, can hardly be over-emphasised. Many of the children's misconceptions which arise in the later stages of the course may be traced back to early stories. The idea for example, which they get of Japan, as a land of flowers and jinrikishas is difficult to reconcile with her present position as a great industrial world power. For teachers of older children the need of a good geographical background is still greater. If they can make themselves conversant not only with the larger standard text-books and works of travel, but also with the modern development of trade and economic conditions, and if they have time and opportunity to investigate the geography of their own district, they will discover that the results of their studies are often as interesting to their scholars as to themselves. A knowledge of fiction which contains reliable pictures of foreign countries and peoples will help to give life and colour to the lessons.

Schemes of Geography appropriate to the various types of school will be discussed in later sections, but in preparing any syllabus are should be taken to give each stage a clear and definite aim and to adjust the material included to the time available.

4. The understanding of maps.—Whatever the course may be, it is clear that its success must depend largely on the power of the children to read and understand a map. Senior School children should not only have a clear idea of the position of the towns and districts with which they are dealing, and the power to find any place by means of the index of their atlases and the use of latitude and longitude, but they should also have the power to visualise to some extent the features represented by the map. In the early stages the use of picture and map in juxtaposition is valuable and in the later stages outdoor geography and school journeys may be used to give the child a

real idea of the meaning of maps. The climate of a region should be expressed by the summer and winter conditions in both temperature and rainfall. These and other important points may be illustrated by maps specially constructed to bring out the particular features, by diagrams and pictures, and by specimens of the products of different countries. Some of these illustrations may be prepared by the teacher, others by selected children working in small groups. With the aid of his maps a child will readily learn the exact situations of the chief places in the country he is studying, and may discover for himself many of the causes which have brought about the growth of towns, or groups of towns, in certain positions. Throughout the course the children should be trained to make maps for themselves and in the later stages they should be able to draw rapidly and with reasonable accuracy sketch maps to illustrate the points of their lessons, such as the position of towns, the areas in which particular industries are carried on, etc. This subject is dealt with more fully in Section 25 below.

5. The importance of periodical tests.—The success of the Geography teaching must depend largely on the regular revision and testing of the work done, including any notes which have been given. Each teacher will no doubt devise the system which is most suitable to his own needs. " Slip testing " or the giving of a number of questions which demand short answers is of course a useful means of determining whether the children have remembered satisfactorily the salient points of what they have read. Full tests are, however, needed at intervals and these might well include some questions on locational geography: for instance, the children should be asked to fill in places or natural features on blank maps. They should be encouraged also to draw sketch maps, diagrams or graphs as answers

to questions. Where written answers are demanded, they should normally be confined to one or two paragraphs. The essay type of question is generally unsuitable for children of this age.

II. THE INFANT SCHOOL STAGE

6. Children's early experiences of their immediate surroundings.—The formal teaching of Geography has no place in the education of little children, for, as such, it is not an interest or activity which falls within the compass of childhood. In the first years of school life the interests of young children lead them to pursue activities rather than subjects. In following their interests they gather information and experience which properly belongs to several subjects, and it has long been recognised that the study of nature, handwork and stories are the natural approaches to Geography. Such activities, based on the common experiences of life are all fresh and exciting to children of five and six. They take delight in observing sun and shadow and rain, the movements and habits of animals, the obvious effects of weather on plant, animal and human life. By practical experience, they learn the characteristics and behaviour of water, and of clay, sand and pebbles under varying conditions. They gain valuable experience from their interests in vehicles and transport of all kinds, in the work of men and women especially where it involves movement and construction and in the routine of the countryside, the seaside, the farm, street, and shop. The young child lives very close to his immediate surroundings which to him are never stale or dull; the best introduction he can have to his later study of Geography is that he should become familiar with and knowledgeable about all that lies around him.

The teacher's part is to create an atmosphere in which the natural interests of the child are stimulated

and encouraged, and to allow him all possible freedom to explore his immediate surroundings by practical handling and experimenting with material. When there are gaps in the normal environment, the teacher can occasionally supply phenomena and incidents of a supplementary kind, e.g., in the sand pit, school garden, "shopping corner," and playroom.

7. Stories should be selected with care.—The traditional practice of introducing Geography in the Infant School in the form of stories centring round "children of other lands" is of questionable educational value. Children of from 5 to 7 years of age are dominated by their own immediate surroundings, and whilst they can enjoy stories with plot and sequence, they are seldom able to create in imagination true pictures of what is widely different from their customary setting. Their experience is at this stage very limited, and it is normally beyond their capacity to envisage foreign peoples and foreign life with reality. Little children in our schools have practically no links or associations with diverse and varied life in icefield, prairie, desert or jungle, and if knowledge covering them is given prematurely, much of it becomes fantastic and unrelated to the world in which they live. It would appear to be better to reserve such subjects to the early years of the Junior School, when they can be attacked with freshness, with greater experience and imagination, and with the power to investigate through picture, globe, map and book. Not that all geographical stories are out of place in the Infant School or that all references to foreign lands and peoples should be suppressed. On the contrary, when children ask questions that arise naturally out of everyday events and interests, they may be simply answered.

Simple stories with a geographical background have their place in the Infant School, particularly when they

are genuine stories with plot and sequence. Most children are interested in lions, elephants, camels, bears and can be made familiar with their forms and habits by pictorial illustration. These animals should be presented as living in their natural haunts in jungle, desert or forest; but such details of environment will be far less complicated than in the case of stories of foreign peoples. Incidents of adventure, which do not require much background of knowledge for comprehension, are also excellent for children in their last year in the Infant School. They are usually interested in stories of travellers lost in desert or forest, of sailors shipwrecked on lonely islands, of heroism in the presence of great natural dangers such as earthquakes, floods and fires. When selected with care, many folk tales have considerable value, especially the folk tales of the more primitive peoples, such as animal stories beloved by negro peoples, and stories of Arabs and their horses; for these have as their essence, not the differences of peoples in different parts of the world, but fundamental experiences which are common to the human race and familiar to us all.

III. THE JUNIOR SCHOOL STAGE

8. The work in the lower classes of the Junior School.—"Work in the primary school in Geography as in other subjects must be thought of in terms of activity and experience rather than of knowledge to be acquired and facts to be stored, though due regard should be paid to the stimulation of the imagination by vivid description. It follows then that the beginning of formal geography should be delayed to a later stage than has been common in the past*."

* Report of the Board's Consultative Committee on *The Primary School* (p. 171), printed and published by H.M. Stationery Office, London, 1931, price 2s. 6d.

The aims and methods in the lower classes of the Junior School, therefore, should not vary materially from those of the Infant School and the basis of the teaching should be the child's own environment. The child should be trained to observe with increasing accuracy and with fuller understanding the things which he sees on his way to school, on nature rambles and elsewhere. The windings of a strèam, the goods displayed in the local shops, or the crops around the school can be used to implant geographical ideas. The simple weather records of the Infant School can be extended and the child can observe at first-hand the apparent motion of the sun and its increasing height in the heavens as summer approaches, cold and warm winds, the function of the weather vane, wet and dry weather, etc. In this way terms such as "hot" and "cold," "wet" and "dry," used in a geographical sense, are interpreted by the children in terms of what they have themselves seen and felt.

With these observations of local conditions should go the making of simple plans, first perhaps of the teacher's table or the classroom, and then of the school and its neighbourhood. In this way the conception of direction and the cardinal points will be introduced naturally, and simple questions of the configuration of the land may enter into the teaching. The use of pictures and maps of the same district placed side by side will enable the child to see more clearly the meaning of the conventional colouring and obtain a simple idea of scale. From this, the transition to the map of England, and thence to other maps on the same scale, is easy. Side by side with lessons in local geography there is scope in the lower class of the Junior School for the intelligent treatment of life in other lands. At this stage children possess a sufficient background of experience to enable them to imagine conditions they have not experienced and they will have acquired also

some facility in reading. Moreover the growing ability to piece together facts acquired from different sources enables them to supplement class lessons with information gained for themselves from pictures, the globe, maps and books. At this stage, too, the geography of other lands and peoples may be made more interesting by the introduction of "project" work and other forms of corporate activity, since children of from 7 to 9 years of age will have acquired skill in the manipulation of materials which may properly be used for such purposes.

9. The beginning of definite geographical instruction.—In the upper classes of the Junior School the teaching of Geography as Geography should begin. It is not desirable to lay down any definite rule as to when the change should take place and it should in any case be gradual. With a bright class this more definite instruction might usefully begin after the age of 8, but in normal circumstances it would probably be advisable to defer the change until the children are from 9 to 10 years old.

There should be no abrupt transition to the work at this stage from that done in the lower classes. The interest of the child in his environment and his curiosity about foreign lands and peoples form the natural means of leading him from the district in which he lives into the wider world. At this age the collecting instinct is usually strong and children may be encouraged to form collections of pictures, labels, etc., which if well arranged are valuable aids to teaching.

The making of simple maps and plans is another means by which interest may be aroused. It is of the greatest importance that the habits of self-help learned in the Infant School should be fostered and the children encouraged to take a really active part in the lessons.

In the paragraphs which follow a list of topics suitable for children at this stage is given. The list is obviously beyond the power of any one school to attempt, but teachers may find in it suggestions which will be useful for their particular schools. It is important that the balance between the three aspects of the subject—local geography, the geography of the United Kingdom, and regional geography—should be preserved, but in other respects the teacher should be guided in his choice of topics by the capacity of the children, the position of the school and his own inclinations.

10. Local geography linked up with the study of the British Isles.—The lessons in local geography will be continued but on more systematic lines, and be more closely linked up with the surrounding district and finally with the British Isles as a whole. Taking as a basis the simpler maps of the earlier stages of the course, the children can begin by studying the local one-inch or six-inch Ordnance map and then go on to the map of Great Britain. The build of the country may be shown first by means of models and maps, but it must be remembered that the use of a model is to teach children to interpret maps and that once this power has been acquired, the model is unnecessary. Pictures and photographs, particularly photographs from the air, will be found of value in this connexion. The children will perceive the difference between the hilly west and the relatively flat east and that rainfall is frequently heavy in hilly districts. They will notice how the hills separate one part of the land from another, and consequently how important it is to find ways through. The winding courses of certain roads, railways, and canals thus become intelligible, and the teacher will have little difficulty in working out with his class the easiest route from place to place. Subsequent lessons may go on to show, in districts where the children are

acquainted with similar conditions, how these conditions together with the varying height of the land affect plant and animal life, how wheat gives place to oats, arable land to pasture, cows to sheep, the partridge to the grouse. Next, the positions of the great coalfields can be mapped by the children and the country roughly divided into manufacturing and farming areas. The children should thus gain some definite knowledge of the positions and staple industries of the principal towns and of the various occupations followed in different parts of the country.

11. The beginnings of regional geography.—Children can be led to divide for themselves the world into regions according to the winter and summer conditions; to mark off the surface of the earth into hot, warm, cool, and cold areas; to realise how these areas lie more or less symmetrically on either side of the equator, and to understand how all these conditions affect the habits and occupations of the people living in one region or another. For this purpose the teacher may have to give more than one picture of any particular region. The tundras and steppes, for instance, should be described both in their winter and in their summer aspects, while in the hot areas contrasts should be drawn between hot wet and hot dry regions. At each stage the child's home conditions should be used as a standard of reference.

12. Trade routes.—It is natural to pass on next to the relations and intercourse between one nation and another, especially between ourselves and other peoples. It can be shown how the need for interchange of productions has led to the establishment of trade routes, and how the direction and nature of these have been determined largely by physical and climatic features. Children readily notice the names of distant places associated with articles of food and clothing,—Indian tea, Canterbury lamb, Canadian cheese, New Zealand

butter, Australian fruit, Egyptian cotton,—and many important facts will come to light if these commodities are traced from producer to consumer. Every advantage, too, should be taken of events which are of sufficient general interest to give them a prominent place in the daily press, e.g. expeditions in little known regions, long journeys by motorcar and aeroplane or airship.

13. Rediscovering the world through stories of exploration.—During this stage the general arrangement of land and water over the earth's surface must be clearly visualised by the children. To help them to realise the relative positions and sizes of the great land masses, and the shape and extent of the intervening oceans, a good plan is to let them follow on the globe the journeys of such pioneers as Marco Polo, Vasco da Gama, Magellan, Drake and Franklin. From the difficulties and problems which confronted these early travellers the teacher can draw abundant material for instruction in a most interesting form. Various incidents in the story of exploration will call attention to the changing altitude in the noonday sun as the travellers proceeded northwards or southwards; others will bring home to the children how in the early days of sailing ships journeys were dependent upon the direction and strength of the prevailing winds in different parts of the world; how mountains and deserts stopped progress across the land; how difficulties arose through floods or drought. In fact, if he chooses his stories well, the teacher can in a sense lead his children to rediscover the world for themselves, giving them at the same time a correct idea of the general distribution of land and water, mountain and plain, wind and calm, rain and drought, over the world's surface. The experienced teacher will need no reminder that, over and above his actual teaching, the children must examine and compare instances for themselves. If they have been trained to

associate cause and effect, the discovery of relations between simple sets of facts is well within their powers at this stage. They may be asked, for example, to explain why people who live in steppe-lands wander about from place to place; why manufacturing areas are densely populated; or why some parts of England have more rain than others.

14. What children should know at the end of the Junior School stage.—At the end of the Junior School course a child should have a good knowledge of the district in which he lives, its position, climate, neighbouring towns and villages and local industries. He should know the position of the main towns and industrial and farming areas of the British Isles and have a general acquaintance with the main regions of the world. In addition he should be able to use and understand the maps in his atlas.

IV. THE SENIOR SCHOOL STAGE

A. PLANNING THE COURSE

15. Some guiding principles.—The aims of Geography teaching in the Elementary School have been set out in the first section of this chapter and it is unnecessary here to do more than to refer to them. There are, however, certain main considerations in planning a course for Senior School children which require more detailed consideration.

It is neither possible nor desirable to suggest any form of typical course. The nature of the scheme must depend on the qualifications and tastes of the teacher and the circumstances of the school. It will depend, too, on the average length of time for which the children remain It follows, therefore, that the schemes will vary greatly in different schools, but there are certain main principles which should underlie all schemes.

(i) *The scheme should be in two parts: the first to be completed by all pupils.*—It is of the greatest importance that the Geography scheme should be planned to provide a complete course for all children before they leave school. Various methods have been adopted to secure this end, but perhaps the most convenient way is to divide the scheme into two parts.

The first part of the course should be of such a length that the majority of children have time to complete it before they leave. This will entail a rigorous selection and the elimination of much which usually finds a place in a school course. Only the essential and most suggestive points can be dealt with and it is better to deal adequately with these than to attempt to cover a larger field in a more perfunctory manner.

The three main elements of the first part of the course should be the study of the main natural regions of the world, the study of the British Isles, and local geography.

The second part of the course should preferably be divided into self-contained sections, so as to allow the children who leave school during the last year to complete at least an entire section.

(ii) *Needs of the brighter and the slower pupils should be taken into account.*—The scheme should provide for the needs of both the brighter and the slower children. In large Senior Schools it will be found best to provide parallel courses:—a more advanced course which may give the pupil some insight into world problems and some conception of citizenship as a series of relations with fellow citizens and with foreigners and a simpler more concrete course for those who are unable to appreciate the more abstract aspects of the subject. In the latter course pictorial illustration and first-hand vivid narrations will naturally play a large part.

In smaller schools where precise classification is impossible, the difficulty of the retarded child may be met by providing a graduated series of exercises.

The methods of instruction will differ materially from those appropriate to Juniors. In the Senior School the children should be trained to seek out information for themselves with the help of text and reference books and atlases and to state logically the result of their investigations either orally or in writing.

B. THE FIRST PART OF THE SENIOR SCHOOL COURSE

16. Geography of the world.—In dealing with the main natural regions of the world, as indeed throughout the course, the main emphasis of the instruction should be on the human rather than on the more purely scientific aspects of the subject. It follows, therefore, that physical geography, save in so far as it is necessary to understand the effect of relief on climate, vegetation, and man's activities, need not be stressed. Geology and the detailed explanations of the laws which govern climate and vegetation can also be omitted in view of the shortness of the time available. The importance of location on the earth's surface, the position of the natural regions selected as typical, and their climate including rainfall must be thoroughly known. The broad divisions of natural vegetation, the distribution of animals and cultivated plants, and the distribution of population, considered in relation to the causes which have brought it about—e.g. the presence of minerals, proximity to markets, the development of industries, etc.—should be dealt with.

At each stage of the course the teacher should determine what limited number of definite facts should be mastered by the children and kept present in their minds by regular revision.

At the conclusion of the course on natural regions children should be familiar with the world as a unity: with the "pattern" formed by the different regions and with the major geographical distributions of climate and vegetation which the "pattern" makes coherent and reasonable.

17. The British Isles.—The place at which the geography of the British Isles should be introduced and the method of treatment are matters for the teacher concerned. It may be taught concurrently with the essentials of world geography either in one lesson a week or one term a year, or it may follow the world geography. Many teachers find it convenient to begin with a preliminary survey and to end the course with a more intensive study including the place of Britain in the Commonwealth of Nations.

Whatever the plan adopted, it is advisable to make a new approach so that the study of the British Isles becomes a distinct and definite branch of the work and the lessons follow a different plan from that adopted in the Junior School.

The build of the country, the relations between build, climate and production must be studied anew on extensive lines, but it would appear that the industrial and commercial development of the British Isles might be approached through detailed and intensive studies of such industries and development as touch the lives and work of the children concerned. For example, the Coal Industry would form an interesting study in many areas especially if boys and girls were introduced to coal output figures in different fields, the destination of local exports, the use made of by-products, and the general characteristics of an extractive as compared with a manufacturing industry. In other areas detailed studies of transport, of population, of export and import trades might be more appropriate.

18. Local geography.—Local geography will form an integral part of the study of the British Isles. It may be regarded under two aspects—as an end in itself and as providing a standard of reference by which children can judge the conditions under which people in other lands live.

Under its first aspect, local geography may be used to give the children a real interest in the neighbourhood in which they live—the build of the country, the soil, the supplies of food and water, the occupations of the people and their connexion with the larger economic units.* Ideas of production, markets and the price of commodities may be introduced and by the intensive study of some local product or industry, e.g. sugar beet, the children can obtain at first hand an inkling of the working of some of the more important economic laws. The records of temperature and rainfall, etc., now kept in a more scientific form, provide a constant guide when dealing with the climates of other lands and should prevent the vague use of terms such as "cold," "wet," "hot," and "dry." There should be constant cross references from local circumstances to the conditions to be found elsewhere.

C. THE SECOND PART OF THE SENIOR SCHOOL COURSE

19. Choice of topics.—The second part of the course covering the last year should be supplementary to the study of the world in outline and the British Isles in some detail and should be planned to provide for the needs of those who may leave at intervals before the end of the school year. It will probably be convenient

* The maps produced by the Land Utilisation Survey are of great value in this connexion and teachers will find much of interest in *Village Survey Making*—(Board of Education, Educational Pamphlet No. 61, printed and published by H.M. Stationery Office, London, price 1s.) and in the ***Land Utilisation Survey of Britain*** 1931.

for the reasons given above to divide it into sections which will occupy a term or part of a term. It can thus be arranged that each child before he leaves will have completed, in addition to the main course, at least one definite piece of work. The choice of subjects for study in this part of the course will depend on the bent and capabilities of the teacher. Examples of the sort of topics which have been found in practice to be suitable are:—the physical aspects of Geography, economic Geography, historical Geography and regional studies.

20. Physical aspects of geography.—Some teachers have connected the study of home geography closely with natural science. Systematic records are kept of temperature, rainfall, the readings of the barometer, the directions of the winds, the hours of sunshine and the sun's altitude, and, near the sea, the periods and heights of tides. If the results are tabulated and compared with those of other years and with others obtained elsewhere, and the children are encouraged to draw conclusions from them, it is possible to lead up to a real, if elementary, understanding of such geographical terms as mean temperature, isotherms, depressions and anticyclones, and to some realisation of the movements of the earth, the effect of latitude on the length of the day, the variation in the times, height, and frequency of the tides. Other teachers, without going deeply into science, have trained their pupils to make a systematic study of the school district in various ways. Maps have been made to show both local soils and the crops grown on them, field by field and year by year. Comparison of these with the contour and rainfall maps brings out the effects of altitude and weather on productions. In some cases attempts have been made to connect the natural features of a district with its geological history and structure.

Clearly, however, it is, as a rule, only the rudiments of geology that can be introduced into the curriculum. Rather more can, however, be done in the case of schools in upland and highland and mining districts, or where rocks are exposed to view on the sides of valleys, in quarries or in sea cliffs or cuttings for roads and railways.

21. Economic aspects of geography.—This branch of Geography offers unlimited scope for interesting studies suitable for boys and girls in their last year at school. The production and supply of familiar commodities may be chosen for closer study e.g. wheat, timber, india-rubber, vegetable oils, temperate and tropical fruits. These may be most usefully treated in a descriptive way—for example, a study of the temperate grass-lands of the world will serve to bring out man's great activities in spreading the production of wheat. The topography of such areas may be studied in so far as it affects wheat production, the relative yields of different areas, methods of cultivation, climatic conditions most favourable to growth and ripening, transport of wheat from main producing areas, accessibility of sea ports, time taken in transport, dates of harvest and the possibility of regular supplies throughout the year. Equally valuable are simple studies of the ways in which different groups of people gain their livelihoods. The distribution of definite extractive industries like mining, fishing or forestry and the possibilities of their diminishing production over a period : the intensive study of a local machine industry from sources of supply of raw material to the distribution of the finished products : the different modes of transport and their geographical and economic significance ; all these have their place as possible lines of study for older children. Further suitable subjects will suggest themselves, e.g. studies of sparsely populated areas, the great cities of the world and their significance. The introduction

of economic geography usually involves the use of simple statistics as a basis for descriptive and explanatory work. Provided children possess a minimum of " key " knowledge, e.g. that they know what is meant by "one inch of rain," and provided the figures used have real meaning for them, statistics may be used as a basis for comparison, and as a check upon hasty generalisation. Throughout such studies it is essential to distinguish between what is fact and what is inference.

22. Historical geography.—In a course of historical geography might be included the search for new trade routes to the East in the 15th century, an enterprise which led to the crossing of the ocean, the exploration of the coasts of Africa, and the discovery of the New World, which altered the economic relations of Western Europe and resulted in the change from land to sea as the chief means of inter-communication.

Nor would any course of historical geography be complete without reference to the expeditions organised in modern times for the purposes of discovery—the " Challenger " expedition, the voyage of the " Beagle," the various expeditions to the Arctic and Antarctic regions and to the interiors of the great continents, the attempts to climb Mt. Everest and explorations in the Amazon basin. The development of air routes might well be included.

Of great importance, also, as subjects for study are the changes which followed the introduction of steam and electrical power, and the progress of mechanical invention in the XVIIIth, XIXth and XXth Centuries. Among these changes were: (a) the shifting of manufacturing centres to the coalfields and with the development of electric power, their migration southwards; (b) the settlement of hitherto unexplored lands, largely due to the increased demand for raw materials and

food supplies on the one hand and for fresh markets on the other ; and (c) the improvements in the standard of living due to the development of various industries such as the sugar trade of the West Indies, the transport of perishable produce made possible by the invention of refrigeration, and the changes of population and the growth of new industries and of new towns like Pittsburg or Middlesborough following upon the discovery of mineral wealth. It may also be shown how since the Great War the established commercial relations of the whole world have changed.

The results of many of these changes are especially apparent in such regions as the Low Countries, the Alpine area, eastern North America, Egypt, and Asia Minor. More recently changes have been brought about by such factors as the development of the use of water power and oil fuels as sources of energy and the exploitation of new deposits of iron and other ores. Studied in relation to recent historical changes, these form good subjects for older pupils.

23. Regional studies.—Another possibility is the more detailed study of selected regions, emphasis being laid on different aspects according to the character of the area selected. In areas with the Mediterranean type of climate the teacher will dwell upon its outstanding climatic features—winter rains and summer drought—and its characteristic flora of drought-resisting plants ; he will pass on to the land-locked position of the European area, with its peninsulas and islands ; showing how in early times communication was easy along the coasts, how the region became the cradle of important civilisations, how and why it partially declined in importance later on, and, later still, revived after the opening of the Suez Canal. He will then contrast these facts with the conditions of transport and the productions and inhabitants in similar areas in other continents.

The treatment of the Asiatic monsoon region will bring out the effects of the monsoons ; the connexion between river traffic, early settlements, and trade routes ; how the richness of the valleys attracted a dense population, and how the mixture of races to-day amongst the inhabitants represents successive waves of invaders anxious to seize so rich a prize. Reference should then be made to regions with a similar seasonal rainfall in N.E. Australia, E. and W. Africa, and their present stages of development, their population and history.

Areas without trees because of inadequate rainfall will serve to bring out man's activities in spreading the production of wheat and of meat and the limits set to this expansion by the cost of transport. On the other hand, in many areas of little rainfall, man has been entirely unsuccessful in making any general use of the land to produce any vegetation other than its native plants. The comparison of the different types of natives in these areas and their habits may form another topic for investigation.

D. DIFFERENT WORK FOR BRIGHTER AND SLOWER PUPILS

24. Adaptation of courses and methods to suit different degrees of capacity.—Experience has shown that the main difference between the brighter and the slower pupils lies in the greater power of the former to grasp relations between ideas. It follows, therefore, that an attempt to pass all children through a given course in the same way must lead to failure, and it is necessary to determine how best to provide for the needs of children of diverse capacity.

The subject is one which has not yet been fully explored and there still remains a fruitful field for investigation. It is clear, however, that a mere truncated edition of the course for the brighter children will not meet the needs of the less intelligent. The course for the

latter should be simpler in outline and should be based as far as possible on the children's own experience. In the larger Senior Schools it is possible to arrange for this by means of parallel courses ; some suggestions for the use of smaller schools also are made below.

(i) *The more advanced course.*—In the more advanced course the aim will be to train the children to learn from books and atlases instead of relying only on the teacher's oral lessons. Indiscriminate reading, however, is likely to lead only to the acquisition of many unconnected facts, and the books for individual work should accordingly be carefully selected. Children can be set to find the information required to answer a definite question, and either write the answer or be questioned on the facts. Thus, they may be told to find out the months during which a crop in a chosen area passes through its various stages until it is used elsewhere, or to discover what new areas might produce certain raw materials and which of these would command cheap transport abroad. In all cases the ability to use information rather than its mere acquisition should be the aim of the course.

(ii) *The less advanced course.*—The aim of the instruction in the less advanced classes will be to give the children an interest in the life and occupations of the place in which they live and some appreciation of the outside world in relation to it. The methods adopted will be very different from those suitable for the advanced sections. Taking as a basis the children's own environment and experiences the teacher should endeavour by means of lively oral lessons and by reading vivid and well-chosen extracts to kindle the children's interest. Pictorial illustrations will play a large part and from selected pictures the children can be encouraged to find out points of resemblance or contrast. Simple, striking diagrams are useful and the making of simple

maps to show the main areas of supply and the main centres of industry. The treatment of the subject matter should be as concrete as possible and the emphasis should always be laid on the human aspect.

(iii) *The course in small schools.*—In the smaller Senior Schools and particularly in the rural schools, the methods of differentiation suggested above are often found to be impracticable.

In such cases it may be necessary for the same oral lessons to be shared by all the children. It is, however, still possible to make a real differentiation in the work by grading the exercises which the children have to do. Exercises such as tracing the courses of main roads, railways or canals and the marking of areas in which the major industries are found are within the capacity of most children and would serve for the less advanced pupils. The brighter children as well as doing these exercises should be trained to seek out for themselves the reasons which led to the present state of things.

V. AIDS TO GEOGRAPHY TEACHING

25. Maps.—The purpose of a map is two-fold: the accurate recording of definite facts of position, distribution, and so on, and the presentation of such facts in a manner which enables them to be visualised.

(i) *At the Junior School stage.*—The first maps used should be those which the children make for themselves, either from direct observation of a part of their home district, or as the " free expression " of the setting of a geographical story. Children quickly accustom themselves to the idea of relative position, especially if they have before them at times a map spread horizontally, and with the north of the map pointing in a north direction. In the upper classes of the Junior School the use of maps forms an essential part of the course and the child should be led to understand that the map

is but a larger representation of some part of the globe. No formal lessons should be given on projection, though the impossibility of putting on flat paper a true map of a curved surface may be pointed out. Wrong impressions as to size and direction which maps on Mercator's projection as well as on equal area projection may convey can be corrected simply and without reference to mathematics.

(ii) *At the Senior School stage.*—In the Senior School this use of maps should be developed, and special maps showing winds, rainfall, temperature, vegetation, mineral areas, etc., should be part of the ordinary apparatus of the geography lessons.

(a) *Special maps.*—Isothermal and isobaric lines should, however, be treated not as distinct entities, but as marking off areas having different conditions of temperature and pressure. Those selected for study should be carefully chosen for the purpose in view. In studying special maps it is natural to begin with maps of the school district and the home country.

(b) *Study of contour lines: use of models.*—Methods by which children can be introduced to the use of maps have been discussed in previous sections and it is unnecessary to refer to them again. In the Junior School the children will have become familiar with the meaning of "highland" and "lowland" and their representation on the map by special colours. They are now in a position to proceed with the more definite study of contour lines. One of the most effective methods is to place a model in water and to draw a line on the surface of the model along the edge of the water. By adding more and more water it will be possible to obtain a number of contour-lines at different levels. The use of models in the Senior School

will serve to bring out clearly the meaning of such common terms as *land-relief*, *watershed*, *drainage-basin*, *scarp*, *gap*, *strait*, *fiord*, *drowned valley*, *shoal*, and to explain why, with contour-lines, the "Vs" point up, not down, the valleys, and how promontories and islands are really continuations of land-ridges. Once the children have grasped the idea of contour-lines and colour markings, they should apply their knowledge to Ordnance Survey* maps on various scales, especially those of districts known to them.

In making contour-maps it is not advisable always to choose the same set of contour-lines. A set of contours which brings out the characteristic features of South America may serve only to obscure those of Africa, and those appropriate to the structure of Wales may fail to illustrate the counties of the plain.

(c) *Transverse sections*.—Attention should be drawn to the fact that in transverse sections the vertical scale is always greatly exaggerated and the children should be shown the actual slope of any steep hill with which they may be familiar. The making of such sections will help to bring to light many interesting facts, such as the shallowness of certain parts of the ocean, especially where the great fisheries lie, and to show the relation of great oceanic depths to mountain heights. Even young children can obtain rough sections from their own models, but for more accurate work a contour-map is essential.

*Teachers will find much interesting and useful information concerning the Ordnance Survey maps of the United Kingdom in the books "*A Description of the Ordnance Survey Small Scale Maps*," and "*A Description of the Ordnance Survey Large Scale Maps*" (price 8d. each, post free 10d., if ordered direct from the Ordnance Survey Office). Ordnance maps for school use can be bought cheaply in quantities on application to the Director-General, Ordnance Survey, Southampton

(d) *Outline maps and sketch-maps.*—The practice of copying atlas maps has now, to a large extent, disappeared. Whatever slight educational value it may have, it is, in itself, of little use in Geography, but while this kind of map-drawing has gone, so, too, has the learning of maps, a fact which is much to be deplored. Some teachers supply their pupils with outline maps or allow them to make them for themselves by means of a "multiplier," or by tracing, or by the use of a cardboard template which the children have cut out. On these maps are represented such details as may be required for special purposes—physical features, rainfall, seasonal temperatures, vegetation, or distribution of products and manufactures.

The older children should have practice in drawing from memory, rapidly and with fair accuracy, sketch maps to illustrate special points and should be able to fill in outline maps correctly. Distances should be calculated from the scale to which a map is drawn, and, conversely, a scale should be constructed from given distances. Attention should be drawn to the value of the lines of latitude and longitude as a means of indicating world-position and of calculating distances and areas. By representing points of special interest, such as distribution of industries, positions of towns, roads, rivers and railways, and rainfall, on transparent or tracing paper ("butter paper" serves the purpose well and is cheap), a series of maps can be made which, by being superimposed on the physical map, will bring out the essential interdependence of geographical conditions.

(e) *Wall-maps.*—In purchasing wall-maps it should be remembered that the really necessary maps are those coloured to show land relief. Place-names and other details, such as political boundaries

and railways, can always be obtained by the children from their own maps and atlases.

Children should also constantly compare the map with the globe. They should notice carefully a few meridians and parallels on both, e.g. the meridian of Greenwich, of Calcutta (roughly, 90° E.), of the "date-line" (180°), of New Orleans (90° W.), as well as the equator, the tropics, and the latitude of London and of their own school.

In the Senior School and perhaps in the upper class of the Junior School, the interpretation of the map may sometimes be linked with a school journey. If maps or sketches of the itinerary are first provided. and definite problems set, to be solved en route, school journeys enable the children to verify their own deductions, to understand their maps better, to prepare maps to scale from actual measurement, as well as to realise more clearly the working of cause and effect in local geography.

26. Atlases.—The selection of the atlas is important. Photo-relief maps, though representing a graphic representation of relief which is readily understood by young children, often exaggerate heights and do not give the definite information required when the children are working out problems and discovering for themselves such facts as the lines of water-sheds, the existence of passes, the relative gradients of hills, or the directions of roads or railways. For this purpose orographical, or "layer" maps, as they are sometimes called, are indispensable. For the older children the atlas also serves as a work of reference, and the information given on the maps should be as full as is consistent with clearness. Separate maps to show selected features will be prepared by the children themselves and from these all superfluous detail will be omitted. Every school atlas should contain an index and the children should be trained to use this with facility.

Valuable work can be done by inducing the older scholars to study suitable books with the help of their atlases, by setting them carefully prepared questions and exercises on what they have read and by encouraging discussions on any points of interest that arise at intervals.

27. The globe and its use.—No instruction in Geography can be really satisfactory which does not involve frequent reference to the globe, and every school should possess a globe, at least 12 inches in diameter. Some teachers find one on which outline and elevation are shown in colour most useful; others prefer a black globe on which the outline of continents and some lines of latitude and longitude are faintly traced. Use of the globe is necessary in order to show the general distribution of land and water over the earth's surface, the comparative size of continents, and the world-position of any continent or other area under consideration. It will also serve to correct wrong ideas arising from the use of maps. Measurements of large distances should always be taken from the globe rather than from the map; and if this is done, children will be able to appreciate such points as the advantages of "great-circle sailing."

The globe should be placed with its axis parallel to that of the earth. The inclination of the axis to the horizontal is then equal to the latitude and the axis points to the Pole Star. By repeated observations during the year of a globe thus arranged and placed in the sunlight, children will be able to understand why days are short in winter and long in summer, and to gain a clear idea of the variations in length of daylight in different parts of the world at different seasons. They will understand also, why the sun appears to rise and set at different points of the horizon during the year and how the sun's altitude varies at mid-day with the position, north or

south of the equator, from which it is observed. With large classes some teachers prefer to use a number of small globes, so as to allow every child, or at least groups of two or three children, to observe such points as have just been mentioned for themselves. Rubber balls can be used for this purpose.

28. The use of geographical books.—During the first stage it is perhaps best not to use any geographical "reader" at all, unless an exception be made in the case of some of the profusely illustrated books published in recent years. Interest will be added to the lessons by the use of models and specimens, of coloured drawings and of good pictures or photographs of typical scenes. Later on, the illustration of geography may include the collection of picture postcards according to some definite principle, the use of lantern-slides, and an occasional visit to a really good exhibition.

Though it is doubtful whether young children learn much geography by reading aloud to their teacher, there is no reason why the teacher should not read aloud to them. This method of instruction has always played an important part in good home training. In schools it presents certain difficulties, but these should not deter teachers from giving it a trial. It is better to read descriptions than to give them, because the written narrative is more likely to be well-expressed, to be based on first-hand experience, and to suggest points for discussion between the teacher and the class

When children can read with ease and understanding, they should be given books which contain vivid descriptions of places, peoples, animal and vegetable life Such books, if not overloaded with details, will serve to supplement the oral teaching and the study of maps and atlases. In the highest classes of the Senior School children should have access to a number of books of this kind, some of which should be in the school library,

It is not necessary to read book after book from cover to cover. Some will repay careful reading, others will only be consulted for specific purposes, others again will be dipped into in order to supplement or confirm previous knowledge. This clearly depends upon what the teacher has in view and the stage which his children have reached. In the last year or two of school-life his duty is to guide and supervise their work rather than to teach by word of mouth, to devise and suggest problems or comparisons rather than to work them out. At this stage it is important that children should have reliable text-books, not "readers," from which to get their information; these need not be large or expensive. Great care will be needed to secure that the exercises are presented in suitable sequence; and more than one period may be required before any one problem of this type can be worked out. It is important that questions asked orally or in writing to test the children's work should not only be on matters of fact but, in the case of the brighter children, should involve comparisons with other facts or with other parts of the world.

29. Reference books.—It is perhaps out of place to speak of reference books in connexion with the Junior School, but even there collections of pictures and well-illustrated books are of great value. In Senior Schools the possession of a stock of reference books is essential, particularly for the brighter children. Too often the reference books found in the schools are limited to "specimen" copies and out-of-date works which have little bearing on the course which is being followed and in consequence are seldom consulted.

The list of reference books in Geography for use in a Senior School need not be long, but the books should be carefully chosen and housed in a position to which there is ready access during school hours. Among them should be found some larger atlases than those which

are used in the ordinary school work. In addition to the 1″ and 6″ O.S. maps of the district which are used for class teaching, there should be copies of other types of Ordnance Maps for the district, Land Utilisation maps where available and sheets of the Ordnance and other maps, British and foreign, selected to show good examples of features of special geographical interest. Geological and historical maps should also form part of the stock.

General works of reference such as Whitaker's Almanack, collections of newspaper cuttings on points of geographical interest and newspaper supplements which deal with particular industries or countries should be included. Many useful publications can be obtained at the London Offices of the Dominions and their separate States and Provinces.

In addition, there should be some of the larger standard geographies and books of travel and description. It would be useful to include a small collection of stories and books of adventure in which the geographical setting is vividly and accurately drawn. Some of the annual publications such as the Statesmen's Year Book, Reports of the Ministries of Agriculture and of Mines, the Reports of the Overseas Trade Department and Statistical Abstracts issued by various Departments contain valuable information, but these are often too expensive to be kept up to date in a school library. It is, however, sometimes possible to obtain them for a time by arrangement with the Public Libraries which may also be able to supply books needed for special purposes, but not of sufficient general interest to warrant their purchase.

30. The geography room.—There are often difficulties in providing a special room for the teaching of Geography in Junior Schools, but there is no doubt that it is desirable to do so when it is possible.

Geographical pictures lose their interest when they form part of the decorations of a classroom and small exhibits of pictures and specimens bearing on the lessons taken excite the interest of the children when they are changed periodically. Much unnecessary carriage of maps, diagrams and pictures is also saved.

In the Senior Schools the need for a geography room is much greater and every effort should be made to set aside a room for the subject. It is of great importance that the children should be able to consult reference books, atlases, etc., during the course of their work and should have any apparatus they may require readily available.

One of the larger classrooms is most suitable for the purpose. A southern aspect and easy access to the playground facilitate the taking of observations. The room should be well lighted both by natural and artificial light so as to avoid eye strain when maps are used. Dark blinds should be fitted and a portion of the wall may be prepared to serve as a screen for the projection of pictures. Means should be provided by which a globe can be suspended and above and beside the blackboard map rails should be fitted. All spare wall space should have suitable panels for the exhibition of pictures, cuttings, etc.

Chairs and tables are preferable to desks for the children. There should be ample storage accommodation, including some nests of shallow drawers to take maps and plans and a cupboard sufficiently large to take rolled-up maps. One or two glass-topped specimen cases are desirable and a suitable library cupboard for reference books with a cupboard for instruments beneath. The wall maps should include world maps showing relief, climate, and the major natural regions. To these should be added the relief map of the county if available or the ½" O.S. map made up as a wall map.

31. Modern "mechanical aids".—Both the lantern and the epidiascope have begun to play an increasingly important part in the teaching of geography. Of the two, the latter is the more generally useful for school purposes. An instrument capable of throwing images both from solid objects and diagrams as well as from lantern slides is of the greatest value. Teachers can make transparencies of their own diagrams and other illustrations, without undue difficulty. Where the school possesses a cinematograph apparatus the film, used under suitable conditions, will do much to give life and reality to the instruction. There is now a good stock of films which can be used in the teaching of geography, among which may be mentioned those circulated by the Imperial Institute.

An increasing number of schools are now equipped with wireless sets and with a skilful teacher the wireless lessons may become a valuable part of the school's geography teaching. It is possible to hear at first hand vivid descriptions of the countries of which the children are reading. With adequate preparation and following up, these lessons may give a life and colour to the work which is sometimes lacking.

32. Lectures.—It is sometimes possible to find a member of the staff who is willing to lecture on some point of the course in which he takes special interest. Such lectures given at intervals may be very valuable and are suitable, as are some of the methods mentioned in the preceding section, for more than one class. The school hall might be used for the purpose. There are times, too, in large Senior Schools in which the same ground has to be covered by parallel classes and it may occasionally prove a saving of time and energy to give the lesson to grouped classes rather than to each class separately.

33. School journeys and educational visits.—The importance of Local Geography has been emphasised in the earlier sections of this chapter and attention has been called to the necessity for first-hand observation on the part of the children. The school journey and the educational visit afford many opportunities for this type of work. If these visits are arranged to form a real part of the scheme and careful preparation is done, the children will be helped to notice interesting things and to record their observations. In this way the facts of Geography will become more real and the pupils may gain an interest which will serve them well in after life. Visits to factories and museums can be used with good effect and for schools in the neighbourhood of London the Imperial Institute offers many opportunities. The exhibition galleries are arranged in such a way as to present vivid pictures of the geography of the Empire as a whole and so to lead children to a better understanding of the Empire and its resources.

CHAPTER XIV

NATURE STUDY AND SCIENCE

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

1. The general aims of science teaching.—The romance and wonder of Science make an especially strong appeal to the young and enhance their natural desire to get to know the world around them and to find an explanation of its phenomena. To observe carefully and dispassionately, to formulate one's observations in words or in other ways, and to make proper inferences from what has been observed, constitute a kind of experience in which all children should share. The child in the Elementary School cannot be expected to progress far in the more abstract regions of scientific thought or in the more technical applications of scientific method, but at any rate he can form some idea of what is involved in careful investigation and systematic relation of facts to principles, and principles to facts, if he is made acquainted with some examples of how the great pioneers of Science have attacked and solved their problems. Although he is not being trained as a scientist, he can, at least, be led to realise the

important part played by Science in a modern community, can acquire some of the knowledge that will enable him to deal with its everyday applications, and can learn how human beings may live in a rational and healthy manner. Thus, through the study of nature, animate and inanimate, the school can do much to make richer and more significant its pupils' experience of life.

II. THE INFANT SCHOOL STAGE

2. Active experience rather than formal lessons.—The majority of normal children of 5-7 exhibit a lively curiosity in the world around them. The movements and sounds of animals, the bright colours, varied shapes and pleasant scents of flowers are a never failing source of interest and pleasure. Nor is their interest confined to natural phenomena : it is equally aroused by things that attract their attention by movement or by some unusual quality, such as mechanical toys, soap-bubbles and toy balloons, by motor-cars and trains.

A child's mental images, concepts and power of imagination grow out of what he sees, handles and does, and words mean little to him unless associated with active experience. It is the teacher's function to bring the children into contact with the right kinds of experience, to encourage them to observe, to experiment, to discover, to talk about their experience in a natural manner. The success with which this has been done will be shown by the readiness of the children to seek further knowledge. Such work is of most use to the children when it relates to their own environment and, needless to say, cannot be successfully carried out through formal lessons given at set periods.

3. Outdoor activities.—Observations can best be made where plants and animals are in their natural setting. In almost all districts there is a wealth of

material at hand in lanes, fields, woods, streams, ponds and seashore, and even in the larger towns there are the public parks.

In towns the opportunities open to children for observing plants and animals are more limited. To substitute pictures or printed descriptions for the real things may not be without its value but can in no sense be regarded as a training in observation. On the other hand, in every town children have many opportunities of studying things which are of interest in themselves, such as the contents of shop-windows, traffic on river, road or rail and all the varied life of a busy modern community. The teacher can see to it that all this wealth of first-hand experience is not wasted.

A garden on the school premises is invaluable. Cultivation of plants, the planting of seeds, digging, watering have an immediate and never-failing appeal to quite young children; through these activities they acquire knowledge of seasonal changes and operations which will be put to fuller use later on. Little children are interested in plants which they can eat or flowers which they can use as decorations or gifts The perennials should be hardy and suitable for inexperienced handling, and the annuals quick growing and brightly coloured. Where sufficient ground for a garden plot is not available successful work can be done with rock gardens in boxes placed against the wall of the playground, or with boxes on the window-sills or ledges. The children can bring the soil, prepare it, sow the seeds and care for the seedlings. Even in the centre of towns bulbs and such plants as catmint, candytuft, ten-weeks stock, nasturtiums, marigolds, pansies, geraniums, lobelia flourish well.

The making and stocking of a small pond, when practicable, forms a useful outside activity and will provide material for indoor observation. Bird-baths, bird-tables and nesting boxes will provide good opportunities for interesting observation: where bird-tables

are used, it will be desirable to arrange for the feeding to continue on days when the school is closed.

4. Indoor activities.—If animals are kept, the teacher should encourage the right attitude towards living things by training the children to care for them, feed them and keep them clean. The children should examine the natural habitat and the artificial accommodation should resemble it as nearly as possible. Suitable activities will be found in the making of an aquarium, vivaria such as breeding cases for moths and butterflies, in the care of the animals in them, and in the tending and feeding of the school pets.

It is desirable that the classroom activities should be connected with the outdoor work; they should include, for instance, observation of the germination of seeds similar to those planted in the garden. An indoor garden can be made in a large tray, lined with zinc, with a hole for drainage at one end. Plants, such as wheat, tomatoes, peas, maize, can quite well be grown in plant pots indoors. It is easy to arrange for each child to grow his own mustard, cress or grass.

Observations made by the children should be recorded daily at the time when they are made; the records should be in pictorial form and not only of the plant and animal world, but also of changes in the weather.

The study of nature provides material for developing the children's powers of language and their observations should form the basis of the daily nature talk. They can be trained to describe what they have seen with some degree of accuracy and the widening field of knowledge will offer opportunities for extending their vocabulary.

Nature stories from the many suitable books now available will find a place, especially at times in winter when observation of natural phenomena is not possible.

Good use may also be made of photographs and other pictures, e.g. of animals which children have no opportunity of observing at first-hand themselves.

III. THE JUNIOR SCHOOL STAGE

5. The aims of the teaching at the Junior School stage.—The study of nature at the Junior School stage should develop naturally out of the activities and experiences at the Infant School stage, but it should take more definite form as the children's interests change and their experience widens. The main aim of the teaching, with children between the ages of 7 and 11 years, should be to keep alive and quicken the spirit of wonder and inquiry and to give it appropriate scope for activity.

The treatment of the work should be consciously designed not only to give the children opportunities of observing and of tending plants and animals with a view to their gaining at first-hand some knowledge of growth in nature, but also to foster their interest in the simpler phenomena of inanimate nature in earth, air and sky and in the mechanical appliances they meet with in everyday life. In this way they will come to have a foundation for the more systematic work in biological and physical science at the Senior School stage.

A special task of the Junior School is to satisfy a growing desire to construct. This can be met by giving them practical work to do in connexion with their first-hand observation of plant and animal life.

GENERAL CHARACTER OF THE COURSE

6. What may be achieved by the end of the course.—As a result of well directed observational studies the children should, by the time they leave the Junior School, have acquired a good background of knowledge.

The study of nature necessarily follows a seasonal course, but it is essential that progress should be secured from year to year and that the treatment of the subject should develop with the children's growing power of systematic thought. In the earlier stages the children should make straightforward observations and collect simple facts. Later, their observations should become more detailed and the facts collected should be related in the form of continuous studies. Towards the end of the Junior School course the children will begin to show interest in comparing and classifying and in experimenting with a clear purpose in view.

Simple experiments on breathing and burning, on the growth of plants in the absence of light and on the response to stimuli, on the absorption and giving off of water by plants, on the effects of rearing caterpillars in cages of different colours, are typical of the kind of work which can be carried out with simple apparatus.

In no part of the work is there more need for progressive training than in the making of records. As the Junior School course develops, the pictorial charts made at the Infant School stage should be supplemented and gradually replaced by individual notes, and by drawings of increasing accuracy. The children should also be able to present their weather observations and other continuous records in graphic form.

7. Outdoor activities.—(a) *Where there is a school garden.*—The most natural of all outdoor activities are those which have their centre in the school garden. No attempt should be made to run it on the lines usually followed by Seniors. The lay-out should aim at an attractive and conveniently arranged common garden with a generous grass plot. There should be opportunity for making a rockery, a good herbaceous border, and a shrubbery which will supply flowers throughout the year, a shallow pond, a bird bath, nesting boxes and

feeding tables to provide for the care of the birds during severe weather. The children should not only set seeds and tend the various plants, but also take care of the grass borders, the paths and edgings, stake the plants in the herbaceous borders, hoe and remove the weeds. A knowledge of the plants at various seasons will be necessary to distinguish between flowers and weeds. Common vegetables and small bush fruit may be grown, but they should at this stage not be cultivated with the idea of producing a paying crop.

(b) *Where there is no school garden.*—If a school garden is not available, rock gardens in wall boxes, window boxes, indoor garden trays, plant pots and bowls will be found useful. Even a quite small garden-plot will provide opportunities for the pupils to learn at first-hand about nature and seasonal changes and to make a study of bees, moths, butterflies, snails and spiders. The top class may make observations of insects in their relation to flowers, and this will provide a basis for lessons on pollination in the Senior School. The older children may handle the soil and find out some of the simple facts regarding its physical characteristics. Observations can be made of the times taken for the germination of different kinds of seeds and of seeds in different atmospheric temperatures. Weather observations, too, should be made and recorded daily.

Many schools, however, do not possess even a small garden plot. In their case it will often be possible to provide a background for indoor work by seasonal nature walks, visits to parks and gardens or simple field work. If the neighbourhood of the school offers facilities for outdoor work, much can be done by the older children independently, given an initial plan and occasional class-lessons. With a large-scale Ordnance Survey map of the district available, the first steps of a " regional survey " can be made.

8. Indoor activities.—(a) *Work connected with the study of animate nature.*—The work of the classroom, which should supplement and in some cases replace outdoor activities, should consist mainly of more systematic studies of plant and animal life. Seeds may be germinated and bulbs and corms grown in such a way that the various stages of growth may be observed and life histories followed; cacti and small rock plants can be grown in miniature gardens and water plants and mosses kept under suitable conditions; a variety of decorative plants can be grown and propagated in pots and window boxes.

In the Junior School the "nature-table" with which the children have become familiar at the Infant School stage can now serve as a general record of the changing countryside, and provide a means for the continuous study of plants and animals under conditions favourable for observation.

The classroom will probably be found to be the best place for designing the garden, the drawing to scale of the plan of the lay-out, the calculation of quantities of seeds, plants, and tools needed and the working out of the cost of these.

(b) *Observation of animal life.*—As a rule, animal life makes a stronger appeal to children of Junior School age than does plant life; in considering what kinds of animal life shall be kept the deciding factor should be whether or not the creatures can be kept in captivity in the classroom under natural and healthy conditions. One of the most obvious methods is to provide a simple aquarium. Several small aquaria are better than one large one: they are more easily kept; if supplied with suitable pond weed and stocked with a few snails and crustaceans they will not need aeration; and they allow for the segregation of rapacious animals. Aquaria should be shielded from strong sunlight and protected

by a muslin cover from dust. They should be fitted up in early autumn and kept going all the year so that the habits of both plants and animals can be observed throughout the seasons.

Insects also can be readily kept under observation. A useful permanent cage can be made of a wooden framework with top and three sides made of perforated zinc and the front, which can be made to slide up and down, should be of glass. A movable zinc tray on the bottom makes cleaning easy. Such a design can be easily adapted and simplified, muslin being used instead of zinc and various transparent materials substituted for glass.

A wooden box with one side of glass and a cover of perforated zinc can be made into a temporary home for worms or snails.

The essentials of a vivarium for amphibians are water for swimming and a landing place providing cover.

(c) *Housing and feeding of animals at school.*—If small mammals are to be kept the teacher should be thoroughly conversant with modern hygienic methods of housing and correct methods of feeding. If the school premises afford sufficient space for keeping the animals under such conditions that they can have adequate light, air, warmth and exercise, rabbits or guinea-pigs can be kept and, when wanted in the classroom, transferred for the time being to a specially designed observation hutch. Mice require less space but it is advisable here also to have a permanent home, in which the animals can remain undisturbed, and an observation cage. The children should, in no circumstances, see animals kept in captivity in any but the best conditions.

The design and construction of bird tables and other accessories are suitable related activities.

The children should be encouraged to make simple insect cages, to fit up small aquaria and wormeries and to grow their own seeds and bulbs at home.

(d) *Children's notes and illustrations.*—The teacher's responsibility, however, does not end with the provision of living and growing material, however excellent that may be. The children's observations need to be directed by questions and their experiences are incomplete if they do not express them in concrete form such as written notes or drawings. Modelling in suitable material is a useful aid to visualising form and structure and the making of notebooks and portfolios for nature records gives scope for other handwork activities.

9. The study of inanimate nature.—The course at the Junior School stage, especially in towns where the opportunities for the study of animate nature are often very limited, may include lessons on the simpler phenomena of inanimate nature. No attempt should be made to develop anything of the nature of a formal study of any particular branch of Science, and the aim will be not so much to explain phenomena as to awaken the children's interest in them and to develop their powers of observation and description. Such topics as soap-bubbles, images in mirrors, the effect of prisms on light, the action of a magnet and simple electrical phenomena appeal to children. Working models and toys provide the additional interest of movement, and the designing and construction of simple models is always attractive. A good basis for lessons at this stage is the curiosity of children as to "how it works."

The chief mistake made by teachers at this stage is to attempt to deal with abstract generalisations of Science in set lessons on such subjects as "the properties of matter," "solids, liquids, and gases," "the work of the leaf, root and stem." At no stage, and least of all in this stage, should generalisations be attempted unless they are founded on and justified by the children's own observations and experiences.

10. Other facilities for the study of nature in school.—Although direct contact with nature is the basis of all true nature study, the children's experiences need not be limited to what can be observed and discovered at first-hand. The Junior School should have its Natural History Library, consisting, for example, of reference books which the children can learn to consult, of readable books about plants and animals and of animal stories. It should also have its collection of pictorial illustrations.

Use should be made, where possible, of the optical lantern and micro-projector. Moreover, now that the resources of cinema and of broadcasting are becoming more and more readily available, there is room for experiment in the use of films and of wireless talks as a means of arousing the interest of the older children and stimulating them to further activities.

IV. THE SENIOR SCHOOL STAGE

A. PLANNING THE COURSE

11. The special task of the Senior School.—The modern type of Senior School, free from cramping traditions and the necessity of preparing for examinations, offers an opportunity to develop Science teaching on fresh lines, to take what is suitable from old ideas and to experiment freely with new ones. Its task is not to begin the training of professional scientists, but to give the child some idea of the methods by which man has discovered so many of the laws of nature, of the immense power that these discoveries have put at his disposal, and the use to which he is putting his knowledge.

In selecting material for study and devising methods of treatment, it is necessary to consider both its effect on the child as an individual and its value to him as a member of society. As far as is possible under school

conditions, the pupil should learn how scientists carry out their work.

He should "realise by what slow degrees accurate knowledge is won, the place of hypothesis, the need of caution in forming judgments, the necessity for experimental verification and for carefully weighing evidence."*

He should also gain some knowledge of how Science is transforming life in the home and world outside, and of the wealth, variety and inter-relations of living forms, both plant and animal, which surround him, and should make some study of the working of the human body and of the conditions for its healthy functioning. An attempt, too, should be made to create lasting interests by developing hobbies which will help to fill leisure time when school is left behind.

12. The teacher of science.—It is becoming more and more desirable that Science teaching should be in the hands of a teacher with adequate knowledge of Science; for it is only those who have the necessary background who can teach this subject on broad lines. Now that rooms are available for the teaching of practical Science, the task of maintaining fittings, apparatus, stores, aquaria, accumulators, etc., in good order demands the presence of an expert. It is not, however, suggested that the teacher's academic training should be confined to Science, still less to one branch of Science, for he must not offer the children a course based solely on his own academic studies in Science, and he has constantly to bear in mind the relation of Science to other parts of the curriculum.

---

* P. 13, *Science in Senior Schools*, Board of Education, Educational Pamphlet, No. 89, printed and published by H.M. Stationery Office, London, 1932, price 1*s.* 3*d.*

13. Size of classes.—Much controversy ranges round the question whether Science should be taught to classes of 20 or of 40 children. The problem appears to be mainly one of space and supply of apparatus. It is clearly impossible to give successful laboratory work to 40 pupils in a crowded room with insufficient material, but, given a laboratory of some 960 square feet and enough apparatus, the task of supervising the work of 40 children does not appear to be beyond the capacity of a competent teacher. To divide a class into halves for a demonstration lesson involves a waste of the teacher's time, and is unnecessary.

14. Choice of subject matter.—Natural Science is so vast and so many branches have strong claims for inclusion in the course, that the task of selection is difficult. It is suggested that Biology and Physics, with the ancillary Chemistry, should form the foundation, material from other branches being included if time and circumstances permit.

(a) *Biology.*—The claim of Biology is unique in that man himself is one of the organisms formed of living material. The happiness and efficiency of the individual and through him of the community depend to a large extent on a knowledge of the laws of health, including an understanding of the nutritional values of foods Biology offers unrivalled opportunities for continuance as a hobby after leaving school; the laboratory is at hand in the countryside, and the subject is so wide, that something new may be discovered by the humblest worker.

The foundation will have been laid in the Junior School, and the study of animate nature begun there should form the basis of the Senior School work. Further studies of the life-history and habits of a number of typical animals and plants should be made. The essential unity of all living matter and the interdependence of forms of living and non-living matter

should be made clear. Observations can be linked with Physics and Chemistry when such characteristics of living creatures as movement, feeding, respiration and excretion are under consideration. Response to stimuli, growth, reproduction, home-making and progressive scales of animal and plant life should be dealt with from a comparative point of view. Communities such as those of bees, wasps and ants, associations between particular plants and animals and simple cases of symbiosis and parasitism may be included.

All this should lead up to an understanding of the working of the human body and the conditions for its healthy functioning. Such topics may be dealt with as studies of food (including milk), its nutritive values, its transport, preservation and the effects on it of cooking; the laws of personal hygiene; the maintenance of healthy surroundings and the control and prevention of disease.

(b) *Physics.*—Physics deals with certain fundamental generalisations which have to be taken into account in all branches of Science, and hence has a special claim for inclusion in the course. In home and at school, the modern boy and girl sees every day the practical applications of Science and should learn something of the physical principles underlying them.

The basis of the work may well be the conception of energy as something which may assume different forms,—heat, light, mechanical, electrical and chemical energy,—which has certain influences on living and non-living matter, and which can be measured, or bought and sold.

Simple working machines may be studied, from the point of view of efficiency and "mechanical advantage," and children should realise that no more can be got out of a machine than is put into it. The laws of reflection and refraction, as far as they are required in

order to understand simple optical instruments, (including the eye), should be dealt with, and some study should be made of colour. The production, transfer and conserving of heat are matters of great practical importance, while electricity is entering more and more into daily life. The effects of the electric current, electro-magnetic induction, the means of production, the control and transfer of electricity and the simple properties of alternating current should be considered. The study of sound, though it can be developed in an interesting way in connexion with music, is apt to be neglected; the characteristics of notes, vibration, resonance, echoes, and organ pipes, all lend themselves to simple and striking experimental treatment.

(c) *Chemistry.*—Chemistry is of great importance in the arts and manufactures and, from many points of view, its study can be an excellent training in scientific method and habits of thought; but the chemistry of such familiar things as wood, bread, butter, is too complex for the Elementary School. The logical development of the Atomic Theory from an experimental basis requires far more time than can be given and is a very difficult study except for the more intelligent pupils. The study of chemistry, therefore, is best made ancillary to the work in biology and physics. For instance, when air and water are being studied their chemistry can be dealt with at the same time. Similarly, the study of carbon, carbon-dioxide, lime and chalk and certain salts can be taken in connexion with biology, as also can fermentation and digestion, if treated simply.

(d) *Astronomy.*—The study of the sky,—of age-long interest and importance to man,—has in a number of schools been made a valuable part of their work, though the difficulties are considerable, since observations must be made out of school hours and the time available is very restricted. The children can be taught to recognise

the brighter stars and to study the motions of the planets and constellations, and should be encouraged to read some of the many good books that are now available.

(e) *Geology*.—The elements of Geology will probably be taken in connexion with Geography. Soil studies will find a place in the Science course, especially in rural areas, and the geological aspect of other topics should not be omitted. In mining areas, particularly, children should know something of the history and structure of the rocks and of the effects on them of earth movements and, in connexion with the physics and chemistry, of the devices which enable the minerals to be obtained with the maximum safety to the miners. In many areas the children can see how the physical nature of rocks affects the scenery, the soil and the communications, and how their chemical composition also affects the vegetation. The position of former land and seas can be deduced from the collection and simple classification of fossils; in certain areas the effects of the great ice sheet can be traced; a search of gravels may possibly result in the finding of implements and other relics of early man. Studies should as far as possible be out of doors. The Geological Survey maps and sections are of great help.

15. Principles governing the choice of subject-matter.—(a) *The teacher should work out his own ideas.*—Many factors have to be considered in selecting material for the Science course, and what is best for one school will not necessarily be so for another school. There is no royal road to the school study of Science, and each teacher must undertake the task of syllabus building for himself: there should be constant experiment with new topics and new methods. Though fruitful suggestions may be adopted from many sources, it is only possible for the course to be a living force in so far

as it represents the working out of ideas which the teacher has made his own.

(b) *Influence of the environment on the course.*—The emphasis of the course must to a great extent depend on the character of the neighbourhood in which the school is situated, but there is no reason for the urban school to feel that it cannot do biological work. The special knowledge and interests of the teacher must perforce have their influence, but he should not hesitate to take up new studies; if necessary, master and pupils should be learners together. In districts where the industries are predominantly chemical and the majority of the pupils enter these industries, more chemistry than suggested above may well be included.

(c) *Though based on the children's experience the course should not lack coherence.*—Though suggestions have been made as to the content of the course based on the customary division of Science into branches, it is not suggested that the actual teaching should be based on these divisions. The contact pupils have with their environment and the questions that arise spontaneously in their minds about the things around them should provide the starting point for the teaching; their interest being gained from the beginning, they may then be led on to a recognition of the underlying general principles.

In such a method as this of planning the course to be followed there is a danger that the work may lack coherence; if it is to be successful the teacher must have in his mind a definite aim and a clear idea of the fundamental principles that he hopes to explain to the children, and he must make a careful study of what interests the pupils in their environment. The topics have to be selected with skill, and those which are too difficult or complicated to be followed up with profit and those which do not illustrate fundamental principles should

be excluded. Some examples of topics which have been successfully worked out are : Air, Water, Heating, Lighting and Water Supply of a House, Clothes, Colour, Bicycles, Clocks. The course should not be regarded as settled once for all but should be varied from time to time as experience suggests.

(d) *Work for less intelligent children.*—The range of ability in any age group is very wide ; the less intelligent children find it difficult to see relations even between things which they have themselves observed and very difficult to express their ideas in writing. They should, therefore, if possible, receive special treatment. For instance, their Science should be developed on the lines of practical projects such as gardening, the construction of simple pieces of apparatus, the wiring of an electric lamp holder, the overhauling or the fitting up of an electric bell or a simple telephone circuit. They are interested in dismantling and assembling objects in common use such as locks, taps, bicycle pumps and flash lamp batteries, and in the study of animals, especially their external features, their movements and their gradual development. To encourage the latter interest, it is well to give them special charge of aquaria and vivaria. They should not be expected to make the usual form of notes, but can draw sketches and with some help write a few short sentences summing up the results of their work.

B METHODS OF DEALING WITH THE CONTENT OF THE COURSE

16. Various forms the work may take.—If the conception of treating Science as a single whole is accepted, it follows that all the work of a class, whatever branch of Science a particular lesson may deal with, should be in the hands of one teacher. This may sometimes mean that the teacher will himself have to study branches of Science with which his training has

not made him familiar. In most large centres of population there are now facilities for further study, but where such opportunities are not available, there is no reason why class and teacher should not explore the new field of knowledge side by side. A teacher's work is not likely to be alive and stimulating unless he is constantly adding to his own stock of knowledge.

(a) *Lectures.*—Lectures, if the matter is such as appeals to children and is accompanied by suitable illustration, can do much to arouse interest in some of the wider aspects of Science, and have this advantage that they can include topics which are not readily dealt with through demonstration lessons or practical work.

(b) *Demonstrations.*—Demonstration lessons are a valuable element in the course. On the one hand, the teacher should undertake experiments, which though necessary for the logical development of the work are too difficult and dangerous for the children ; on the other hand, he will find that he can save much time by carrying out once and for all equally simple experiments, which there is no point in making every pupil do for himself. His demonstrations should set a standard of performance for the children to aim at ; they should be convincing, visible to the whole class and as simple as possible. When about to demonstrate before a class something he has not demonstrated before, he should rehearse his experiment beforehand.

(c) *Practical work.*—" Practical work " is an essential part of all Science teaching. The ideas which a child gets from doing things for himself become part of his mental equipment more completely than those he gains from seeing things done or hearing or reading about them. The duller children learn best through some form of activity, and this appears to be true of some of the more intelligent. The less able children, for instance, may well spend a good deal of time in the construction

of very simple pieces of apparatus before they attempt to use them ; for the brighter children this will not be so necessary, since they will see for themselves what the apparatus is for, and how its construction is governed by its purpose.

Group work has its value in the development of the spirit of co-operation, but it also has its dangers and should not be used exclusively, as there is a tendency for one member of the group to do more than his fair share to the exclusion of the others.

It is unlikely that the supply of apparatus will be sufficient for all pupils to do the same experiment simultaneously, but arrangements can be made for a variety of experiments to be done in a lesson which all relate to the topic under consideration.

(d) *Discussions.*—When a particular topic has been studied in a series of lessons, it should then be discussed in class with a view to welding the work done into a coherent whole and to bringing out its relations with what has gone before. When a new topic is about to be introduced, the ground to be covered and the method of approach should form the subject matter of a discussion. It need hardly be said that these discussions will not only give good practice in oral expression, but also provide excellent opportunities for revision.

(e) *Records and notes made by pupils.*—Records are usually of two kinds : notes of demonstration lessons and accounts of the pupils' own experiments. The former serve as an aid and a stimulus to memory and can provide good training in summarising and selecting salient points ; hence they may be very brief and written merely in note form. The latter give the pupils practice in making accurate records for their own and others' information and should take the form of connected accounts of what they have done or observed, and what conclusions they have drawn.

Both types of notes should be written at once in their final form and valuable time should not be wasted in first making rough notes and then making a fair copy

Over elaboration should be avoided, and sketches and diagrams, the object of which is to elucidate the text and to save lengthy description, should not become an end in themselves; they should never be mere copies of illustrations in books but should be made direct from the apparatus used or from the material studied.

The training of the children in making their own notes should be a gradual process. In very early stages, the teacher may give them models to imitate and as a next step the class may share in a combined effort. If cards containing directions for making observations or performing the experiments are used, these directions should not be copied by the children into their note books If their study of Science is to have any permanent value, the knowledge they gain must become part of their mental equipment and readily available for use; it is not sufficient to have it safely stored away in a note book.

(f) *Out-of-school activities.*—The course should not include compulsory homework, but a number of activities may be encouraged on a voluntary basis. There are now many small books on Science which are written in an interesting way and which can be circulated round the class for home reading; these contain suggestions for things to be done and for simple pieces of apparatus to be made from materials which are readily available, and their use will expand the range of what can be done in school hours.

The habit of observation and skill in recording can be promoted if the children are encouraged to study the sky by day and by night and to carry out other simple studies including the continuous observation of a selected area. Home Gardening and Bee-keeping have

proved to be of value in many schools. Science guilds and societies, the meetings of which may take the place of some of the ordinary lessons, will provide a fresh stimulus.

17 Aids to the teaching of Science.—(a) *The school garden and the greenhouse.*—The school garden and the school greenhouse, which have been dealt with in detail in another chapter of this Handbook, may be made the centre of much of the instruction in Science, for Gardening is essentially the putting of Science to practical uses. They will provide much of the material required for the biological work and are the right places for making experiments on the germination of seeds and the conditions of healthy growth and propagation. Parts of the garden may be laid out in such a way as to illustrate plant associations in different habitats.

(b) *Visits to works, museums and exhibitions; nature rambles.*—One of the claims for the inclusion of Science in the curriculum is that in studying it the pupils are dealing with facts at first-hand. It is, therefore, essential that they should both become acquainted with the applications of Science in industry by visits to works and factories and come into contact with nature by studying in the field. Visits to museums and exhibitions have this value that they enable children to see collections and exhibits which are on a far wider scale than anything that is possible in the school.

Owing to the expense involved and the limited time available for them, these visits are so infrequent that it is essential, when they do occur, that the best possible use should be made of them. Careful preparation is required, if every advantage is to be taken of a visit, and it should be followed up by suitable exercises, oral and written accounts, answers to questions and a discussion, with a view to making the experience coherent

and bringing out its bearing on the school course and on the life of the children.

(c) *Broadcast lessons.*—Broadcast talks by field naturalists have become popular in many schools. Such lessons, while they cannot take the place of the teacher, can be of great use in arousing the interest of the children, in suggesting fresh ideas, and new ways of treatment, and may result in new forms of activity and in first-hand investigation on their part.

(d) *Films.*—The use of films in teaching has been greatly hindered by the high cost of the apparatus required and by the unsuitable character of most of the films available, though these are now being rapidly improved. Their use makes it possible to widen the scope of the Science teaching and may also be justified as a means of rapid recapitulation. It should not, however, be forgotten that Science teaching should never depend on pictures when real things are available.

(e) *Epidiascope, micro-projector and optical lantern.*—For many demonstration lessons it is essential to have means for the optical projection of slides, diagrams and small pieces of apparatus; and the epidiascope will serve to show any of these things. When enlarged images of small living creatures and microscopic structure have to be shown, the micro-projector will provide the best means, as the teacher, when using it, can be certain that the pupils have seen what he wishes them to see. This cannot be ensured by the use of a microscope, and much time is lost if each child has to look in turn. An epidiascope and a micro-projector should be part of the equipment of every Senior School. A lantern is useful not only for showing slides but for many optical experiments, especially in dealing with colour. An arc lamp is a good source of ultra-violet light.

All these pieces of apparatus are expensive, but they can be improvised if good lenses can be obtained; a highly successful lantern can be made from a large tin, an episcope body from plywood, and, if an ordinary microscope is available, a 12-volt car head-lamp, suitably mounted, will provide the necessary illumination for micro-projection.

(f) *The science library.*—Even if the school has a room set apart for use as a library, the Science room should have a number of books kept in it so as to be available for immediate reference; some training in how to make the best use of these is essential. Standard books of reference are too highly technical and written in too difficult language for the majority of the children to be able to consult them with profit, but fortunately there are available many simple books which will help the pupils to identify all the common plants, insects, butterflies, etc., and to get information about them. There are, too, Science encyclopædias specially written for children, in which they can find the answers to most of the questions that arise in their minds. The story of Science, lives of great scientists and accounts of recent discoveries can all be had in a form which the pupil can follow, and there are innumerable books about Science suitable for general reading which will stimulate interest and a desire to learn more of the subject.

18. Relations of Science to other subjects of the curriculum.—(a) *Gardening and keeping livestock.*—These subjects are dealt with in detail in Chapter X of this Handbook. It is difficult to overestimate the help that can be given by them to the Science course. The children will be learning about the conditions for healthy growth and propagation and the application of Science to the needs of man. They will gain some ideas of Mechanics from the use of gardening tools and from the construction of suitable houses for the animals kept.

Many physical and chemical principles, too, will find illustration in the cultivation of the soil, etc. In the case of the less intelligent children gardening and the keeping of livestock in conjunction with handicraft may well form the basis of the Science teaching, where the school premises permit of the proper development of these activities.

(b) *Handicraft.*—This subject can be of direct help to the Science teaching, for some of the time available can be given to the construction of apparatus which may be put to good use in the room allocated to practical work in Science. Many children will find an added interest in making something they will use in another part of their school work. Apparatus-making may even be encouraged as a hobby.

On the other hand the children will do their woodwork and metalwork more intelligently if they understand the mechanical principles involved in the proper handling of the tools they employ and have some idea of the forces acting in the objects they construct.

(c) *English.*—Science should contribute much to the training in English. One of the chief difficulties children have in expressing themselves, orally or in writing, is their lack of experience and ideas. In their Science work they have done or observed something in an orderly sequence and should, therefore, have ideas to express and some notion of how to arrange them. They should be given frequent opportunities for this kind of expression and a high standard of accuracy should uniformly be expected in such work.

(d) *History.*—The Science teacher should have an extensive knowledge of the history of scientific discovery and of the development of scientific thought. It is of little value to teach the pupils the history of Science before they know something of Science itself, but every opportunity should be taken to vivify and humanise

the work by the introduction of relevant historical and biographical details. An attempt to adopt an historical or biographical basis for the development of the teaching soon leads to difficulties, for in this way phenomena are likely to be encountered, before the children are ready to understand them. When so much that is fruitful has to be omitted for lack of time, there is no need to go over all the mistakes of the past and much time can be wasted on abandoned theories and out-worn terminology.

In the History lessons the social, economic and political effects of outstanding scientific discoveries should be traced.

(e) *Mathematics.*—Much of what was at one time regarded as suitable preliminary science in the way of practical measurements of length, area and volume is best done as Mathematics. It is an interesting fact that what is regarded by the child as intolerably dull Science is done with avidity in the Mathematics lessons. Where Mathematics is developed on practical lines much of the Mechanics can be included in the course. If outdoor exercises in surveying form part of the Mathematics course, lessons on the principles underlying the design of the optical square, optical angle-meter, hand level, sextant, and prismatic compass can be included in the Science course.

(f) *Geography.*—There is a very close connexion between Geography and Science, and the Geography teacher will be greatly helped, if the topics of Air and Water come at an early stage in the Science course. Care should be taken that the work in Geography and the work in Science do not overlap, as, for example, in meteorology, astronomy and geology. The elements of these branches of Science are probably best taught in connexion with Geography.

(g) *Housecraft.*—This subject has a relation to Science similar to that of Gardening, in that it is essentially an application of Science to human needs. Some physical and chemical principles can be studied in topics taken from the course of domestic training, but many of the materials used in the work are too complex in composition to be dealt with in the Science lessons. A girl's conception of Science should not be limited to the science of the dwelling house: there is a wide range of topics outside the province of Housecraft which should be included in .. e Science course.

V. FACILITIES FOR TEACHING SCIENCE

19. Size and lay-out of the science room.—The first essential for teaching Science . plenty of space; a suitable room for classes of 40 is one 40 feet long by 24 feet wide, with a store room at one end, the full width of the laboratory and from 6 to 8 feet in depth, fitted with deep shelves on one long and one short wall.

The windows on the long corridor wall should not come below 7 feet from the floor, on the other side they should come down to bench level. On this side a plain light wall bench, 2 feet wide, for the display of models, for projects which require to be left standing some time and for the support of aquaria, etc., may run practically the whole length of the laboratory. On the wall at the store-room end should be fixed the blackboard with the demonstration bench 10 feet long and 2 feet 3 inches wide placed 2 feet 6 inches in front of it. The opposite wall should have the carpenter's bench and cupboards placed along it, leaving the remaining wall for shelves and such pieces of apparatus as are best fixed to a vertical wall. No balance cases or bench are required, as spring balances should be used.

If no greenhouse is available, two windows which get some sun may be fitted with waidian cases. The

lantern screen should be put across one corner and not in front of the blackboard. Wooden suspension beams 7 inches by 3 inches, in cross section, spaced at equal intervals, should pass the whole length of the laboratory and be bolted to the roof principals.

In the centre of the room can be placed four light plain benches 11 feet by 4 feet with their length at right angles to the demonstration bench.

20. Equipment of the science room.—(a) *Gas, water and electricity supply.*—Gas points should be laid on to the demonstration bench, but flexible tubing can be used to lead gas from floor points to the centre benches if it is desired not to fix these to the floor.

One sink should be fixed at each end of the long wall bench and one in the demonstration bench ; one wall sink should have a drainage board.

A power point is required on the demonstration bench and others for the use of the lantern and for obtaining a supply of current for rectification to charge storage cells and, when transformed to a low voltage (12 volts), for pupils' experiments. The low voltage supply can be fed to the benches by sections of cables running in slots in battens, lengths of these being joined end to end as required by 2 pin plugs and sockets. All windows should be fitted with light-excluding blinds.

(b) *Carpenter's bench.*—The bench provided for repair work, and for the construction of simple pieces of apparatus such as auxanometers, klinostats, transformers, etc., should have a flat top and be fitted with both wood and metal vices. A list of suitable tools and raw materials is given in an appendix to *Science in Senior Schools.* These should form a supply quite distinct from those provided for the handicraft room.

(c) *Aquaria.*—Many schools succeed in keeping large aquaria in a state of equilibrium by a suitable adjustment of plant and animal life, but now that means of

aeration can be had at reasonable cost, it seems better to keep a number of small tanks, so that species likely to prey on others may be kept separate. Earthenware sinks have been found satisfactory, and have the merit of not admitting light at the sides. A frequent source of failure is allowing scraps of food to decay in the tanks.

(d) *Illustrations and models* —The Science room should contain portraits of famous scientists and diagrams, pictures and models illustrating machines, life histories, manufacturing processes, etc. These should be frequently changed, only those connected with the work in progress remaining on exhibition; otherwise they cease to arouse interest.

(e) *Safeguards in the laboratory.*—The teacher should know how to deal with the emergencies which are likely to arise in the Science room, and a fire extinguisher, a bucket of sand, blanket and a first-aid case should be readily accessible for immediate use; dangerous substances should be kept locked up.

Rules for laboratory use which will reduce as far as possible the risk of accidents should be put up in a prominent place and the children should know these rules.

21. Schools with no science room.—Schools which have no Science room are greatly handicapped, since little individual work by the pupils is possible and most of the teaching must be by demonstration. Some practical work in biology can be done at ordinary desks, if hand lenses are available and the children can handle and observe specimens. The position can be improved if a room can be fitted with a demonstration table and one or two wardian cases. If no water supply is laid on to the room, the difficulty can be overcome by using buckets, and for gas can be substituted stoves burning paraffin under pressure.

CHAPTER XV

MATHEMATICS

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS

I. SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

A. INTRODUCTORY

1. The threefold aim of mathematical instruction.—The teaching of Mathematics in the Elementary School has three main purposes: first, to help the child to form clear ideas about certain relations of number, time and space; secondly, to make the more

useful of these ideas firm and precise in his mind through practice in the appropriate calculations; and thirdly, to enable him to apply the resulting mechanical skill intelligently, speedily and accurately in the solution of everyday problems

The expert teacher who realises the threefold nature of his task will not fall into the common danger of over-emphasising the second of these three aims at the expense of the other two. He will naturally be pleased if his pupils can work with speed and accuracy the ordinary mechanical sums in the "four rules" and in money, weights and measures, but he will always feel that this sort of achievement may be somewhat barren if it cannot be turned to real use. If, however, his pupils, as a result of their mathematical training, have learnt to apply their text-book knowledge to practical problems, the teacher will have succeeded in the main purposes of his instruction.

A good deal of the mathematical teaching in schools, indeed, which has as its aim nothing but the cultivation of speed and accuracy in working sums of a mechanical type, cannot be justified even as a form of mental training; for operations with numbers and quantities which cannot be applied to life-situations must be largely without meaning for many children who perform them. In the early stages, especially, teachers should restrict themselves to giving children facility only in such mathematical skills as they can use and see the point of using. Throughout the school course the speed and accuracy which will count for most in the long run will be that shown in work which has a direct application for the child who performs it.

2. The importance of making the work fit the capacity of the individual child.—Syllabuses of instruction in mathematics are still very much under the

influence of an older tradition. They need not only to be brought into closer relation with the requirements of today, but also to take more account of the natural proclivities of childhood. Mathematical conceptions are easier to understand and to apply when they arise out of the pupils' interests and experiences, and the duller the child the broader the concrete foundation should be. Present-day treatment is far too much influenced by the supposed needs of those who proceed to Secondary Schools. The wide differences in ability that occur within each age-group need to be more fully recognised. Where a two- or three-stream organisation exists, it is easier to arrange for alternative syllabuses. It is equally desirable, though perhaps not equally practicable, to do this in all schools.

There is probably no subject in which the requirement that the syllabus must be adapted to the interests and capacities of the children is so well recognised, though difficult to fulfil, as in Arithmetic. Not only do capacities and normal rates of progress differ widely, but the subject has a definite content which must be taught in a more or less definite order, and if progress is to be continuous, certain fundamental skills and certain essential kinds of knowledge must be acquired by each individual pupil at every stage of the course

The usual Arithmetic course in most schools consists largely of short " sums " of which the pupil has to work out a large number one after another. If these " sums " are so difficult that he gets them wrong, his sense of failure rapidly grows, distaste for the subject inevitably follows, and in such circumstances he becomes unteachable. It is essential therefore that the exercises should be so graded in difficulty that every child can enjoy the stimulus of success and of steady progress. He should, moreover, at each stage of the course see their bearing upon the practical problems of life.

B. ARITHMETIC AS A SUBJECT

3. The approach through children's games.—Number relations are implicit in many children's games, for example, in counting-play, in scoring-games and games with numbered boards and dice, and in many of the occupations that they imitate from adult life: for example, shopping, weighing and measuring. Such games and occupations, if carefully selected and arranged, are valuable throughout the early stages, but most of all in the Infant School. They familiarise the child with numbers and with the common units of measure, and they import meaning and interest into Arithmetic by basing its conceptions on a wide range of experience. Some of them—for example, the scoring-games and shopping—involve much practice in the simpler arithmetical operations, and also have so obvious a meaning for the child as to provide him with a strong motive for success. Such meaningful practice shortens the labour of learning and leads to good habits of calculation.

Such familiar and interesting "make-believe" and "real-life" situations provide the best introduction both to pure Arithmetic and to problems. When John, for example, buys at the classroom shop, the class may be led to see that the problem is "What change should he get?" They may go on to describe in their own words concisely and accurately the transaction that takes place, and to say what particular arithmetical operation the transaction has called for. The skilful teacher, by varying the shopping situation, may lead up to a varied series of problems, graded in difficulty. The children will thus come to see how text-book problems arise and how to state them. By approaching problem-solving in this way thus early they learn to grasp the situation which the words of a problem represent.

4. The approach through the use of apparatus.—But there comes a time when the very wealth and variety

of these games may make abstraction difficult and may obscure the essential character of the operations involved. Arithmetic as such soon advances beyond their range, and the foundation for its more systematic procedure is needed. This should be provided for by formal practical exercises in calculating with the help of simple objects like balls and counters. Formal practical work of this kind with simplified material is a stage half way between the fully concrete situation of the game and the abstract sum. By using apparatus to help him in his calculation the pupil comes to *see*, in both senses of the word, what the operations mean: e.g. how the operation required for "27 plus 6" may be derived from the simpler calculation of "7 plus 6," or why six-eighths is the same as three-quarters.

Apparatus, however, may do harm if it is of the wrong kind. Apparatus, for example, that involves the moving about of objects one by one, tends to fix the low level habit of counting, if it is kept up too long, and to obscure the essential character of the higher level habits of addition, multiplication, etc. Apparatus may also do harm, if its use by individual children continues too long. If pupils are taught that it is more "grown-up" to work without apparatus, even when they have it, the teacher will soon discover when it may be withdrawn. Long after this, however, the teacher who can use skilfully one or two types of standard apparatus, e.g. the ball-frame, will find them useful in removing difficulties of understanding, especially those of children who may be relatively backward.

C. THREE ESSENTIAL STAGES IN THE TREATMENT OF ANY ARITHMETICAL TOPIC

5. Practical and oral work: mechanical work; problem work.—The justification for ordered and systematic instruction in Mathematics, whether in Arithmetic, Algebra or Geometry, is that it enables the

pupil to make faster progress than he otherwise might in acquiring the technique needed for the solution of the practical problems encountered in everyday life which call for the application of mathematical knowledge. The teaching, in particular, of any arithmetical topic or process in school should proceed by three clearly-marked stages. First, by way of introduction, should come practical and oral work designed to give meaning to, and create interest in, the new arithmetical conception—through deriving it from the child's own experience—and to give him confidence in dealing with it by first establishing in his mind correct notions of the numerical and quantitative relations involved in the operation. Next should follow "mechanical" work, the purpose of which is to help the child to form the mental habits in which skill in computation is rooted, so that he may be able to perform both speedily and accurately the particular arithmetical operations required. Finally, there should be problem-work · when the necessary skill has been acquired by each pupil, he will naturally apply it to solving the kind of problems which rendered it necessary for him to acquire it. Thus the treatment of each topic will end, as it began, by giving the pupil practical experience in dealing with situations which have meaning for him.

In applying the principles here indicated, however, the teacher should be on his guard against adopting any stereotyped procedure which is followed rigidly, either within the compass of a single lesson or over a series of lessons. In proceeding, too, from one stage to the next in his teaching of any particular topic or process, he should aim at preserving a proper balance as regards the time devoted to the various stages. He should not, for instance, give to mechanical work a disproportionate amount of the time at his disposal, nor should he make the fundamental mistake of deferring all practice in problem-solving until after the mechanical

rules laid down in his class syllabus have been completely learnt. Above all, he should in this matter bear in mind the individual needs of his pupils, and should differentiate the syllabus so that he need not hurry the slower, or keep back the brighter workers among them.

(i) *Arousing interest through preliminary practical work.*

6. The importance of introducing a new topic in arithmetic by means of practical and oral work.—The importance of the introductory practical and oral work of the first of the three steps in teaching an arithmetical process lies in the fact that the child can learn to understand the meaning of numerical conceptions and operations by working exercises with small numbers and familiar quantities only. To increase the size and complexity of the numbers used is to demand greater skill in computation, but often, with young children. serves only to obscure the meaning of what is done. Facility in dealing with a new conception grows slowly, and is often reached only after long familiarity. Such familiarity is best acquired through oral work and the solution of a wide variety of simple problems involving quite small numbers and including as many as possible that are derived from the child's own experience.

(ii) *Developing mechanical skill.*

7. The amount of mechanical work usually done should be reduced.—To allow of a properly balanced course of instruction, the range and the amount of mechanical work usually attempted, especially in the Junior School, must be reduced,—for many of the children, if not for most. This may be effected by postponing the teaching of the more difficult "rules" or by restricting the exercises set to give practice in them to examples involving small numbers. It is usually a waste of time to teach a mathematical process

or technique to a child, unless he is likely to acquire a reasonable degree of skill in using it before he leaves the class in which it is taught. The duller child, in particular, must not only have his knowledge of forms of numerical calculation related more directly and more extensively to his own everyday experiences, but he needs more practice in applying to quite simple life-situations such mechanical skill as he acquires.

8. Memorisation of tables essential.—At every stage of the school course, however, certain essential habits must be acquired as a foundation for further work. For example, the fundamental tables—addition-and-subtraction, multiplication-and-division—present the results of the preliminary oral and practical work in systematic arrangement and they derive their meaning from it. Their items must all be memorised, for they form the basis of the mechanical work which follows. The pupil must quite early be able to add any two numbers less than ten, for practically every lesson involves many of these operations. If he fails to learn the tables properly, i.e. to give the result automatically, without intermediate steps and without stopping to think, or if he fails to master them at the right time, he is hampered in all subsequent work and wastes, in the course of his school life, far more time than their accurate memorisation would have required.

9. Arithmetical " rules ".—The mechanical rules of written arithmetic are primarily devices for adding, subtracting, multiplying, or dividing quantities that are too large or too complex to be dealt with mentally. If the child were supplied with actual machines, to do the work of these rules automatically, his power of attacking problems would hardly suffer. Indeed it might be increased. The written rules, in fact, are best regarded as forms of mental technique or as complex habits to be formed. To teach them successfully means

that the child will acquire, with the least expenditure of time and energy, such a degree of speed and accuracy that they can be readily applied.

It is often contended that the child should learn these rules intelligently. If this means that he should be able to recognise the kind of problem situation that leads to them, it is true. If it means that he should grasp the full logic of, say, the subtraction rule at the age when it is commonly learned, it is certainly untrue. Some insight into the logic may facilitate memory and computation and may therefore be desirable. This aspect, however, should not be over emphasised.

10. How to secure economy of time and effort in mechanical work.—The importance of economising time and effort in mechanical work has already been stressed. The following suggestions have this end in view :—

(a) *Methods should be standardised.*—This should be done, if not throughout a district, then at least throughout the group of schools contributory to a given Senior School. The method of procedure should be quickly reduced to a final and simple form, (e.g. in dealing with "36—17," the child might say, almost from the start, "seven from sixteen, nine; two from three, one,") avoiding unnecessary statements. "Crutches" if used at all, should be discarded before they become fixed habits. The writing of "carried" figures, for example, is probably best not taught at all, at any rate with normal children.

(b) *A definite standard of accuracy should be aimed at.*—For every rule the teacher should have in mind a standard of working accuracy which each child should reach before passing on to another. Any such standard, e.g. three right out of four is more quickly reached with short "sums." The fewer

figures and operations involved the smaller the chance of going wrong. This implies that exercises of smaller number range should be used with the duller children.

(c) *Excessive mechanical work should be avoided.* The amount of mechanical work to be covered at any stage should not be so great as to upset the balance of the syllabus. A suggested minimum syllabus for normal children is given in Chapter II of the Board's pamphlet *Senior School Mathematics.* Further economy of time and effort may be secured by avoiding alternative methods, or by reducing the number range, as suggested above.

(d) *Mechanical drill directed to a specific purpose is valuable.*—Much time may be saved if the mental habits that each new rule implies are considered separately, and special oral drills are devised when needed. Short division by six (for example, $351 \div 6$) requires, (1) a familiarity with the division aspect of the table of sixes even when the table is known, (2) the ability to deal with exercises like $35 \div 6$, and to "carry" the remainder, (3) the ability to take 48 from 51, (4) the ability to set down neatly Any one of these may require special attention. Again, in fixing the rule for multiplication by decimals only one new habit is required,—that of placing the point. This may be quickly established by specially devised oral work.

In short, mechanical drill work should be purposeful. It is sometimes claimed that the mere indiscriminate working of long "sums" may increase accuracy, but even if this were true the method would be wasteful of time.

(e) *Brisk working promotes accuracy.*—Accuracy grows more quickly when reasonable speed is

demanded. For exercises requiring thought procedure may be leisurely, but in mechanical exercises brisk working should be encouraged.

(f) *Unnecessary written work to be avoided.*—There is no need for a child to write down every exercise that he attacks. Cards with half-a-dozen mechanical sums, so constructed that the card can be laid on the paper and the answers written beneath may save much time, especially if a standard answer card is used which can be laid on the child's book.

(iii) *Applying skill to the working of problems*

11. Mechanical practice valuable only in so far as it gives power to solve real problems.—The teacher should see that the children understand that they are not doing mechanical arithmetic merely for the sake of getting sums right, stimulating and satisfying as that will always be. Mechanical practice should be taken for the same reason as practice with a new stitch in needlework, or fielding practice in cricket, i.e. in order that the skill acquired may be used, while it is still fresh, in coping with the difficulties of a real situation. In other words, the teacher will not take the point of view that instruction in arithmetic must inevitably take the form of: (a) teaching the bare skills and (b) looking round subsequently for sums in books that test the ability to apply the skills acquired. Rather, he should take the view that in approaching any new range of work, whether it be vulgar fractions, or proportion, or simple interest, his first task is to interest his pupils in a variety of easy problems, involving such small numbers and such simple quantities that written computation is not required.

Only when familiarity with new conceptions has been gained in this way will it be necessary to consider what mechanical rules and what formal written procedure

need to be taught in order that problems involving bigger numbers and more complex quantities may be introduced. Though this formal instruction may cover a series of lessons, its ultimate purpose and justification should be borne clearly in mind all the time.

If the introductory work is well done, the primary notions and operations will be derived from the child's experience. Practice in solving a wide variety of problems that can be treated orally will help to strengthen the relation between experience and arithmetical operation. But when the child has learnt the mechanical rules, i.e. acquired the skill to handle larger numbers and quantities, the range of application of what he has learnt will be increased. He will not only be in a position to attack the traditional text-book problem, in which the data are selected and marshalled for him, but will be ready to meet a wider range of real life exercises. This kind of practical work is fully discussed in *Senior School Mathematics*. Simple forms of it are appropriate to all stages.

12. Problem work : some principles to be observed.—A problem is an exercise that contains an element of novelty. In the time available only a few methods of calculation can be standardised, i.e. converted into mental habits, and these enable the pupil to attack only a small proportion of the exercises that he meets. For the remainder he must be able to modify or combine methods as circumstances demand, or to devise new ones

Problem-solving cannot be taught as rules are taught. The traditional method of dividing problems into types and teaching a standard method for each type has but a limited value in view of the large number of types. Training children to solve problems is in essence training them to meet and surmount difficulties for themselves, and the best training is the kind of teaching that grades

difficulties so that the pupil can surmount them, and presents them in such a way that he has to do his own thinking.

But although problem solving cannot be directly taught certain suggestions for handling problems are worth bearing in mind :—

(a) *The pupil must face the problem unaided.* To remove the new difficulties in advance, e g. by suggesting the method to be used, is to destroy the essence of the problem, and reduce the exercises to mechanical work.

(b) *Problems must be easy.*—This means that they must be such as the pupil can tackle unaided with some chance of success. The view sometimes expressed that backward children cannot do problems—(which implies that they are learning what they cannot apply)—really means that most text-book problems are too difficult for them The experimental grading of problems in order of difficulty has hardly been begun.

(c) *Approach through real-life situations.*—Problems are best approached through "real-life," situations, as already indicated. "Real - life" problems may be supplemented by varied oral exercises in which the answer only is written down. These may be introduced at an early stage, and up to the end of the Junior School backward children will hardly go beyond this type.

(d) *Language used should be simple.*—Young children commonly fail with text-book problems, because they cannot read them, i.e. because they are unable to realise the exact situation that the words describe. In order to minimise this difficulty

problems should deal with familiar and interesting situations. They should be expressed in short, crisp sentences and in simple language.

(e) *Demonstration better than verbal explanation.*—Children will grasp a situation more easily, if the training begins with problems involving such simple numbers that practical apparatus can be used to illustrate the operations. For example the pupil, when he first meets such a question as " How many quarts in five gallons ? ", can easily be shown that five groups of four are involved and that multiplication is indicated. Demonstration where practicable is to be preferred to verbal explanation. If, at a later stage, pupils attempt to solve a problem by multiplying when they should divide, or fail to understand what the remainder stands for, they will otten surmount the difficulty at once if the problem is restated with the simplest numbers and demonstrated with actual objects. But this difficulty should rarely arise, if care is taken from the start to link process with objective demonstration and with verbal statement.

(f) *Full comprehension of the meaning of the problem the first essential.*—When written problems, involving several steps and the use of large numbers, are introduced, the teaching should not be directed primarily to suggesting the method by which they can be solved, but rather to training children to ask themselves what is given and what is required, to note what units are employed, to use diagrams when possible and, in general, to analyse the problem in such a way that the meaning will become clear. If children have been systematically trained, as they should be, to see how problems arise out of real-life situations, they will find the written problem much easier to understand

D. MENTAL ARITHMETIC

13. The uses of mental work in Arithmetic.—"Mental" Arithmetic includes all exercises in which pen or pencil is not used, except perhaps to record the answer. Much of the Arithmetic of everyday life is "mental" in this sense. The value of such work, provided that the exercises are chosen to serve a definite purpose, has been stressed throughout this chapter. Its main purposes will be :—(*a*) to give practice in solving a wide variety of problems, with or without the help of apparatus ; (*b*) to give brisk drill in specific habits (e.g. in addition of fractions, changing the subject of a formula) or in the tables themselves ; (*c*) to revise : e.g. a test might be given to discover, by means of a few very simple exercises, how much a class has remembered of the rules for operations with decimals or for finding the areas of plane figures.

Certain short cuts in computation may usefully be introduced through mental work. Only a few of these short cuts are important, e.g. the rules for finding the cost of a dozen articles, or for multiplying by twenty-five.

Few text-books contain enough exercises in "Mental Arithmetic" ; still fewer provide purposeful exercises of all types. For some purposes, e.g. brisk drill work, the exercises are best devised by the teacher who knows the needs of the class ; but most teachers need a supplementary source-book for mental work. If ample exercises of this type are available, one section of a class can be set down to "mental work" by themselves. Even where classes are taught as a whole, there are many types of example which the child needs to read as well as to hear ; some require the *numbers* only to be written on the blackboard.

Finally, it is well to remember that, although the use of pen and pencil in ordinary written work makes thought clearer by necessitating its clear exposition,

the rule "Show your working" may easily lead to mental slackness. The complementary rule "Never do work on paper that can be done mentally" often needs to be emphasised; the bright child may often be set to do mentally as many as he can of an ordinary set of exercises.

E. ORGANISATION OF THE SCHOOL COURSE

14. Individual work and group work both essential.—In some schools, provision is made for differences of ability by allowing each pupil to proceed at his own pace. In Arithmetic, where it is of special importance that the pupil shall surmount his own difficulties, there will always be much individual work. Teaching which relies solely upon it, however, misses the great stimulus and value of oral group work. A group which is put on to individual work, before sufficient group instruction has been given, will be in danger of making many mistakes. The teacher will be hard put to it to keep pace with the corrections and the pupil, through repetition of errors, will contract bad habits that are difficult to eradicate. Moreover, the method, if carried on throughout the Junior School results in a truncated course for all but the best children.

15. Adapting the course to the children's capacity.—Where numbers admit of it, the course should be planned on the basis of the "two-stream" or "three-stream" classification which the Hadow reorganisation makes possible. There may be then a minimum syllabus, in which each major topic will be completed by all normal children at about the same age. There may also be a supplementary course with extra rules, larger numbers and more difficult problems, enough to provide ample work for the brightest children; on the other hand, there may be a few for whom the minimum will be too much. Many schools are not large enough

to allow the classes to be organised in separate streams. Where it is possible at least for each age-group to have a teacher of its own, differences of ability can be met without much difficulty by sectional treatment, though to ensure adequate oral teaching the number of sections should not be too large. In such circumstances the supplementary course might be designed to enable the brighter children to work largely by themselves.

In a small school, where each teacher is responsible for more than one age-group, it is very difficult to allow for differences of ability as well as of age. If the age range is very wide, several sections may be necessary; but multiplication of the groups often leads to the neglect of one or other of them and to the cutting down of necessary oral work. For practical work such as measurement or out-of-door surveying it may be necessary to take the whole class together, but the tasks allotted to the children should be graded according to their ability. In very small schools it may be a useful plan to set a bright child occasionally to supervise the work of a small group which is less advanced or to arrange for children to work in pairs.

In any case, the syllabus must be considerably simplified in the school where children of a wide age range are taught by one teacher.

16. A course should not be on rigid lines: it should be modified to meet individual needs.—But, although forethought and planning are necessary, it cannot be too strongly emphasised that the most suitable course for any given class cannot be laid down in advance, even by teachers who know the children, and still less by text-book writers who do not. Real success is only possible when the teacher is on the alert to notice where modification is needed and is resourceful in supplying it. He must distinguish between failures that are

due to misunderstanding, to lack of skill, or to carelessness, and treat them differently; note children who habitually get their sums wrong and modify their course before they become discouraged; see that the brightest ones are kept on the stretch and fully employed; devise exercises that arise out of the children's special interests and prescribe drills calculated to help them to remove bad habits and to master essential forms of skill.

17. How a text-book should be used.—Text-books should not be followed too closely, nor should they be changed too often. The teacher will do well to note in an interleaved copy the modifications that experience suggests to him. He may note, for example, which exercises may be omitted; record additions that he has to make, note which exercises prove difficult and which easy, where difficulties of language occur and where alternative methods may be employed, where rough estimates or checks may be profitably employed, and where short cuts may be looked for from the brighter children. If experience is gathered and recorded in this way, especially when children's books are being corrected, the second passage through the course will be far more profitable than the first.

18. Methods of correcting written work.—Correcting the pupils' written work—i.e. indicating their mistakes by means of signs or marks—has two primary uses. It enables the teacher to profit by experience, as suggested above, and it brings home to the pupil where he stands. The correction must be thorough, if interest is to be sustained, and if the teacher is to discover the sources of error in the pupil's work. Correction, however, in the sense of putting right what is wrong, is mainly the pupil's business. Different types of error need different treatment which will depend upon the diagnosis, and this should be indicated in the marking: an error in reasoning may necessitate further teaching

before correction by the pupil ; inaccuracy may be due to ignorance of tables, or to bad setting down, or merely to general slackness or to a casual slip. It may be unwise to insist on the reworking of an exercise just because of a single slip.

19. Value of short methods : Estimating and proving.—The brighter children should be kept on the alert for short cuts and alternative methods. All pupils should often be required to make preliminary estimates of results. Many teachers show the children how to "prove" their sums and frequently require them to do so. The use of a book in which some exercises are starred to indicate that estimates should be made or the best method sought, is a stimulating device. Very few short cuts are of such general application that they should be specifically taught. Moreover specific teaching rarely ensures that they will be used at the appropriate occasion. Discussion of short methods has little effect on subsequent work unless, by the "starring" or some other device, the habit of looking for opportunities is continually encouraged. The more backward children should be taught standardised methods, and will rarely be able to depart from them.

F. INCLUSION IN THE COURSE OF OTHER FORMS OF MATHEMATICS

20. Possible lines of development.—The Board's pamphlet *Senior School Mathematics* describes in some detail the forms of mathematical training other than Arithmetic that may be included in the Elementary School course.

The practical activities of the Infant and Junior Schools will extend the child's familiarity with size, shape, and direction. The Junior School teacher may

do much to facilitate the growth of geometrical notions, which is necessarily slow, and to link them to correct description. In the Senior School such activities as Practical Surveying, Practical Drawing in connection with Bookcraft, Woodwork, and other forms of craft-work will develop these notions and make them more explicit. It should be the aim of the teacher of Mathematics to bring home to the pupils the geometrical facts and principles involved in these practical activities through discussion and by means of supplementary exercises, and so enable them to acquire a working knowledge of some of the more important generalisations of geometry.

Other forms of mathematical work that Senior Schools can profitably introduce are the reading and drawing of graphs (for which also a foundation may be laid in the Junior School stage); generalised Arithmetic, especially the construction and use of formulae; and, where conditions are suitable, the use of logarithm tables and an introductory course of Mechanics.

II. THE INFANT SCHOOL STAGE

21. The aims of number teaching in Infant Schools. —The aim of the Infant School should be to organise an environment in which the orderly development of children's early ideas of number and his experiences of measurable quantities etc. can take place most easily. It is particularly important that the training which is concerned with the enumeration of objects and with the understanding of the simple numerical relationships arising out of it, should be accompanied by the introduction of situations in which the child meets with the commoner measures of money, weight, length, and capacity. A zeal for number analysis on the part of the teacher may lead to a rapid development in the Infant School child's ideas of number and

numerical relations ; but the ability to deal with numbers will not in itself help a child to understand what is meant by 2 lbs. of butter, a yard of dress material, half-a-pint of milk, or a 10*s*. 0*d*. note.

Instruction in number should, therefore, have, as its objective, a development of ability, suited to the capacity of the child, not only in counting and number analysis, but also in dealing intelligently with the simplest common quantities. Even before they begin to attend school, children have acquired some experience of number, distance, shape, size, weight and money. The extent and clearness of this knowledge will vary considerably with home conditions, but the children will probably have in their vocabulary some general terms associated with quantity such as " little," " high," " heavy," etc. and some of the number names.

22. The approach to number teaching through various activities.—When children enter school they should not at first be expected to make any change in the ways by which they normally acquire number knowledge. Their environment should, however, be more stimulating and the teacher should from time to time draw attention to the quantitative side of their experiences and take steps to systematise what they are learning. She will, for example, make use of the traditional counting rhymes, games, and songs for teaching the number names and she will introduce occupations such as bead threading, which gives opportunities for counting, and the handling of objects designed to bring out differences of size and shape. Children enjoy counting and no special setting is required for a great part of the early teaching in enumeration. The child may count the buttons on his coat, he may play the make-believe games of laying plates for six and he will hear stories such as that of the three bears with their bowls of differing size. His rhythmic activities and his handwork

will also add to his experiences of numbers and quantities. He will throughout be increasing his power to describe what he does in appropriate language.

23. Learning to count. Use of number patterns before figures are taught.—In learning to count, the child first meets a number, say *four*, as one of an invariable sequence of words (*one, two, three, four* etc.). He also learns to associate the words, one by one, with a series of objects, touching or pointing out these as he does so. The abandonment of this habit later on marks a definite stage of progress. He also learns to associate the words *three, four* with the numbers of objects in a group rather than with those counted third and fourth.

It is at this stage that some teachers introduce orderly arrangements of dots to represent the numbers in easily recognisable patterns, such as ⁙ for *five*. Practice in recognising such patterns and counting the dots adds to the range of number activities and may be made a useful preliminary to the teaching of figures. Figures themselves add nothing to the understanding of numbers and they should, therefore, not be taught until the children can make confident use of the sounded names corresponding to them.

24. The introductory step in the teaching of number operations.—At a later stage, when introducing simple operations, the teacher will be well-advised to display the same caution in teaching the symbols for adding, subtracting, and so on. The first essential is that the operation itself should be understood in a sufficient number of situations to give it generality. Adding must be associated not only with counting the total of two or more groups of balls, counters

or dots, but with groups of all sorts of things in a great variety of circumstances. Again, subtracting may be associated either with the comparison of groups of objects or with removing a smaller group from a larger one.

It will be wise for the teacher to see that the children are able to perform such operations with a variety of actual objects, and to describe what they do, before she gives them exercises, for example, with counters, in which the only variety is the changing of the numbers involved. Thus, while he is still at the stage of learning what subtraction means, a child will say "I threw 5 balls into the basket and Jack threw in 2, so I threw in 3 more balls than Jack." Or, "I had 5 biscuits and gave Jack 2, so I have 3 left for myself." Later he will become interested in trying out the operation of subtraction with a great variety of numbers and should then proceed to memorise the addition-and-subtraction table. But the preliminary work done with the aid of objects and the practice in describing what he does will help to lay the foundation of an intelligent use of this table, and the child's actual experience will help him in constructing the table itself. A child is more likely to remember that his score of 5 was 3 more than Jack's 2 than he is to recall items of a series of routine exercise with counters. Moreover, in his eagerness to get at the answer to a little sum arising out of some game the child will tend to discard unnecessary aids to calculation.

25. Practice in simple operations with a variety of numbers.—Skilful teachers have devised numerous ways of giving children plenty of practice in doing sums of graded difficulty. The use of apparatus sometimes adds the play element to the working of a sum ; beads, cards or dominoes may also be used to represent the numbers concerned. Number patterns are particularly

helpful when a number has to be broken into its component parts, e.g. the removal of 3 dots from the 7 exhibited thus clearly leaves 4 dots, though this is less obvious if the pattern be used for 7. In using apparatus for this purpose it should be borne in mind that memorising the fundamental tables has to be completed early in the Junior School and that a habit of counting or of using other aids to finding out the answer should not be associated with calculations of which the results are already confidently known. The practice of visualising numbers and that of "building up tens" may retard memorisation, if they are adopted habitually instead of as helpful or explanatory stages. On the other hand, the importance of groupings in tens and in twelves justifies an early teaching of the composition of both these numbers in the informal stages of building up the complete addition table. The children will co-operate in the right use of apparatus if encouraged to approach little sums in an attitude of experimentation or with a desire to reach results quickly and accurately; sometimes the one and sometimes the other of these attitudes is appropriate to their stage of progress. The dangers of over-dependence on apparatus have been dealt with above in Section 4, page 502.

The range of operations to be dealt with in a practical manner will not necessarily be restricted to addition and subtraction. For a small range of numbers the children may learn to deal with all the four fundamental operations even if they do not get to the stage of making symbolic statements of their results.

26. Range of numbers for which automatic knowledge can be expected.—There will probably be wide differences amongst children, who have reached the

end of the Infant School stage, in the sureness of their knowledge of the addition-and-subtraction table; but normal children should be able to deal practically and orally with all sorts of operations involving numbers not greater than 12 with certainty and rapidity, i.e. without stopping to think. They may not, however, be so sure of the composition of numbers between 12 and 20. With children whose development is retarded, more time must be allowed for fundamental ideas to take root. If such children pass on too quickly to the symbolic statement of little sums, or even to formal practice with counters, they may for a time give the appearance of keeping up with their fellows, but they will pass from stage to stage without forming the mental habits which the graded exercises are designed to foster. Their attainments when they proceed to the Junior School stage will be superficial and their condition much inferior to that of a backward child whose experiences of number have been arranged to suit his stage of development.

27. Counting and notation.—Counting should be extended beyond the range of numbers commonly used by children and they should be encouraged to count in groups as well as in ones, (e.g. they might count the children in a class as they sit in twos, the panes in the window, or the milk bottles in their crates). Children should also practise counting backwards in ones and naming in order the odd as well as the even numbers. Frequent use should be made of apparatus such as the ball frame, which exhibits clearly grouping by tens. This will help to give significance to the number names "ten", "twenty", "thirty", "fourteen", "twenty-four", etc.; and it will be an essential part of the teaching for the children to read and write numbers larger than ten. Before they complete the Infant School stage most children should have learnt to read and write

numbers up to 100 and, in such a number as 14, to appreciate the significance of the 1 and the 4.

28. First ideas of magnitude, measurement, and money.—The children's growing competence in dealing with numbers should be accompanied by increasing exactness in their ideas of magnitude and measurement. The earliest ideas of quantity should be a matter of comparison rather than measurement, words such as "longer" and "heaviest" sufficing at first. Some of the materials given to the children to handle should, however, be so graded in size as to suggest increase by a regular unit. Opportunity should then be given to the children to experiment with improvised measures of all kinds—(strips, hand-breadths, paces for length, metal or cardboard discs for weight, cartons, bottles or toy pails for volume and so forth)—without any attempt being made at first to force standard units on them. In this way rudimentary ideas of measurement will take root and meaning will be given to the use of numbers in such expressions as "a four pound weight", "six inches", "five years old". Moreover, among the children's experiences involving operations or counting should be included some which also involve measures such as those which occur in simple shopping or in counting the groups of five minutes round the clock.

Before children pass out of the Infant School stage they should have had some acquaintance with coins, with measures most commonly used, such as pints and quarts of milk, and with such practical matters as telling the time and using the calendar. They should have become accustomed to the use of scales, weights, measuring-tape and foot-rule, and should have grown familiar with the idea that coins have different values according to their size and the material of which they are made, and that giving change is a common feature of shopping;

for it will not be difficult for the average child to give change in pence from 6*d*. and 1*s*. 0*d*.

In short, the more realistic the school room procedure, the more likely children are to gain clear ideas of measures of quantity and of number relations generally.

III. MATHEMATICS AT THE JUNIOR SCHOOL STAGE

29. Continuation in the Junior School of work begun in the Infant School.—In the Infant School emphasis should fall not so much on the acquirement of a high degree of skill in computation as on bringing out and clarifying such notions of number and magnitude as are implicit in childish experience. The normal child on leaving the Infant School will probably have learnt rhythmic counting—e.g. in twos up to, say, forty,—and will have memorised the addition and subtraction tables up to a total of twelve. He will have been familiarised with multiplication and division, as performed with the aid of objects, though he will not have memorised the multiplication table as such. He will also have become acquainted with the commoner units of weight, length, and capacity, in use around him and he will have an intelligent idea of their use. The value of such training should be judged by the interest aroused and by the range of quantitative experience that has been explored, rather than by the systematic knowledge and skill obtained. It cannot be judged merely by the results of a formal test, especially of a written test. The teacher of the lowest Junior School class should be familiar with the course that each child has followed in the Infant School, so that she will be able to provide equally well for those who have done more or less than the average.

30. The range of work in the Junior School.—The importance of strictly limiting the amount of mechanical work required of each child, so that the balance of the

syllabus may be maintained, has already been emphasised. In the Junior School, however, a certain emphasis must fall on the acquirement of skill in calculation, for the children are at the age when they most readily form simple mental habits, and if the right habits are not formed they are difficult to acquire afterwards. Accuracy should be secured in such "rules" as are taught, but no child should spend so much time in learning rules as to leave no time for simple problems or for the introductory practical and oral work that serves to give the rules meaning.

There are obvious practical advantages in assigning a minimum of knowledge and skill which every normal child will be expected to acquire before the end of the Junior School stage; this might well be settled by local agreement for each group of re-organised schools. A suitable minimum, to be thoroughly and permanently known, will be found suggested in *Senior School Mathematics.* It will be noted that this does not include long multiplication and division of money, weights and measures, or any work with decimals, and further, that restricted range of number is suggested. For example, exercises in weights and measures may well be confined to three-unit quantities, and fractions to simple denominators that will not involve teaching the rules for H.C.F. and L.C.M. It is of course, assumed that the brighter children will attempt more, and there will be a small minority who cannot attempt so much.

Many teachers have been deterred from simplifying their syllabus of Arithmetic, to the extent that is desirable, by the requirements of the Special Place Examination. It is important that the scope of this examination should not be too wide, especially when the papers are set to a complete age group. A suitable range is that suggested in Chapter II of *Senior School Mathematics*. Further, the questions set should not be too

complex or too long. Papers consisting of a large number of short problems ranging from very easy to very difficult have been found to do the work of discrimination at least as well as those consisting of a few difficult ones. A paper in mental arithmetic may have high selective value. When a paper of mechanical exercises is set it should be long enough to test speed as well as accuracy. Moreover, due emphasis should be given to the more important rules taught at the beginning of the Junior School course. The long rules in weights and measures, taught usually in the year preceding the examination, are relatively unimportant.

31. The importance of providing alternative courses.—Throughout this chapter it has been emphasised that Arithmetic is taught in order to be applied, not merely in order that the child may pass tests in formal rules ; and that young children are only able to apply what they are taught, when it has been sufficiently related at the outset to their experience by means of practical work. The younger or duller the child, the wider the basis of experience that is needed for the grasp of each abstract conception. For the "C" child in the Junior School, for example, it may be necessary to base most of the oral and written exercises on real-life problems. The classroom shop for example, may provide most of the exercises in money and weighing, and full use will be made of such real-life experiences as arise naturally in the course of the school life, e.g. planning an excursion or laying out a garden. The "C" child will also profit from much brisk oral work designed to give facility in handling small numbers. Such exercises, with the more formal practical work, which will also have to be emphasised, take a great deal of time. His formal written work on the other hand may have to be limited by omitting all or nearly all the long rules, by using only small numbers or two-unit quantities, and the simplest

fractions. And it will have to be graded much less steeply than is customary, so that difficulties may be taken up one at a time and overcome before passing on. With such children in particular it is not only a waste of time but a source of great discouragement to teach formal rules that are not carried to the stage of working accurately and that will probably never be applied.

Even where brighter children are concerned interest and variety may be given to the work by the judicious use of catalogues and railway and other time-tables and of games, zzles and problems that arouse their interest.

32. The tables and table-learning.—The practical work of the Infant School will be continued, and apparatus will be used to bring out the meaning of essential operations: e.g. that multiplication is an operation with groups and not with units,—(a fact which the child who builds up tables by moving objects one by one is apt to miss); how " 17 + 8 " and " 27 + 8 " follow at once from " 7 + 8 "; how the different multiplication tables are related to one another, e.g. the tables of fours and eights; how they are related to the number series, as shown for example by the patterns made on the number chart by the tables of nines and twelves. In short, the purpose of the practical work is not merely to discover the values of the items, (e.g. that " 6 × 7 " = 42), but also to bring out other relations. Unless the teacher is alert to its wider purpose, table building may be as mechanical as table repetition.

The four fundamental tables have to be memorised. Every child, if he is to avoid wasting time in subsequent work, must reach a high standard of accuracy, not far from 100 per cent., in the items. For example, by the end of the first year of the Junior School the addition-and-subtraction table up to a total of 20 should have become automatic. Points worth noting are that the

addition table is at least as important as the multiplication table; that such a combination as "31−27" follows at once from "11−7"; that memorising a table means being able to recall each item as required, not merely in table order; that attention to pattern, e.g. that of the table of nines, greatly facilitates learning; that the traditional order and range of the tables learnt is not necessarily the best. There is much to be said, for example, for learning the table of twelves before the tables of sevens and elevens; also for memorising the tables of fourteen and sixteen when they are required in connection with weights.

Table learning should be supplemented by oral exercises designed to give general facility in calculation (e.g. exercises in rapid successive addition), in finding as many pairs of factors as possible for a given number, in recognising the prime numbers (e.g. between 60 and 70) etc.

33. The simple rules.—The weight of evidence suggests that accurate subtraction is best attained by the method of equal addition. Many teachers also favour approaching short division by the long division arrangement, thus showing the essential unity of the two methods. It is now generally accepted that the best method in long multiplication is to begin with the left-hand digit of the multiplier. In all the rules numbers involving one or more zero figures give much trouble and call for special attention.

34. The compound rules: money, weights and measures.—It should not be assumed that all children have been sufficiently familiarised in the Infant School even with the commoner coins and units. Some, for example, will need teaching how to tell the time or to use a pair of scales. All will need practical work to familiarise them with less common units and their relations. If

the children are to have the varied individual experiences which will ensure a real understanding of weights and measures, it is obvious that there must be adequate equipment of the right type. At the Junior School stage there should be rulers exactly twelve inches long marked in fourths, eighths and tenths, without angle measurements, yard sticks, plywood cut to one foot square size and also to one inch square, weights of $\frac{1}{4}$ oz. to 1 lb., and separate measures of $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, 1 and 2 pint capacity. Children should also know certain useful and familiar measures that will serve as standards where estimates are made. For example, a child may know his own height or the height of the classroom door, his own weight or how much he can easily lift, how long it takes him to walk a mile, or how far it is from home to school. His attention may be drawn to familiar measures in common use, e.g. that a cricket pitch is one chain, that three pennies weigh an ounce, and that the school milk bottle contains a third of a pint. The teacher who is familiar with the history of our weights and measures will be able to draw much interesting material from it.

The compound rules involve a new operation, unit-changing—changing one step up to a larger unit and one step down to a smaller. This process, though no more than an extension of the notation principle, is of fundamental importance, and needs careful treatment. It not only forms the basis of all the rules, but its intelligent application saves much time in solving problems. The meaning of unit-changing should be carefully demonstrated, by using objects and diagrams where possible, in relation to all the tables. And before learning, for example, the formal rule for reduction of money, oral practice should be given in solving small number exercises involving changing shillings to sixpences, sixpences to half-crowns, pounds to florins etc. The first rule work should consist of two-unit exercises arising out of oral work.

(a) *The money rules.*—Shopping exercises, which may be graded in difficulty so that a wide range of calculation is involved, are invaluable for providing an interesting approach to the money rules.

The pence-table need not be separately learnt, if the tables of twelves and its pattern on the number chart are well known. Counting backwards and forwards by steps of 3d., $1\frac{1}{2}$d., 2s. 6d. etc. is a useful exercise.

In long multiplication and long division of money and other compound quantities the superiority of the " column " method is now established.

(b) *Weights and measures.*—Most of the applications to everyday life situations involve quantities of no more than two units, and the teaching of the rules should reflect this fact. Few problems involve quantities of more than three units. The " reduction " rules should not be taught until unit-changing is thoroughly grasped. Children who are taught them too soon and too thoroughly often handle the units met with in problems very unintelligently.

The factors and properties of certain numbers that occur often in relation to our English weights and measures are worthy of some special study, e.g. 112 and 1760. Further, certain tables lead naturally to the more important groups of fractions. The statement " one gallon = 8 pints " easily leads to its correlative " one pint = $\frac{1}{8}$ gallon." Similarly, the $\frac{1}{12}$ notation may be introduced in relation to shillings and pence or feet and inches.

35. Fractions. — Fractions should be introduced gradually through practical exercises. The work might begin with the halves, quarters, eighths family, and go on to the thirds, sixths, twelfths family. So long as the work is confined to such simple families, problems and

operations involving fractions should be based on commonsense methods rather than on formal rules. The extension of notation to sixteenths, twenty-fourths, and of fifths, tenths, and hundredths as an introduction to decimals and percentages at a later stage will probably include as much as most normal children can thoroughly master by the age of 11. The relation of unit fractional parts to simple division should be understood, e.g. that $\frac{1}{4}$ of 23 = $\frac{23}{4}$. Though the course may be extended for brighter children to include fractions with larger denominators that may be treated by the factor method of finding H.C.F. and L.C.M., it is more important at first to work a wide variety of exercises with a small range of fractions than to learn the formal rules of manipulation.

If the emphasis is placed on the intelligent use of fractions rather than on learning the rules, the importance of adequate practical work will be realised. Some standard apparatus will probably be needed. One useful type of individual apparatus can be made from stout strawboard or plywood by taking strips 12″ by 1″, marking one whole strip into 24 equal parts, cutting the others into 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, and 12 equal pieces respectively and labelling the pieces on one side, some in figures and some in words, e.g. "$\frac{1}{3}$" or "one third." By matching and super-imposing various pieces the child can discover for himself the equivalence of fractions and can easily state orally (though not at first in writing) that $1 = \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{6} + \frac{3}{12}$; that $\frac{1}{3}$ is greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ by $\frac{1}{12}$; that $\frac{1}{4}$ may be divided into 3 equal parts, each of which is $\frac{1}{12}$; that four times $\frac{1}{8}$ is $\frac{4}{8}$; that $\frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{8} = \frac{11}{24}$; and so on. Measurement, especially measurement involving parts of an inch, is especially valuable. Enough of this should be included in the course for both boys and girls to form a basis for the appreciation of both fractional and decimal notation.

Decimals, if taught, will arise naturally as alternative notations for tenths and hundredths, and will be illustrated by ruler work. The treatment of hundredths, however, involves estimation on the ruler, and other apparatus may be preferred. Children should know the decimal equivalents of halves, quarters and fifths. The decimal notation can be illustrated through addition and subtraction but the formal rules for multiplication and division of decimals are best left to the Senior School.

36. The connexion of Mathematics with other subjects.—The other subjects of the curriculum, e.g. Nature Study, Geography, Needlecraft and Handwork, will provide occasions and material that can be used as a basis for Geometry, Mensuration and Graph-work, such as measurements of all kinds, and practice in estimating; drawing simple shapes and patterns with the aid of ruler, set square, compass, squared paper, etc.; drawing rough diagrams and plans, not to scale; reading and drawing simple maps and plans to scale; compass-bearings and direction, involving the right angle and very simple fractions of it, but not the use of the protractor; reading and constructing simple graphs, e.g. a temperature chart or weather record.

It is for the teacher of Mathematics to discover what material is available, and to see how far it can be made to serve his own purposes. For example, he may teach the correct use of such geometrical terms as *right angle, perpendicular, vertical,* etc. in describing it. He may use it to illustrate mensuration e.g. the finding of areas. It is important, however, that in treating area problems (e.g. the formula for the area of a rectangle), the material used should be such as brings out the notion of surface area, i.e. it is better to cut out pieces of paper for the rectangle and the units of area, than to draw rectangular outlines.

Some of the diagram work may be introductory to the graph. The lengths or areas of diagrams may represent quantities that are not necessarily spatial, e.g. the different speeds of ships, engines, etc. may be represented by pictures of different lengths. This diagrammatic work may be used to help children to grasp the relative size of large numbers.

37. The importance of tests.—It is difficult in Arithmetic to assess the value of teaching without some form of test. It is probable that standardised tests, enabling each teacher to compare the results that he gets in any part of the subject with the "norm" for children of given age, will become increasingly available in the future. Such tests, if judiciously used and with due regard to circumstances, may be very helpful in setting a standard or in maintaining it from year to year.

Tests are useful not only to determine whether proper standards, e.g. of accuracy or speed, are attained at each stage. If properly constructed, they may be used to diagnose the specific mental habits which each child has formed or failed to form.

IV. MATHEMATICS AT THE SENIOR SCHOOL STAGE

A. INTRODUCTORY

38. Alternative courses desirable.—The recent publication of the Board's pamphlet *Senior School Mathematics** makes it unnecessary to consider here the general problems relating to the teaching of Mathematics. Teachers are advised to make a preliminary study of that pamphlet before undertaking any thorough study

---

* Board of Education Educational Pamphlet No 101. printed and published by H.M. Stationery Office, London, price 1s. 0d.

of this section of the Handbook, the main purpose of which is to deal more particularly with the preparation of schemes and with actual teaching methods.

The practice of dividing the Senior School into two, three or four streams has become common. In the selection of pupils for the various streams arithmetical attainments will have carried considerable weight. For the sake of convenience, it will be assumed that the "A," "B" and "C" streams commonly found in the Senior School contain respectively, pupils of above average, average, and below average mathematical ability.

These wide differences in ability to which detailed reference is made in §39 and §40 of this Chapter, must be met by syllabuses which differ not only in content, but also in outlook and treatment. Each school therefore will normally provide at least two alternative courses in Mathematics.

The problems which arise in connexion with the teaching of "A" and "B" pupils are here dealt with together, but where topics and methods are more suited to the abilities of the "B" than of the "A" pupils, this is indicated. The suggestions regarding the teaching of "C" pupils are dealt with separately.

B. EARLY STAGES OF THE COURSE

39. The link between the Senior School and the Junior School.—The arithmetical attainments of pupils on entering a Senior School will vary considerably. Some of the pupils may not have covered the minimum syllabus indicated in §16 of *Senior School Mathematics*. The various tables and processes may be imperfectly known, roundabout and crude habits may have been learned and reasonable facility may not have been acquired. There will also be differences in the extent and variety of their practical experience.

Carefully designed tests should be applied to find out what each pupil knows, and can do, and where weaknesses lie. Individual records of the results will guide the teacher in prescribing the appropriate remedy. In multiplication, for example, a pupil who knows his tables may yet make continual mistakes in "carrying": exercises should be designed to repair the real weakness, and more time than is necessary should not be spent on working long multiplication sums. Remedial exercises should not be applied indiscriminately to all members of a class. Reasonable facility in simple calculation and a fair knowledge of everyday weights and measures are all that is required at this stage. Methods should be the same as those taught at the Junior School stage, and where more than one school contributes pupils to a Senior School, uniformity of method should be agreed upon, if confusion and waste of time are to be avoided at the Senior School stage.

In revising and consolidating the foundation work of the Junior School it is essential that interest should be maintained. If a rule is imperfectly known, the skilful teacher will devise a fresh method of attack and will make sure that the pupil sees the need for any remedial exercise before he attempts it. Varied oral work, the introduction of a wide variety of real problems, team contests and the keeping of records by the pupils themselves are some of the ways of arousing and maintaining interest.

The work of consolidation should be spread over the first year, as the teacher finds it necessary.

40. Extension of the course in Pure Arithmetic.— Throughout the first year the pupils should spend a large part of the time in covering the remaining topics in "Pure Arithmetic" outlined in §47 of *Senior School Mathematics*, so that in the later years they may devote their attention in Arithmetic mainly to "Practical

Topics" as explained in Chapter IV, §§29—39, of that pamphlet. This will be possible with "B" pupils if the numbers involved are kept small and the problems are easy.

(a) *Multiplication and Division of money, lengths, times, weights and capacities by numbers greater than* 12. As these rules are relatively unimportant they need only be learnt by the brighter pupils.

(b) *Vulgar Fractions.*—The introduction of unusual vulgar fractions with large denominators, and the manipulation and simplification of long fractions are now not so common as formerly Even for the "A" pupils the rule for finding the L.C.M should not figure prominently It may be avoided altogether for the "B" pupils, if the work is mainly confined to the units found on the foot-rule used in craft-work.

Fractions should be associated with money and the standard weights and measures, and with groups of objects as well as with abstract numbers

(c) *Decimal Fractions.*—The decimal notation is employed in daily life in measuring with a rule marked in tenths, a clinical thermometer, a cyclometer or a surveyor's chain. As the need, however, of decimals of more than two or three places seldom occurs in everyday life, the introduction of long and complex decimal fractions is useless and wasteful.

If the pupils are familiar with the idea that a vulgar fraction is a way of expressing a division, the conversion of a vulgar fraction into a decimal is an easy step The pupils should know the decimal equivalents of $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{3}{4}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{3}{8}$, $\frac{5}{8}$, and $\frac{7}{8}$.

In multiplication and division the main objective is to teach the pupils where to place the decimal point

in the answer. The easiest and safest rule in multiplication is to ignore the decimal points, to multiply as in ordinary multiplication, and then to insert the point in the answer after counting the total number of decimal places in the two numbers being multiplied. This brings the multiplication of decimals into line with ordinary multiplication. If each of the two numbers to be multiplied is small and has only one place of decimals, the pupils will place the point in the correct position in the answer in accordance with what they know about the size of the numbers ; but the rule can also be made intelligible by means of squared paper marked in inches and tenths of an inch.

The easiest and safest rule in division of decimals is to set down the sum in fractional form, with numerator and denominator. make the denominator a whole number, adjust the position of the point in the numerator and then proceed as in ordinary long division.

The " standard form " method of division is preferred by some teachers on the ground that a rough approximation to the answer is easily obtainable. The sum is first set down as in the above method, and the decimal point is adjusted so that the denominator has only one digit before the point.

The selection of the method to be used in multiplication and division must be left to the teacher ; provided the method adopted is made intelligible to the pupils, their proficiency in using it is then the final test of the teaching. Whatever method is chosen, it should be used throughout the school.

Some reference should be made in the teaching to the Metric System, but the extent to which the topic is developed will be largely determined by the use made of it in the Science course. There is no need to introduce the Metric System as applied to money or the decimalisation of English money and its converse process until

the rules are required in the " Practical Topics " taken later in the course.

It is desirable to discuss what is meant by " degree of accuracy " in measurement, and, with " A " pupils at any rate, care should be taken to ensure that calculations based upon measurement are not carried to a number of significant figures clearly unjustified by the data. No elaborate estimate of the reliability of results is necessary. For example, in the calculation of the area of a rectangle from measurements which are correct to the nearest tenth of an inch it is easy to identify the figures in the multiplication, which arise wholly or in part from approximate figures in the data; the conclusions can thence be drawn that it would be misleading to use the last figure of the answer, i.e. in this case, the hundredths of a square inch, and that some of the other figures are more or less doubtful. Similarly it can be shown that, if an approximate decimal form of the value of π is used (for example, in calculating the circumference of a circle from measurement) the number of figures which it is useful to retain in the value of π depends on the number of significant figures in the measure of the diameter.

(d) *Ratio, Percentage and Rate.*—One way of comparing two quantities of the same kind, e.g. two heights, is to use the vulgar fraction or ratio.

The method of percentage enables two or more fractions to be compared at a glance. For example, where classes are of different sizes, the ratios of absentees to the number on roll may be more readily compared by expressing each ratio as a percentage or decimal than in fractional or ratio form. Percentage should, therefore, be taught in close association with fractions and decimals. The method should be applied to class attendances, lengths, areas, weights and other measurable quantities. Its application to money transactions

should be left until the pupils are studying the practical topic of " Savings " later in the course.

The essential difference between a rate and a ratio is not always clearly understood. The former is also a comparison between two quantities, but the quantities are of different kinds ; and whereas a ratio is an abstract fraction, a rate always involves a unit, e.g. feet per second, gallons per minute, pounds per annum.

(e) *Proportion.*—The unitary method will have been used at the Junior School stage. Later, however, the method becomes cumbersome, often involves absurd statements, and tends to obscure the fact that proportion is a comparison of two ratios. It should, therefore, be superseded in the Senior School by the " fractional method."

The fundamental idea underlying proportion, viz. that of one quantity varying either directly or inversely with another, is best taught through a wide variety of real and, wherever possible, practical examples which should not be confined to Arithmetic. The subject should be linked up with " height problems " in Surveying and " area problems " in Map-reading, and with the relation between the dimensions and volumes of similar solids. Other illustrations may be drawn from Science, e.g. from experiments on the extension of a loaded spring, and on the variation in volume of a given mass of air under different pressures. The " A " pupils should, later in the course, learn to draw the graphs of related quantities, to read such graphs, to apply numerical and graphical tests for proportionality and to express a proportion by means of a formula. Further reference to this is made in §41 (b) below.

(f) *Averages.*—There is no need to define the term " average " for the pupils. The underlying idea can be understood by them after working a

few examples in connexion with such familiar matters as attendances, temperatures, rainfall and ages, weights and heights of pupils in the class. The idea of " average reading " in connexion with linear and angular measurements is also important. The length of a classroom, for example, should be measured by several pupils and, after ignoring those readings which are obviously inaccurate, the average reading taken as being a more reliable estimate of the length than any of the individual readings. Frequent use should be made of the idea in outdoor Surveying.

(g) *Factors, Square root.*—It is often necessary in calculations arising in mensuration to determine the square root of a number. The process should be taught as the need arises. The notion of squares and square roots may be given at an early age: when pupils have learnt that " $7 \times 7 = 49$," it is easy to teach them the idea and notation of " $7^2 = 49$ " and " $\sqrt{49} = 7$." Practice should be given in finding the square roots of numbers which are readily resolvable into factors, and in making rough approximations to the square root of numbers by comparison with known squares and by checking through multiplication.

The pupils should also be made familiar with the use of a " table of squares " and a " curve of squares " for estimating both squares and square roots. It will be desirable, with " A " boys at all events, to teach the rule for the extraction of square roots. The rule is easy and may subsequently be illustrated by a diagram.

The notion of cube root and the recognition of the cube roots of the smaller numbers may be dealt with in a way similar to that adopted in the case of square root, but the rule for extraction of cube roots should not be taught. Pupils who have arrived at the stage when

cube roots of more difficult numbers are required should be trained to use Tables of Logarithms.

41. Further new work in the First Year.—Some form of new work apart from that in Arithmetic should be attempted from the outset of the course if the pupils' expectations on entering the Senior School are to be realised. Concurrently with work aiming at consolidating the foundations and with the teaching of fresh rules in Pure Arithmetic should go exercises in Geometry and Mensuration, and in Graphic Representation of Statistics.

(a) *Geometry and Mensuration through practical activities: earlier work.*—The pupils will already have acquired a foundation of geometrical notions and a simple knowledge of shape. This preparatory knowledge is best extended through purposeful activities which give meaning to the work and which stimulate the pupils' interest and arouse in them a feeling of need for further knowledge and skill. Outdoor exercises in Surveying are eminently suitable for this purpose. Practical Drawing in connexion with Bookcraft, Woodwork and other forms of Craftwork also provides opportunities for giving the pupils a knowledge of Geometrical facts. By itself, however, Practical Work is not sufficient to develop definite geometrical ideas. The experiences need to be analysed and adequately discussed, and the new facts and principles made explicit. Supplementary concrete problems, bearing on the work in hand, are desirable, and may even be found necessary to assure mastery of the facts.

The following are some types of exercise in Surveying, which will be found suitable in the early stages of Geometry and Mensuration:

(1) Measuring distances in the playground and in the playing-field by means of a tape-measure;

finding the length of a pupil's pace ; (2) estimating lengths of roads, fields, etc. ; verification of estimates ; (3) drawing plans of classrooms and finding their areas ; (4) drawing a plan of the playing-field, using chain and cross-staff, and finding the area in square chains and acres ; (5) drawing a simple plan of a winding road using sighting compass and tape-measure ; (6) levelling of rising and undulating roads, using an improvised levelling-sight and levelling staff : plotting level sections.

The rules for the mensuration of solids may also be taught through Practical Drawing in connexion with Woodwork. The actual handling and measuring of objects by the pupils themselves should form the foundation of the instruction.

There is for girls no one practical subject which takes the place of Woodwork in giving interest and purpose to their course of Mensuration and Geometry. The girls' course will be generally less extensive than that of the boys and will be drawn from a greater variety of fields.

Further reference to the teaching of Geometry is made in the latter part of this section, and details regarding the approach to Practical Drawing appear in §97 and §98 of *Senior School Mathematics*, under the heading " Mechanical Drawing."

(b) *Graphic Representation of Statistics.*—The graphic representation of Statistics involves such simple ideas that it may profitably be taught to " B " as well as " A " pupils. The method should be introduced at an early stage both because of its intrinsic interest and because of the use to which graphs may be put in the teaching of Geography, Gardening, etc. The treatment suggested here is more exhaustive than is possible in the first year

or with "B" pupils but is given somewhat fully for the sake of continuity.

The reading of pictorial and bar graphs of school attendances, rainfall, wages, etc., forms an easy approach to the subject, and it is an easy step to the more abstract form of graphic representation, namely, the smooth curve graph. A brief explanation is all that is needed to enable the pupils to supply information contained in bar graphs.

A smooth curve graph may similarly be introduced and the pupils asked to supply information contained in it. Elaborate explanations at this stage tend to cloud the issue and waste time Statistical graphs relating to temperature readings, barometer readings, and ages and heights or ages and weights of pupils are appropriate for this purpose, but the Geography teacher will be ready to supply others.

The use of interpolation in finding probable values, where one of the observations is missing, can readily be shown by means of such graphs as age-and-weight and age-and-height graphs. Whether or no a comparison should be made at this stage or later between two such graphs as a barometric height graph and a graph relating to the area of circles and their radii, to bring out the validity of interpolation, will depend upon the mathematical ability of the pupil.

The idea of maximum and minimum values will readily follow from such questions as "What is the greatest length?", "What is the shortest length?", when applied to a graph representing the varying lengths of the shadow cast by a vertical stick at different times throughout the year.

The pupils' attention may be directed quite early to the idea of "rate of change." It is convenient to introduce this by examining actual changes in graphs of

discontinuous quantities, in which the points do not lie on a smooth curve but are joined by straight lines in order to show the changes more clearly. Graphs relating to imports, exports, prices and wages are suitable for this purpose. "In which year or years were the exports greater than those of the preceding year? In which less?" "In which year was the increase or decrease greatest or least?" are examples of questions which will lead the pupils to associate the greater or smaller changes with the corresponding greater or less steepness of the lines joining the points. The general idea of associating rate of change with steepness of a continuous graph will follow easily, if the earliest example chosen shows strongly contrasting slopes at different points and refers to practical matters thoroughly well understood. For example, if a curve of growth shows any marked irregularity of rate of growth, this will generally be associated with the steepness of the curve. The drawing of freehand graphs from dictation will help still further to clarify and enforce the idea. At a later stage it will be possible to extend the idea of "rate of change" to smooth-curve graphs in which the rate of change at any point is measured by the slope of the tangent to the curve at that point.

It is essential that the pupils should come to realise the advantages that graphic representation of statistics possesses over the tabular form. When statistical graphs have been taught, use should be made of them by teachers of other subjects, and the pupils themselves should be encouraged to use the method on all suitable occasions. There is need for a greater variety of graphs than is usually found in schools: the teacher should gradually collect a portfolio of interesting graphs. Practice in reading graphs is even more important than drawing them. The pupils should, therefore, be frequently asked to give a description of the "story"

contained in the graph, whether it is one which they have constructed for themselves or one derived from some other source.

The drawing of graphic ready-reckoners is also appropriate at this stage, and should deal with such matters as numerical equivalents, rates of exchange, gas and electricity costs, simple interest, Centigrade and Fahrenheit readings and squares and cubes of numbers. With very bright pupils, the construction of graphic ready-reckoners in connexion with formulæ might profitably be taken, but the distinction between graphs of statistics and those graphs obtained from formulæ should come at the appropriate stage in the treatment of the formula.

C. LATER STAGES OF THE COURSE

42. Practice in the fundamental operations and problems illustrating them.—The groundwork of Pure Arithmetic will normally be covered by the end of the first year even by the "B" pupils, provided that only small numbers and simple problems are involved. During that period efforts will have been concentrated on consolidating the work of the Junior School stage, on extending the fundamental processes to fractions, decimals, etc., and on giving the pupils practice in solving problems dealing with familiar matters and designed to illustrate the use of those processes. No scheme for the "B" pupils can, however, be considered satisfactory if it reduces the needful amount and variety of practical experiences and of easy problems, or sacrifices reasonable facility in computation, in order to cover the whole of the groundwork in one year

So necessary is this facility and accuracy in computation that during the remainder of the course the pupils should have regular practice in reviewing and mastering the Arithmetic of the first year. "B" pupils may need

more than one period a week for practice of this kind. These lessons should be kept fresh and interesting. A typical period might devote, say, the first ten minutes to brisk oral problem work or to mechanical exercises designed to develop speed and accuracy. The practice should be varied either by keeping the exercises to one topic or, at other times, by introducing exercises from different topics. The remainder of the lesson should be devoted to written work. In selecting examples, the aim in view should not be forgotten. Elaborate, artificial and complex sums are unprofitable, they test perseverance and patience rather than mastery and accuracy, and they often induce discouragement through failure. Interest will be added to the work, if pupils are encouraged to keep graphic records of their performances. In revision work of this kind there is no need to differentiate between the needs of boys and girls.

43. Applied Arithmetic. Selection of Practical Topics.—The new material for study in the later years will be grouped round such practical topics as seem likely to be of most value in the domestic, social and economic life of the pupils when they leave school.

Some of the topics will be of interest and of use to both boys and girls, but others to boys or to girls only. Many of the topics may fittingly be studied by the "B" as well as the "A" pupils, but the extent to which a topic is developed will depend upon the capabilities of the pupils. Topics will also be selected that are appropriate to the conditions and environment of the school. For example, where Poultry-keeping is one of the practical activities in a rural school, the mathematics of this subject could well form one of the topics. It will probably be neither possible nor desirable to treat a topic exhaustively in one year: the better plan is to deal with the topics concentrically.

The following are examples ot the kind of "Money Transaction" topics which might be made the basis of exercises:

(1) The Family Income and Expenditure; (2) Purchasing and Planning a House; (3) Family Savings and Investments; (4) A motor Cycle—buying, insuring; running costs and records; (5) The Money of the Local Authority; (6) The Money of the Nation.

The method of treatment accorded each topic is just as important as the right selection of topics. If they are used mainly as a means of obtaining further practice in arithmetical operations, they will have little educational value in training the pupils in that type of thinking and quantitative judgment which the topics are largely designed to develop. The aim will be further obscured, if the material is taken ready-made from a text-book. It will, therefore, be important to maintain a proper balance between preparatory work with oral or dictated problems and written exercises.

The preparatory work should usually consist of a general survey of the topic or of the particular situation arising out of it, discussion of the method to be adopted, and the collection of any necessary information or data. Use should sometimes be made of catalogues, daily papers, year books or time-tables.

The treatment of the topic "Family Savings and Investments" might take the form of discussion of, and problems on:

(*a*) The Post Office Savings Bank. Information on how to deposit and withdraw money. Rate of interest and how calculated; (*b*) Local Banks. Deposit and Current accounts, Interest and Commission; (*c*) National Savings Certificates; (*d*) Insurance for children, Endowments at specified

ages, Old Age Pensions, Insurance against accidents, National Health and Unemployment Insurances ; (*e*) Methods of Hire Purchase, Money-lenders and their charges ; (*f*) Renting or buying a house, Mortgages, Building Societies, (*g*) Investments suitably treated for young pupils, e.g. a continuous study of the shares of a well-known firm.

The mathematics of Poultry-keeping could be treated under such headings as :

(*a*) Housing ; (*b*) Foodstuffs ; (*c*) Produce ; (*d*) Accounts.

The treatment of the topic "Housing" might include :

(*a*) Study of commercial price lists of houses and equipment. Estimating amount and cost of materials for constructing and equipping a home-made poultry house. Comparison of catalogue and own-construction costs ; (*b*) Measuring houses and runs, with simple calculations on areas and capacity, allowing 3 square feet floor space per bird, and 200 birds to the acre ; (*c*) Drawing a plan and elevation of a poultry house. Plan of farm lay-out ; (*d*) Calculations on capacity of houses and runs relating to intensive, semi-intensive and free range systems of poultry-keeping ; (*e*) Comparison of results from different systems tried in the locality.

44. Geometry and Mensuration in connexion with outdoor activities.—The general aims of the teaching of Geometry are dealt with at length in *Senior School Mathematics*.

Outdoor exercises in Surveying and Practical Drawing in connexion with Bookcraft, Woodwork and Metalwork afford an excellent means of teaching and applying the principles of Geometry through practical activities.

Useful supplementary exercises can be drawn from concrete problems in Map-reading, " Buried Treasures," Navigation and Compass Bearings, Latitude and Longitude. Gardening and Housecraft can be used to illustrate the application of geometric principles.

Already in the first year the teacher will have used Surveying as one of the best means of teaching the principles of Geometry in an interesting and a systematic form. It is suitable for boys and girls, for urban as well as rural schools, and many of the very easy exercises are within the powers of the less able pupils.

Unity and coherence are added to such a course if the problems are grouped under practical topics. Chain-surveying, traverse surveying, the measurement of inaccessible heights, surveying by triangulation, levelling and contouring, and the measurement of inaccessible distances have in many schools proved suitable topics. Practically all the necessary instruments can be constructed in the Handicraft room, and some can be improvised from quite simple material.

Within each of the foregoing topics it is possible to devise many practical problems which can be arranged systematically and in order of difficulty. It is not advisable to treat one or more topics exhaustively in any one year of the course. They should be dealt with on the concentric plan, easy problems from each topic appearing in the first year and more difficult ones in each of the succeeding years.

The following is an illustration of the development of a practical topic, but no attempt is made to allocate the problems to particular years. The suggested treatment is somewhat exhaustive, and only in a school where Geometry is a special feature would all the problems be covered in the three years.

The Measurement of Heights

(i) Accessible objects including flagstaffs, buildings, and telegraph poles.

(1) Finding heights by means of: (*a*) a shadow stick; (*b*) a geometric square; (*c*) an Astrolabe; (*d*) a 45° set square (various methods); a 60° set square; (*e*) a plumb-bob clinometer; (*f*) an optical spirit-level clinometer; (*g*) a theodolite; (*h*) a sextant.

(2) Finding heights by means of various forms of direct height-finders.

(ii) Inaccessible objects including chimneys, steeples, etc., where the base-line points towards the object but does not extend up to it.

Finding heights by means of (*a*) a clinometer; (*b*) a theodolite; (*c*) various forms of direct height-finders.

(iii.) Inaccessible objects: using any base line that does not point towards the object.

Finding heights by means of (*a*) angle-meter and clinometer; (*b*) a theodolite.

Nearly all the problems included in the above list involve exercises in scale drawing, while some lend themselves to numerical and trigonometrical calculations. The latter should be reserved until the pupils have made some advance in the construction and use of algebraic formulæ.

Every problem should be designed either to introduce a new principle or to provide further practice in applying one already known. Before introducing a problem, the teacher should have clearly in mind the principle he intends to teach and should see that the new principle is made explicit before leaving the problem. For example, finding the height of a flagstaff in the playground might be used to teach the fact that similar

triangles have the ratios of corresponding sides equal. The pupils should come to realise the nature of the problem by having their attention drawn to the shadow cast by the flagstaff. Experiments with three or four shadow sticks of different lengths should follow. They should be first stood vertically in the sun, so that the pupils may observe the varying lengths of the shadows. The sticks should next be arranged in a straight line so that the ends of their shadows coincide. By laying a long stick from the end of the shadow and touching the tops of the sticks the pupils will observe that a number of right-angled triangles are formed of the same shape.

Discussion on similar triangles should follow. By measuring the shadow sticks and their respective shadows, the ratio property of similar triangles can be verified by the pupils. Since the flagstaff and its shadow form the two sides of a right-angled triangle similar to those cast by the shadow sticks, the ratio of the lengths of the flagstaff and its shadow will equal the ratio previously found. The pupils will thus be able to calculate the height of the flagstaff. The new principle will then be expressed in words and committed to memory. Further practice in the application of the principle will then be provided.

45. Geometry and mensuration in connexion with indoor crafts.—In the construction and decoration of books and in the making of working drawings in connexion with Woodwork and Metalwork real problems arise, which may be used to teach many of the elementary principles of Geometry. Most, if not all, of the fundamental constructions, such as bisecting an angle, dividing a straight line into a number of equal parts will frequently occur. The properties of parallel lines, of plane figures, of symmetrical and similar figures, and of circles can well be taught through such work. The making of

Geometric designs and rhythmic patterns can also be used for the purpose.

In making hand-sketches and ruled drawings the pupils should obtain their own measurements, and should frequently be set to work calculations on the size of the objects and on the amount and cost of the material. Further detailed suggestions appear in §98 and §99 of *Senior School Mathematics* under the heading of " Mechanical Drawing."

Material for additional exercises in Mensuration are provided in rural areas by such things as stacks, potato clamps, and tree-trunks. Urban schools, especially those in industrial areas, should be furnished with many suitable objects such as metal washers and nuts, small pieces of piping, metal plates and ball-bearings which may be used to provide a wide range of purposeful practical exercises.

When the pupils have made some advance in Practical Drawing, they should be allowed to construct cardboard models of regular solids, and the " A " pupils might attempt more difficult exercises involving sections of regular solids towards the end of the course.

46. The use of algebraic methods and graphic representation in numerical calculations in Arithmetic, Geometry and Science.—(a) *The construction and use of formulæ.*—Algebraic methods are best introduced through the construction of formulæ in connexion with simple rules in Arithmetic and Mensuration. In this way meaning and purpose are at once given to the methods. They should not be introduced too early or abruptly, as the step of making a generalised verbal statement in Arithmetic is difficult for all but the more able pupils ; but once made this statement can readily be changed into the algebraic form. From time to time during the early stages of the Arithmetic courses opportunity will thus be taken in oral lessons to arrive

at generalised statements and to translate them into algebraic form, until the pupils are thoroughly familiar with the procedure.

The formula should be regarded merely as a piece of shorthand, providing a handy way of writing a rule. It should be first expressed in equational form and the important words should then be replaced by their initial letters, thus :

Area of a rectangle equals length multiplied by breadth :

$$A = L \text{ multiplied by } B.$$
$$= LB.$$

As the course in Mathematics proceeds, the pupils should always be allowed to translate rules of this kind into the shorthand of simple formulæ. The multiplication, division and index notation will be introduced as the need arises.

Exercises in substitution should follow the construction of formulæ in order to develop speed and accuracy in their use, and from the results of formulæ involving two quantities the pupils will occasionally construct graphic ready reckoners. Practice will follow in reading and interpreting simple formulæ.

Next the pupils should be shown how it is possible by transposing a formula to obtain new formulæ. Thus, by memorising one rule in shorthand form, there is no need to memorise others that may be obtained from it. For example, the formula for the area of a triangle is $A = \frac{1}{2}\, bh$. The new formulæ to be derived from it are $b = \frac{2A}{h}$ and $h = \frac{2A}{b}$. If these formulæ are stated verbally, two new rules will thus have been derived from the original rule. The step of deriving new formulæ is a difficult one and may only be fully understood by the brighter pupils.

Most pupils delight in solving "missing number" problems and these can be used to introduce simple equations. They also afford practice in converting verbal statements into algebraic form and in transforming equations.

Factorisation or rearrangement of various simple types of formulæ—chiefly in connexion with numerical calculations in Mensuration, such as "$A = Ka \pm Kb$"; "$A = Ka^2 - Kb^2$"; and "$A = (a \pm b)^2$"—can be readily appreciated as a time and labour-saving device of wide application. In each case the enquiry should arise out of a practical problem and be illustrated geometrically.

(b) *The formula and its graphic representation.*—In some Elementary Schools, those, for example, which send on an appreciable proportion of their pupils to Evening Technical Schools of certain types, or retain their pupils for a fourth year, it may be profitable to proceed further with the brighter pupils. There is no need to teach any algebraic processes except in so far as they are actually needed in the solution of applied problems. The introduction of any but the simplest exercises in addition, subtraction, brackets etc. should be avoided. The subsequent work should deal with the formula and its graphic representations.

The distinction between graphs of statistics and graphs obtained from formulæ should be made clear to the pupils and lead them to the idea of related quantities. In order to give the pupils a basis of comparison between different types of functionality, a direct proportion graph and an inverse proportion graph should be compared with a curve of squares and a curve of cubes. Only the two simple types of functionality namely, direct and inverse proportion, however, need be dealt with in detail at this stage, and it is essential that these should be taught through concrete problems. The

connexion between a direct proportion formula and its corresponding graph should follow. This means that pupils should be able not only to draw a graph from its formula but translate a graph into its formula. It will then be possible for them to obtain working formulæ from experimental data obtained in the Science room. Inverse proportion graphs and formulæ should be treated and used in the same way.

The pupils will come to associate a straight line graph through the origin with direct proportion and with formulæ of the type $y = kx$ and a rectangular hyperbola with inverse proportion and with formulæ of the type $y = \frac{k}{x}$.

The difficulty of recognising an inverse proportion curve is a convincing reason for considering the relation of the inverse proportion formula to the direct proportion formula. In an experiment leading to the law of levers, instead of plotting W (weight) and D (distance) and obtaining a curve which cannot be recognised at a glance, the pupils will plot $\frac{1}{W}$ and D and obtain a straight line, and from it the formula connecting D and $\frac{1}{W}$ will be obtained.

Similarly, simple experiments can be introduced to shew the relation of the formula for the curve of squares or the curve of cubes to the direct proportion formula.

Another type of formula, e.g. the Simple Interest formula $A = IT + P$ (where "I" is the interest on the Principal for one year, "T" the time in years and "P" the Principal) may be introduced at this stage. Formulæ for calculating the cost, including the meter rent, of electricity and gas are familiar instances. The pupils should be able to draw the graph from its formula,

and also to translate a graph into its formula. Where the study of simple machines forms part of the Mathematics course, practical use may be made of this latter method in obtaining formulæ from experimental data.

The solution of arithmetical puzzles and problems involving two unknowns forms an interesting introduction to the solution of simultaneous equations, leading on to the verification of given laws in connexion with simple machines.

Quadratic equations might be approached through the solution of arithmetical puzzles and problems. The subject may be further developed through a number of interesting experiments, such as tracing the path of an oiled ball-bearing projected obliquely up a slightly inclined blackboard or tracing the path of a jet of water starting horizontally from a small hole in the side of a vessel. The graphical test for a parabola should be explained to the pupils and then they will proceed to the discovery and verification of formulæ connecting vertical heights and horizontal displacements obtained from the above experiments.

Where conditions are particularly favourable, the construction and use of a slide rule can be taught. The subject may be approached through the study of the unique property of all Compound Interest graphs, which enables the " Abscissa " axis to be so graduated that numbers may be multiplied and divided, and roots and powers of numbers found from it. It is then an easy step to the construction of two such scales which can be used as a slide rule.

47. Logarithms.—Where logarithms are taught they should be introduced sufficiently early, say before the beginning of the third year, so that reasonable facility may be acquired before the end of the course.

Some teachers will probably decide to teach the mechanical use of logarithms. Others may take the

view that the pupils ought to be convinced of the reasonableness of the methods, even if they are not completely understood. The first step then is to make the pupils realise that the figures in the table of logarithms are merely powers of 10. One way of doing this is to plot such powers of 10 as are easily calculable, and to shew that the figures in the table agree with those obtained from the resulting graph. For example, assuming that the pupils are familiar with the methods of multiplying and dividing numbers using the index notation, and that the meaning of an index has been extended to fractional values, then the logarithms of 2, 3 and 7 can be obtained from the statements:

$$2^{10} = 1024 = 10^3 \text{ approximately.}$$
$$3^4 = 81 = 8 \times 10 \quad ,,$$
$$7^4 = 2401 = 3 \times 8 \times 10^2 \text{ approx.}$$

From the logarithms of 2 and 3, those of the remaining integers up to 9 can be found. If the results are suitably plotted, from the resulting smooth curve, the logarithm of any number may be obtained correct to two decimal places and compared with that given in the table. The graph may be used to multiply and divide numbers, and to obtain any root or power, providing that in the case of numbers less than 1 or greater than 10, they are first expressed in "Standard Form." The use of the table should then follow without delay.

48. Mechanics.—Where conditions are suitable Mechanics can usefully be taught in the Senior School as the subject provides a good field for experiment, observation and the discovery, interpretation and verification of algebraic laws. Much of the work will be done in the Science room, but the readings obtained from experiments can best be dealt with by the Mathematics teacher.

Originally Mechanics was the science of mechanical contrivances such as the screw and the block and tackle, which men devised to enable them to handle weights too heavy for their unaided muscles. The study of such contrivances makes a good beginning in a Senior School. It is best to use real machines and to handle fairly heavy loads. Where this is not possible, the pupils should be acquainted with the working of the real machine, and the model used for experiments should resemble it closely in design and be strong enough to withstand fairly large forces. It may well be constructed by the pupil as an exercise in handicraft.

A qualitative study of " how it works " may be followed by plotting efforts and loads on a graph and perhaps by translating the graphs into formulæ. Where Algebra is carried far enough, it will be possible to study the connexions between time and distance for a ball rolling down a groove or for a wheel with its pivot on metal runners. The notions of speed at a point and average speed should be dealt with. Simple apparatus can be devised to illustrate the rule that doubling the speed of a car quadruples the stopping distance. The motion of projectiles and the law of the pendulum may be studied by graphical methods.

In rural schools Mechanics is equally valuable, but the subject belongs to rural Science more than to Mathematics. Farm and garden implements, from the spade to the mechanical harvester, afford endless examples of the Simple Machines, either singly or in combination, but the calculations that arise mostly consist of ratios either of lengths or numbers of cogs.

In some schools the notions of thrust and tension in beams and girders may be studied practically and the notion of couples, e.g. in the suspension of a farm gate.

D. BACKWARD PUPILS AND DULL PUPILS

49. The treatment of pupils who are backward but not dull.—Among the "C" pupils will be those whose backwardness has been caused not by any natural dullness of mind but by circumstances beyond their control, such as long absences from school, frequent migrations from one school to another, home conditions and differences of efficiency in the teaching given at the Junior School stage. In their case, the remedy lies in the use of a simplified revision course aiming at securing reasonable facility in simple calculations with small numbers and a fair knowledge of the weights and measures actually used in daily life. They should then be ready to undertake much of the easy work arranged for "B" pupils, but should not be expected to deal with large numbers or difficult problems.

Amongst the backward pupils will often be found those whose failure to learn Arithmetic arises from their disinclination to try. It is for such pupils that freshness of attack and a new appeal to their interests are particularly valuable in dealing with processes already familiar but imperfectly mastered.

50. The treatment of dull pupils.—(*a*) *Their limitations.*—Some pupils are definitely much below the average in arithmetical ability. As a rule the proportion of these dull pupils in any year group is appreciable and the difficulty of educating them is so great compared with the more normal pupils that the adoption of separate schemes and special methods of treatment is necessary. A full realisation of their many limitations is essential before the teacher is able to adopt the right measures.

Dull pupils will be distinguished from their fellows in the "A" and "B" classes by their lack of sustained attention and their inability to concentrate for any length of time. The lessons for the dull pupils must,

therefore, be shorter than those arranged for the more normal pupils. A lesson should seldom exceed 30 minutes, except for practical work, and even then the period should be broken and may include say a few minutes mental practice or written work in addition to time for individual or group activities. The practical work suggested for Juniors in §23, §25 and §26 of the Board's pamphlet on *Senior School Mathematics* should be continued. Again, their interest is aroused only through purposeful experiences. Dull children understand processes by observing and using them in concrete situations but have difficulty in realising situations described in words. Furthermore they take longer to grasp a rule, need a longer time to memorise it and must have practice in revision at regular and short intervals in order to retain their knowledge and skill. In oral and written work they can only deal with small numbers.

(b) *Attainments on entry*.—A large proportion of the "C" class will have only reached the mental age of 12 by the time they have arrived at the statutory school-leaving age, while some may scarcely have reached 11. It is most unlikely, therefore, that dull pupils will have covered the suggested minimum syllabus outlined in §16 of *Senior School Mathematics*. The teacher's problem will be to find out, at the outset, the extent and limitations of the pupil's knowledge through diagnostic tests and close scrutiny of his work. Suitable individual records may be very helpful in meeting the varying needs. Particular defects of knowledge of number facts or "tables" should be met by specific remedies.

Revision work should never consist merely of a dull grind at mechanical exercises. The pupil's interest must be caught and held. A process that needs to be retaught may be approached through purposeful activities and games. Where one method of attack fails,

the teacher should be ready with another. Nor should all the time be spent in revision. Fresh ground should be broken, for example, through practical exercises in Geometry, where lack of proficiency in the groundwork of Arithmetic is of little account.

(c) *The arithmetical needs of dull pupils when they leave school.*—The most important need of dull pupils is close familiarity with a wide variety of situations and experiences that they will normally meet in their home life. These will often involve only "mental" calculations. The knowledge of rules required in everyday life is not so extensive as is commonly imagined; it is certainly much less than is covered by the ordinary school course. The need for working sums on paper seldom arises, and the range of rules is even more restricted. The minimum syllabus outlined in §16 of *Senior School Mathematics* includes more than is necessary and could only be covered by the dull pupils by encroaching on time that should be spent on other subjects. By the time the pupils leave school, however, confidence and proficiency should have been acquired in the limited range of calculations likely to be useful and some skill in the types of weighing, measuring and estimating needed in adult life.

(d) *General lines of treatment.*—Dull pupils learn best by "doing" and by dealing with real problems in situations which are familiar and interesting. It follows that the most effective way of teaching is to deal as realistically as possible with the pupils' everyday activities. Daily routine duties which involve calculations may be given to individual pupils, e.g. recording and calculating the cost of the school's supply of milk.

A growing practice is to arrange the scheme as a series of projects, such as the construction of a garden-frame or the planning of a holiday trip, due regard being paid to sequence. Interest is increased if the projects arise spontaneously and the pupils obtain their own data.

Similarly the work may be arranged under practical topics in connexion with the home and various school activities like gardening or poultry-keeping. These will be not unlike the practical topics that have already been suggested for normal pupils, but their interest will be more personal, the treatment simpler and the arithmetical processes involved much more elementary.

In addition to practical topics in Arithmetic, some of the very easy outdoor exercises in Surveying have been found suitable for dull boys. Many opportunities for measuring, sketching, drawing and calculating with small numbers will also arise in connexion with Woodwork.

In a girls' school, the general planning of a scheme based on Practical Topics might include :—

(1) Keeping the household accounts; (2) The provision of meals; (3) The provision of clothes; (4) Soft furnishings and floor coverings for the home; (5) Wall coverings for the home; (6) Saving money.

Some of the above topics are equally suitable for boys, but in their case more emphasis might be placed on money topics or projects, e.g. keeping the accounts of the school camp, journey or sports.

The method of treatment is highly important; no topic should be used merely as a means of obtaining further practice in arithmetical operations.

The following is given as an illustration of the development of one of the above topics :—

Soft furnishing and floor covering for the home :

(*a*) Planning of tray cloths, simple short curtains, cushion covers

(*b*) Curtains with pelmets or frills. Cost of providing them in a four or six-roomed house. Curtains for modern windows and fittings for them.

(*c*) Floor coverings. Stair carpets.

(*d*) Bedding : mattress covers, sheets, pillow cases, quilts, etc.

The material for such topics cannot be drawn from any text-book. The situations will arise either in connexion with a housewifery course or with a project for fitting up a classroom or staff room as a sitting or bedroom. The whole purpose of such treatment is to train the children to extract for themselves the arithmetical data from the real situation. Essential facts, such as kinds of material, widths and prices, should be collected from reliable and if possible local sources. Technical questions will affect the difficulty of a problem, e.g. questions of cutting with warp, woof or on the cross, and with allowances for hems, joins or fullness. The teacher can to some extent grade her problems in difficulty and she can analyse them into easy stages for the pupils to tackle one by one. Some of the exercises under (*a*) in the example given above, for example, will be from one point of view harder than questions on stair carpets, as the latter involve length measures but not choice of width.

E. CONCLUSION

51. Selective Central Schools.—No reference has been made in this Handbook to the teaching of Mathematics in Selective Central schools. Much of what has been suggested for " A " pupils is applicable to the pupils of these schools; and any special bias will be reflected in the choice and treatment of material. For pupils in Selective Central Schools as well as for pupils who remain in the non-selective Senior School beyond the age of 14 the topics suggested in the Board's pamphlet *Senior School Mathematics* will provide ample material for an extended course.

INDEX.

This Index is not intended to be exhaustive. Reference should also be made to the *Summary of Contents* at the head of each Chapter.

The numbers of the pages on which a *Summary of Contents* is to be found are printed in the Index in heavier type.

In many cases where there are several references to a topic the principal reference is placed first.

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

L

M

N

O

P

R

S